U.S. Department
of Transportation

**Federal Aviation
Administration**

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL

Change 1

December 2, 2021

DO NOT DESTROY
BASIC DATED
JUNE 17, 2021

Aeronautical Information Manual

Explanation of Changes

Effective: December 2, 2021

a. 1−1−8. NAVAID SERVICE VOLUMES
1−1−17. GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)
1−1−18. WIDE AREA AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (WAAS)
1−2−3. USE OF SUITABLE AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) SYSTEMS ON CONVENTIONAL PROCEDURES AND ROUTES
2−1−2. VISUAL GLIDESLOPE INDICATORS
3−5−8. WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE AREA (WRA)
4−1−3. FLIGHT SERVICE STATIONS
4−1−14. AUTOMATIC FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE (AFIS) − ALASKA FSS ONLY
4−5−9. FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE− BROADCAST (FIS−B)
5−1−1. PREFLIGHT PREPARATION
5−1−3. NOTICE TO AIRMEN (NOTAM) SYSTEM
5−5−1. GENERAL
7−1−5. PREFLIGHT BRIEFING
7−1−9. FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICES (FIS)
7−6−3. OBSTRUCTIONS TO FLIGHT
7−6−12. LIGHT AMPLIFICATION BY STIMULATED EMISSION OF RADIATION (LASER) OPERATIONS AND REPORTING ILLUMINATION OF AIRCRAFT
10−2−1. OFFSHORE HELICOPTER OPERATIONS

This editorial change complies with the Federal Women's Program (FWP) suggestions. The acronym NOTAM is updated from Notice to Airmen to the more applicable term Notice to Air Missions, which is inclusive of all aviators and missions.

b. 1−1−9. INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM (ILS)

Discussion within the PARC Pilot−Controller Procedures and Systems Integration (PCPSI) work group resulted in a recommendation to further clarify the ILS Expanded Service Volume (ESV) and include a new figure that better explains how pilots can identify an ILS ESV when consulting a charted instrument procedure.

c. 1−1−17. GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM

The NOTAM subparagraph (g) was deleted so as not to duplicate. There is a specific NOTAM paragraph (5−1−3) that explains NOTAMs in detail. A few paragraphs were moved to supplement the RAIM paragraph. Lastly, in an effort to clarify guidance and to ensure it supports what is currently being charted in regards to the missed approach waypoint (MAWP) and the missed approach holding waypoint (MAHWP), a clearer depiction and a minor correction on how Fly−by (FB) and Fly−over (FO) waypoints are used and depicted on approach charts.

d. 1−1−19. GROUND BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (GBAS) LANDING SYSTEM (GLS)

This change is a complete rewrite of paragraph 1−1−19 to eliminate much of the technical descriptions and to focus on the operational functions and descriptions of the GLS system. Emphasis was concentrated on GLS similarity to ILS, operational description and additional attention to familiarity with standard service volumes of GLS procedures.

e. 4−4−9. VFR/IFR FLIGHTS
5−1−16. RNAV AND RNP OPERATIONS
5−4−5. MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE (MVA)

This change rewrites the notes in off route obstruction clearance altitude (OROCA) related paragraphs, to incorporate updated terminology and enable a better understanding of how OROCA is utilized.

f. 4−6−4. FLIGHT PLANNING INTO RVSM AIRSPACE
5−1−1. PREFLIGHT PREPARATION
5−1−4. FLIGHT PLAN − VFR FLIGHTS
5−1−6. FLIGHT PLAN − DEFENSE VFR (DVFR) FLIGHTS
5−1−7. COMPOSITE FLIGHT PLAN (VFR/IFR FLIGHTS)
5−1−8. FLIGHT PLAN (FAA FORM 7233−1) − DOMESTIC IFR FLIGHTS
5−1−9. INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN (FAA FORM 7233−4) − IFR FLIGHTS (FOR DOMESTIC OR INTERNATIONAL FLIGHTS)
APPENDIX 4. FAA FORM 7233−4 − INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN
APPENDIX 5. FAA FORM 7233−1 − FLIGHT PLAN

The following changes are required to align the order with current operational procedures. These changes also support the standardized use of FAA Form 7233−4, International Flight Plan, and inform stakeholders that legacy procedures may be used by parties that do not have the necessary equipment to adhere to the new ICAO forms and or procedures.

g. 5−1−3. NOTICE TO AIRMEN (NOTAM) SYSTEM

GPS NOTAM and receiver autonomous integrity monitoring (RAIM) information is currently located in the overview section of the AIM/AIP. This change consolidates all of the NOTAM information into one procedures section and updates current NOTAM language. This update references how to report GPS anomalies, as well as edits two tables with example NOTAMS on GPS testing and pseudo−random satellite numbers.

h. 5−1−17. COLD TEMPERATURE OPERATIONS

This change replaces paragraph 5−1−17 Cold Temperature Operations guidance and preflight planning information being updated to reflect the two temperature limitations that may be found on an FAA produced instrument approach procedure (IAP). The new paragraph also directs operators to Chapter 7 to review the information on cold temperature altimetry errors and current procedures for CTA and baro−VNAV temperature limitations.

i. 5−2−7. DEPARTURE RESTRICTIONS, CLEARANCE VOID TIMES, HOLD FOR RELEASE, AND RELEASE TIMES

A recent change to FAA Order JO 7110.65 requires that ATC give a pilot departing from an airport without an operating control tower a departure release, a hold for release, or a release time when issuing the departure clearance. This AIM change reflects the change made to FAA Order JO 7110.65 and clarifies pilot and controller responsibilities.

j. 5−2−8. DEPARTURE CONTROL
5−2−9. INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURES (DP) − OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURES (ODP), STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES (SID), AND DIVERSE VECTOR AREAS (DVA)
5−5−6. RADAR VECTORS
5−5−14. INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES

This change adds a statement that diverse vector areas (DVAs) cannot be used concurrently with a standard instrument departure (SID) when the SID is included as part of the instrument flight rules (IFR) clearance, and addresses a new requirement imposed on ATC that pilots will receive an amended clearance if departure procedures are changed from SIDs to DVAs and vice versa.

k. 5−2−9. INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURES (DP) − OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURES (ODP), STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES (SID), AND DIVERSE VECTOR AREAS (DVA)

Instructions and clarity were added for pilots to remain within the visual climb over airport (VCOA) specified visibility when departing an airport instrument flight rules (IFR) using VCOA.

l. 5−4−5. INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE (IAP) CHARTS
5−5−4. INSTRUMENT APPROACH
5−5−5. MISSED APPROACH

This change renames paragraph 5−4−5m7(f) from Hot and Cold Temperature Limitations to Published

Temperature Limitations, and also adds information on the two published temperature limitations. Paragraph 5−5−4 will give a brief description of the two temperature limitations found on the Instrument Approach Procedures (IAPs). Paragraph 5−5−5 will mention the Cold Temperature Airports (CTA) ICON and discuss briefly when to correct and who to contact.

m. 5−4−18. RNP AR (AUTHORIZATION REQUIRED) INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURES

This change deletes most of this paragraph. All that is necessary in this publication is a brief overview of Required Navigation Performance Authorization Required (RNP AR) and reference to a complete AC dedicated to RNP AR.

n. 5−4−20. APPROACH AND LANDING MINIMUMS

Removes outdated and incorrect verbiage and re−aligns AIM/AIP verbiage with FAA Order 8260.58.

o. 5−6−8. FOREIGN STATE AIRCRAFT OPERATIONS

Guidance for Foreign State Aircraft operating with a Department of State issued Diplomatic Clearance is being added to the Aeronautical Information Manual regarding authorizations to deviate from Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast (ADS−B) requirements.

p. 7−1−8. INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY BROADCASTS

This change removes Severe Weather Forecast Alerts (AWW) from paragraph 7−1−8, Inflight Weather Advisory Broadcasts, which are not broadcast by Terminal or ARTCC controllers. The change also harmonizes paragraph 7−1−8a Note with FAA Order JO 7110.65, subparagraph 2−6−6b, and adds a Reference to that paragraph.

q. 7−1−24. MICROBURSTS

These changes update the information in this chapter regarding Low Level Wind Shear Alert System (LLWAS), Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR), and Weather System Processor (WSP).

r. 7−6−16. SPACE LAUNCH AND REENTRY AREA

This change relocates the space launch activity area information that was previously in Chart Supplement publications into the AIM and AIP. The term “space launch activity area” was also updated to the more inclusive “space launch and reentry area.”

s. 9−1−4. GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF EACH CHART SERIES

This change updates frequency of chart production. In cases where annually or biannual updates were made, 56 day chart updates replace those longer update periods, and reduce the NOTAM burden and bring NAS changes to aviators in a timely manner.

t. 10−1−2. HELICOPTER INSTRUMENT APPROACHES

10−1−3. HELICOPTER APPROACH PROCEDURES TO VFR HELIPORTS

Changes were made throughout the section to improve the clarity and provide updated information wherever necessary. Emphasis was concentrated on clarification of language and operational description associated with helicopter instrument approach procedures.

u. 10−1−5. DEPARTURE PROCEDURES

This addition was made to improve the clarity and provide departure information wherever necessary. Emphasis was concentrated on clarification of language and operational description associated with helicopter instrument departure procedures.

v. Editorial Changes

Editorial changes include updates to an out of date reference in paragraph 3–4–1, a formatting fix in paragraph 7−1−13, a math error correction in paragraph 7−3−6, correcting Las Vegas McCarran International to Harry Reid International in paragraph 4−5−5 (TBL 4−5−1), removing an incorrect reference in paragraph 7−4−1, and adding a missing “traffic advisories.”

w. Entire Publication

Additional editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used because of the insignificant nature of these changes.

AIM Change 1
Page Control Chart
December 2, 2021

REMOVE PAGES	DATED	INSERT PAGES	DATED
Checklist of Pages CK−1 through CK−7	6/17/21	Checklist of Pages CK−1 through CK−7	12/2/21
Table of Contents i through xii	6/17/21	Table of Contents i through xii	12/2/21
1−1−5	6/17/21	1−1−5	6/17/21
1−1−6	6/17/21	1−1−6	12/2/21
1−1−9	6/17/21	1−1−9	6/17/21
1−1−10 through 1−1−16	6/17/21	1−1−10 through 1−1−16	12/2/21
1−1−19	6/17/21	1−1−19	6/17/21
1−1−20	6/17/21	1−1−20	12/2/21
1−1−23 through 1−1−40	6/17/21	1−1−23 through 1−1−39	12/2/21
1−2−5	6/17/21	1−2−5	12/2/21
1−2−6	6/17/21	1−2−6	6/17/21
1−2−7	6/17/21	1−2−7	6/17/21
1−2−8	6/17/21	1−2−8	12/2/21
2−1−1	6/17/21	2−1−1	12/2/21
2−1−2	6/17/21	2−1−2	6/17/21
3−4−1	6/17/21	3−4−1	12/2/21
3−4−2	6/17/21	3−4−2	6/17/21
3−5−9	6/17/21	3−5−9	6/17/21
3−5−10	6/17/21	3−5−10	12/2/21
4−1−1 and 4−1−2	6/17/21	4−1−1 and 4−1−2	12/2/21
4−1−7	6/17/21	4−1−7	6/17/21
4−1−8	6/17/21	4−1−8	12/2/21
4−1−11	6/17/21	4−1−11	6/17/21
4−1−12	6/17/21	4−1−12	12/2/21
4−1−17 through 4−1−19	6/17/21	4−1−17 through 4−1−19	12/2/21
4−2−3	6/17/21	4−2−3	6/17/21
4−2−4 through 4−2−8	6/17/21	4−2−4 through 4−2−8	12/2/21
4−3−13	6/17/21	4−3−13	12/2/21
4−3−14	6/17/21	4−3−14	6/17/21
4−3−23 through 4−3−32	6/17/21	4−3−23 through 4−3−32	12/2/21
4−4−5	6/17/21	4−4−5	12/2/21
4−4−6	6/17/21	4−4−6	6/17/21
4−5−7	6/17/21	4−5−7	6/17/21
4−5−8	6/17/21	4−5−8	12/2/21
4−5−19	6/17/21	4−5−19	6/17/21
4−5−20	6/17/21	4−5−20	12/2/21
4−6−1	6/17/21	4−6−1	6/17/21
4−6−2 through 4−6−10	6/17/21	4−6−2 through 4−6−9	12/2/21
5−1−1 through 5−1−31	6/17/21	5−1−1 through 5−1−18	12/2/21
5−2−3	6/17/21	5−2−3	6/17/21

Remove Pages	Dated	Insert Pages	Dated
5−2−4 through 5−2−13	6/17/21	5−2−4 through 5−2−13	12/2/21
5−4−17	6/17/21	5−4−17	12/2/21
5−4−18	6/17/21	5−4−18	6/17/21
5−4−25 through 5−4−65	6/17/21	5−4−25 through 5−4−63	12/2/21
5−5−1 through 5−5−8	6/17/21	5−5−1 through 5−5−9	12/2/21
5−6−5	6/17/21	5−6−5	6/17/21
5−6−6 through 5−6−11	6/17/21	5−6−6 through 5−6−11	12/2/21
5−6−12	6/17/21	5−6−12	6/17/21
7−1−7	6/17/21	7−1−7	6/17/21
7−1−8	6/17/21	7−1−8	12/2/21
7−1−17	6/17/21	7−1−17	12/2/21
7−1−18 and 7−1−19	6/17/21	7−1−18 and 7−1−19	6/17/21
7−1−20	6/17/21	7−1−20	12/2/21
7−1−37 and 7−1−38	6/17/21	7−1−37 and 7−1−38	12/2/21
7−1−47	6/17/21	7−1−47	6/17/21
7−1−48	6/17/21	7−1−48	12/2/21
7−1−49	6/17/21	7−1−49	6/17/21
7−1−50 and 7−1−51	6/17/21	7−1−50 and 7−1−51	12/2/21
7−1−52 and 7−1−53	6/17/21	7−1−52 and 7−1−53	6/17/21
7−1−54 through 7−1−58	6/17/21	7−1−54 through 7−1−58	12/2/21
7−3−5	6/17/21	7−3−5	6/17/21
7−3−6	6/17/21	7−3−6	12/2/21
7−6−1	6/17/21	7−6−1	12/2/21
7−6−2	6/17/21	7−6−2	6/17/21
7−6−9	6/17/21	7−6−9	6/17/21
7−6−10	6/17/21	7−6−10	12/2/21
	N/A	7−6−15	12/2/21
9−1−1 through 9−1−4	6/17/21	9−1−1 through 9−1−4	12/2/21
9−1−7	6/17/21	9−1−7	12/2/21
9−1−8	6/17/21	9−1−8	6/17/21
9−1−9	6/17/21	9−1−9	12/2/21
9−1−10	6/17/21	9−1−10	6/17/21
9−1−11	6/17/21	9−1−11	12/2/21
9−1−12	6/17/21	9−1−12	6/17/21
10−1−1 through 10−1−7	6/17/21	10−1−1 through 10−1−7	12/2/21
10−2−1	6/17/21	10−2−1	6/17/21
10−2−2 and 10−2−3	6/17/21	10−2−2 and 10−2−3	12/2/21
10−2−4	6/17/21	10−2−4	6/17/21
Appendix 3−5	6/17/21	Appendix 3−5	12/2/21
	N/A	Appendix 4−1 through Appendix 4−23	12/2/21
	N/A	Appendix 5−1 through Appendix 5−3	12/2/21
PCG−1	6/17/21	PCG−1 and PCG−2	12/2/21
PCG A−1 through PCG A−17	6/17/21	PCG A−1 through PCG A−17	12/2/21
PCG C−1 through PCG C−10	6/17/21	PCG C−1 through PCG C−10	12/2/21
PCG D−1 through PCG D−4	6/17/21	PCG D−1 through PCG D−4	12/2/21

PCG E−1	6/17/21	PCG E−1	6/17/21
PCG E−2 and PCG E−3	6/17/21	PCG E−2 and PCG E−3	12/2/21
PCG F−1 through PCG F−5	6/17/21	PCG F−1 through PCG F−5	12/2/21
PCG G−1	6/17/21	PCG G−1	6/17/21
PCG G−2 through PCG G−3	6/17/21	PCG G−2 through PCG G−3	12/2/21
PCG I−1 through PCG I−6	6/17/21	PCG I−5 and PCG I−6	12/2/21
PCG M−1	6/17/21	PCG M−1	6/17/21
PCG M−2 through PCG M−6	6/17/21	PCG M−2 through PCG M−6	12/2/21
PCG N−1	6/17/21	PCG N−1	12/2/21
PCG N−2	6/17/21	PCG N−2	6/17/21
PCG N−3	6/17/21	PCG N−3	12/2/21
PCG N−4	6/17/21	PCG N−4	6/17/21
PCG O−1	6/17/21	PCG O−1	6/17/21
PCG O−2 and PCG O−3	6/17/21	PCG O−2 and PCG O−3	12/2/21
PCG O−4	6/17/21	PCG O−4	6/17/21
PCG P−1 through PCG P−5	6/17/21	PCG P−1 through PCG P−6	12/2/21
PCG R−1 through PCG R−8	6/17/21	PCG R−1 through PCG R−8	12/2/21
PCG S−1	6/17/21	PCG S−1	6/17/21
PCG S−2 through PCG S−9	6/17/21	PCG S−2 through PCG S−10	12/2/21
PCG T−1	6/17/21	PCG T−1	6/17/21
PCG T−2 through PCG T−8	6/17/21	PCG T−2 through PCG T−9	12/2/21
PCG V−1 through PCG V−4	6/17/21	PCG V−1 through PCG V−4	12/2/21
PCG W−1 and PGC W−2	6/17/21	PCG W−1 and PGC W−2	12/2/21
Index I−1 through I−12	6/17/21	Index I−1 through I−13	12/2/21

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
Cover	6/17/21
Record of Changes	N/A
Exp of Chg−1	12/2/21
Exp of Chg−2	12/2/21
Exp of Chg−3	12/2/21
Checklist of Pages	
CK−1	12/2/21
CK−2	12/2/21
CK−3	12/2/21
CK−4	12/2/21
CK−5	12/2/21
CK−6	12/2/21
CK−7	12/2/21
Subscription Info	6/17/21
Comments/Corr	6/17/21
Basic Flight Info	6/17/21
Publication Policy	6/17/21
Reg & Advis Cir	6/17/21
Table of Contents	
i	12/2/21
ii	12/2/21
iii	12/2/21
iv	12/2/21
v	12/2/21
vi	12/2/21
vii	12/2/21
viii	12/2/21
ix	12/2/21
x	12/2/21
xi	12/2/21
xii	12/2/21
Chapter 1. Air Navigation	
Section 1. Navigation Aids	
1−1−1	6/17/21
1−1−2	6/17/21
1−1−3	6/17/21
1−1−4	6/17/21
1−1−5	6/17/21
1−1−6	12/2/21
1−1−7	6/17/21
1−1−8	6/17/21
1−1−9	6/17/21
1−1−10	12/2/21
1−1−11	12/2/21
1−1−12	12/2/21
1−1−13	12/2/21
1−1−14	12/2/21
1−1−15	12/2/21
1−1−16	12/2/21
1−1−17	6/17/21
1−1−18	6/17/21
1−1−19	6/17/21
1−1−20	12/2/21
1−1−21	6/17/21
1−1−22	6/17/21
1−1−23	12/2/21
1−1−24	12/2/21
1−1−25	12/2/21
1−1−26	12/2/21
1−1−27	12/2/21
1−1−28	12/2/21
1−1−29	12/2/21
1−1−30	12/2/21
1−1−31	12/2/21
1−1−32	12/2/21
1−1−33	12/2/21
1−1−34	12/2/21
1−1−35	12/2/21
1−1−36	12/2/21
1−1−37	12/2/21
1−1−38	12/2/21
1−1−39	12/2/21
Section 2. Performance−Based Navigation (PBN) and Area Navigation (RNAV)	
1−2−1	6/17/21
1−2−2	6/17/21
1−2−3	6/17/21
1−2−4	6/17/21
1−2−5	12/2/21
1−2−6	6/17/21
1−2−7	6/17/21
1−2−8	12/2/21
1−2−9	6/17/21
1−2−10	6/17/21
Chapter 2. Aeronautical Lighting and Other Airport Visual Aids	
Section 1. Airport Lighting Aids	
2−1−1	12/2/21
2−1−2	6/17/21
2−1−3	6/17/21
2−1−4	6/17/21
2−1−5	6/17/21
2−1−6	6/17/21
2−1−7	6/17/21
2−1−8	6/17/21
2−1−9	6/17/21
2−1−10	6/17/21
2−1−11	6/17/21
2−1−12	6/17/21
2−1−13	6/17/21
Section 2. Air Navigation and Obstruction Lighting	
2−2−1	6/17/21
2−2−2	6/17/21
Section 3. Airport Marking Aids and Signs	
2−3−1	6/17/21
2−3−2	6/17/21
2−3−3	6/17/21
2−3−4	6/17/21
2−3−5	6/17/21
2−3−6	6/17/21
2−3−7	6/17/21
2−3−8	6/17/21
2−3−9	6/17/21
2−3−10	6/17/21
2−3−11	6/17/21
2−3−12	6/17/21
2−3−13	6/17/21
2−3−14	6/17/21
2−3−15	6/17/21
2−3−16	6/17/21
2−3−17	6/17/21
2−3−18	6/17/21
2−3−19	6/17/21
2−3−20	6/17/21
2−3−21	6/17/21
2−3−22	6/17/21

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
2–3–23	6/17/21
2–3–24	6/17/21
2–3–25	6/17/21
2–3–26	6/17/21
2–3–27	6/17/21
2–3–28	6/17/21
2–3–29	6/17/21
2–3–30	6/17/21
2–3–31	6/17/21

Chapter 3. Airspace

Section 1. General

PAGE	DATE
3–1–1	6/17/21
3–1–2	6/17/21
3–1–3	6/17/21

Section 2. Controlled Airspace

PAGE	DATE
3–2–1	6/17/21
3–2–2	6/17/21
3–2–3	6/17/21
3–2–4	6/17/21
3–2–5	6/17/21
3–2–6	6/17/21
3–2–7	6/17/21
3–2–8	6/17/21
3–2–9	6/17/21
3–2–10	6/17/21

Section 3. Class G Airspace

PAGE	DATE
3–3–1	6/17/21

Section 4. Special Use Airspace

PAGE	DATE
3–4–1	12/2/21
3–4–2	6/17/21
3–4–3	6/17/21

Section 5. Other Airspace Areas

PAGE	DATE
3–5–1	6/17/21
3–5–2	6/17/21
3–5–3	6/17/21
3–5–4	6/17/21
3–5–5	6/17/21
3–5–6	6/17/21
3–5–7	6/17/21
3–5–8	6/17/21
3–5–9	6/17/21
3–5–10	12/2/21

Chapter 4. Air Traffic Control

Section 1. Services Available to Pilots

PAGE	DATE
4–1–1	12/2/21
4–1–2	12/2/21
4–1–3	6/17/21
4–1–4	6/17/21
4–1–5	6/17/21
4–1–6	6/17/21
4–1–7	6/17/21
4–1–8	12/2/21
4–1–9	6/17/21
4–1–10	6/17/21
4–1–11	6/17/21
4–1–12	12/2/21
4–1–13	6/17/21
4–1–14	6/17/21
4–1–15	6/17/21
4–1–16	6/17/21
4–1–17	12/2/21
4–1–18	12/2/21
4–1–19	12/2/21

Section 2. Radio Communications Phraseology and Techniques

PAGE	DATE
4–2–1	6/17/21
4–2–2	6/17/21
4–2–3	6/17/21
4–2–4	12/2/21
4–2–5	12/2/21
4–2–6	12/2/21
4–2–7	12/2/21
4–2–8	12/2/21

Section 3. Airport Operations

PAGE	DATE
4–3–1	6/17/21
4–3–2	6/17/21
4–3–3	6/17/21
4–3–4	6/17/21
4–3–5	6/17/21
4–3–6	6/17/21
4–3–7	6/17/21
4–3–8	6/17/21
4–3–9	6/17/21
4–3–10	6/17/21
4–3–11	6/17/21
4–3–12	6/17/21
4–3–13	12/2/21
4–3–14	6/17/21
4–3–15	6/17/21
4–3–16	6/17/21
4–3–17	6/17/21
4–3–18	6/17/21
4–3–19	6/17/21
4–3–20	6/17/21
4–3–21	6/17/21
4–3–22	6/17/21
4–3–23	12/2/21
4–3–24	12/2/21
4–3–25	12/2/21
4–3–26	12/2/21
4–3–27	12/2/21
4–3–28	12/2/21
4–3–29	12/2/21
4–3–30	12/2/21
4–3–31	12/2/21
4–3–32	12/2/21

Section 4. ATC Clearances and Aircraft Separation

PAGE	DATE
4–4–1	6/17/21
4–4–2	6/17/21
4–4–3	6/17/21
4–4–4	6/17/21
4–4–5	12/2/21
4–4–6	6/17/21
4–4–7	6/17/21
4–4–8	6/17/21
4–4–9	6/17/21
4–4–10	6/17/21
4–4–11	6/17/21
4–4–12	6/17/21

Section 5. Surveillance Systems

PAGE	DATE
4–5–1	6/17/21
4–5–2	6/17/21
4–5–3	6/17/21
4–5–4	6/17/21
4–5–5	6/17/21
4–5–6	6/17/21
4–5–7	6/17/21
4–5–8	12/2/21
4–5–9	6/17/21

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
4–5–10	6/17/21
4–5–11	6/17/21
4–5–12	6/17/21
4–5–13	6/17/21
4–5–14	6/17/21
4–5–15	6/17/21
4–5–16	6/17/21
4–5–17	6/17/21
4–5–18	6/17/21
4–5–19	6/17/21
4–5–20	12/2/21
4–5–21	6/17/21
4–5–22	6/17/21

Section 6. Operational Policy/ Procedures for Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) in the Domestic U.S., Alaska, Offshore Airspace and the San Juan FIR

PAGE	DATE
4–6–1	6/17/21
4–6–2	12/2/21
4–6–3	12/2/21
4–6–4	12/2/21
4–6–5	12/2/21
4–6–6	12/2/21
4–6–7	12/2/21
4–6–8	12/2/21
4–6–9	12/2/21

Section 7. Operational Policy/ Procedures for the Gulf of Mexico 50 NM Lateral Separation Initiative

PAGE	DATE
4–7–1	6/17/21
4–7–2	6/17/21

Chapter 5. Air Traffic Procedures

Section 1. Preflight

PAGE	DATE
5–1–1	12/2/21
5–1–2	12/2/21
5–1–3	12/2/21
5–1–4	12/2/21
5–1–5	12/2/21
5–1–6	12/2/21
5–1–7	12/2/21
5–1–8	12/2/21
5–1–9	12/2/21
5–1–10	12/2/21
5–1–11	12/2/21
5–1–12	12/2/21
5–1–13	12/2/21
5–1–14	12/2/21
5–1–15	12/2/21
5–1–16	12/2/21
5–1–17	12/2/21
5–1–18	12/2/21

Section 2. Departure Procedures

PAGE	DATE
5–2–1	6/17/21
5–2–2	6/17/21
5–2–3	6/17/21
5–2–4	12/2/21
5–2–5	12/2/21
5–2–6	12/2/21
5–2–7	12/2/21
5–2–8	12/2/21
5–2–9	12/2/21
5–2–10	12/2/21
5–2–11	12/2/21
5–2–12	12/2/21
5–2–13	12/2/21

Section 3. En Route Procedures

PAGE	DATE
5–3–1	6/17/21
5–3–2	6/17/21
5–3–3	6/17/21
5–3–4	6/17/21
5–3–5	6/17/21
5–3–6	6/17/21
5–3–7	6/17/21
5–3–8	6/17/21
5–3–9	6/17/21
5–3–10	6/17/21
5–3–11	6/17/21
5–3–12	6/17/21
5–3–13	6/17/21
5–3–14	6/17/21
5–3–15	6/17/21
5–3–16	6/17/21
5–3–17	6/17/21
5–3–18	6/17/21
5–3–19	6/17/21
5–3–20	6/17/21
5–3–21	6/17/21
5–3–22	6/17/21
5–3–23	6/17/21
5–3–24	6/17/21
5–3–25	6/17/21
5–3–26	6/17/21
5–3–27	6/17/21
5–3–28	6/17/21

Section 4. Arrival Procedures

PAGE	DATE
5–4–1	6/17/21
5–4–2	6/17/21
5–4–3	6/17/21
5–4–4	6/17/21
5–4–5	6/17/21
5–4–6	6/17/21
5–4–7	6/17/21
5–4–8	6/17/21
5–4–9	6/17/21
5–4–10	6/17/21
5–4–11	6/17/21
5–4–12	6/17/21
5–4–13	6/17/21
5–4–14	6/17/21
5–4–15	6/17/21
5–4–16	6/17/21
5–4–17	12/2/21
5–4–18	6/17/21
5–4–19	6/17/21
5–4–20	6/17/21
5–4–21	6/17/21
5–4–22	6/17/21
5–4–23	6/17/21
5–4–24	6/17/21
5–4–25	12/2/21
5–4–26	12/2/21
5–4–27	12/2/21
5–4–28	12/2/21
5–4–29	12/2/21
5–4–30	12/2/21
5–4–31	12/2/21
5–4–32	12/2/21
5–4–33	12/2/21
5–4–34	12/2/21
5–4–35	12/2/21
5–4–36	12/2/21
5–4–37	12/2/21
5–4–38	12/2/21
5–4–39	12/2/21

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
5−4−40	12/2/21
5−4−41	12/2/21
5−4−42	12/2/21
5−4−43	12/2/21
5−4−44	12/2/21
5−4−45	12/2/21
5−4−46	12/2/21
5−4−47	12/2/21
5−4−48	12/2/21
5−4−49	12/2/21
5−4−50	12/2/21
5−4−51	12/2/21
5−4−52	12/2/21
5−4−53	12/2/21
5−4−54	12/2/21
5−4−55	12/2/21
5−4−56	12/2/21
5−4−57	12/2/21
5−4−58	12/2/21
5−4−59	12/2/21
5−4−60	12/2/21
5−4−61	12/2/21
5−4−62	12/2/21
5−4−63	12/2/21

Section 5. Pilot/Controller Roles and Responsibilities

PAGE	DATE
5−5−1	12/2/21
5−5−2	12/2/21
5−5−3	12/2/21
5−5−4	12/2/21
5−5−5	12/2/21
5−5−6	12/2/21
5−5−7	12/2/21
5−5−8	12/2/21
5−5−9	12/2/21

Section 6. National Security and Interception Procedures

PAGE	DATE
5−6−1	6/17/21
5−6−2	6/17/21
5−6−3	6/17/21
5−6−4	6/17/21
5−6−5	6/17/21
5−6−6	12/2/21
5−6−7	12/2/21
5−6−8	12/2/21
5−6−9	12/2/21
5−6−10	12/2/21
5−6−11	12/2/21
5−6−12	6/17/21
5−6−13	6/17/21
5−6−14	6/17/21

Chapter 6. Emergency Procedures

Section 1. General

PAGE	DATE
6−1−1	6/17/21

Section 2. Emergency Services Available to Pilots

PAGE	DATE
6−2−1	6/17/21
6−2−2	6/17/21
6−2−3	6/17/21
6−2−4	6/17/21
6−2−5	6/17/21
6−2−6	6/17/21
6−2−7	6/17/21
6−2−8	6/17/21
6−2−9	6/17/21
6−2−10	6/17/21
6−2−11	6/17/21

Section 3. Distress and Urgency Procedures

PAGE	DATE
6−3−1	6/17/21
6−3−2	6/17/21
6−3−3	6/17/21
6−3−4	6/17/21
6−3−5	6/17/21
6−3−6	6/17/21
6−3−7	6/17/21

Section 4. Two−way Radio Communications Failure

PAGE	DATE
6−4−1	6/17/21
6−4−2	6/17/21

Section 5. Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting Communications

PAGE	DATE
6−5−1	6/17/21
6−5−2	6/17/21

Chapter 7. Safety of Flight

Section 1. Meteorology

PAGE	DATE
7−1−1	6/17/21
7−1−2	6/17/21
7−1−3	6/17/21
7−1−4	6/17/21
7−1−5	6/17/21
7−1−6	6/17/21
7−1−7	6/17/21
7−1−8	12/2/21
7−1−9	6/17/21
7−1−10	6/17/21
7−1−11	6/17/21
7−1−12	6/17/21
7−1−13	6/17/21
7−1−14	6/17/21
7−1−15	6/17/21
7−1−16	6/17/21
7−1−17	12/2/21
7−1−18	6/17/21
7−1−19	6/17/21
7−1−20	12/2/21
7−1−21	6/17/21
7−1−22	6/17/21
7−1−23	6/17/21
7−1−24	6/17/21
7−1−25	6/17/21
7−1−26	6/17/21
7−1−27	6/17/21
7−1−28	6/17/21
7−1−29	6/17/21
7−1−30	6/17/21
7−1−31	6/17/21
7−1−32	6/17/21
7−1−33	6/17/21
7−1−34	6/17/21
7−1−35	6/17/21
7−1−36	6/17/21
7−1−37	12/2/21
7−1−38	12/2/21
7−1−39	6/17/21
7−1−40	6/17/21
7−1−41	6/17/21
7−1−42	6/17/21
7−1−43	6/17/21
7−1−44	6/17/21
7−1−45	6/17/21
7−1−46	6/17/21
7−1−47	6/17/21

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE
7–1–48	12/2/21
7–1–49	6/17/21
7–1–50	12/2/21
7–1–51	12/2/21
7–1–52	6/17/21
7–1–53	6/17/21
7–1–54	12/2/21
7–1–55	12/2/21
7–1–56	12/2/21
7–1–57	12/2/21
7–1–58	12/2/21
7–1–59	6/17/21
7–1–60	6/17/21
7–1–61	6/17/21
7–1–62	6/17/21
7–1–63	6/17/21
7–1–64	6/17/21
7–1–65	6/17/21
7–1–66	6/17/21
7–1–67	6/17/21
7–1–68	6/17/21
7–1–69	6/17/21
7–1–70	6/17/21

Section 2. Barometric Altimeter Errors and Setting Procedures

PAGE	DATE
7–2–1	6/17/21
7–2–2	6/17/21
7–2–3	6/17/21

Section 3. Cold Temperature Barometric Altimeter Errors, Setting Procedures and Cold Temperature Airports (CTA)

PAGE	DATE
7–3–1	6/17/21
7–3–2	6/17/21
7–3–3	6/17/21
7–3–4	6/17/21
7–3–5	6/17/21
7–3–6	12/2/21
7–3–7	6/17/21

Section 4. Wake Turbulence

PAGE	DATE
7–4–1	6/17/21
7–4–2	6/17/21
7–4–3	6/17/21
7–4–4	6/17/21
7–4–5	6/17/21
7–4–6	6/17/21
7–4–7	6/17/21
7–4–8	6/17/21

Section 5. Bird Hazards and Flight Over National Refuges, Parks, and Forests

PAGE	DATE
7–5–1	6/17/21
7–5–2	6/17/21

Section 6. Potential Flight Hazards

PAGE	DATE
7–6–1	12/2/21
7–6–2	6/17/21
7–6–3	6/17/21
7–6–4	6/17/21
7–6–5	6/17/21
7–6–6	6/17/21
7–6–7	6/17/21
7–6–8	6/17/21
7–6–9	6/17/21
7–6–10	12/2/21
7–6–11	6/17/21
7–6–12	6/17/21
7–6–13	6/17/21
7–6–14	6/17/21
7–6–15	12/2/21

Section 7. Safety, Accident, and Hazard Reports

PAGE	DATE
7–7–1	6/17/21
7–7–2	6/17/21
7–7–3	6/17/21

Chapter 8. Medical Facts for Pilots

Section 1. Fitness for Flight

PAGE	DATE
8–1–1	6/17/21
8–1–2	6/17/21
8–1–3	6/17/21
8–1–4	6/17/21
8–1–5	6/17/21
8–1–6	6/17/21
8–1–7	6/17/21
8–1–8	6/17/21
8–1–9	6/17/21

Chapter 9. Aeronautical Charts and Related Publications

Section 1. Types of Charts Available

PAGE	DATE
9–1–1	12/2/21
9–1–2	12/2/21
9–1–3	12/2/21
9–1–4	12/2/21
9–1–5	6/17/21
9–1–6	6/17/21
9–1–7	12/2/21
9–1–8	6/17/21
9–1–9	12/2/21
9–1–10	6/17/21
9–1–11	12/2/21
9–1–12	6/17/21
9–1–13	6/17/21

Chapter 10. Helicopter Operations

Section 1. Helicopter IFR Operations

PAGE	DATE
10–1–1	12/2/21
10–1–2	12/2/21
10–1–3	12/2/21
10–1–4	12/2/21
10–1–5	12/2/21
10–1–6	12/2/21
10–1–7	12/2/21

Section 2. Special Operations

PAGE	DATE
10–2–1	6/17/21
10–2–2	12/2/21
10–2–3	12/2/21
10–2–4	6/17/21
10–2–5	6/17/21
10–2–6	6/17/21
10–2–7	6/17/21
10–2–8	6/17/21
10–2–9	6/17/21
10–2–10	6/17/21
10–2–11	6/17/21
10–2–12	6/17/21
10–2–13	6/17/21
10–2–14	6/17/21
10–2–15	6/17/21
10–2–16	6/17/21
10–2–17	6/17/21

Checklist of Pages

PAGE	DATE

Appendices

PAGE	DATE
Appendix 1−1	6/17/21
Env	N/A
Appendix 2−1	6/17/21
Appendix 3−1	6/17/21
Appendix 3−2	6/17/21
Appendix 3−3	6/17/21
Appendix 3−4	6/17/21
Appendix 3−5	12/2/21
Appendix 4−1	12/2/21
Appendix 4−2	12/2/21
Appendix 4−3	12/2/21
Appendix 4−4	12/2/21
Appendix 4−5	12/2/21
Appendix 4−6	12/2/21
Appendix 4−7	12/2/21
Appendix 4−8	12/2/21
Appendix 4−9	12/2/21
Appendix 4−10	12/2/21
Appendix 4−11	12/2/21
Appendix 4−12	12/2/21
Appendix 4−13	12/2/21
Appendix 4−14	12/2/21
Appendix 4−15	12/2/21
Appendix 4−16	12/2/21
Appendix 4−17	12/2/21
Appendix 4−18	12/2/21
Appendix 4−19	12/2/21
Appendix 4−20	12/2/21
Appendix 4−21	12/2/21
Appendix 4−22	12/2/21
Appendix 4−23	12/2/21
Appendix 5−1	12/2/21
Appendix 5−2	12/2/21
Appendix 5−3	12/2/21

Pilot/Controller Glossary

PAGE	DATE
PCG−1	12/2/21
PCG−2	12/2/21
PCG A−1	12/2/21
PCG A−2	12/2/21
PCG A−3	12/2/21
PCG A−4	12/2/21
PCG A−5	12/2/21
PGC A−6	12/2/21
PCG A−7	12/2/21
PCG A−8	12/2/21
PCG A−9	12/2/21
PCG A−10	12/2/21
PCG A−11	12/2/21
PCG A−13	12/2/21
PCG A−12	12/2/21
PCG A−14	12/2/21
PCG A−15	12/2/21
PCG A−16	12/2/21
PCG A−17	12/2/21
PCG B−1	6/17/21
PCG B−2	6/17/21
PCG C−1	12/2/21
PCG C−2	12/2/21
PCG C−3	12/2/21
PCG C−4	12/2/21
PCG C−5	12/2/21
PCG C−6	12/2/21
PCG C−7	12/2/21
PCG C−8	12/2/21
PCG C−9	12/2/21
PCG C−10	12/2/21
PCG D−1	12/2/21
PCG D−2	12/2/21
PCG D−3	12/2/21
PCG D−4	12/2/21
PCG E−1	6/17/21
PCG E−2	12/2/21
PCG E−3	12/2/21
PCG F−1	12/2/21
PCG F−2	12/2/21
PCG F−3	12/2/21
PCG F−4	12/2/21
PCG F−5	12/2/21
PCG G−1	6/17/21
PCG G−2	12/2/21
PCG G−3	12/2/21
PCG H−1	6/17/21
PCG H−2	6/17/21
PCG H−3	6/17/21
PCG I−1	6/17/21
PCG I−2	6/17/21
PCG I−3	6/17/21
PCG I−4	6/17/21
PCG I−5	12/2/21
PCG I−6	12/2/21
PCG J−1	6/17/21
PCG K−1	6/17/21
PCG L−1	6/17/21
PCG L−2	6/17/21
PCG L−3	6/17/21
PCG M−1	6/17/21
PCG M−2	12/2/21
PCG M−3	12/2/21
PCG M−4	12/2/21
PCG M−5	12/2/21
PCG M−6	12/2/21
PCG N−1	12/2/21
PCG N−2	6/17/21
PCG N−3	12/2/21
PCG N−4	6/17/21
PCG O−1	6/17/21
PCG O−2	12/2/21
PCG O−3	12/2/21
PCG O−4	6/17/21
PCG P−1	12/2/21
PCG P−2	12/2/21
PCG P−3	12/2/21
PCG P−4	12/2/21
PCG P−5	12/2/21
PCG P−6	12/2/21
PCG Q−1	6/17/21
PCG R−1	12/2/21
PCG R−2	12/2/21
PCG R−3	12/2/21
PCG R−4	12/2/21
PCG R−5	12/2/21
PCG R−6	12/2/21
PCG R−7	12/2/21
PCG R−8	12/2/21
PCG S−1	6/17/21
PCG S−2	12/2/21
PCG S−3	12/2/21
PCG S−4	12/2/21
PCG S−5	12/2/21
PCG S−6	12/2/21
PCG S−7	12/2/21
PCG S−8	12/2/21
PCG S−9	12/2/21
PCG S−10	12/2/21
PCG T−1	6/17/21
PCG T−2	12/2/21
PCG T−3	12/2/21
PCG T−4	12/2/21
PCG T−5	12/2/21
PCG T−6	12/2/21
PCG T−7	12/2/21
PCG T−8	12/2/21
PCG T−9	12/2/21

Checklist of Pages

Table of Contents

Chapter 1. Air Navigation

Section 1. Navigation Aids

Section 2. Performance−Based Navigation (PBN) and Area Navigation (RNAV)

Chapter 2. Aeronautical Lighting and Other Airport Visual Aids

Section 1. Airport Lighting Aids

Section 4. Special Use Airspace

Section 5. Other Airspace Areas

Chapter 4. Air Traffic Control

Section 1. Services Available to Pilots

Section 2. Radio Communications Phraseology and Techniques

Section 3. Airport Operations

Section 4. ATC Clearances and Aircraft Separation

Section 5. Surveillance Systems

Section 6. Operational Policy/Procedures for Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) in the Domestic U.S., Alaska, Offshore Airspace and the San Juan FIR

Section 7. Operational Policy/Procedures for the Gulf of Mexico 50 NM Lateral Separation Initiative

Chapter 5. Air Traffic Procedures

Section 1. Preflight

Section 2. Departure Procedures

Section 3. En Route Procedures

Section 4. Arrival Procedures

Section 5. Pilot/Controller Roles and Responsibilities

Section 6. National Security and Interception Procedures

Chapter 6. Emergency Procedures

Section 1. General

Section 2. Emergency Services Available to Pilots

Section 3. Distress and Urgency Procedures

Section 4. Two-way Radio Communications Failure

Section 5. Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting Communications

Chapter 7. Safety of Flight

Section 1. Meteorology

Section 2. Barometric Altimeter Errors and Setting Procedures

Section 3. Cold Temperature Barometric Altimeter Errors, Setting Procedures and Cold Temperature Airports (CTA)

Section 4. Wake Turbulence

Section 5. Bird Hazards and Flight Over National Refuges, Parks, and Forests

Section 6. Potential Flight Hazards

Section 7. Safety, Accident, and Hazard Reports

Chapter 8. Medical Facts for Pilots

Section 1. Fitness for Flight

Chapter 9. Aeronautical Charts and Related Publications

Section 1. Types of Charts Available

Chapter 10. Helicopter Operations

Section 1. Helicopter IFR Operations

Section 2. Special Operations

Appendices

1−1−6. VHF Omni−directional Range/Tactical Air Navigation (VORTAC)

a. A VORTAC is a facility consisting of two components, VOR and TACAN, which provides three individual services: VOR azimuth, TACAN azimuth and TACAN distance (DME) at one site. Although consisting of more than one component, incorporating more than one operating frequency, and using more than one antenna system, a VORTAC is considered to be a unified navigational aid. Both components of a VORTAC are envisioned as operating simultaneously and providing the three services at all times.

b. Transmitted signals of VOR and TACAN are each identified by three−letter code transmission and are interlocked so that pilots using VOR azimuth with TACAN distance can be assured that both signals being received are definitely from the same ground station. The frequency channels of the VOR and the TACAN at each VORTAC facility are "paired" in accordance with a national plan to simplify airborne operation.

1−1−7. Distance Measuring Equipment (DME)

a. In the operation of DME, paired pulses at a specific spacing are sent out from the aircraft (this is the interrogation) and are received at the ground station. The ground station (transponder) then transmits paired pulses back to the aircraft at the same pulse spacing but on a different frequency. The time required for the round trip of this signal exchange is measured in the airborne DME unit and is translated into distance (nautical miles) from the aircraft to the ground station.

b. Operating on the line−of−sight principle, DME furnishes distance information with a very high degree of accuracy. Reliable signals may be received at distances up to 199 NM at line−of−sight altitude with an accuracy of better than $^1/_2$ mile or 3 percent of the distance, whichever is greater. Distance information received from DME equipment is SLANT RANGE distance and not actual horizontal distance.

c. Operating frequency range of a DME according to ICAO Annex 10 is from 960 MHz to 1215 MHz. Aircraft equipped with TACAN equipment will receive distance information from a VORTAC automatically, while aircraft equipped with VOR must have a separate DME airborne unit.

d. VOR/DME, VORTAC, Instrument Landing System (ILS)/DME, and localizer (LOC)/DME navigation facilities established by the FAA provide course and distance information from collocated components under a frequency pairing plan. Aircraft receiving equipment which provides for automatic DME selection assures reception of azimuth and distance information from a common source when designated VOR/DME, VORTAC, ILS/DME, and LOC/DME are selected.

e. Due to the limited number of available frequencies, assignment of paired frequencies is required for certain military noncollocated VOR and TACAN facilities which serve the same area but which may be separated by distances up to a few miles.

f. VOR/DME, VORTAC, ILS/DME, and LOC/DME facilities are identified by synchronized identifications which are transmitted on a time share basis. The VOR or localizer portion of the facility is identified by a coded tone modulated at 1020 Hz or a combination of code and voice. The TACAN or DME is identified by a coded tone modulated at 1350 Hz. The DME or TACAN coded identification is transmitted one time for each three or four times that the VOR or localizer coded identification is transmitted. When either the VOR or the DME is inoperative, it is important to recognize which identifier is retained for the operative facility. A single coded identification with a repetition interval of approximately 30 seconds indicates that the DME is operative.

g. Aircraft equipment which provides for automatic DME selection assures reception of azimuth and distance information from a common source when designated VOR/DME, VORTAC and ILS/DME navigation facilities are selected. Pilots are cautioned to disregard any distance displays from automatically selected DME equipment when VOR or ILS facilities, which do not have the DME feature installed, are being used for position determination.

1−1−8. NAVAID Service Volumes

a. The FAA publishes Standard Service Volumes (SSVs) for most NAVAIDs. The SSV is a three−dimensional volume within which the FAA ensures that a signal can be received with adequate signal strength and course quality, and is free from interference from other NAVAIDs on similar frequencies (e.g., co−channel or adjacent−channel interference). However, the SSV signal protection does not include potential blockage from terrain or obstructions. The SSV is principally intended for off−route navigation, such as proceeding direct to or from a VOR when not on a published instrument procedure or route. Navigation on published instrument procedures (e.g., approaches or departures) or routes (e.g., Victor routes) may use NAVAIDs outside of the SSV, when Extended Service Volume (ESV) is approved, since adequate signal strength, course quality, and freedom from interference are verified by the FAA prior to the publishing of the instrument procedure or route.

NOTE−
A conical area directly above the NAVAID is generally not usable for navigation.

b. A NAVAID will have service volume restrictions if it does not conform to signal strength and course quality standards throughout the published SSV. Service volume restrictions are first published in Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs) and then with the alphabetical listing of the NAVAIDs in the Chart Supplement. Service volume restrictions do not generally apply to published instrument procedures or routes unless published in NOTAMs for the affected instrument procedure or route.

c. VOR/DME/TACAN Standard Service Volumes (SSV).

1. The three original SSVs are shown in FIG 1−1−1 and are designated with three classes of NAVAIDs: Terminal (T), Low (L), and High (H). The usable distance of the NAVAID depends on the altitude Above the Transmitter Height (ATH) for each class. The lower edge of the usable distance when below 1,000 feet ATH is shown in FIG 1−1−2 for Terminal NAVAIDs and in FIG 1−1−3 for Low and High NAVAIDs.

FIG 1−1−1
Original Standard Service Volumes

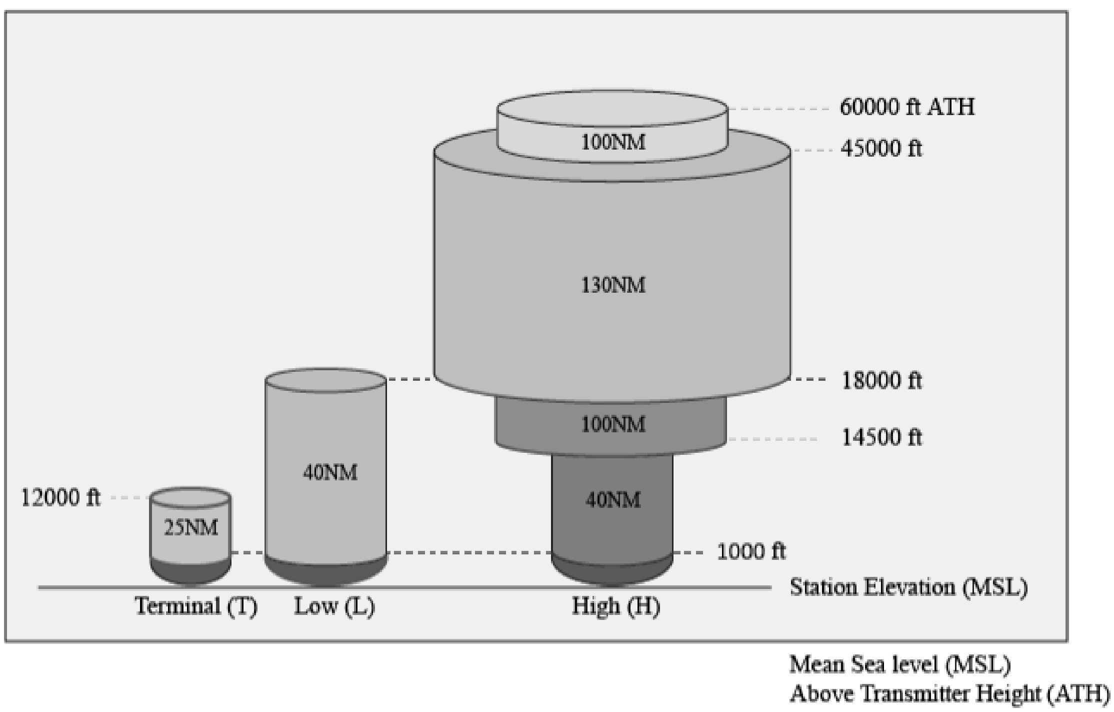
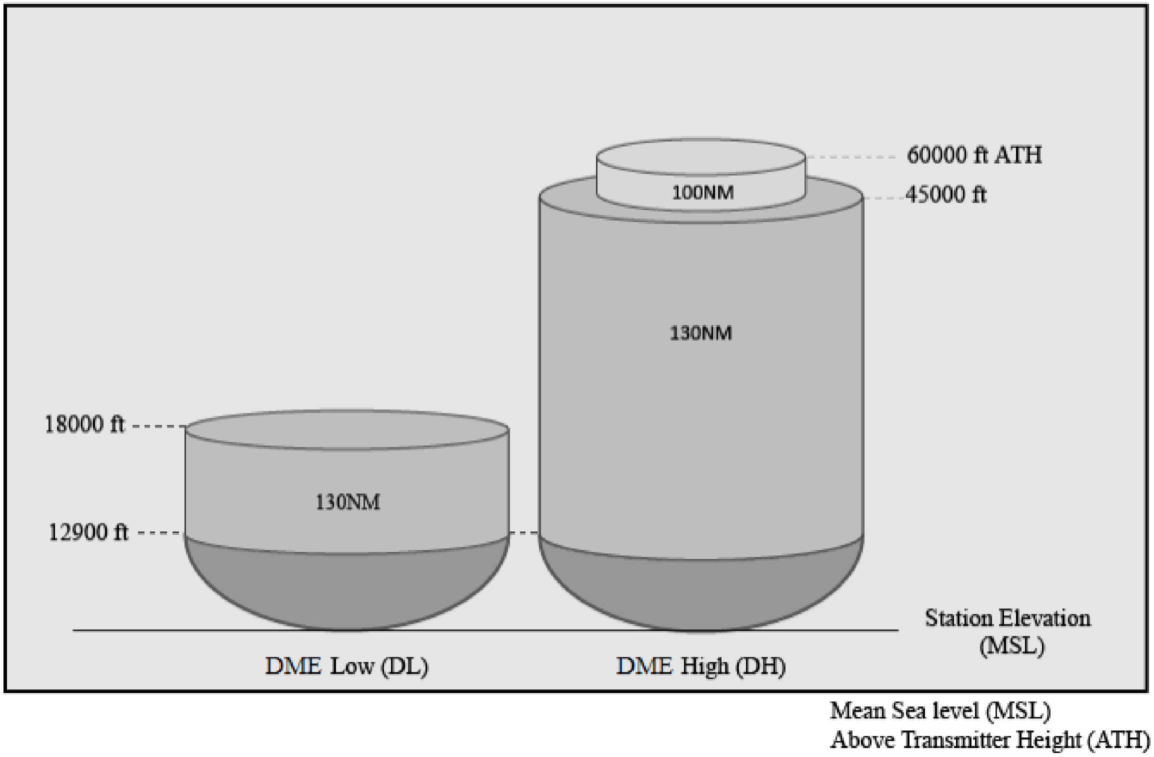


FIG 1−1−5
New DME Service Volumes



NOTE−
1. *In the past, NAVAIDs at one location typically all had the same SSV. For example, a VORTAC typically had a High (H) SSV for the VOR, the TACAN azimuth, and the TACAN DME, or a Low (L) or Terminal (T) SSV for all three. A VOR/DME typically had a High (H), Low (L), or Terminal (T) for both the VOR and the DME. A common SSV may no longer be the case at all locations. A VOR/DME, for example, could have an SSV of VL for the VOR and DH for the DME, or other combinations.*

2. *The TACAN azimuth will only be classified as T, L, or H.*

3. TBL 1−1−1 is a tabular summary of the VOR, DME, and TACAN NAVAID SSVs, not including altitudes below 1,000 feet ATH for VOR and TACAN Azimuth, and not including ranges for altitudes below 12,900 feet for TACAN and DME.

TBL 1-1-1
VOR/DME/TACAN Standard Service Volumes

SSV Designator	Altitude and Range Boundaries
T (Terminal)	From 1,000 feet ATH up to and including 12,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 25 NM.
L (Low Altitude)	From 1,000 feet ATH up to and including 18,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 40 NM.
H (High Altitude)	From 1,000 feet ATH up to and including 14,500 feet ATH at radial distances out to 40 NM. From 14,500 ATH up to and including 60,000 feet at radial distances out to 100 NM. From 18,000 feet ATH up to and including 45,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 130 NM.
VL (VOR Low)	From 1,000 feet ATH up to but not including 5,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 40 NM. From 5,000 feet ATH up to but not including 18,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 70 NM.
VH (VOR High)	From 1,000 feet ATH up to but not including 5,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 40 NM. From 5,000 feet ATH up to but not including 14,500 feet ATH at radial distances out to 70 NM. From 14,500 ATH up to and including 60,000 feet at radial distances out to 100 NM. From 18,000 feet ATH up to and including 45,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 130 NM.
DL (DME Low)	For altitudes up to 12,900 feet ATH at a radial distance corresponding to the LOS to the NAVAID. From 12,900 feet ATH up to but not including 18,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 130 NM
DH (DME High)	For altitudes up to 12,900 feet ATH at a radial distance corresponding to the LOS to the NAVAID. From 12,900 ATH up to and including 60,000 feet at radial distances out to 100 NM. From 12,900 feet ATH up to and including 45,000 feet ATH at radial distances out to 130 NM.

d. Nondirectional Radio Beacon (NDB) SSVs. NDBs are classified according to their intended use. The ranges of NDB service volumes are shown in TBL 1-1-2. The distance (radius) is the same at all altitudes for each class.

TBL 1-1-2
NDB Service Volumes

Class	Distance (Radius) (NM)
Compass Locator	15
MH	25
H	50*
HH	75
**Service ranges of individual facilities may be less than 50 nautical miles (NM). Restrictions to service volumes are first published as a Notice to Air Missions and then with the alphabetical listing of the NAVAID in the Chart Supplement U.S.*	

1-1-9. Instrument Landing System (ILS)

a. General

1. The ILS is designed to provide an approach path for exact alignment and descent of an aircraft on final approach to a runway.

2. The basic components of an ILS are the localizer, glide slope, and Outer Marker (OM) and, when installed for use with Category II or Category III instrument approach procedures, an Inner Marker (IM).

3. The system may be divided functionally into three parts:

(a) Guidance information: localizer, glide slope.

(b) Range information: marker beacon, DME.

(c) Visual information: approach lights, touchdown and centerline lights, runway lights.

4. The following means may be used to substitute for the OM:

(a) Compass locator; or

(b) Precision Approach Radar (PAR); or

(c) Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR); or

(d) Distance Measuring Equipment (DME), Very High Frequency Omni−directional Range (VOR), or Nondirectional beacon fixes authorized in the Standard Instrument Approach Procedure; or

(e) Very High Frequency Omni−directional Radio Range (VOR); or

(f) Nondirectional beacon fixes authorized in the Standard Instrument Approach Procedure; or

(g) A suitable RNAV system with Global Positioning System (GPS), capable of fix identification on a Standard Instrument Approach Procedure.

5. Where a complete ILS system is installed on each end of a runway; (i.e., the approach end of Runway 4 and the approach end of Runway 22) the ILS systems are not in service simultaneously.

b. Localizer

1. The localizer transmitter operates on one of 40 ILS channels within the frequency range of 108.10 to 111.95 MHz. Signals provide the pilot with course guidance to the runway centerline.

2. The approach course of the localizer is called the front course and is used with other functional parts, e.g., glide slope, marker beacons, etc. The localizer signal is transmitted at the far end of the runway. It is adjusted for a course width of (full scale fly−left to a full scale fly−right) of 700 feet at the runway threshold.

3. The course line along the extended centerline of a runway, in the opposite direction to the front course is called the back course.

CAUTION−
Unless the aircraft's ILS equipment includes reverse sensing capability, when flying inbound on the back course it is necessary to steer the aircraft in the direction opposite the needle deflection when making corrections from off−course to on−course. This "flying away from the needle" is also required when flying outbound on the front course of the localizer. Do not use back course signals for approach unless a back course approach procedure is published for that particular runway and the approach is authorized by ATC.

4. Identification is in International Morse Code and consists of a three−letter identifier preceded by the letter I (● ●) transmitted on the localizer frequency.

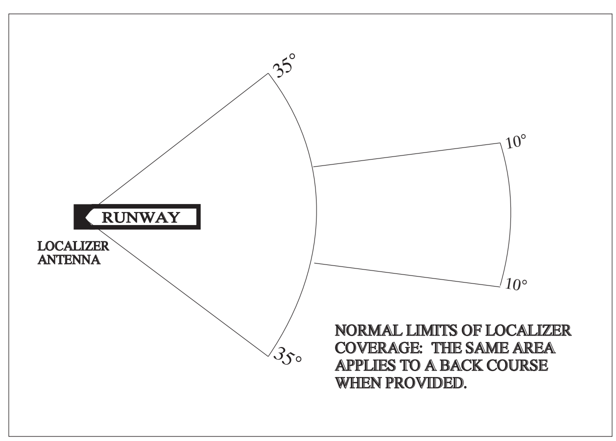
EXAMPLE−
I−DIA

5. The localizer provides course guidance throughout the descent path to the runway threshold from a distance of 18 NM from the antenna between an altitude of 1,000 feet above the highest terrain along the course line and 4,500 feet above the elevation of the antenna site. Proper off−course indications are provided throughout the following angular areas of the operational service volume:

(a) To 10 degrees either side of the course along a radius of 18 NM from the antenna; and

(b) From 10 to 35 degrees either side of the course along a radius of 10 NM. (See FIG 1−1−6.)

FIG 1−1−6
Limits of Localizer Coverage

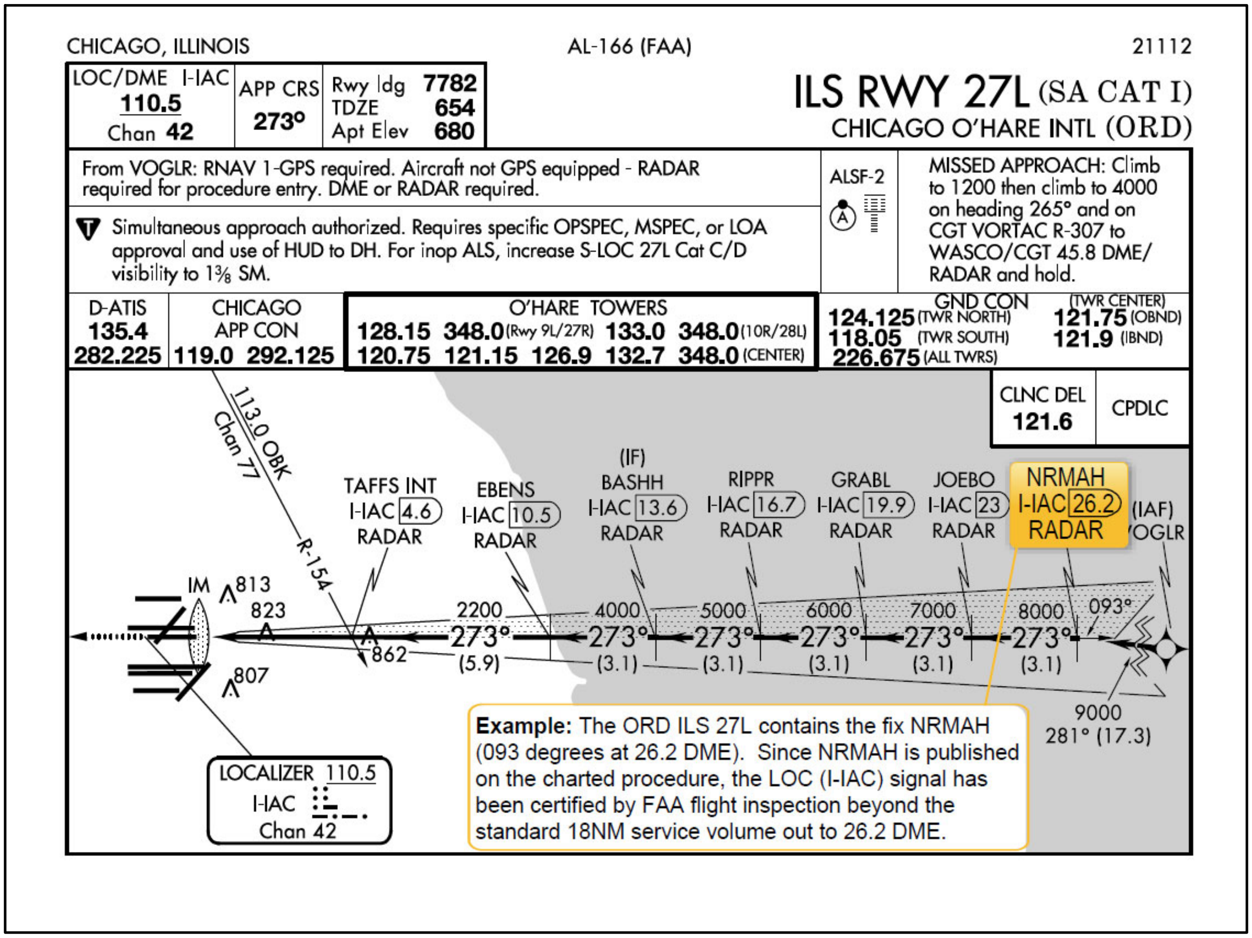


6. Unreliable signals may be received outside of these areas. ATC may clear aircraft on procedures beyond the service volume when the controller initiates the action or when the pilot requests, and radar monitoring is provided.

7. The areas described in paragraph 1−1−9 b5 and depicted in FIG 1−1−6 represent a Standard Service Volume (SSV) localizer. All charted procedures with localizer coverage beyond the 18 NM SSV have been through the approval process for Expanded Service Volume (ESV), and have been validated by flight inspection. (See FIG 1−1−7.)

FIG 1−1−7

ILS Expanded Service Volume



c. Localizer Type Directional Aid (LDA)

1. The LDA is of comparable use and accuracy to a localizer but is not part of a complete ILS. The LDA course usually provides a more precise approach course than the similar Simplified Directional Facility (SDF) installation, which may have a course width of 6 or 12 degrees.

2. The LDA is not aligned with the runway. Straight−in minimums may be published where alignment does not exceed 30 degrees between the course and runway. Circling minimums only are published where this alignment exceeds 30 degrees.

3. A very limited number of LDA approaches also incorporate a glideslope. These are annotated in the plan view of the instrument approach chart with a note, "LDA/Glideslope." These procedures fall under a newly defined category of approaches called Approach with Vertical Guidance (APV) described in paragraph 5−4−5, Instrument Approach Procedure Charts, subparagraph a7(b), Approach with Vertical Guidance (APV). LDA minima for with and without glideslope is provided and annotated on the minima lines of the approach chart as S−LDA/GS and S−LDA. Because the final approach course is not aligned with the runway centerline, additional

maneuvering will be required compared to an ILS approach.

d. Glide Slope/Glide Path

1. The UHF glide slope transmitter, operating on one of the 40 ILS channels within the frequency range 329.15 MHz, to 335.00 MHz radiates its signals in the direction of the localizer front course. The term "glide path" means that portion of the glide slope that intersects the localizer.

CAUTION–
False glide slope signals may exist in the area of the localizer back course approach which can cause the glide slope flag alarm to disappear and present unreliable glide slope information. Disregard all glide slope signal indications when making a localizer back course approach unless a glide slope is specified on the approach and landing chart.

2. The glide slope transmitter is located between 750 feet and 1,250 feet from the approach end of the runway (down the runway) and offset 250 to 650 feet from the runway centerline. It transmits a glide path beam 1.4 degrees wide (vertically). The signal provides descent information for navigation down to the lowest authorized decision height (DH) specified in the approved ILS approach procedure. The glidepath may not be suitable for navigation below the lowest authorized DH and any reference to glidepath indications below that height must be supplemented by visual reference to the runway environment. Glidepaths with no published DH are usable to runway threshold.

3. The glide path projection angle is normally adjusted to 3 degrees above horizontal so that it intersects the MM at about 200 feet and the OM at about 1,400 feet above the runway elevation. The glide slope is normally usable to the distance of 10 NM. However, at some locations, the glide slope has been certified for an extended service volume which exceeds 10 NM.

4. Pilots must be alert when approaching the glidepath interception. False courses and reverse sensing will occur at angles considerably greater than the published path.

5. Make every effort to remain on the indicated glide path.

CAUTION–
Avoid flying below the glide path to assure obstacle/terrain clearance is maintained.

6. The published glide slope threshold crossing height (TCH) DOES NOT represent the height of the actual glide path on–course indication above the runway threshold. It is used as a reference for planning purposes which represents the height above the runway threshold that an aircraft's glide slope antenna should be, if that aircraft remains on a trajectory formed by the four–mile–to–middle marker glidepath segment.

7. Pilots must be aware of the vertical height between the aircraft's glide slope antenna and the main gear in the landing configuration and, at the DH, plan to adjust the descent angle accordingly if the published TCH indicates the wheel crossing height over the runway threshold may not be satisfactory. Tests indicate a comfortable wheel crossing height is approximately 20 to 30 feet, depending on the type of aircraft.

NOTE–
The TCH for a runway is established based on several factors including the largest aircraft category that normally uses the runway, how airport layout affects the glide slope antenna placement, and terrain. A higher than optimum TCH, with the same glide path angle, may cause the aircraft to touch down further from the threshold if the trajectory of the approach is maintained until the flare. Pilots should consider the effect of a high TCH on the runway available for stopping the aircraft.

e. Distance Measuring Equipment (DME)

1. When installed with the ILS and specified in the approach procedure, DME may be used:

(a) In lieu of the OM;

(b) As a back course (BC) final approach fix (FAF); and

(c) To establish other fixes on the localizer course.

2. In some cases, DME from a separate facility may be used within Terminal Instrument Procedures (TERPS) limitations:

(a) To provide ARC initial approach segments;

(b) As a FAF for BC approaches; and

(c) As a substitute for the OM.

f. Marker Beacon

1. ILS marker beacons have a rated power output of 3 watts or less and an antenna array designed to produce an elliptical pattern with dimensions, at 1,000 feet above the antenna, of approximately 2,400 feet in width and 4,200 feet in length. Airborne marker beacon receivers with a selective sensitivity feature should always be operated in the "low" sensitivity position for proper reception of ILS marker beacons.

2. ILS systems may have an associated OM. An MM is no longer required. Locations with a Category II ILS also have an Inner Marker (IM). Due to advances in both ground navigation equipment and airborne avionics, as well as the numerous means that may be used as a substitute for a marker beacon, the current requirements for the use of marker beacons are:

(a) An OM or suitable substitute identifies the Final Approach Fix (FAF) for nonprecision approach (NPA) operations (for example, localizer only); and

(b) The MM indicates a position approximately 3,500 feet from the landing threshold. This is also the position where an aircraft on the glide path will be at an altitude of approximately 200 feet above the elevation of the touchdown zone. A MM is no longer operationally required. There are some MMs still in use, but there are no MMs being installed at new ILS sites by the FAA; and

(c) An IM, where installed, indicates the point at which an aircraft is at decision height on the glide path during a Category II ILS approach. An IM is only required for CAT II operations that do not have a published radio altitude (RA) minimum.

TBL 1−1−3

Marker Passage Indications

Marker	Code	Light
OM	− − −	BLUE
MM	• − • −	AMBER
IM	• • • •	WHITE
BC	• • • •	WHITE

3. A back course marker normally indicates the ILS back course final approach fix where approach descent is commenced.

g. Compass Locator

1. Compass locator transmitters are often situated at the MM and OM sites. The transmitters have a power of less than 25 watts, a range of at least 15 miles and operate between 190 and 535 kHz. At some locations, higher powered radio beacons, up to 400 watts, are used as OM compass locators.

2. Compass locators transmit two letter identification groups. The outer locator transmits the first two letters of the localizer identification group, and the middle locator transmits the last two letters of the localizer identification group.

h. ILS Frequency (See TBL 1−1−4.)

TBL 1−1−4

Frequency Pairs Allocated for ILS

Localizer MHz	Glide Slope
108.10	334.70
108.15	334.55
108.3	334.10
108.35	333.95
108.5	329.90
108.55	329.75
108.7	330.50
Localizer MHz	**Glide Slope**
108.75	330.35
108.9	329.30
108.95	329.15
109.1	331.40
109.15	331.25
109.3	332.00
109.35	331.85
109.50	332.60
109.55	332.45
109.70	333.20
109.75	333.05
109.90	333.80
109.95	333.65
110.1	334.40
110.15	334.25
110.3	335.00
110.35	334.85
110.5	329.60
110.55	329.45
110.70	330.20
110.75	330.05
110.90	330.80
110.95	330.65
111.10	331.70
111.15	331.55
111.30	332.30
111.35	332.15
111.50	332.9
111.55	332.75
111.70	333.5

111.75	333.35
111.90	331.1
111.95	330.95

i. ILS Minimums

1. The lowest authorized ILS minimums, with all required ground and airborne systems components operative, are:

(a) Category I. Decision Height (DH) 200 feet and Runway Visual Range (RVR) 2,400 feet (with touchdown zone and centerline lighting, RVR 1,800 feet), or (with Autopilot or FD or HUD, RVR 1,800 feet);

(b) Special Authorization Category I. DH 150 feet and Runway Visual Range (RVR) 1,400 feet, HUD to DH;

(c) Category II. DH 100 feet and RVR 1,200 feet (with autoland or HUD to touchdown and noted on authorization, RVR 1,000 feet);

(d) Special Authorization Category II with Reduced Lighting. DH 100 feet and RVR 1,200 feet with autoland or HUD to touchdown and noted on authorization (touchdown zone, centerline lighting, and ALSF−2 are not required);

(e) Category IIIa. No DH or DH below 100 feet and RVR not less than 700 feet;

(f) Category IIIb. No DH or DH below 50 feet and RVR less than 700 feet but not less than 150 feet; and

(g) Category IIIc. No DH and no RVR limitation.

NOTE−
Special authorization and equipment required for Categories II and III.

j. Inoperative ILS Components

1. Inoperative localizer. When the localizer fails, an ILS approach is not authorized.

2. Inoperative glide slope. When the glide slope fails, the ILS reverts to a non−precision localizer approach.

REFERENCE−
See the inoperative component table in the U.S. Government Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP), for adjustments to minimums due to inoperative airborne or ground system equipment.

k. ILS Course Distortion

1. All pilots should be aware that disturbances to ILS localizer and glide slope courses may occur when surface vehicles or aircraft are operated near the localizer or glide slope antennas. Most ILS installations are subject to signal interference by either surface vehicles, aircraft or both. ILS CRITICAL AREAS are established near each localizer and glide slope antenna.

2. ATC issues control instructions to avoid interfering operations within ILS critical areas at controlled airports during the hours the Airport Traffic Control Tower (ATCT) is in operation as follows:

(a) Weather Conditions. Official weather observation is a ceiling of less than 800 feet and/or visibility 2 miles.

(1) Localizer Critical Area. Except for aircraft that land, exit a runway, depart, or execute a missed approach, vehicles and aircraft are not authorized in or over the critical area when an arriving aircraft is inside the outer marker (OM) or the fix used in lieu of the OM. Additionally, whenever the official weather observation is a ceiling of less than 200 feet or RVR less than 2,000 feet, do not authorize vehicles or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the MM, or in the absence of a MM, ½ mile final.

(2) Glide Slope Critical Area. Do not authorize vehicles or aircraft operations in or over the area when an arriving aircraft is inside the ILS outer marker (OM), or the fix used in lieu of the OM, unless the arriving aircraft has reported the runway in sight and is circling or side−stepping to land on another runway.

(b) Weather Conditions. At or above ceiling 800 feet and/or visibility 2 miles.

(1) No critical area protective action is provided under these conditions.

(2) A flight crew, under these conditions, should advise the tower that it will conduct an AUTOLAND or COUPLED approach.

EXAMPLE−
Denver Tower, United 1153, Request Autoland/Coupled Approach (runway)
ATC replies with:
United 1153, Denver Tower, Roger, Critical Areas not protected.

3. Aircraft holding below 5,000 feet between the outer marker and the airport may cause localizer signal variations for aircraft conducting the ILS approach. Accordingly, such holding is not authorized when weather or visibility conditions are less than ceiling 800 feet and/or visibility 2 miles.

4. Pilots are cautioned that vehicular traffic not subject to ATC may cause momentary deviation to ILS course or glide slope signals. Also, critical areas are not protected at uncontrolled airports or at airports with an operating control tower when weather or visibility conditions are above those requiring protective measures. Aircraft conducting coupled or autoland operations should be especially alert in monitoring automatic flight control systems. (See FIG 1−1−8.)

NOTE−
Unless otherwise coordinated through Flight Standards, ILS signals to Category I runways are not flight inspected below the point that is 100 feet less than the decision altitude (DA). Guidance signal anomalies may be encountered below this altitude.

1−1−10. Simplified Directional Facility (SDF)

a. The SDF provides a final approach course similar to that of the ILS localizer. It does not provide glide slope information. A clear understanding of the ILS localizer and the additional factors listed below completely describe the operational characteristics and use of the SDF.

b. The SDF transmits signals within the range of 108.10 to 111.95 MHz.

c. The approach techniques and procedures used in an SDF instrument approach are essentially the same as those employed in executing a standard localizer approach except the SDF course may not be aligned with the runway and the course may be wider, resulting in less precision.

d. Usable off−course indications are limited to 35 degrees either side of the course centerline. Instrument indications received beyond 35 degrees should be disregarded.

e. The SDF antenna may be offset from the runway centerline. Because of this, the angle of convergence between the final approach course and the runway bearing should be determined by reference to the instrument approach procedure chart. This angle is generally not more than 3 degrees. However, it should be noted that inasmuch as the approach course originates at the antenna site, an approach which is continued beyond the runway threshold will lead the aircraft to the SDF offset position rather than along the runway centerline.

f. The SDF signal is fixed at either 6 degrees or 12 degrees as necessary to provide maximum flyability and optimum course quality.

g. Identification consists of a three−letter identifier transmitted in Morse Code on the SDF frequency. The appropriate instrument approach chart will indicate the identifier used at a particular airport.

d. Pilots are encouraged to submit detailed reports of NAVAID or GPS anomaly as soon as practical. Pilot reports of navigation error events should contain the following information:

1. Date and time the anomaly was observed, and NAVAID ID (or GPS).

2. Location of the aircraft at the time the anomaly started and ended (e.g., latitude/longitude or bearing/distance from a reference point),

3. Heading, altitude, type of aircraft (make/ model/call sign),

4. Type of avionics/receivers in use (e.g., make/model/software series or version),

5. Number of satellites being tracked, if applicable,

6. Description of the position/navigation/timing anomaly observed, and duration of the event,

7. Consequences/operational impact(s) of the NAVAID or GPS anomaly,

8. Actions taken to mitigate the anomaly and/or remedy provided by the ATC facility,

9. Post flight pilot/maintenance actions taken.

e. Pilots operating an aircraft in controlled airspace under IFR shall comply with CFR § 91.187 and promptly report as soon as practical to ATC any malfunctions of navigational equipment occurring in flight; pilots should submit initial reports:

1. Immediately, by radio to the controlling ATC facility or FSS.

2. By telephone to the nearest ATC facility controlling the airspace where the disruption was experienced.

3. Additionally, GPS problems should be reported, post flight, by Internet via the GPS Anomaly Reporting Form at http://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/nas/gps_reports/.

f. To minimize ATC workload, GPS anomalies associated with known testing NOTAMs should NOT be reported in−flight to ATC in detail; EXCEPT when:

1. GPS degradation is experienced outside the NOTAMed area,

2. Pilot observes any unexpected consequences (e.g., equipment failure, suspected spoofing, failure of unexpected aircraft systems, such as TAWS).

1−1−14. LORAN

NOTE−
In accordance with the 2010 DHS Appropriations Act, the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG) terminated the transmission of all U.S. LORAN−C signals on 08 Feb 2010. The USCG also terminated the transmission of the Russian American signals on 01 Aug 2010, and the Canadian LORAN−C signals on 03 Aug 2010. For more information, visit http://www.navcen.uscg.gov. Operators should also note that TSO−C60b, AIRBORNE AREA NAVIGATION EQUIPMENT USING LORAN−C INPUTS, has been canceled by the FAA.

1−1−15. Inertial Reference Unit (IRU), Inertial Navigation System (INS), and Attitude Heading Reference System (AHRS)

a. IRUs are self−contained systems comprised of gyros and accelerometers that provide aircraft attitude (pitch, roll, and heading), position, and velocity information in response to signals resulting from inertial effects on system components. Once aligned with a known position, IRUs continuously calculate position and velocity. IRU position accuracy decays with time. This degradation is known as "drift."

b. INSs combine the components of an IRU with an internal navigation computer. By programming a series of waypoints, these systems will navigate along a predetermined track.

c. AHRSs are electronic devices that provide attitude information to aircraft systems such as weather radar and autopilot, but do not directly compute position information.

d. Aircraft equipped with slaved compass systems may be susceptible to heading errors caused by exposure to magnetic field disturbances (flux fields) found in materials that are commonly located on the surface or buried under taxiways and ramps. These materials generate a magnetic flux field that can be sensed by the aircraft's compass system flux detector or "gate," which can cause the aircraft's system to align with the material's magnetic field rather than the earth's natural magnetic field. The system's erroneous heading may not self-correct. Prior to take off pilots should be aware that a heading misalignment may have occurred during taxi. Pilots are encouraged to follow the manufacturer's or other appropriate procedures to correct possible heading misalignment before take off is commenced.

1−1−16. Doppler Radar

Doppler Radar is a semiautomatic self−contained dead reckoning navigation system (radar sensor plus computer) which is not continuously dependent on information derived from ground based or external aids. The system employs radar signals to detect and measure ground speed and drift angle, using the aircraft compass system as its directional reference. Doppler is less accurate than INS, however, and the use of an external reference is required for periodic updates if acceptable position accuracy is to be achieved on long range flights.

1−1−17. Global Positioning System (GPS)

a. System Overview

1. System Description. The Global Positioning System is a space-based radio navigation system used to determine precise position anywhere in the world. The 24 satellite constellation is designed to ensure at least five satellites are always visible to a user worldwide. A minimum of four satellites is necessary for receivers to establish an accurate three−dimensional position. The receiver uses data from satellites above the mask angle (the lowest angle above the horizon at which a receiver can use a satellite). The Department of Defense (DOD) is responsible for operating the GPS satellite constellation and monitors the GPS satellites to ensure proper operation. Each satellite's orbital parameters (ephemeris data) are sent to each satellite for broadcast as part of the data message embedded in the GPS signal. The GPS coordinate system is the Cartesian earth−centered, earth−fixed coordinates as specified in the World Geodetic System 1984 (WGS−84).

2. System Availability and Reliability.

(a) The status of GPS satellites is broadcast as part of the data message transmitted by the GPS satellites. GPS status information is also available by means of the U.S. Coast Guard navigation information service: (703) 313−5907, Internet: **http://www.navcen.uscg.gov/**. Additionally, satellite status is available through the Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) system.

(b) GNSS operational status depends on the type of equipment being used. For GPS−only equipment TSO−C129 or TSO-C196(), the operational status of non−precision approach capability for flight planning purposes is provided through a prediction program that is embedded in the receiver or provided separately.

3. Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM). RAIM is the capability of a GPS receiver to perform integrity monitoring on itself by ensuring available satellite signals meet the integrity requirements for a given phase of flight. Without RAIM, the pilot has no assurance of the GPS position integrity. RAIM provides immediate feedback to the pilot. This fault detection is critical for performance-based navigation (PBN)(see Paragraph 1−2−1, Performance−Based Navigation (PBN) and Area Navigation (RNAV), for an introduction to PBN), because delays of up to two hours can occur before an erroneous satellite transmission is detected and corrected by the satellite control segment.

(a) In order for RAIM to determine if a satellite is providing corrupted information, at least one satellite, in addition to those required for navigation, must be in view for the receiver to perform the RAIM function. RAIM requires a minimum of 5 satellites, or 4 satellites and barometric altimeter input (baro−aiding), to detect an integrity anomaly. Baro−aiding is a method of augmenting the GPS integrity solution by using a non-satellite input source in lieu of the fifth satellite. Some GPS receivers also have a RAIM capability, called fault detection and exclusion (FDE), that excludes a failed satellite from the position solution; GPS receivers capable of FDE require 6 satellites or 5 satellites with baro−aiding. This allows the GPS receiver to isolate the corrupt satellite signal, remove it from the position solution, and still provide an integrity-assured position. To ensure that baro−aiding is available, enter the current altimeter setting into the receiver as described in the operating manual. Do not use the GPS derived altitude due to the large GPS vertical errors that will make the integrity monitoring function invalid.

(b) There are generally two types of RAIM fault messages. The first type of message indicates that there are not enough satellites available to provide RAIM integrity monitoring. The GPS navigation solution may be acceptable, but the integrity of the solution cannot be determined. The navigation is required when the GPS RAIM capability is lost.

(3) Procedures must be established for use in the event that the loss of RAIM capability is predicted to occur. In situations where RAIM is predicted to be unavailable, the flight must rely on other approved navigation equipment, re-route to where RAIM is available, delay departure, or cancel the flight.

(4) The GPS operation must be conducted in accordance with the FAA−approved aircraft flight manual (AFM) or flight manual supplement. Flight crew members must be thoroughly familiar with the particular GPS equipment installed in the aircraft, the receiver operation manual, and the AFM or flight manual supplement. Operation, receiver presentation and capabilities of GPS equipment vary. Due to these differences, operation of GPS receivers of different brands, or even models of the same brand, under IFR should not be attempted without thorough operational knowledge. Most receivers have a built−in simulator mode, which allows the pilot to become familiar with operation prior to attempting operation in the aircraft.

(5) Aircraft navigating by IFR−approved GPS are considered to be performance−based navigation (PBN) aircraft and have special equipment suffixes. File the appropriate equipment suffix in accordance with Appendix 4, TBL 4−2, on the ATC flight plan. If GPS avionics become inoperative, the pilot should advise ATC and amend the equipment suffix.

(6) Prior to any GPS IFR operation, the pilot must review appropriate NOTAMs and aeronautical information. (See GPS NOTAMs/Aeronautical Information).

(b) Database Requirements. The onboard navigation data must be current and appropriate for the region of intended operation and should include the navigation aids, waypoints, and relevant coded terminal airspace procedures for the departure, arrival, and alternate airfields.

(1) Further database guidance for terminal and en route requirements may be found in AC 90-100, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations.

(2) Further database guidance on Required Navigation Performance (RNP) instrument approach operations, RNP terminal, and RNP en route requirements may be found in AC 90-105, Approval Guidance for RNP Operations and Barometric Vertical Navigation in the U.S. National Airspace System.

(3) All approach procedures to be flown must be retrievable from the current airborne navigation database supplied by the equipment manufacturer or other FAA−approved source. The system must be able to retrieve the procedure by name from the aircraft navigation database, not just as a manually entered series of waypoints. Manual entry of waypoints using latitude/longitude or place/bearing is not permitted for approach procedures.

(4) Prior to using a procedure or waypoint retrieved from the airborne navigation database, the pilot should verify the validity of the database. This verification should include the following preflight and inflight steps:

[a] Preflight:

[1] Determine the date of database issuance, and verify that the date/time of proposed use is before the expiration date/time.

[2] Verify that the database provider has not published a notice limiting the use of the specific waypoint or procedure.

[b] Inflight:

[1] Determine that the waypoints and transition names coincide with names found on the procedure chart. Do not use waypoints which do not exactly match the spelling shown on published procedure charts.

[2] Determine that the waypoints are logical in location, in the correct order, and their orientation to each other is as found on the procedure chart, both laterally and vertically.

NOTE−
There is no specific requirement to check each waypoint latitude and longitude, type of waypoint and/or altitude constraint, only the general relationship of waypoints in the procedure, or the logic of an individual waypoint's location.

[3] If the cursory check of procedure logic or individual waypoint location, specified in [b] above, indicates a potential error, do not use the retrieved procedure or waypoint until a verification of latitude and longitude, waypoint type, and altitude constraints indicate full conformity with the published data.

(5) Air carrier and commercial operators must meet the appropriate provisions of their approved operations specifications.

[a] During domestic operations for commerce or for hire, operators must have a second navigation system capable of reversion or contingency operations.

[b] Operators must have two independent navigation systems appropriate to the route to be flown, or one system that is suitable and a second, independent backup capability that allows the operator to proceed safely and land at a different airport, and the aircraft must have sufficient fuel (reference 14 CFR 121.349, 125.203, 129.17, and 135.165). These rules ensure the safety of the operation by preventing a single point of failure.

NOTE–
An aircraft approved for multi-sensor navigation and equipped with a single navigation system must maintain an ability to navigate or proceed safely in the event that any one component of the navigation system fails, including the flight management system (FMS). Retaining a FMS-independent VOR capability would satisfy this requirement.

[c] The requirements for a second system apply to the entire set of equipment needed to achieve the navigation capability, not just the individual components of the system such as the radio navigation receiver. For example, to use two RNAV systems (e.g., GPS and DME/DME/IRU) to comply with the requirements, the aircraft must be equipped with two independent radio navigation receivers and two independent navigation computers (e.g., flight management systems (FMS)). Alternatively, to comply with the requirements using a single RNAV system with an installed and operable VOR capability, the VOR capability must be independent of the FMS.

[d] To satisfy the requirement for two independent navigation systems, if the primary navigation system is GPS–based, the second system must be independent of GPS (for example, VOR or DME/DME/IRU). This allows continued navigation in case of failure of the GPS or WAAS services. Recognizing that GPS interference and test events resulting in the loss of GPS services have become more common, the FAA requires operators conducting IFR operations under 14 CFR 121.349, 125.203, 129.17 and 135.65 to retain a non-GPS navigation capability consisting of either DME/DME, IRU, or VOR for en route and terminal operations, and VOR and ILS for final approach. Since this system is to be used as a reversionary capability, single equipage is sufficient.

3. Oceanic, Domestic, En Route, and Terminal Area Operations

(a) Conduct GPS IFR operations in oceanic areas only when approved avionics systems are installed. TSO–C196() users and TSO–C129() GPS users authorized for Class A1, A2, B1, B2, C1, or C2 operations may use GPS in place of another approved means of long–range navigation, such as dual INS. (See TBL 1–1–5 and TBL 1–1–6.) Aircraft with a single installation GPS, meeting the above specifications, are authorized to operate on short oceanic routes requiring one means of long–range navigation (reference AC 20-138, Appendix 1).

(b) Conduct GPS domestic, en route, and terminal IFR operations only when approved avionics systems are installed. Pilots may use GPS via TSO–C129() authorized for Class A1, B1, B3, C1, or C3 operations GPS via TSO-C196(); or GPS/WAAS with either TSO-C145() or TSO-C146(). When using TSO-C129() or TSO-C196() receivers, the avionics necessary to receive all of the ground–based facilities appropriate for the route to the destination airport and any required alternate airport must be installed and operational. Ground–based facilities necessary for these routes must be operational.

(1) GPS en route IFR operations may be conducted in Alaska outside the operational service volume of ground–based navigation aids when a TSO–C145() or TSO–C146() GPS/wide area augmentation system (WAAS) system is installed and operating. WAAS is the U.S. version of a satellite-based augmentation system (SBAS).

[a] In Alaska, aircraft may operate on GNSS Q-routes with GPS (TSO-C129 () or TSO-C196 ()) equipment while the aircraft remains in Air Traffic Control (ATC) radar surveillance or with GPS/WAAS (TSO-C145 () or TSO-C146 ()) which does not require ATC radar surveillance.

[b] In Alaska, aircraft may only operate on GNSS T-routes with GPS/WAAS (TSO-C145 () or TSO-C146 ()) equipment.

(2) Ground−based navigation equipment is not required to be installed and operating for en route IFR operations when using GPS/WAAS navigation systems. All operators should ensure that an alternate means of navigation is available in the unlikely event the GPS/WAAS navigation system becomes inoperative.

(3) Q-routes and T-routes outside Alaska. Q-routes require system performance currently met by GPS, GPS/WAAS, or DME/DME/IRU RNAV systems that satisfy the criteria discussed in AC 90−100, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations. T-routes require GPS or GPS/WAAS equipment.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5−3−4 , Airways and Route Systems

(c) GPS IFR approach/departure operations can be conducted when approved avionics systems are installed and the following requirements are met:

(1) The aircraft is TSO−C145() or TSO−C146() or TSO−C196() or TSO−C129() in Class A1, B1, B3, C1, or C3; and

(2) The approach/departure must be retrievable from the current airborne navigation database in the navigation computer. The system must be able to retrieve the procedure by name from the aircraft navigation database. Manual entry of waypoints using latitude/longitude or place/bearing is not permitted for approach procedures.

(3) The authorization to fly instrument approaches/departures with GPS is limited to U.S. airspace.

(4) The use of GPS in any other airspace must be expressly authorized by the FAA Administrator.

(5) GPS instrument approach/departure operations outside the U.S. must be authorized by the appropriate sovereign authority.

4. Departures and Instrument Departure Procedures (DPs)

The GPS receiver must be set to terminal (±1 NM) CDI sensitivity and the navigation routes contained in the database in order to fly published IFR charted departures and DPs. Terminal RAIM should be automatically provided by the receiver. (Terminal RAIM for departure may not be available unless the waypoints are part of the active flight plan rather than proceeding direct to the first destination.) Certain segments of a DP may require some manual intervention by the pilot, especially when radar vectored to a course or required to intercept a specific course to a waypoint. The database may not contain all of the transitions or departures from all runways and some GPS receivers do not contain DPs in the database. It is necessary that helicopter procedures be flown at 70 knots or less since helicopter departure procedures and missed approaches use a 20:1 obstacle clearance surface (OCS), which is double the fixed−wing OCS, and turning areas are based on this speed as well.

5. GPS Instrument Approach Procedures

(a) GPS overlay approaches are designated non−precision instrument approach procedures that pilots are authorized to fly using GPS avionics. Localizer (LOC), localizer type directional aid (LDA), and simplified directional facility (SDF) procedures are not authorized. Overlay procedures are identified by the "name of the procedure" and "or GPS" (e.g., VOR/DME or GPS RWY 15) in the title. Authorized procedures must be retrievable from a current onboard navigation database. The navigation database may also enhance position orientation by displaying a map containing information on conventional NAVAID approaches. This approach information should not be confused with a GPS overlay approach (see the receiver operating manual, AFM, or AFM Supplement for details on how to identify these approaches in the navigation database).

NOTE−
Overlay approaches do not adhere to the design criteria described in Paragraph 5−4−5m, Area Navigation (RNAV) Instrument Approach Charts, for stand−alone GPS approaches. Overlay approach criteria is based on the design criteria used for ground−based NAVAID approaches.

(b) Stand−alone approach procedures specifically designed for GPS systems have replaced many of the original overlay approaches. All approaches that contain "GPS" in the title (e.g., "VOR or GPS RWY 24," "GPS RWY 24," or "RNAV (GPS) RWY 24") can be flown using GPS. GPS−equipped aircraft do not need underlying ground−based NAVAIDs or associated aircraft avionics to fly the approach. Monitoring the underlying approach with ground−based NAVAIDs is suggested when able. Existing overlay approaches may be requested using the GPS title; for example, the VOR or GPS RWY 24 may be requested as “GPS RWY 24.” Some GPS procedures have a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA) with an underlining RNAV approach.

(c) For flight planning purposes, TSO-C129() and TSO-C196()−equipped users (GPS users) whose navigation systems have fault detection and exclusion (FDE) capability, who perform a preflight RAIM prediction for the approach integrity at the airport where the RNAV (GPS) approach will be flown, and have proper knowledge and any required training and/or approval to conduct a GPS-based IAP, may file based on a GPS−based IAP at either the destination or the alternate airport, but not at both locations. At the alternate airport, pilots may plan for:

(1) Lateral navigation (LNAV) or circling minimum descent altitude (MDA);

(2) LNAV/vertical navigation (LNAV/VNAV) DA, if equipped with and using approved barometric vertical navigation (baro-VNAV) equipment;

(3) RNP 0.3 DA on an RNAV (RNP) IAP, if they are specifically authorized users using approved baro-VNAV equipment and the pilot has verified required navigation performance (RNP) availability through an approved prediction program.

(d) If the above conditions cannot be met, any required alternate airport must have an approved instrument approach procedure other than GPS−based that is anticipated to be operational and available at the estimated time of arrival, and which the aircraft is equipped to fly.

(e) Procedures for Accomplishing GPS Approaches

(1) An RNAV (GPS) procedure may be associated with a Terminal Arrival Area (TAA). The basic design of the RNAV procedure is the “T” design or a modification of the “T” (See Paragraph 5-4-5d, Terminal Arrival Area (TAA), for complete information).

(2) Pilots cleared by ATC for an RNAV (GPS) approach should fly the full approach from an Initial Approach Waypoint (IAWP) or feeder fix. Randomly joining an approach at an intermediate fix does not assure terrain clearance.

(3) When an approach has been loaded in the navigation system, GPS receivers will give an “arm” annunciation 30 NM straight line distance from the airport/heliport reference point. Pilots should arm the approach mode at this time if not already armed (some receivers arm automatically). Without arming, the receiver will not change from en route CDI and RAIM sensitivity of ±5 NM either side of centerline to ±1 NM terminal sensitivity. Where the IAWP is inside this 30 mile point, a CDI sensitivity change will occur once the approach mode is armed and the aircraft is inside 30 NM. Where the IAWP is beyond 30 NM from the airport/heliport reference point and the approach is armed, the CDI sensitivity will not change until the aircraft is within 30 miles of the airport/heliport reference point. Feeder route obstacle clearance is predicated on the receiver being in terminal (±1 NM) CDI sensitivity and RAIM within 30 NM of the airport/heliport reference point; therefore, the receiver should always be armed (if required) not later than the 30 NM annunciation.

(4) The pilot must be aware of what bank angle/turn rate the particular receiver uses to compute turn anticipation, and whether wind and airspeed are included in the receiver's calculations. This information should be in the receiver operating manual. Over or under banking the turn onto the final approach course may significantly delay getting on course and may result in high descent rates to achieve the next segment altitude.

(5) When within 2 NM of the Final Approach Waypoint (FAWP) with the approach mode armed, the approach mode will switch to active, which results in RAIM and CDI changing to approach sensitivity. Beginning 2 NM prior to the FAWP, the full scale CDI sensitivity will smoothly change from ±1 NM to ±0.3 NM at the FAWP. As sensitivity changes from ±1 NM to ±0.3 NM approaching the FAWP, with the CDI not centered, the corresponding increase in CDI displacement may give the impression that the aircraft is moving further away from the intended course even though it is on an acceptable intercept heading. Referencing the digital track displacement information (cross track error), if it is available in the approach mode, may help the pilot remain position oriented in this situation. Being established on the final approach course prior to the beginning of the sensitivity change at 2 NM will help prevent problems in interpreting the CDI display during ramp down. Therefore, requesting or accepting vectors which will cause the aircraft to intercept the final approach course within 2 NM of the FAWP is not recommended.

(6) When receiving vectors to final, most receiver operating manuals suggest placing the receiver in the non−sequencing mode on the FAWP and manually setting the course. This provides an extended final approach course in cases where the aircraft is vectored onto the final approach course outside of any existing segment which is aligned with the runway. Assigned altitudes must be maintained until established on a published segment of the approach. Required altitudes at waypoints outside the FAWP or stepdown fixes must be considered. Calculating the distance to the FAWP may be required in order to descend at the proper location.

(7) Overriding an automatically selected sensitivity during an approach will cancel the approach mode annunciation. If the approach mode is not armed by 2 NM prior to the FAWP, the approach mode will not become active at 2 NM prior to the FAWP, and the equipment will flag. In these conditions, the RAIM and CDI sensitivity will not ramp down, and the pilot should not descend to MDA, but fly to the MAWP and execute a missed approach. The approach active annunciator and/or the receiver should be checked to ensure the approach mode is active prior to the FAWP.

(8) Do not attempt to fly an approach unless the procedure in the onboard database is current and identified as "GPS" on the approach chart. The navigation database may contain information about non−overlay approach procedures that enhances position orientation generally by providing a map, while flying these approaches using conventional NAVAIDs. This approach information should not be confused with a GPS overlay approach (see the receiver operating manual, AFM, or AFM Supplement for details on how to identify these procedures in the navigation database). Flying point to point on the approach does not assure compliance with the published approach procedure. The proper RAIM sensitivity will not be available and the CDI sensitivity will not automatically change to ±0.3 NM. Manually setting CDI sensitivity does not automatically change the RAIM sensitivity on some receivers. Some existing non−precision approach procedures cannot be coded for use with GPS and will not be available as overlays.

(9) Pilots should pay particular attention to the exact operation of their GPS receivers for performing holding patterns and in the case of overlay approaches, operations such as procedure turns. These procedures may require manual intervention by the pilot to stop the sequencing of waypoints by the receiver and to resume automatic GPS navigation sequencing once the maneuver is complete. The same waypoint may appear in the route of flight more than once consecutively (for example, IAWP, FAWP, MAHWP on a procedure turn). Care must be exercised to ensure that the receiver is sequenced to the appropriate waypoint for the segment of the procedure being flown, especially if one or more fly−overs are skipped (for example, FAWP rather than IAWP if the procedure turn is not flown). The pilot may have to sequence past one or more fly−overs of the same waypoint in order to start GPS automatic sequencing at the proper place in the sequence of waypoints.

(10) Incorrect inputs into the GPS receiver are especially critical during approaches. In some cases, an incorrect entry can cause the receiver to leave the approach mode.

(11) A fix on an overlay approach identified by a DME fix will not be in the waypoint sequence on the GPS receiver unless there is a published name assigned to it. When a name is assigned, the along track distance (ATD) to the waypoint may be zero rather than the DME stated on the approach chart. The pilot should be alert for this on any overlay procedure where the original approach used DME.

(12) If a visual descent point (VDP) is published, it will not be included in the sequence of waypoints. Pilots are expected to use normal piloting techniques for beginning the visual descent, such as ATD.

(13) Unnamed stepdown fixes in the final approach segment may or may not be coded in the waypoint sequence of the aircraft's navigation database and must be identified using ATD. Stepdown fixes in the final approach segment of

RNAV (GPS) approaches are being named, in addition to being identified by ATD. However, GPS avionics may or may not accommodate waypoints between the FAF and MAP. Pilots must know the capabilities of their GPS equipment and continue to identify stepdown fixes using ATD when necessary.

(f) Missed Approach

(1) A GPS missed approach requires pilot action to sequence the receiver past the MAWP to the missed approach portion of the procedure. The pilot must be thoroughly familiar with the activation procedure for the particular GPS receiver installed in the aircraft and must initiate appropriate action after the MAWP. Activating the missed approach prior to the MAWP will cause CDI sensitivity to immediately change to terminal (±1NM) sensitivity and the receiver will continue to navigate to the MAWP. The receiver will not sequence past the MAWP. Turns should not begin prior to the MAWP. If the missed approach is not activated, the GPS receiver will display an extension of the inbound final approach course and the ATD will increase from the MAWP until it is manually sequenced after crossing the MAWP.

(2) Missed approach routings in which the first track is via a course rather than direct to the next waypoint require additional action by the pilot to set the course. Being familiar with all of the inputs required is especially critical during this phase of flight.

(g) Receiver Autonomous Integrity Monitoring (RAIM)

(1) RAIM outages may occur due to an insufficient number of satellites or due to unsuitable satellite geometry which causes the error in the position solution to become too large. Loss of satellite reception and RAIM warnings may occur due to aircraft dynamics (changes in pitch or bank angle). Antenna location on the aircraft, satellite position relative to the horizon, and aircraft attitude may affect reception of one or more satellites. Since the relative positions of the satellites are constantly changing, prior experience with the airport does not guarantee reception at all times, and RAIM availability should always be checked.

(2) Civilian pilots may obtain GPS RAIM availability information for nonprecision approach procedures by using a manufacturer−supplied RAIM prediction tool, or using the Service Availability Prediction Tool (SAPT) on the FAA en route and terminal RAIM prediction website. Pilots can also request GPS RAIM aeronautical information from a flight service station during preflight briefings. GPS RAIM aeronautical information can be obtained for a period of 3 hours (for example, if you are scheduled to arrive at 1215 hours, then the GPS RAIM information is available from 1100 to 1400 hours) or a 24−hour timeframe at a particular airport. FAA briefers will provide RAIM information for a period of 1 hour before to 1 hour after the ETA hour, unless a specific timeframe is requested by the pilot. If flying a published GPS departure, a RAIM prediction should also be requested for the departure airport.

(3) The military provides airfield specific GPS RAIM NOTAMs for nonprecision approach procedures at military airfields. The RAIM outages are issued as M−series NOTAMs and may be obtained for up to 24 hours from the time of request.

(4) Receiver manufacturers and/or database suppliers may supply "NOTAM" type information concerning database errors. Pilots should check these sources when available, to ensure that they have the most current information concerning their electronic database.

(5) If RAIM is not available, use another type of navigation and approach system; select another route or destination; or delay the trip until RAIM is predicted to be available on arrival. On longer flights, pilots should consider rechecking the RAIM prediction for the destination during the flight. This may provide an early indication that an unscheduled satellite outage has occurred since takeoff.

(6) If a RAIM failure/status annunciation occurs prior to the final approach waypoint (FAWP), the approach should not be completed since GPS no longer provides the required integrity. The receiver performs a RAIM prediction by 2 NM prior to the FAWP to ensure that RAIM is available as a condition for entering the approach mode. The pilot should ensure the receiver has sequenced from "Armed" to "Approach" prior to the FAWP (normally occurs 2 NM prior). Failure to sequence may be an indication of the detection of a satellite anomaly, failure to arm the receiver (if required), or other problems which preclude flying the approach.

(7) If the receiver does not sequence into the approach mode or a RAIM failure/status annunciation occurs prior to the FAWP, the pilot must not initiate the approach nor descend, but instead, proceed to the missed approach waypoint (MAWP) via the FAWP, perform a missed approach, and contact ATC as soon as practical. The GPS receiver may continue to operate after a RAIM flag/status annunciation appears, but the navigation information should be considered advisory only. Refer to the receiver operating manual for specific indications and instructions associated with loss of RAIM prior to the FAF.

(8) If the RAIM flag/status annunciation appears after the FAWP, the pilot should initiate a climb and execute the missed approach. The GPS receiver may continue to operate after a RAIM flag/status annunciation appears, but the navigation information should be considered advisory only. Refer to the receiver operating manual for operating mode information during a RAIM annunciation.

(h) Waypoints

(1) GPS receivers navigate from one defined point to another retrieved from the aircraft's onboard navigational database. These points are waypoints (5-letter pronounceable name), existing VHF intersections, DME fixes with 5–letter pronounceable names and 3-letter NAVAID IDs. Each waypoint is a geographical location defined by a latitude/longitude geographic coordinate. These 5–letter waypoints, VHF intersections, 5–letter pronounceable DME fixes and 3–letter NAVAID IDs are published on various FAA aeronautical navigation products (IFR Enroute Charts, VFR Charts, Terminal Procedures Publications, etc.).

(2) A Computer Navigation Fix (CNF) is also a point defined by a latitude/longitude coordinate and is required to support Performance–Based Navigation (PBN) operations. The GPS receiver uses CNFs in conjunction with waypoints to navigate from point to point. However, CNFs are not recognized by ATC. ATC does not maintain CNFs in their database and they do not use CNFs for any air traffic control purpose. CNFs may or may not be charted on FAA aeronautical navigation products, are listed in the chart legends, and are for advisory purposes only. Pilots are not to use CNFs for point to point navigation (proceed direct), filing a flight plan, or in aircraft/ATC communications. CNFs that do appear on aeronautical charts allow pilots increased situational awareness by identifying points in the aircraft database route of flight with points on the aeronautical chart. CNFs are random five-letter identifiers, not pronounceable like waypoints and placed in parenthesis. Eventually, all CNFs will begin with the letters "CF" followed by three consonants (for example, CFWBG). This five-letter identifier will be found next to an "x" on enroute charts and possibly on an approach chart. On instrument approach procedures (charts) in the terminal procedures publication, CNFs may represent unnamed DME fixes, beginning and ending points of DME arcs, and sensor (ground-based signal i.e., VOR, NDB, ILS) final approach fixes on GPS overlay approaches. These CNFs provide the GPS with points on the procedure that allow the overlay approach to mirror the ground-based sensor approach. These points should only be used by the GPS system for navigation and should not be used by pilots for any other purpose on the approach. The CNF concept has not been adopted or recognized by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO).

(3) GPS approaches use fly–over and fly–by waypoints to join route segments on an approach. Fly–by waypoints connect the two segments by allowing the aircraft to turn prior to the current waypoint in order to roll out on course to the next waypoint. This is known as turn anticipation and is compensated for in the airspace and terrain clearances. The missed approach waypoint (MAWP) will always be a fly–over waypoint. A holding waypoint will always be designed as a fly–over waypoint in the navigational database but may be charted as a fly–by event unless the holding waypoint is used for another purpose in the procedure and both events require the waypoint to be a fly–over event. Some waypoints may have dual use; for example, as a fly–by waypoint when used as an IF for a NoPT route and as a fly–over waypoint when the same waypoint is also used as an IAF/IF hold–in–lieu of PT. Since the waypoint can only be charted one way, when this situation occurs, the fly–by waypoint symbol will be charted in all uses of the waypoint.

(4) Unnamed waypoints for each airport will be uniquely identified in the database. Although the identifier may be used at different airports (for example, RW36 will be the identifier at each airport with a runway 36), the actual point, at each airport, is defined by a specific latitude/longitude coordinate.

(5) The runway threshold waypoint, normally the MAWP, may have a five−letter identifier (for example, SNEEZ) or be coded as RW## (for example, RW36, RW36L). MAWPs located at the runway threshold are being changed to the RW## identifier, while MAWPs not located at the threshold will have a five−letter identifier. This may cause the approach chart to differ from the aircraft database until all changes are complete. The runway threshold waypoint is also used as the center of the Minimum Safe Altitude (MSA) on most GPS approaches.

(i) Position Orientation.

Pilots should pay particular attention to position orientation while using GPS. Distance and track information are provided to the next active waypoint, not to a fixed navigation aid. Receivers may sequence when the pilot is not flying along an active route, such as when being vectored or deviating for weather, due to the proximity to another waypoint in the route. This can be prevented by placing the receiver in the non-sequencing mode. When the receiver is in the non-sequencing mode, bearing and distance are provided to the selected waypoint and the receiver will not sequence to the next waypoint in the route until placed back in the auto sequence mode or the pilot selects a different waypoint. The pilot may have to compute the ATD to stepdown fixes and other points on overlay approaches, due to the receiver showing ATD to the next waypoint rather than DME to the VOR or ILS ground station.

(j) Impact of Magnetic Variation on PBN Systems

(1) Differences may exist between PBN systems and the charted magnetic courses on ground−based NAVAID instrument flight procedures (IFP), enroute charts, approach charts, and Standard Instrument Departure/Standard Terminal Arrival (SID/STAR) charts. These differences are due to the magnetic variance used to calculate the magnetic course. Every leg of an instrument procedure is first computed along a desired ground track with reference to true north. A magnetic variation correction is then applied to the true course in order to calculate a magnetic course for publication. The type of procedure will determine what magnetic variation value is added to the true course. A ground−based NAVAID IFP applies the facility magnetic variation of record to the true course to get the charted magnetic course. Magnetic courses on PBN procedures are calculated two different ways. SID/STAR procedures use the airport magnetic variation of record, while IFR enroute charts use magnetic reference bearing. PBN systems make a correction to true north by adding a magnetic variation calculated with an algorithm based on aircraft position, or by adding the magnetic variation coded in their navigational database. This may result in the PBN system and the procedure designer using a different magnetic variation, which causes the magnetic course ***displayed*** by the PBN system and the magnetic course ***charted*** on the IFP plate to be different. It is important to understand, however, that PBN systems, (with the exception of VOR/DME RNAV equipment) navigate by reference to true north and display magnetic course only for pilot reference. As such, a ***properly functioning*** PBN system, containing a ***current and accurate navigational database***, should fly the correct ground track for any loaded instrument procedure, despite differences in displayed magnetic course that may be attributed to magnetic variation application. Should significant differences between the approach chart and the PBN system avionics' application of the navigation database arise, the published approach chart, supplemented by NOTAMs, holds precedence.

(2) The course into a waypoint may not always be 180 degrees different from the course leaving the previous waypoint, due to the PBN system avionics' computation of geodesic paths, distance between waypoints, and differences in magnetic variation application. Variations in distances may also occur since PBN system distance−to−waypoint values are ATDs computed to the next waypoint and the DME values published on underlying procedures are slant−range distances measured to the station. This difference increases with aircraft altitude and proximity to the NAVAID.

(k) GPS Familiarization

Pilots should practice GPS approaches in visual meteorological conditions (VMC) until thoroughly proficient with all aspects of their equipment (receiver and installation) prior to attempting flight in instrument meteorological conditions (IMC). Pilots should be proficient in the following areas:

(1) Using the receiver autonomous integrity monitoring (RAIM) prediction function;

(2) Inserting a DP into the flight plan, including setting terminal CDI sensitivity, if required, and the conditions under which terminal RAIM is available for departure;

(3) Programming the destination airport;

(4) Programming and flying the approaches (especially procedure turns and arcs);

(5) Changing to another approach after selecting an approach;

(6) Programming and flying "direct" missed approaches;

(7) Programming and flying "routed" missed approaches;

(8) Entering, flying, and exiting holding patterns, particularly on approaches with a second waypoint in the holding pattern;

(9) Programming and flying a "route" from a holding pattern;

(10) Programming and flying an approach with radar vectors to the intermediate segment;

(11) Indication of the actions required for RAIM failure both before and after the FAWP; and

(12) Programming a radial and distance from a VOR (often used in departure instructions).

TBL 1−1−5

GPS IFR Equipment Classes/Categories

TSO−C129						
Equipment Class	**RAIM**	**Int. Nav. Sys. to Prov. RAIM Equiv.**	**Oceanic**	**En Route**	**Terminal**	**Non−precision Approach Capable**
Class A − GPS sensor and navigation capability.						
A1	yes		yes	yes	yes	yes
A2	yes		yes	yes	yes	no
Class B − GPS sensor data to an integrated navigation system (i.e., FMS, multi−sensor navigation system, etc.).						
B1	yes		yes	yes	yes	yes
B2	yes		yes	yes	yes	no
B3		yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
B4		yes	yes	yes	yes	no
Class C − GPS sensor data to an integrated navigation system (as in Class B) which provides enhanced guidance to an autopilot, or flight director, to reduce flight tech. errors. Limited to 14 CFR Part 121 or equivalent criteria.						
C1	yes		yes	yes	yes	yes
C2	yes		yes	yes	yes	no
C3		yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
C4		yes	yes	yes	yes	no

TBL 1−1−6

GPS Approval Required/Authorized Use

Equipment Type[1]	Installation Approval Required	Operational Approval Required	IFR En Route[2]	IFR Terminal[2]	IFR Approach[3]	Oceanic Remote	In Lieu of ADF and/or DME[3]
Hand held[4]	X[5]						
VFR Panel Mount[4]	X						
IFR En Route and Terminal	X	X	X	X			X
IFR Oceanic/ Remote	X	X	X	X		X	X
IFR En Route, Terminal, and Approach	X	X	X	X	X		X

NOTE−
[1]*To determine equipment approvals and limitations, refer to the AFM, AFM supplements, or pilot guides.*
[2]*Requires verification of data for correctness if database is expired.*
[3]*Requires current database or verification that the procedure has not been amended since the expiration of the database.*
[4]*VFR and hand−held GPS systems are not authorized for IFR navigation, instrument approaches, or as a primary instrument flight reference. During IFR operations they may be considered only an aid to situational awareness.*
[5]*Hand−held receivers require no approval. However, any aircraft modification to support the hand−held receiver; i.e., installation of an external antenna or a permanent mounting bracket, does require approval.*

1−1−18. Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS)

a. General

1. The FAA developed the WAAS to improve the accuracy, integrity and availability of GPS signals. WAAS will allow GPS to be used, as the aviation navigation system, from takeoff through approach when it is complete. WAAS is a critical component of the FAA's strategic objective for a seamless satellite navigation system for civil aviation, improving capacity and safety.

2. The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) has defined Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPs) for satellite−based augmentation systems (SBAS) such as WAAS. India and Europe are building similar systems: EGNOS, the European Geostationary Navigation Overlay System; and India's GPS and Geo−Augmented Navigation (GAGAN) system. The merging of these systems will create an expansive navigation capability similar to GPS, but with greater accuracy, availability, and integrity.

3. Unlike traditional ground−based navigation aids, WAAS will cover a more extensive service area. Precisely surveyed wide−area reference stations (WRS) are linked to form the U.S. WAAS network. Signals from the GPS satellites are monitored by these WRSs to determine satellite clock and ephemeris corrections and to model the propagation effects of the ionosphere. Each station in the network relays the data to a wide−area master station (WMS) where the correction information is computed. A correction message is prepared and uplinked to a geostationary earth orbit satellite (GEO) via a GEO uplink subsystem (GUS) which is located at the ground earth station (GES). The message is then broadcast on the same frequency as GPS (L1, 1575.42 MHz) to WAAS receivers within the broadcast coverage area of the WAAS GEO.

4. In addition to providing the correction signal, the WAAS GEO provides an additional pseudorange measurement to the aircraft receiver, improving the availability of GPS by providing, in effect, an additional GPS satellite in view. The integrity of GPS is improved through real−time monitoring, and the accuracy is improved by providing differential corrections to reduce errors. The performance improvement is sufficient to enable approach procedures with GPS/WAAS glide paths (vertical guidance).

5. The FAA has completed installation of 3 GEO satellite links, 38 WRSs, 3 WMSs, 6 GES, and the required terrestrial communications to support the WAAS network including 2 operational control centers. Prior to the commissioning of the WAAS for public use, the FAA conducted a series of test and validation activities. Future dual frequency operations are planned.

6. GNSS navigation, including GPS and WAAS, is referenced to the WGS−84 coordinate system. It should only be used where the Aeronautical Information Publications (including electronic data and aeronautical charts) conform to WGS−84 or equivalent. Other countries' civil aviation authorities may impose additional limitations on the use of their SBAS systems.

b. Instrument Approach Capabilities

1. A class of approach procedures which provide vertical guidance, but which do not meet the ICAO Annex 10 requirements for precision approaches has been developed to support satellite navigation use for aviation applications worldwide. These procedures are not precision and are referred to as Approach with Vertical Guidance (APV), are defined in ICAO Annex 6, and include approaches such as the LNAV/VNAV and localizer performance with vertical guidance (LPV). These approaches provide vertical guidance, but do not meet the more stringent standards of a precision approach. Properly certified WAAS receivers will be able to fly to LPV minima and LNAV/VNAV minima, using a WAAS electronic glide path, which eliminates the errors that can be introduced by using Barometric altimetry.

2. LPV minima takes advantage of the high accuracy guidance and increased integrity provided by WAAS. This WAAS generated angular guidance allows the use of the same TERPS approach criteria used for ILS approaches. LPV minima may have a decision altitude as low as 200 feet height above touchdown with visibility minimums as low as $^{1}/_{2}$ mile, when the terrain and airport infrastructure support the lowest minima. LPV minima is published on the RNAV (GPS) approach charts (see paragraph 5−4−5, Instrument Approach Procedure Charts).

3. A different WAAS-based line of minima, called Localizer Performance (LP) is being added in locations where the terrain or obstructions do not allow publication of vertically guided LPV minima. LP takes advantage of the angular lateral guidance and smaller position errors provided by WAAS to provide a lateral only procedure similar to an ILS Localizer. LP procedures may provide lower minima than a LNAV procedure due to the narrower obstacle clearance surface.

NOTE−
WAAS receivers certified prior to TSO−C145b and TSO−C146b, even if they have LPV capability, do not contain LP capability unless the receiver has been upgraded. Receivers capable of flying LP procedures must contain a statement in the Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM), AFM Supplement, or Approved Supplemental Flight Manual stating that the receiver has LP capability, as well as the capability for the other WAAS and GPS approach procedure types.

4. WAAS provides a level of service that supports all phases of flight, including RNAV (GPS) approaches to LNAV, LP, LNAV/VNAV, and LPV lines of minima, within system coverage. Some locations close to the edge of the coverage may have a lower availability of vertical guidance.

c. General Requirements

1. WAAS avionics must be certified in accordance with Technical Standard Order (TSO) TSO−C145(), Airborne Navigation Sensors Using the (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS); or TSO−C146(), Stand−Alone Airborne Navigation Equipment Using the Global Positioning System (GPS) Augmented by the Wide Area Augmentation System (WAAS), and installed in accordance with AC 20−138, Airworthiness Approval of Positioning and Navigation Systems.

2. GPS/WAAS operation must be conducted in accordance with the FAA−approved aircraft flight manual (AFM) and flight manual supplements. Flight manual supplements will state the level of approach procedure that the receiver supports. IFR approved WAAS receivers support all GPS only operations as long as lateral capability at the appropriate level is functional. WAAS monitors both GPS and WAAS satellites and provides integrity.

3. GPS/WAAS equipment is inherently capable of supporting oceanic and remote operations if the operator obtains a fault detection and exclusion (FDE) prediction program.

4. Air carrier and commercial operators must meet the appropriate provisions of their approved operations specifications.

5. Prior to GPS/WAAS IFR operation, the pilot must review appropriate Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs) and aeronautical information. This information is available on request from a Flight Service Station. The FAA will provide NOTAMs to advise pilots of the status of the WAAS and level of service available.

(a) The term MAY NOT BE AVBL is used in conjunction with WAAS NOTAMs and indicates that due to ionospheric conditions, lateral guidance may still be available when vertical guidance is unavailable. Under certain conditions, both lateral and vertical guidance may be unavailable. This NOTAM language is an advisory to pilots indicating the expected level of WAAS service (LNAV/VNAV, LPV, LP) may not be available.

EXAMPLE−
!FDC FDC NAV WAAS VNAV/LPV/LP MINIMA MAY NOT BE AVBL 1306111330-1306141930EST
or
!FDC FDC NAV WAAS VNAV/LPV MINIMA NOT AVBL, WAAS LP MINIMA MAY NOT BE AVBL 1306021200-1306031200EST

WAAS MAY NOT BE AVBL NOTAMs are predictive in nature and published for flight planning purposes. Upon commencing an approach at locations NOTAMed WAAS MAY NOT BE AVBL, if the WAAS avionics indicate LNAV/VNAV or LPV service is available, then vertical guidance may be used to complete the approach using the displayed level of service. Should an outage occur during the approach, reversion to LNAV minima or an alternate instrument approach procedure may be required. When GPS testing NOTAMS are published and testing is actually occurring, Air Traffic Control will advise pilots requesting or cleared for a GPS or RNAV (GPS) approach that GPS may not be available and request intentions. If pilots have reported GPS anomalies, Air Traffic Control will request the pilot's intentions and/or clear the pilot for an alternate approach, if available and operational.

(b) WAAS area-wide NOTAMs are originated when WAAS assets are out of service and impact the service area. Area−wide WAAS NOT AVAILABLE (AVBL) NOTAMs indicate loss or malfunction of the WAAS system. In flight, Air Traffic Control will advise pilots requesting a GPS or RNAV (GPS) approach of WAAS NOT AVBL NOTAMs if not contained in the ATIS broadcast.

EXAMPLE−
For unscheduled loss of signal or service, an example NOTAM is: !FDC FDC NAV WAAS NOT AVBL 1311160600− 1311191200EST.
For scheduled loss of signal or service, an example NOTAM is: !FDC FDC NAV WAAS NOT AVBL 1312041015- 1312082000EST.

(c) Site−specific WAAS MAY NOT BE AVBL NOTAMs indicate an expected level of service; for example, LNAV/VNAV, LP, or LPV may not be available. Pilots must request site−specific WAAS NOTAMs during flight planning. In flight, Air Traffic Control will not advise pilots of WAAS MAY NOT BE AVBL NOTAMs.

NOTE−
Though currently unavailable, the FAA is updating its prediction tool software to provide this site-service in the future.

(d) Most of North America has redundant coverage by two or more geostationary satellites. One exception is the northern slope of Alaska. If there is a problem with the satellite providing coverage to this area, a NOTAM similar to the following example will be issued:

EXAMPLE−
*!FDC **4/3406** (PAZA A0173/14) ZAN NAV WAAS SIGNAL MAY NOT BE AVBL NORTH OF LINE FROM 7000N150000W TO 6400N16400W. RMK WAAS USERS SHOULD CONFIRM RAIM AVAILABILITY FOR IFR OPERATIONS IN THIS AREA. T-ROUTES IN THIS SECTOR NOT AVBL. ANY REQUIRED ALTERNATE AIRPORT IN THIS AREA MUST HAVE AN APPROVED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE OTHER THAN GPS THAT IS ANTICIPATED TO BE OPERATIONAL AND AVAILABLE AT THE ESTIMATED TIME OF ARRIVAL AND WHICH THE AIRCRAFT IS EQUIPPED TO FLY. 1406030812-1406050812EST .*

6. When GPS−testing NOTAMS are published and testing is actually occurring, Air Traffic Control will advise pilots requesting or cleared for a GPS or RNAV (GPS) approach that GPS may not be available and request intentions. If pilots have reported GPS anomalies, Air Traffic Control will request the pilot's intentions and/or clear the pilot for an alternate approach, if available and operational.

EXAMPLE−
Here is an example of a GPS testing NOTAM:
*!GPS **06/001** ZAB NAV GPS (INCLUDING WAAS, GBAS, AND ADS-B) MAY NOT BE AVAILABLE WITHIN A 468NM RADIUS CENTERED AT 330702N1062540W (TCS 093044) FL400-UNL DECREASING IN AREA WITH A DECREASE IN ALTITUDE DEFINED AS: 425NM RADIUS AT FL250, 360NM RADIUS AT 10000FT, 354NM RADIUS AT 4000FT AGL, 327NM RADIUS AT 50FT AGL. 1406070300-1406071200.*

7. When the approach chart is annotated with the W symbol, site−specific WAAS MAY NOT BE AVBL NOTAMs or Air Traffic advisories are not provided for outages in WAAS LNAV/VNAV and LPV vertical service. Vertical outages may occur daily at these locations due to being close to the edge of WAAS system coverage. Use LNAV or circling minima for flight planning at these locations, whether as a destination or alternate. For flight operations at these locations, when the WAAS avionics indicate that LNAV/VNAV or LPV service is available, then the vertical guidance may be used to complete the approach using the displayed level of service. Should an outage occur during the procedure, reversion to LNAV minima may be required.

NOTE−
Area−wide WAAS NOT AVBL NOTAMs apply to all airports in the WAAS NOT AVBL area designated in the NOTAM, including approaches at airports where an approach chart is annotated with the W symbol.

8. GPS/WAAS was developed to be used within GEO coverage over North America without the need for other radio navigation equipment appropriate to the route of flight to be flown. Outside the WAAS coverage or in the event of a WAAS failure, GPS/WAAS equipment reverts to GPS−only operation and satisfies the requirements for basic GPS equipment. (See paragraph 1−1−17 for these requirements).

9. Unlike TSO−C129 avionics, which were certified as a supplement to other means of navigation, WAAS avionics are evaluated without reliance on other navigation systems. As such, installation of WAAS avionics does not require the aircraft to have other equipment appropriate to the route to be flown. (See paragraph 1−1−17 d for more information on equipment requirements.)

(a) Pilots with WAAS receivers may flight plan to use any instrument approach procedure authorized for use with their WAAS avionics as the planned approach at a required alternate, with the following restrictions. When using WAAS at an alternate airport, flight planning must be based on flying the RNAV (GPS) LNAV or circling minima line, or minima on a GPS approach procedure, or conventional approach procedure with "or GPS" in the title. Code of Federal Regulation (CFR) Part 91 non−precision weather requirements must be used for planning. Upon arrival at an alternate, when the WAAS navigation system indicates that LNAV/VNAV or LPV service is available, then vertical guidance may be used to complete the approach using the displayed level of service. The FAA has begun removing the **NA** (Alternate Minimums Not Authorized) symbol from select RNAV (GPS) and GPS approach procedures so they may be used by approach approved WAAS receivers at alternate airports. Some approach procedures will still require the **NA** for other reasons, such as no weather reporting, so it cannot be removed from all procedures. Since every procedure must be individually evaluated, removal of the **NA** from RNAV (GPS) and GPS procedures will take some time.

NOTE−
Properly trained and approved, as required, TSO-C145() and TSO-C146() equipped users (WAAS users) with and using approved baro-VNAV equipment may plan for LNAV/VNAV DA at an alternate airport. Specifically authorized WAAS users with and using approved baro-VNAV equipment may also plan for RNP 0.3 DA at the alternate airport as long as the pilot has verified RNP availability through an approved prediction program.

d. Flying Procedures with WAAS

1. WAAS receivers support all basic GPS approach functions and provide additional capabilities. One of the major improvements is the ability to generate glide path guidance, independent of ground equipment or barometric aiding. This eliminates several problems such as hot and cold temperature effects, incorrect altimeter setting, or lack of a local altimeter source. It also allows approach procedures to be built without the cost of installing ground stations at each airport or runway. Some approach certified receivers may only generate a glide path with performance similar to Baro−VNAV and are only approved to fly the LNAV/VNAV line of minima on the RNAV (GPS) approach charts. Receivers with additional capability (including faster update rates and smaller integrity limits) are approved to fly the LPV line of minima. The lateral integrity changes dramatically from the 0.3 NM (556 meter) limit for GPS, LNAV, and LNAV/VNAV approach mode, to 40 meters for LPV. It also provides vertical integrity monitoring, which bounds the vertical error to 50 meters for LNAV/VNAV and LPVs with minima of 250' or above, and bounds the vertical error to 35 meters for LPVs with minima below 250'.

2. When an approach procedure is selected and active, the receiver will notify the pilot of the most accurate level of service supported by the combination of the WAAS signal, the receiver, and the selected approach, using the naming conventions on the minima lines of the selected approach procedure. For example, if an approach is published with LPV minima and the receiver is only certified for LNAV/VNAV, the equipment would indicate "LNAV/VNAV available," even though the WAAS signal would support LPV. If flying an existing LNAV/VNAV procedure with no LPV minima, the receiver will notify the pilot "LNAV/VNAV available," even if the receiver is certified for LPV and the signal supports LPV. If the signal does not support vertical guidance on procedures with LPV and/or LNAV/VNAV minima, the receiver annunciation will read "LNAV available." On lateral only procedures with LP and LNAV minima the receiver will indicate "LP available" or "LNAV available" based on the level of lateral service available. Once the level of service notification has been given, the receiver will operate in this mode for the duration of the approach procedure, unless that level of service becomes unavailable. The receiver cannot change back to a more accurate level of service until the next time an approach is activated.

NOTE−
Receivers do not "fail down" to lower levels of service once the approach has been activated. If only the vertical off flag appears, the pilot may elect to use the LNAV minima if the rules under which the flight is operating allow changing the type of approach being flown after commencing the procedure. If the lateral integrity limit is exceeded on an LP approach, a missed approach will be necessary since there is no way to reset the lateral alarm limit while the approach is active.

3. Another additional feature of WAAS receivers is the ability to exclude a bad GPS signal and continue operating normally. This is normally accomplished by the WAAS correction information. Outside WAAS coverage or when WAAS is not available, it is accomplished through a receiver algorithm called FDE. In most cases this operation will be invisible to the pilot since the receiver will continue to operate with other available satellites after excluding the "bad" signal. This capability increases the reliability of navigation.

4. Both lateral and vertical scaling for the LNAV/VNAV and LPV approach procedures are different than the linear scaling of basic GPS. When the complete published procedure is flown, ±1 NM linear scaling is provided until two (2) NM prior to the FAF, where the sensitivity increases to be similar to the angular scaling of an ILS. There are two differences in the WAAS scaling and ILS: 1) on long final approach segments, the initial scaling will be ±0.3 NM to achieve equivalent performance to GPS (and better than ILS, which is less sensitive far from the runway); 2) close to the runway threshold, the scaling changes to linear instead of continuing to become more sensitive. The width of the final approach course is tailored so that the total width is usually 700 feet at the runway threshold. Since the origin point of the lateral splay for the angular portion of the final is not fixed due to antenna placement like localizer, the splay angle can remain fixed, making a consistent width of final for aircraft being vectored onto the final approach course on different length runways. When the complete published procedure is not flown, and instead the aircraft needs to capture the extended final approach course similar to ILS, the vector to final (VTF) mode is used. Under VTF, the scaling is linear at ±1 NM until the point where the ILS angular splay reaches a width of ±1 NM regardless of the distance from the FAWP.

5. The WAAS scaling is also different than GPS TSO−C129() in the initial portion of the missed approach. Two differences occur here. First, the scaling abruptly changes from the approach scaling to the missed approach scaling, at approximately the departure end of the runway or when the pilot selects missed approach guidance rather than ramping as GPS does. Second, when the first leg of the missed approach is a Track to Fix (TF) leg aligned within 3 degrees of the inbound course, the receiver will change to 0.3 NM linear sensitivity until the turn initiation point for the first waypoint in the missed approach procedure, at which time it will abruptly change to terminal (±1 NM) sensitivity. This allows the elimination of close in obstacles in the early part of the missed approach that may otherwise cause the DA to be raised.

6. There are two ways to select the final approach segment of an instrument approach. Most receivers use menus where the pilot selects the airport, the runway, the specific approach procedure and finally the IAF, there is also a channel number selection method. The pilot enters a unique 5−digit number provided on the approach chart, and the receiver recalls the matching final approach segment from the aircraft database. A list of information including the available IAFs is displayed and the pilot selects the appropriate IAF. The pilot should confirm that the correct final approach segment was loaded by cross checking the Approach ID, which is also provided on the approach chart.

7. The Along−Track Distance (ATD) during the final approach segment of an LNAV procedure (with a minimum descent altitude) will be to the MAWP. On LNAV/VNAV and LPV approaches to a decision altitude, there is no missed approach waypoint so the along−track distance is displayed to a point normally located at the runway threshold. In most cases, the MAWP for the LNAV approach is located on the runway threshold at the centerline, so these distances will be the same. This distance will always vary slightly from any ILS DME that may be present, since the ILS DME is located further down the runway. Initiation of the missed approach on the LNAV/VNAV and LPV approaches is still based on reaching the decision altitude without any of the items listed in 14 CFR Section 91.175 being visible, and must not be delayed while waiting for the ATD to reach zero. The WAAS receiver, unlike a GPS receiver, will automatically sequence past the MAWP if the missed approach procedure has been designed for RNAV. The pilot may also select missed approach prior to the MAWP; however, navigation will continue to the MAWP prior to waypoint sequencing taking place.

1−1−19. Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) Landing System (GLS)

a. A GBAS ground installation at an airport can provide localized, differential augmentation to the Global Positioning System (GPS) signal−in−space enabling an aircraft's GLS precision approach capability. Through the GBAS service and the aircraft's GLS installation a pilot may complete an instrument approach offering three−dimensional angular, lateral, and vertical guidance for exact alignment and descent to a runway. The operational benefits of a GLS approach are similar to the benefits of an ILS or LPV approach operation.

NOTE−
To remain consistent with international terminology, the FAA will use the term GBAS in place of the former term Local Area Augmentation System (LAAS).

b. An aircraft's GLS approach capability relies on the broadcast from a GBAS Ground Facility (GGF) installation. The GGF installation includes at least four ground reference stations near the airport's runway(s), a corrections processor, and a VHF Data Broadcast (VDB) uplink antenna. To use the GBAS GGF output and be eligible to conduct a GLS approach, the aircraft requires eligibility to conduct RNP approach (RNP APCH) operations and must meet the additional, specific airworthiness requirements for installation of a GBAS receiver intended to support GLS approach operations. When the aircraft achieves GLS approach eligibility, the aircraft's onboard navigation database may then contain published GLS instrument approach procedures.

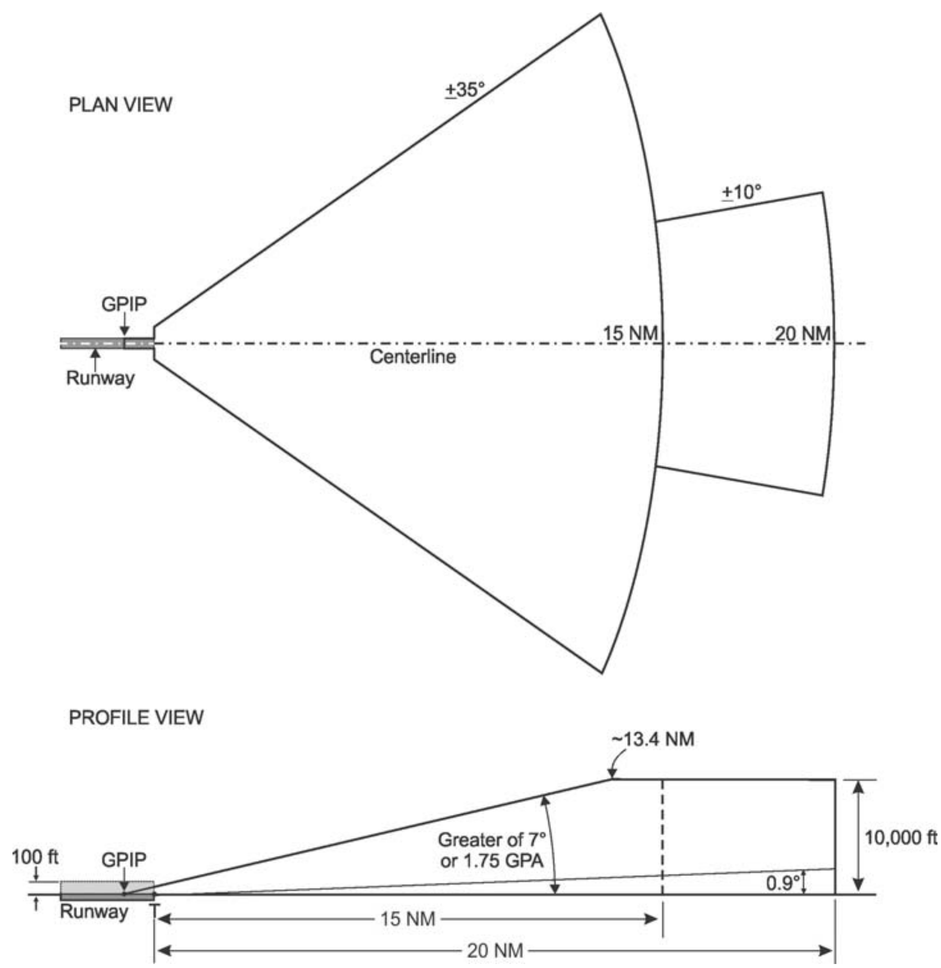
c. During a GLS instrument approach procedure, the installation of an aircraft's GLS capability provides the pilot three−dimensional (3D) lateral and vertical navigation guidance much like an ILS instrument approach. GBAS corrections augment the GPS signal−in−space by offering position corrections, ensures the availability of enhanced integrity parameters, and then transmits the actual approach path definition over the VDB uplink antenna. A single GBAS ground station can support multiple GLS approaches to one or more runways.

d. Through the GBAS ground station, a GLS approach offers a unique operational service volume distinct from the traditional ILS approach service volume (see FIG 1−1−9). However, despite the unique service volume, in the final approach segment, a GLS approach provides precise 3D angular lateral and vertical guidance mimicking the precision guidance of an ILS approach.

e. Transitions to and segments of the published GLS instrument approach procedures may rely on use of RNAV 1 or RNP 1 prior to an IAF. Then, during the approach procedure, prior to the aircraft entering the GLS approach mode, a GLS approach procedure design uses the RNP APCH procedure design criteria to construct the procedural path (the criteria used to publish procedures titled "RNAV (GPS)" in the US). Thus, a GLS approach procedure may include paths requiring turns after the aircraft crosses the IAF, prior to the aircraft's flight guidance entering the GLS approach flight guidance mode. Likewise, the missed approach procedure for a GLS approach procedure relies exclusively on the same missed approach criteria supporting an RNP APCH.

f. When maneuvering the aircraft in compliance with an ATC clearance to intercept a GLS approach prior to the final approach segment (e.g. "being vectored"), the pilot should adhere to the clearance and ensure the aircraft intercepts the extended GLS final approach course within the specified service volume. Once on the GLS final approach course, the pilot should ensure the aircraft is in the GLS approach mode prior to reaching the procedure's glidepath intercept point. Once the aircraft is in the GLS flight guidance mode and captures the GLS glidepath, the pilot should fly the GLS final approach segment using the same pilot techniques they use to fly an ILS final approach or the final approach of an RNAV (GPS) approach flown to LPV minimums. See also the Instrument Procedures Handbook for more information on how to conduct a GLS instrument approach procedure.

FIG 1-1-9
GLS Standard Approach Service Volume



1-1-20. Precision Approach Systems other than ILS and GLS

a. General

Approval and use of precision approach systems other than ILS and GLS require the issuance of special instrument approach procedures.

b. Special Instrument Approach Procedure

1. Special instrument approach procedures must be issued to the aircraft operator if pilot training, aircraft equipment, and/or aircraft performance is different than published procedures. Special instrument approach procedures are not distributed for general public use. These procedures are issued to an aircraft operator when the conditions for operations approval are satisfied.

2. General aviation operators requesting approval for special procedures should contact the local Flight Standards District Office to obtain a letter of authorization. Air carrier operators requesting approval for use of special procedures should contact their Certificate Holding District Office for authorization through their Operations Specification.

c. Transponder Landing System (TLS)

1. The TLS is designed to provide approach guidance utilizing existing airborne ILS localizer, glide slope, and transponder equipment.

2. Ground equipment consists of a transponder interrogator, sensor arrays to detect lateral and vertical position, and ILS frequency transmitters. The TLS detects the aircraft's position by interrogating its transponder. It then broadcasts ILS frequency signals to guide the aircraft along the desired approach path.

3. TLS instrument approach procedures are designated Special Instrument Approach Procedures. Special aircrew training is required. TLS ground equipment provides approach guidance for only one aircraft at a time. Even though the TLS signal is received using the ILS receiver, no fixed course or glidepath is generated. The concept of operation is very similar to an air traffic controller providing radar vectors, and just as with radar vectors, the guidance is valid only for the intended aircraft. The TLS ground equipment tracks one aircraft, based on its transponder code, and provides correction signals to course and glidepath based on the position of the tracked aircraft. Flying the TLS corrections computed for another aircraft will not provide guidance relative to the approach; therefore, aircrews must not use the TLS signal for navigation unless they have received approach clearance and completed the required coordination with the TLS ground equipment operator. Navigation fixes based on conventional NAVAIDs or GPS are provided in the special instrument approach procedure to allow aircrews to verify the TLS guidance.

d. Special Category I Differential GPS (SCAT−I DGPS)

1. The SCAT−I DGPS is designed to provide approach guidance by broadcasting differential correction to GPS.

2. SCAT−I DGPS procedures require aircraft equipment and pilot training.

3. Ground equipment consists of GPS receivers and a VHF digital radio transmitter. The SCAT−I DGPS detects the position of GPS satellites relative to GPS receiver equipment and broadcasts differential corrections over the VHF digital radio.

4. Category I Ground Based Augmentation System (GBAS) will displace SCAT−I DGPS as the public use service.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5−4−7 j, Instrument Approach Procedures

or avionics failure. The Aircraft Flight Manual (AFM) or avionics documents for your aircraft should specifically state the aircraft's RNP eligibilities. Contact the manufacturer of the avionics or the aircraft if this information is missing or incomplete. NavSpecs should be considered different from one another, not "better" or "worse" based on the described lateral navigation accuracy. It is this concept that requires each NavSpec eligbility to be listed separately in the avionics documents or AFM. For example, RNP 1 is different from RNAV 1, and an RNP 1 eligibility does NOT mean automatic RNP 2 or RNAV 1 eligibility. As a safeguard, the FAA requires that aircraft navigation databases hold only those procedures that the aircraft maintains eligibility for. If you look for a specific instrument procedure in your aircraft's navigation database and cannot find it, it's likely that procedure contains PBN elements your aircraft is ineligible for or cannot compute and fly. Further, optional capabilities such as Radius−to−fix (RF) turns or scalability should be described in the AFM or avionics documents. Use the capabilities of your avionics suite to verify the appropriate waypoint and track data after loading the procedure from your database.

b. PBN Operations.

1. Lateral Accuracy Values. Lateral Accuracy values are applicable to a selected airspace, route, or procedure. The lateral accuracy value is a value typically expressed as a distance in nautical miles from the intended centerline of a procedure, route, or path. RNP applications also account for potential errors at some multiple of lateral accuracy value (for example, twice the RNP lateral accuracy values).

(a) RNP NavSpecs. U.S. standard NavSpecs supporting typical RNP airspace uses are as specified below. Other NavSpecs may include different lateral accuracy values as identified by ICAO or other states. (See FIG 1−2−1.)

(1) RNP Approach (RNP APCH). In the U.S., RNP APCH procedures are titled RNAV (GPS) and offer several lines of minima to accommodate varying levels of aircraft equipage: either lateral navigation (LNAV), LNAV/vertical navigation (LNAV/VNAV), Localizer Performance with Vertical Guidance (LPV), and Localizer Performance (LP). GPS with or without Space−Based Augmentation System (SBAS) (for example, WAAS) can provide the lateral information to support LNAV minima. LNAV/VNAV incorporates LNAV lateral with vertical path guidance for systems and operators capable of either barometric or SBAS vertical. Pilots are required to use SBAS to fly to the LPV or LP minima. RF turn capability is optional in RNP APCH eligibility. This means that your aircraft may be eligible for RNP APCH operations, but you may not fly an RF turn unless RF turns are also specifically listed as a feature of your avionics suite. GBAS Landing System (GLS) procedures are also constructed using RNP APCH NavSpecs and provide precision approach capability. RNP APCH has a lateral accuracy value of 1 in the terminal and missed approach segments and essentially scales to RNP 0.3 (or 40 meters with SBAS) in the final approach. (See paragraph 5−4−18, RNP AR (Authorization Required) Instrument Procedures.)

(2) RNP Authorization Required Approach (RNP AR APCH). In the U.S., RNP AR APCH procedures are titled RNAV (RNP). These approaches have stringent equipage and pilot training standards and require special FAA authorization to fly. Scalability and RF turn capabilities are mandatory in RNP AR APCH eligibility. RNP AR APCH vertical navigation performance is based upon barometric VNAV or SBAS. RNP AR is intended to provide specific benefits at specific locations. It is not intended for every operator or aircraft. RNP AR capability requires specific aircraft performance, design, operational processes, training, and specific procedure design criteria to achieve the required target level of safety. RNP AR APCH has lateral accuracy values that can range below 1 in the terminal and missed approach segments and essentially scale to RNP 0.3 or lower in the final approach. Before conducting these procedures, operators should refer to the latest AC 90−101, Approval Guidance for RNP Procedures with AR. (See paragraph 5−4−18.)

(3) RNP Authorization Required Departure (RNP AR DP). Similar to RNP AR approaches, RNP AR departure procedures have stringent equipage and pilot training standards and require special FAA authorization to fly. Scalability and RF turn capabilities is mandatory in RNP AR DP eligibility. RNP AR DP is intended to provide specific benefits at specific locations. It is not intended for every operator or aircraft. RNP AR DP capability requires specific aircraft performance, design, operational processes, training, and specific procedure design criteria to achieve the required target level of safety. RNP AR DP has lateral accuracy values that can scale to no lower than RNP 0.3 in the initial departure flight path. Before conducting these procedures, operators should refer to the latest AC 90−101, Approval Guidance for RNP Procedures with AR. (See paragraph 5−4−18.)

(4) Advanced RNP (A−RNP). Advanced RNP is a NavSpec with a minimum set of mandatory functions enabled in the aircraft's avionics suite. In the U.S., these minimum functions include capability to calculate and perform RF turns, scalable RNP, and parallel offset flight path generation. Higher continuity (such as dual systems) may be required for certain oceanic and remote continental airspace. Other "advanced" options for use in the en route environment (such as fixed radius transitions and Time of Arrival Control) are optional in the U.S. Typically, an aircraft eligible for A−RNP will also be eligible for operations comprising: RNP APCH, RNP/RNAV 1, RNP/RNAV 2, RNP 4, and RNP/RNAV 10. A−RNP allows for scalable RNP lateral navigation values (either 1.0 or 0.3) in the terminal environment. Use of these reduced lateral accuracies will normally require use of the aircraft's autopilot and/or flight director. See the latest AC 90−105 for more information on A−RNP, including NavSpec bundling options, eligibility determinations, and operations approvals.

NOTE−
A−RNP eligible aircraft are NOT automatically eligible for RNP AR APCH or RNP AR DP operations, as RNP AR eligibility requires a separate determination process and special FAA authorization.

(5) RNP 1. RNP 1 requires a lateral accuracy value of 1 for arrival and departure in the terminal area, and the initial and intermediate approach phase when used on conventional procedures with PBN segments (for example, an ILS with a PBN feeder, IAF, or missed approach). RF turn capability is optional in RNP 1 eligibility. This means that your aircraft may be eligible for RNP 1 operations, but you may not fly an RF turn unless RF turns are also specifically listed as a feature of your avionics suite.

(6) RNP 2. RNP 2 will apply to both domestic and oceanic/remote operations with a lateral accuracy value of 2.

(7) RNP 4. RNP 4 will apply to oceanic and remote operations only with a lateral accuracy value of 4. RNP 4 eligibility will automatically confer RNP 10 eligibility.

(8) RNP 10. The RNP 10 NavSpec applies to certain oceanic and remote operations with a lateral accuracy of 10. In such airspace, the RNAV 10 NavSpec will be applied, so any aircraft eligible for RNP 10 will be deemed eligible for RNAV 10 operations. Further, any aircraft eligible for RNP 4 operations is automatically qualified for RNP 10/ RNAV 10 operations. (See also the latest AC 91−70, Oceanic and Remote Continental Airspace Operations, for more information on oceanic RNP/RNAV operations.)

(9) RNP 0.3. The RNP 0.3 NavSpec requires a lateral accuracy value of 0.3 for all authorized phases of flight. RNP 0.3 is not authorized for oceanic, remote, or the final approach segment. Use of RNP 0.3 by slow−flying fixed−wing aircraft is under consideration, but the RNP 0.3 NavSpec initially will apply only to rotorcraft operations. RF turn capability is optional in RNP 0.3 eligibility. This means that your aircraft may be eligible for RNP 0.3 operations, but you may not fly an RF turn unless RF turns are also specifically listed as a feature of your avionics suite.

NOTE−
On terminal procedures or en route charts, do not confuse a charted RNP value of 0.30, or any standard final approach course segment width of 0.30, with the NavSpec title "RNP 0.3." Charted RNP values of 0.30 or below should contain two decimal places (for example, RNP 0.15, or 0.10, or 0.30) whereas the NavSpec title will only state "RNP 0.3."

(b) Application of Standard Lateral Accuracy Values. U.S. standard lateral accuracy values typically used for various routes and procedures supporting RNAV operations may be based on use of a specific navigational system or sensor such as GPS, or on multi−sensor RNAV systems having suitable performance.

(c) Depiction of PBN Requirements. In the U.S., PBN requirements like Lateral Accuracy Values or NavSpecs applicable to a procedure will be depicted on affected charts and procedures. In the U.S., a specific procedure's Performance−Based Navigation (PBN) requirements will be prominently displayed in separate, standardized notes boxes. For procedures with PBN elements, the "PBN box" will contain the procedure's NavSpec(s); and, if required: specific sensors or infrastructure needed for the navigation solution, any additional or advanced functional requirements, the minimum RNP value, and any amplifying remarks. Items listed in this PBN box are REQUIRED to fly the procedure's PBN elements. For example, an ILS with an RNAV missed approach would require a specific capability to fly the missed approach portion of the procedure. That required capability will be listed in the PBN box. The separate Equipment Requirements box will list ground−based equipment and/or airport specific requirements. On procedures with both PBN elements and ground−based equipment requirements, the PBN requirements box will be listed first. (See FIG 5−4−1.)

c. Other RNP Applications Outside the U.S. The FAA and ICAO member states have led initiatives in implementing the RNP concept to oceanic operations. For example, RNP−10 routes have been established in the northern Pacific (NOPAC) which has increased capacity and efficiency by reducing the distance between tracks to 50 NM. (See paragraph 4−7−1.)

d. Aircraft and Airborne Equipment Eligibility for RNP Operations. Aircraft eligible for RNP operations will have an appropriate entry including special conditions and limitations in its AFM, avionics manual, or a supplement. Operators of aircraft not having specific RNP eligibility statements in the AFM or avionics documents may be issued operational approval including special conditions and limitations for specific RNP eligibilities.

NOTE−
Some airborne systems use Estimated Position Uncertainty (EPU) as a measure of the current estimated navigational performance. EPU may also be referred to as Actual Navigation Performance (ANP) or Estimated Position Error (EPE).

TBL 1−2−1
U.S. Standard RNP Levels

RNP Level	Typical Application	Primary Route Width (NM) − Centerline to Boundary
0.1 to 1.0	RNP AR Approach Segments	0.1 to 1.0
0.3 to 1.0	RNP Approach Segments	0.3 to 1.0
1	Terminal and En Route	1.0
2	En Route	2.0
4	Projected for oceanic/remote areas where 30 NM horizontal separation is applied.	4.0
10	Oceanic/remote areas where 50 NM lateral separation is applied.	10.0

1−2−3. Use of Suitable Area Navigation (RNAV) Systems on Conventional Procedures and Routes

a. Discussion. This paragraph sets forth policy, while providing operational and airworthiness guidance regarding the suitability and use of RNAV systems when operating on, or transitioning to, conventional, non−RNAV routes and procedures within the U.S. National Airspace System (NAS):

1. Use of a suitable RNAV system as a Substitute Means of Navigation when a Very−High Frequency (VHF) Omni−directional Range (VOR), Distance Measuring Equipment (DME), Tactical Air Navigation (TACAN), VOR/TACAN (VORTAC), VOR/DME, Non−directional Beacon (NDB), or compass locator facility including locator outer marker and locator middle marker is out−of−service (that is, the navigation aid (NAVAID) information is not available); an aircraft is not equipped with an Automatic Direction Finder (ADF) or DME; or the installed ADF or DME on an aircraft is not operational. For example, if equipped with a suitable RNAV system, a pilot may hold over an out−of−service NDB.

2. Use of a suitable RNAV system as an Alternate Means of Navigation when a VOR, DME, VORTAC, VOR/DME, TACAN, NDB, or compass locator facility including locator outer marker and locator middle marker is operational and the respective aircraft is equipped with operational navigation equipment that is compatible with conventional navaids. For example, if equipped with a suitable RNAV system, a pilot may fly a procedure or route based on operational VOR using that RNAV system without monitoring the VOR.

NOTE−
1. *Additional information and associated requirements are available in Advisory Circular 90-108 titled "Use of Suitable RNAV Systems on Conventional Routes and Procedures."*

2. *Good planning and knowledge of your RNAV system are critical for safe and successful operations.*

3. *Pilots planning to use their RNAV system as a substitute means of navigation guidance in lieu of an out−of−service NAVAID may need to advise ATC of this intent and capability.*

4. *The navigation database should be current for the duration of the flight. If the AIRAC cycle will change during flight, operators and pilots should establish procedures to ensure the accuracy of navigation data, including suitability of navigation facilities used to define the routes and procedures for flight. To facilitate validating database currency, the FAA has developed procedures for publishing the amendment date that instrument approach procedures were last revised. The amendment date follows the amendment number, e.g., Amdt 4 14Jan10. Currency of graphic departure procedures and STARs may be ascertained by the numerical designation in the procedure title. If an amended chart is published for the procedure, or the procedure amendment date shown on the chart is on or after the expiration date of the database, the operator must not use the database to conduct the operation.*

b. Types of RNAV Systems that Qualify as a Suitable RNAV System. When installed in accordance with appropriate airworthiness installation requirements and operated in accordance with applicable operational guidance (for example, aircraft flight manual and Advisory Circular material), the following systems qualify as a suitable RNAV system:

1. An RNAV system with TSO−C129/−C145/−C146 equipment, installed in accordance with AC 20−138, Airworthiness Approval of Global Positioning System (GPS) Navigation Equipment for Use as a VFR and IFR Supplemental Navigation System, and authorized for instrument flight rules (IFR) en route and terminal operations (including those systems previously qualified for "GPS in lieu of ADF or DME" operations), or

2. An RNAV system with DME/DME/IRU inputs that is compliant with the equipment provisions of AC 90−100A, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations, for RNAV routes. A table of compliant equipment is available at the following website:
https://www.faa.gov/about/office_org/headquarters_offices/avs/offices/afx/afs/afs400/afs410/media/AC90−100compliance.pdf

NOTE−
Approved RNAV systems using DME/DME/IRU, without GPS/WAAS position input, may only be used as a substitute means of navigation when specifically authorized by a Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) or other FAA guidance for a specific procedure. The NOTAM or other FAA guidance authorizing the use of DME/DME/IRU systems will also identify any required DME facilities based on an FAA assessment of the DME navigation infrastructure.

c. Uses of Suitable RNAV Systems. Subject to the operating requirements, operators may use a suitable RNAV system in the following ways.

1. Determine aircraft position relative to, or distance from a VOR (see NOTE 6 below), TACAN, NDB, compass locator, DME fix; or a named fix defined by a VOR radial, TACAN course, NDB bearing, or compass locator bearing intersecting a VOR or localizer course.

2. Navigate to or from a VOR, TACAN, NDB, or compass locator.

3. Hold over a VOR, TACAN, NDB, compass locator, or DME fix.

4. Fly an arc based upon DME.

NOTE−
1. *The allowances described in this section apply even when a facility is identified as required on a procedure (for example, "Note ADF required").*

2. *These operations do not include lateral navigation on localizer−based courses (including localizer back−course guidance) without reference to raw localizer data.*

3. *Unless otherwise specified, a suitable RNAV system cannot be used for navigation on procedures that are identified as not authorized ("NA") without exception by a NOTAM. For example, an operator may not use a RNAV system to navigate on a procedure affected by an expired or*

Chapter 2. Aeronautical Lighting and Other Airport Visual Aids

Section 1. Airport Lighting Aids

2−1−1. Approach Light Systems (ALS)

a. ALS provide the basic means to transition from instrument flight to visual flight for landing. Operational requirements dictate the sophistication and configuration of the approach light system for a particular runway.

b. ALS are a configuration of signal lights starting at the landing threshold and extending into the approach area a distance of 2400−3000 feet for precision instrument runways and 1400−1500 feet for nonprecision instrument runways. Some systems include sequenced flashing lights which appear to the pilot as a ball of light traveling towards the runway at high speed (twice a second). (See FIG 2−1−1.)

2−1−2. Visual Glideslope Indicators

a. Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI)

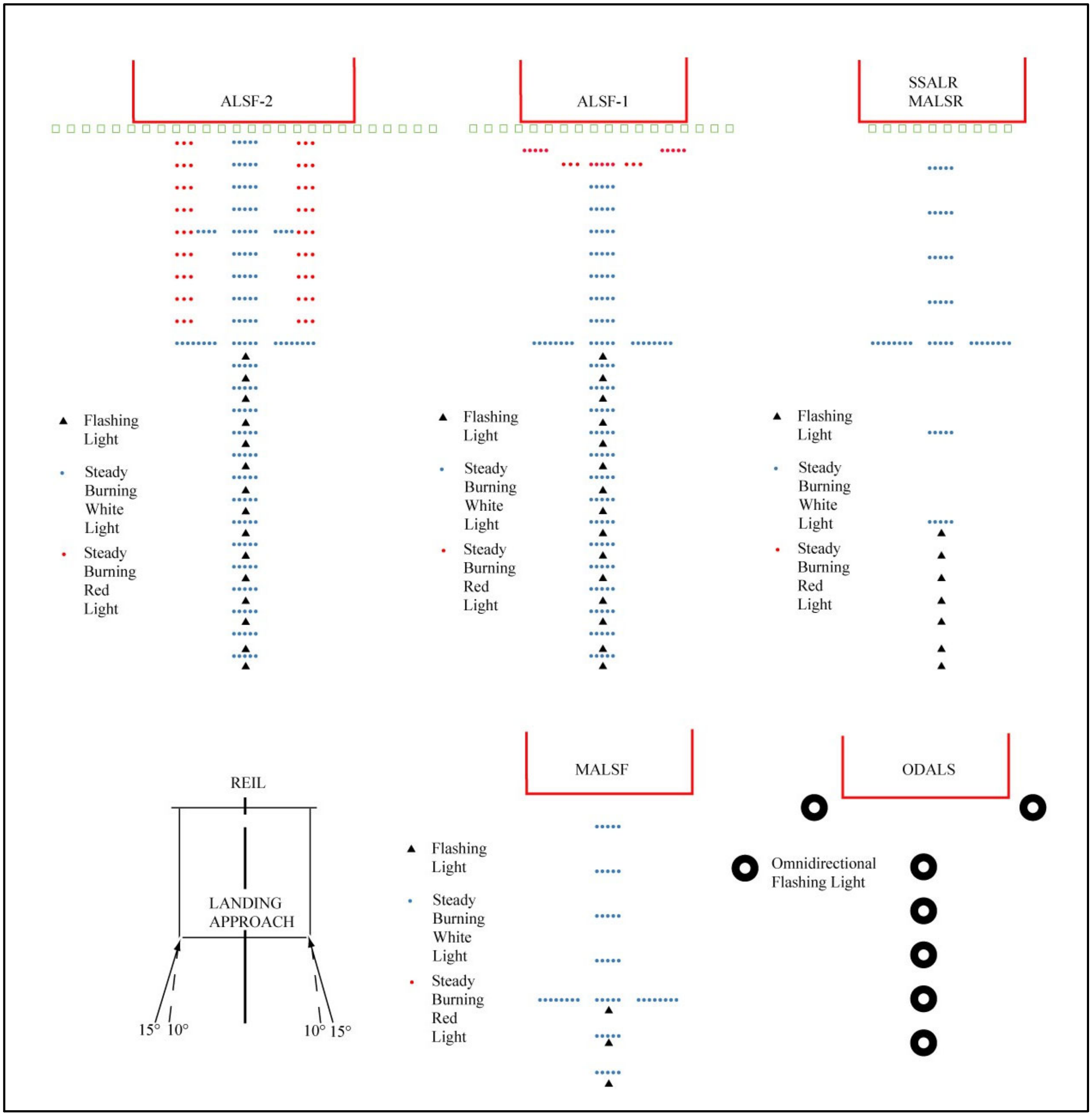
1. VASI installations may consist of either 2, 4, 6, 12, or 16 light units arranged in bars referred to as near, middle, and far bars. Most VASI installations consist of 2 bars, near and far, and may consist of 2, 4, or 12 light units. Some VASIs consist of three bars, near, middle, and far, which provide an additional visual glide path to accommodate high cockpit aircraft. This installation may consist of either 6 or 16 light units. VASI installations consisting of 2, 4, or 6 light units are located on one side of the runway, usually the left. Where the installation consists of 12 or 16 light units, the units are located on both sides of the runway.

2. Two−bar VASI installations provide one visual glide path which is normally set at 3 degrees. Three−bar VASI installations provide two visual glide paths. The lower glide path is provided by the near and middle bars and is normally set at 3 degrees while the upper glide path, provided by the middle and far bars, is normally $^{1}/_{4}$ degree higher. This higher glide path is intended for use only by high cockpit aircraft to provide a sufficient threshold crossing height. Although normal glide path angles are three degrees, angles at some locations may be as high as 4.5 degrees to give proper obstacle clearance. Pilots of high performance aircraft are cautioned that use of VASI angles in excess of 3.5 degrees may cause an increase in runway length required for landing and rollout.

3. The basic principle of the VASI is that of color differentiation between red and white. Each light unit projects a beam of light having a white segment in the upper part of the beam and red segment in the lower part of the beam. The light units are arranged so that the pilot using the VASIs during an approach will see the combination of lights shown below.

4. The VASI is a system of lights so arranged to provide visual descent guidance information during the approach to a runway. These lights are visible from 3−5 miles during the day and up to 20 miles or more at night. The visual glide path of the VASI provides safe obstruction clearance within plus or minus 10 degrees of the extended runway centerline and to 4 NM from the runway threshold. Descent, using the VASI, should not be initiated until the aircraft is visually aligned with the runway. Lateral course guidance is provided by the runway or runway lights. In certain circumstances, the safe obstruction clearance area may be reduced by narrowing the beam width or shortening the usable distance due to local limitations, or the VASI may be offset from the extended runway centerline. This will be noted in the Chart Supplement U.S. and/or applicable Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs).

FIG 2−1−1
Precision & Nonprecision Configurations



NOTE−
Civil ALSF−2 may be operated as SSALR during favorable weather conditions.

Section 4. Special Use Airspace

3−4−1. General

a. Special use airspace (SUA) consists of that airspace wherein activities must be confined because of their nature, or wherein limitations are imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities, or both. SUA areas are depicted on aeronautical charts, except for controlled firing areas (CFA), temporary military operations areas (MOA), and temporary restricted areas.

b. Prohibited and restricted areas are regulatory special use airspace and are established in 14 CFR Part 73 through the rulemaking process.

c. Warning areas, MOAs, alert areas, CFAs, and national security areas (NSA) are nonregulatory special use airspace.

d. Special use airspace descriptions (except CFAs) are contained in FAA Order JO 7400.10, Special Use Airspace.

e. Permanent SUA (except CFAs) is charted on Sectional Aeronautical, VFR Terminal Area, and applicable En Route charts, and include the hours of operation, altitudes, and the controlling agency.

NOTE−
For temporary restricted areas and temporary MOAs, pilots should review the Domestic Notices found on the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search website under External Links or the Air Traffic Plans and Publications website, the FAA SUA website, and/or contact the appropriate overlying ATC facility to determine the effect of non−depicted SUA areas along their routes of flight.

3−4−2. Prohibited Areas

Prohibited areas contain airspace of defined dimensions identified by an area on the surface of the earth within which the flight of aircraft is prohibited. Such areas are established for security or other reasons associated with the national welfare. These areas are published in the Federal Register and are depicted on aeronautical charts.

3−4−3. Restricted Areas

a. Restricted areas contain airspace identified by an area on the surface of the earth within which the flight of aircraft, while not wholly prohibited, is subject to restrictions. Activities within these areas must be confined because of their nature or limitations imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities or both. Restricted areas denote the existence of unusual, often invisible, hazards to aircraft such as artillery firing, aerial gunnery, or guided missiles. Penetration of restricted areas without authorization from the using or controlling agency may be extremely hazardous to the aircraft and its occupants. Restricted areas are published in the Federal Register and constitute 14 CFR Part 73.

b. ATC facilities apply the following procedures when aircraft are operating on an IFR clearance (including those cleared by ATC to maintain VFR-on-top) via a route which lies within joint-use restricted airspace.

1. If the restricted area is not active and has been released to the controlling agency (FAA), the ATC facility will allow the aircraft to operate in the restricted airspace without issuing specific clearance for it to do so.

2. If the restricted area is active and has not been released to the controlling agency (FAA), the ATC facility will issue a clearance which will ensure the aircraft avoids the restricted airspace unless it is on an approved altitude reservation mission or has obtained its own permission to operate in the airspace and so informs the controlling facility.

NOTE−
The above apply only to joint-use restricted airspace and not to prohibited and nonjoint-use airspace. For the latter categories, the ATC facility will issue a clearance so the aircraft will avoid the restricted airspace unless it is on an approved altitude reservation mission or has obtained its own permission to operate in the airspace and so informs the controlling facility.

c. Permanent restricted areas are charted on Sectional Aeronautical, VFR Terminal Area, and the appropriate En Route charts.

NOTE–
Temporary restricted areas are not charted.

3–4–4. Warning Areas

A warning area is airspace of defined dimensions, extending from three nautical miles outward from the coast of the U.S., that contains activity that may be hazardous to nonparticipating aircraft. The purpose of such warning areas is to warn nonparticipating pilots of the potential danger. A warning area may be located over domestic or international waters or both.

3–4–5. Military Operations Areas

a. MOAs consist of airspace of defined vertical and lateral limits established for the purpose of separating certain military training activities from IFR traffic. Whenever a MOA is being used, nonparticipating IFR traffic may be cleared through a MOA if IFR separation can be provided by ATC. Otherwise, ATC will reroute or restrict nonparticipating IFR traffic.

b. Examples of activities conducted in MOAs include, but are not limited to: air combat tactics, air intercepts, aerobatics, formation training, and low–altitude tactics. Military pilots flying in an active MOA are exempted from the provisions of 14 CFR Section 91.303(c) and (d) which prohibits aerobatic flight within Class D and Class E surface areas, and within Federal airways. Additionally, the Department of Defense has been issued an authorization to operate aircraft at indicated airspeeds in excess of 250 knots below 10,000 feet MSL within active MOAs.

c. Pilots operating under VFR should exercise extreme caution while flying within a MOA when military activity is being conducted. The activity status (active/inactive) of MOAs may change frequently. Therefore, pilots should contact any FSS within 100 miles of the area to obtain accurate real-time information concerning the MOA hours of operation. Prior to entering an active MOA, pilots should contact the controlling agency for traffic advisories.

d. Permanent MOAs are charted on Sectional Aeronautical, VFR Terminal Area, and the appropriate En Route Low Altitude charts.

NOTE–
Temporary MOAs are not charted.

3–4–6. Alert Areas

Alert areas are depicted on aeronautical charts to inform nonparticipating pilots of areas that may contain a high volume of pilot training or an unusual type of aerial activity. Pilots should be particularly alert when flying in these areas. All activity within an alert area must be conducted in accordance with CFRs, without waiver, and pilots of participating aircraft as well as pilots transiting the area must be equally responsible for collision avoidance.

3–4–7. Controlled Firing Areas

CFAs contain activities which, if not conducted in a controlled environment, could be hazardous to nonparticipating aircraft. The distinguishing feature of the CFA, as compared to other special use airspace, is that its activities are suspended immediately when spotter aircraft, radar, or ground lookout positions indicate an aircraft might be approaching the area. There is no need to chart CFAs since they do not cause a nonparticipating aircraft to change its flight path.

3–4–8. National Security Areas

NSAs consist of airspace of defined vertical and lateral dimensions established at locations where there is a requirement for increased security and safety of ground facilities. Pilots are requested to voluntarily avoid flying through the depicted NSA. When it is necessary to provide a greater level of security and safety, flight in NSAs may be temporarily prohibited by regulation under the provisions of 14 CFR Section 99.7. Regulatory prohibitions will be issued by System Operations Security and disseminated via NOTAM. Inquiries about NSAs should be directed to System Operations Security.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Para 5–6–1, National Security

3–4–9. Obtaining Special Use Airspace Status

a. Pilots can request the status of SUA by contacting the using or controlling agency. The frequency for the controlling agency is tabulated in the margins of the applicable IFR and VFR charts.

b. An airspace NOTAM will be issued for SUA when the SUA airspace (permanent and/or temporary) requires a NOTAM for activation. Pilots should check ARTCC NOTAMs for airspace activation.

3−5−6. Terminal Radar Service Area (TRSA)

a. Background. TRSAs were originally established as part of the Terminal Radar Program at selected airports. TRSAs were never controlled airspace from a regulatory standpoint because the establishment of TRSAs was never subject to the rulemaking process; consequently, TRSAs are not contained in 14 CFR Part 71 nor are there any TRSA operating rules in 14 CFR Part 91. Part of the Airport Radar Service Area (ARSA) program was to eventually replace all TRSAs. However, the ARSA requirements became relatively stringent and it was subsequently decided that TRSAs would have to meet ARSA criteria before they would be converted. TRSAs do not fit into any of the U.S. airspace classes; therefore, they will continue to be non−Part 71 airspace areas where participating pilots can receive additional radar services which have been redefined as TRSA Service.

b. TRSAs. The primary airport(s) within the TRSA become(s) Class D airspace. The remaining portion of the TRSA overlies other controlled airspace which is normally Class E airspace beginning at 700 or 1,200 feet and established to transition to/from the en route/terminal environment.

c. Participation. Pilots operating under VFR are encouraged to contact the radar approach control and avail themselves of the TRSA Services. However, participation is voluntary on the part of the pilot. See Chapter 4, Air Traffic Control, for details and procedures.

d. Charts. TRSAs are depicted on VFR sectional and terminal area charts with a solid black line and altitudes for each segment. The Class D portion is charted with a blue segmented line.

3−5−7. Special Air Traffic Rules (SATR) and Special Flight Rules Area (SFRA)

a. Background. The Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) prescribes special air traffic rules for aircraft operating within the boundaries of certain designated airspace. These areas are listed in 14 CFR Part 93 and can be found throughout the NAS. Procedures, nature of operations, configuration, size, and density of traffic vary among the identified areas.

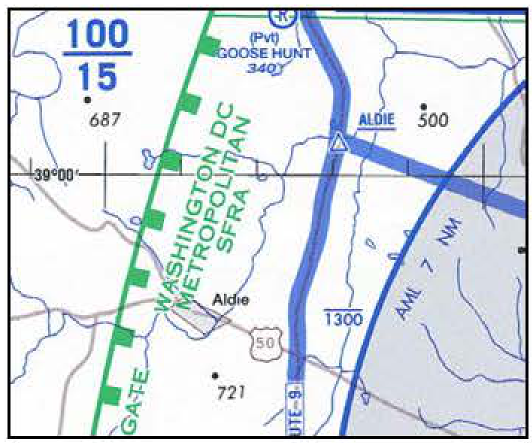
b. SFRAs. Airspace of defined dimensions, above land areas or territorial waters, within which the flight of aircraft is subject to the rules set forth in 14 CFR Part 93, unless otherwise authorized by air traffic control. Not all areas listed in 14 CFR Part 93 are designated SFRA, but special air traffic rules apply to all areas described in 14 CFR Part 93.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Part 93, Special Air Traffic Rules
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 9−2−10, Special Air Traffic Rules (SATR) and Special Flight Rules Area (SFRA)
PCG − Special Air Traffic Rules (SATR)

c. Participation. Each person operating an aircraft to, from, or within airspace designated as a SATR area or SFRA must adhere to the special air traffic rules set forth in 14 CFR Part 93, as applicable, unless otherwise authorized or required by ATC.

d. Charts. SFRAs are depicted on VFR sectional, terminal area, and helicopter route charts. (See FIG 3−5−4.)

FIG 3−5−4
SFRA Boundary



e. Additional information and resources regarding SFRA, including procedures for flight in individual areas, may be found on the FAA Safety website at http://www.faasafety.gov

3−5−8. Weather Reconnaissance Area (WRA)

a. General. Hurricane Hunters from the United States Air Force Reserve 53rd Weather Reconnaissance Squadron (WRS) and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Aircraft Operations Center (AOC) operate weather reconnaissance/research aircraft missions, in support of the National Hurricane Operations Plan (NHOP), to gather meteorological data on hurricanes and tropical cyclones. 53rd WRS and NOAA AOC aircraft normally conduct these missions in airspace identified in a published WRA Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM).

b. WRAs. Airspace with defined dimensions and published by a NOTAM, which is established to support weather reconnaissance/research flights. ATC services are not provided within WRAs. Only participating weather reconnaissance/research aircraft from the 53rd WRS and NOAA AOC are permitted to operate within a WRA. A WRA may only be established in airspace within U. S. Flight Information Regions (FIR) outside of U. S. territorial airspace.

c. A published WRA NOTAM describes the airspace dimensions of the WRA and the expected activities within the WRA. WRAs may border adjacent foreign FIRs, but are wholly contained within U.S. FIRs. As ATC services are not provided within a WRA, non−participating aircraft should avoid WRAs, and IFR aircraft should expect to be rerouted to avoid WRAs.

3−5−9. Other Non−Charted Airspace Areas

a. Stationary or Moving Altitude Reservation (ALTRV). A Stationary or Moving ALTRV is announced via an airspace NOTAM issued by the Central Altitude Reservation Facility (CARF) or ARTCC. These announcements will appear in CARF and/or ARTCC NOTAMS. This airspace ensures non−participating IFR aircraft remain separated from special activity. Non−participating VFR aircraft are permitted to fly through the area but should exercise vigilance.

b. ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE. Airspace of defined vertical/lateral limits, assigned by ATC, for the purpose of providing air traffic segregation between the specified activities being conducted within the assigned airspace and other IFR air traffic. ATCAA locations and scheduled activation information can be found on the FAA SUA website; a NOTAM will not be issued to announce the activation of this airspace.

Chapter 4. Air Traffic Control

Section 1. Services Available to Pilots

4-1-1. Air Route Traffic Control Centers

Centers are established primarily to provide air traffic service to aircraft operating on IFR flight plans within controlled airspace, and principally during the en route phase of flight.

4-1-2. Control Towers

Towers have been established to provide for a safe, orderly and expeditious flow of traffic on and in the vicinity of an airport. When the responsibility has been so delegated, towers also provide for the separation of IFR aircraft in the terminal areas.

REFERENCE-
AIM, Paragraph 5-4-3, Approach Control.

4-1-3. Flight Service Stations

Flight Service Stations (FSSs) are air traffic facilities that provide pilot briefings, flight plan processing, en route flight advisories, search and rescue services, and assistance to lost aircraft and aircraft in emergency situations. FSSs also relay ATC clearances, process Notices to Air Missions, and broadcast aviation weather and aeronautical information. In Alaska, designated FSSs also take weather observations, and provide Airport Advisory Services (AAS).

4-1-4. Recording and Monitoring

a. Calls to air traffic control (ATC) facilities (ARTCCs, Towers, FSSs, Central Flow, and Operations Centers) over radio and ATC operational telephone lines (lines used for operational purposes such as controller instructions, briefings, opening and closing flight plans, issuance of IFR clearances and amendments, counter hijacking activities, etc.) may be monitored and recorded for operational uses such as accident investigations, accident prevention, search and rescue purposes, specialist training and evaluation, and technical evaluation and repair of control and communications systems.

b. Where the public access telephone is recorded, a beeper tone is not required. In place of the "beep" tone the FCC has substituted a mandatory requirement that persons to be recorded be given notice they are to be recorded and give consent. Notice is given by this entry, consent to record is assumed by the individual placing a call to the operational facility.

4-1-5. Communications Release of IFR Aircraft Landing at an Airport Without an Operating Control Tower

Aircraft operating on an IFR flight plan, landing at an airport without an operating control tower will be advised to change to the airport advisory frequency when direct communications with ATC are no longer required. Towers and centers do not have nontower airport traffic and runway in use information. The instrument approach may not be aligned with the runway in use; therefore, if the information has not already been obtained, pilots should make an expeditious change to the airport advisory frequency when authorized.

REFERENCE-
AIM, Paragraph 5-4-4, Advance Information on Instrument Approach

4-1-6. Pilot Visits to Air Traffic Facilities

Pilots are encouraged to participate in local pilot/air traffic control outreach activities. However, due to security and workload concerns, requests for air traffic facility visits may not always be approved. Therefore, visit requests should be submitted through the air traffic facility as early as possible. Pilots should contact the facility and advise them of the number of persons in the group, the time and date of the proposed visit, and the primary interest of the group. The air traffic facility will provide further instructions if a request can be approved.

REFERENCE-
FAA Order 1600.69, FAA Facility Security Management Program

4-1-7. Operation Rain Check

Operation Rain Check is a program designed and managed by local air traffic control facility management. Its purpose is to familiarize pilots and aspiring pilots with the ATC system, its functions, responsibilities and benefits.

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7210.3, Paragraph 4−2−2, Pilot Education
FAA Order 1600.69, FAA Facility Security Management Program

4−1−8. Approach Control Service for VFR Arriving Aircraft

a. Numerous approach control facilities have established programs for arriving VFR aircraft to contact approach control for landing information. This information includes: wind, runway, and altimeter setting at the airport of intended landing. This information may be omitted if contained in the Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS) broadcast and the pilot states the appropriate ATIS code.

NOTE−
Pilot use of "have numbers" does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast. In addition, the controller will provide traffic advisories on a workload permitting basis.

b. Such information will be furnished upon initial contact with concerned approach control facility. The pilot will be requested to change to the *tower* frequency at a predetermined time or point, to receive further landing information.

c. Where available, use of this procedure will not hinder the operation of VFR flights by requiring excessive spacing between aircraft or devious routing.

d. Compliance with this procedure is not mandatory but pilot participation is encouraged.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 4−1−18 , Terminal Radar Services for VFR Aircraft

NOTE−
Approach control services for VFR aircraft are normally dependent on ATC radar. These services are not available during periods of a radar outage. Approach control services for VFR aircraft are limited when CENRAP is in use.

4−1−9. Traffic Advisory Practices at Airports Without Operating Control Towers

(See TBL 4−1−1.)

a. Airport Operations Without Operating Control Tower

1. There is no substitute for alertness while in the vicinity of an airport. It is essential that pilots be alert and look for other traffic and exchange traffic information when approaching or departing an airport without an operating control tower. This is of particular importance since other aircraft may not have communication capability or, in some cases, pilots may not communicate their presence or intentions when operating into or out of such airports. To achieve the greatest degree of safety, it is essential that:

(a) All radio−equipped aircraft transmit/receive on a common frequency identified for the purpose of airport advisories; and

(b) Pilots use the correct airport name, as identified in appropriate aeronautical publications, to reduce the risk of confusion when communicating their position, intentions, and/or exchanging traffic information.

2. An airport may have a full or part-time tower or FSS located on the airport, a full or part-time UNICOM station or no aeronautical station at all. There are three ways for pilots to communicate their intention and obtain airport/traffic information when operating at an airport that does not have an operating tower: by communicating with an FSS, a UNICOM operator, or by making a self-announce broadcast.

NOTE−
FSS airport advisories are available only in Alaska.

3. Many airports are now providing completely automated weather, radio check capability and airport advisory information on an automated UNICOM system. These systems offer a variety of features, typically selectable by microphone clicks, on the UNICOM frequency. Availability of the automated UNICOM will be published in the Chart Supplement U.S. and approach charts.

b. Communicating on a Common Frequency

1. The key to communicating at an airport without an operating control tower is selection of the correct common frequency. The acronym CTAF which stands for Common Traffic Advisory Frequency, is synonymous with this program. A CTAF is a frequency designated for the purpose of carrying out airport advisory practices while operating to or from an airport without an operating control tower. The CTAF may be a UNICOM, MULTICOM, FSS, or tower frequency and is identified in appropriate aeronautical publications.

NOTE−
FSS frequencies are available only in Alaska.

TBL 4−1−3
Other Frequency Usage Designated by FCC

Use	Frequency
Air-to-air communication (private fixed wing aircraft).	122.750
Helicopter air−to−air communications; air traffic control operations.	123.025
Aviation instruction, Glider, Hot Air Balloon **(not to be used for advisory service)**.	123.300 123.500
Assignment to flight test land and aircraft stations (not for air−to−air communication except for those aircraft operating in an oceanic FIR).	123.400[1] 123.450[2]

[1]This frequency is available only to itinerant stations that have a requirement to be periodically transferred to various locations.
[2]Mobile station operations on these frequencies are limited to an area within 320 km (200 mi) of an associated flight test land station.

4−1−12. Use of UNICOM for ATC Purposes

UNICOM service may be used for ATC purposes, only under the following circumstances:

a. Revision to proposed departure time.

b. Takeoff, arrival, or flight plan cancellation time.

c. ATC clearance, provided arrangements are made between the ATC facility and the UNICOM licensee to handle such messages.

4−1−13. Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS)

a. ATIS is the continuous broadcast of recorded noncontrol information in selected high activity terminal areas. Its purpose is to improve controller effectiveness and to relieve frequency congestion by automating the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information. The information is continuously broadcast over a discrete VHF radio frequency or the voice portion of a local NAVAID. Arrival ATIS transmissions on a discrete VHF radio frequency are engineered according to the individual facility requirements, which would normally be a protected service volume of 20 NM to 60 NM from the ATIS site and a maximum altitude of 25,000 feet AGL. In the case of a departure ATIS, the protected service volume cannot exceed 5 NM and 100 feet AGL. At most locations, ATIS signals may be received on the surface of the airport, but local conditions may limit the maximum ATIS reception distance and/or altitude. Pilots are urged to cooperate in the ATIS program as it relieves frequency congestion on approach control, ground control, and local control frequencies. The Chart Supplement U.S. indicates airports for which ATIS is provided.

b. ATIS information includes:

1. Airport/facility name

2. Phonetic letter code

3. Time of the latest weather sequence (UTC)

4. Weather information consisting of:

(a) Wind direction and velocity

(b) Visibility

(c) Obstructions to vision

(d) Present weather consisting of: sky condition, temperature, dew point, altimeter, a density altitude advisory when appropriate, and other pertinent remarks included in the official weather observation

5. Instrument approach and runway in use.

The ceiling/sky condition, visibility, and obstructions to vision may be omitted from the ATIS broadcast if the ceiling is above 5,000 feet and the visibility is more than 5 miles. The departure runway will only be given if different from the landing runway except at locations having a separate ATIS for departure. The broadcast may include the appropriate frequency and instructions for VFR arrivals to make initial contact with approach control. Pilots of aircraft arriving or departing the terminal area can receive the continuous ATIS broadcast at times when cockpit duties are least pressing and listen to as many repeats as desired. ATIS broadcast must be updated upon the receipt of any official hourly and special weather. A new recording will also be made when there is a change in other pertinent data such as runway change, instrument approach in use, etc.

EXAMPLE−
Dulles International information Sierra. One four zero zero zulu. Wind three five zero at eight. Visibility one zero. Ceiling four thousand five hundred broken. Temperature three four. Dew point two eight. Altimeter three zero one zero. ILS runway one right approach in use. Departing

runway three zero. Advise on initial contact you have information sierra.

c. Pilots should listen to ATIS broadcasts whenever ATIS is in operation.

d. Pilots should notify controllers on initial contact that they have received the ATIS broadcast by repeating the alphabetical code word appended to the broadcast.

EXAMPLE–
"Information Sierra received."

e. When a pilot acknowledges receipt of the ATIS broadcast, controllers may omit those items contained in the broadcast if they are current. Rapidly changing conditions will be issued by ATC and the ATIS will contain words as follows:

EXAMPLE–
"Latest ceiling/visibility/altimeter/wind/(other conditions) will be issued by approach control/tower."

NOTE–
The absence of a sky condition or ceiling and/or visibility on ATIS indicates a sky condition or ceiling of 5,000 feet or above and visibility of 5 miles or more. A remark may be made on the broadcast, "the weather is better than 5000 and 5," or the existing weather may be broadcast.

f. Controllers will issue pertinent information to pilots who do not acknowledge receipt of a broadcast or who acknowledge receipt of a broadcast which is not current.

g. To serve frequency limited aircraft, FSSs are equipped to transmit on the omnirange frequency at most en route VORs used as ATIS voice outlets. Such communication interrupts the ATIS broadcast. Pilots of aircraft equipped to receive on other FSS frequencies are encouraged to do so in order that these override transmissions may be kept to an absolute minimum.

h. While it is a good operating practice for pilots to make use of the ATIS broadcast where it is available, some pilots use the phrase "have numbers" in communications with the control tower. Use of this phrase means that the pilot has received wind, runway, and altimeter information ONLY and the tower does not have to repeat this information. It does not indicate receipt of the ATIS broadcast and should never be used for this purpose.

4–1–14. Automatic Flight Information Service (AFIS) – Alaska FSSs Only

a. AFIS is the continuous broadcast of recorded non–control information at airports in Alaska where an FSS provides local airport advisory service. Its purpose is to improve FSS specialist efficiency by reducing frequency congestion on the local airport advisory frequency.

1. The AFIS broadcast will automate the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information (for example, weather, favored runway, braking action, airport NOTAMs, etc.). The information is continuously broadcast over a discrete VHF radio frequency (usually the ASOS frequency).

2. Use of AFIS is not mandatory, but pilots who choose to utilize two–way radio communications with the FSS are urged to listen to AFIS, as it relieves frequency congestion on the local airport advisory frequency. AFIS broadcasts are updated upon receipt of any official hourly and special weather, and changes in other pertinent data.

3. When a pilot acknowledges receipt of the AFIS broadcast, FSS specialists may omit those items contained in the broadcast if they are current. When rapidly changing conditions exist, the latest ceiling, visibility, altimeter, wind or other conditions may be omitted from the AFIS and will be issued by the FSS specialist on the appropriate radio frequency.

EXAMPLE–
"Kotzebue information ALPHA. One six five five zulu. Wind, two one zero at five; visibility two, fog; ceiling one hundred overcast; temperature minus one two, dew point minus one four; altimeter three one zero five. Altimeter in excess of three one zero zero, high pressure altimeter setting procedures are in effect. Favored runway two six. Weather in Kotzebue surface area is below V–F–R minima – an ATC clearance is required. Contact Kotzebue Radio on 123.6 for traffic advisories and advise intentions. Notice to Air Missions, Hotham NDB out of service. Transcribed Weather Broadcast out of service. Advise on initial contact you have ALPHA."

NOTE–
The absence of a sky condition or ceiling and/or visibility on Alaska FSS AFIS indicates a sky condition or ceiling of 5,000 feet or above and visibility of 5 miles or more. A remark may be made on the broadcast, "the weather is better than 5000 and 5."

b. Pilots should listen to Alaska FSSs AFIS broadcasts whenever Alaska FSSs AFIS is in operation.

judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions or other aircraft. The provision of this service is contingent upon the capability of the controller to have an awareness of a situation involving unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions and uncontrolled aircraft. The issuance of a safety alert cannot be mandated, but it can be expected on a reasonable, though intermittent basis. Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, to take. This procedure is intended for use in time critical situations where aircraft safety is in question. Noncritical situations should be handled via the normal traffic alert procedures.

a. Terrain or Obstruction Alert

1. Controllers will immediately issue an alert to the pilot of an aircraft under their control when they recognize that the aircraft is at an altitude which, in their judgment, may be in an unsafe proximity to terrain/obstructions. The primary method of detecting unsafe proximity is through Mode C automatic altitude reports.

EXAMPLE−
Low altitude alert Cessna Three Four Juliet, check your altitude immediately. And if the aircraft is not yet on final approach, the MVA (MEA/MIA/MOCA) in your area is six thousand.

2. Most En Route and Terminal radar facilities have an automated function which, if operating, alerts controllers when a tracked Mode C equipped aircraft under their control is below or is predicted to be below a predetermined minimum safe altitude. This function, called Minimum Safe Altitude Warning (MSAW), is designed solely as a controller aid in detecting potentially unsafe aircraft proximity to terrain/obstructions. The radar facility will, when MSAW is operating, provide MSAW monitoring for all aircraft with an operating Mode C altitude encoding transponder that are tracked by the system and are:

(a) Operating on an IFR flight plan; or

(b) Operating VFR and have requested MSAW monitoring.

NOTE−
Pilots operating VFR may request MSAW monitoring if their aircraft are equipped with Mode C transponders.

EXAMPLE−
Apache Three Three Papa request MSAW monitoring.

3. Due to the lack of terrain and obstacle clearance data, accurate automation databases may not be available for providing MSAW information to aircraft overflying Mexico and Canada. Air traffic facilities along the United States/Mexico/Canada borders may have MSAW computer processing inhibited where accurate terrain data is not available.

b. Aircraft Conflict Alert.

1. Controllers will immediately issue an alert to the pilot of an aircraft under their control if they are aware of another aircraft which is not under their control, at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places both aircraft in unsafe proximity to each other. With the alert, when feasible, the controller will offer the pilot the position of the traffic if time permits and an alternate course(s) of action. Any alternate course(s) of action the controller may recommend to the pilot will be predicated only on other traffic being worked by the controller.

EXAMPLE−
American Three, traffic alert, (position of traffic, if time permits), advise you turn right/left heading (degrees) and/or climb/descend to (altitude) immediately.

4−1−17. Radar Assistance to VFR Aircraft

a. Radar equipped FAA ATC facilities provide radar assistance and navigation service (vectors) to VFR aircraft provided the aircraft can communicate with the facility, are within radar coverage, and can be radar identified.

b. Pilots should clearly understand that authorization to proceed in accordance with such radar navigational assistance does not constitute authorization for the pilot to violate CFRs. In effect, assistance provided is on the basis that navigational guidance information issued is advisory in nature and the job of flying the aircraft safely, remains with the pilot.

c. In many cases, controllers will be unable to determine if flight into instrument conditions will result from their instructions. To avoid possible hazards resulting from being vectored into IFR conditions, pilots should keep controllers advised of the weather conditions in which they are operating and along the course ahead.

d. Radar navigation assistance (vectors) may be initiated by the controller when one of the following conditions exist:

1. The controller suggests the vector and the pilot concurs.

2. A special program has been established and vectoring service has been advertised.

3. In the controller's judgment the vector is necessary for air safety.

e. Radar navigation assistance (vectors) and other radar derived information may be provided in response to pilot requests. Many factors, such as limitations of radar, volume of traffic, communications frequency, congestion, and controller workload could prevent the controller from providing it. Controllers have complete discretion for determining if they are able to provide the service in a particular case. Their decision not to provide the service in a particular case is not subject to question.

4−1−18. Terminal Radar Services for VFR Aircraft

a. Basic Radar Service:

1. In addition to the use of radar for the control of IFR aircraft, all commissioned radar facilities provide the following basic radar services for VFR aircraft:

(a) Safety alerts.

(b) Traffic advisories.

(c) Limited radar vectoring (on a workload permitting basis).

(d) Sequencing at locations where procedures have been established for this purpose and/or when covered by a Letter of Agreement.

NOTE−
When the stage services were developed, two basic radar services (traffic advisories and limited vectoring) were identified as "Stage I." This definition became unnecessary and the term "Stage I" was eliminated from use. The term "Stage II" has been eliminated in conjunction with the airspace reclassification, and sequencing services to locations with local procedures and/or letters of agreement to provide this service have been included in basic services to VFR aircraft. These basic services will still be provided by all terminal radar facilities whether they include Class B, Class C, Class D or Class E airspace. "Stage III" services have been replaced with "Class B" and "TRSA" service where applicable.

2. Vectoring service may be provided when requested by the pilot or with pilot concurrence when suggested by ATC.

3. Pilots of arriving aircraft should contact approach control on the publicized frequency and give their position, altitude, aircraft call sign, type aircraft, radar beacon code (if transponder equipped), destination, and request traffic information.

4. Approach control will issue wind and runway, except when the pilot states "have numbers" or this information is contained in the ATIS broadcast and the pilot states that the current ATIS information has been received. Traffic information is provided on a workload permitting basis. Approach control will specify the time or place at which the pilot is to contact the tower on local control frequency for further landing information. Radar service is automatically terminated and the aircraft need not be advised of termination when an arriving VFR aircraft receiving radar services to a tower−controlled airport where basic radar service is provided has landed, or to all other airports, is instructed to change to tower or advisory frequency. (See FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, paragraph 5−1−9, Radar Service Termination.)

5. Sequencing for VFR aircraft is available at certain terminal locations (see locations listed in the Chart Supplement U.S.). The purpose of the service is to adjust the flow of arriving VFR and IFR aircraft into the traffic pattern in a safe and orderly manner and to provide radar traffic information to departing VFR aircraft. Pilot participation is urged but is not mandatory. Traffic information is provided on a workload permitting basis. Standard radar separation between VFR or between VFR and IFR aircraft is not provided.

(a) Pilots of arriving VFR aircraft should initiate radio contact on the publicized frequency with approach control when approximately 25 miles from the airport at which sequencing services are being provided. On initial contact by VFR aircraft, approach control will assume that sequencing service is requested. After radar contact is established, the pilot may use pilot navigation to enter the traffic pattern or, depending on traffic conditions, approach control may provide the pilot with routings or vectors necessary for proper sequencing with other participating VFR and IFR traffic en route to the airport. When a flight is positioned behind a preceding aircraft and the pilot reports having that aircraft in sight, the pilot will be instructed to follow the preceding aircraft. THE ATC INSTRUCTION TO FOLLOW THE PRECEDING AIRCRAFT DOES

(c) Class E airspace at and above 10,000 feet MSL within the 48 contiguous states and the District of Columbia, excluding the airspace at and below 2,500 feet AGL;

(d) Within 30 miles of a Class B airspace primary airport, below 10,000 feet MSL (commonly referred to as the "Mode C Veil");

(e) For ADS−B Out: Class E airspace at and above 3,000 feet MSL over the Gulf of Mexico from the coastline of the United States out to 12 nautical miles.

NOTE−
The airspace described in (e) above is specified in 14 CFR § 91.225 for ADS−B Out requirements. However, 14 CFR § 91.215 does not include this airspace for ATC transponder requirements.

(f) Transponder and ADS−B Out requirements do not apply to any aircraft that was not originally certificated with an electrical system, or that has not subsequently been certified with such a system installed, including balloons and gliders. These aircraft may conduct operations without a transponder or ADS−B Out when operating:

(1) Outside any Class B or Class C airspace area; and

(2) Below the altitude of the ceiling of a Class B or Class C airspace area designated for an airport, or 10,000 feet MSL, whichever is lower.

3. 14 CFR Section 99.13 requires all aircraft flying into, within, or across the contiguous U.S. ADIZ be equipped with a Mode C or Mode S transponder. Balloons, gliders and aircraft not equipped with an engine−driven electrical system are excepted from this requirement.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Chapter 5, Section 6, National Security and Interception Procedures.

4. Pilots must ensure that their aircraft transponder/ADS−B is operating on an appropriate ATC−assigned VFR/IFR code with altitude reporting enabled when operating in such airspace. If in doubt about the operational status of either feature of your transponder while airborne, contact the nearest ATC facility or FSS and they will advise you what facility you should contact for determining the status of your equipment.

5. In−flight requests for "immediate" deviation from the transponder requirements may be approved by controllers only for failed equipment, and only when the flight will continue IFR or when weather conditions prevent VFR descent and continued VFR flight in airspace not affected by the CFRs. All other requests for deviation should be made at least 1 hour before the proposed operation by contacting the nearest Flight Service or Air Traffic facility in person or by telephone. The nearest ARTCC will normally be the controlling agency and is responsible for coordinating requests involving deviations in other ARTCC areas.

6. In−flight requests for "immediate" deviation from the ADS−B Out requirements may be approved by ATC only for failed equipment, and may be accommodated based on workload, alternate surveillance availability, or other factors. All other requests for deviation must be made at least 1 hour before the proposed operation, following the procedures contained in Advisory Circular (AC) 90−114, Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast Operations.

g. Transponder/ADS−B Operation Under Visual Flight Rules (VFR)

1. Unless otherwise instructed by an ATC facility, adjust transponder/ADS−B to reply on Mode 3/A Code 1200 regardless of altitude.

NOTE−
1. *Firefighting aircraft not in contact with ATC may squawk 1255 in lieu of 1200 while en route to, from, or within the designated firefighting area(s).*

2. *VFR aircraft flying authorized SAR missions for the USAF or USCG may be advised to squawk 1277 in lieu of 1200 while en route to, from, or within the designated search area.*

3. *VFR gliders should squawk 1202 in lieu of 1200.*

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7110.66, National Beacon Code Allocation Plan.

2. When required to operate their transponder/ADS−B, pilots must always operate that equipment with altitude reporting enabled, unless otherwise instructed by ATC or unless the installed equipment has not been tested and calibrated as required by 14 CFR Section 91.217. If deactivation is required, turn off altitude reporting.

3. When participating in a VFR formation flight that is not receiving ATC services, only the lead aircraft should operate their transponder and ADS−B Out. All other aircraft should disable transponder and ADS−B transmissions once established within the formation.

NOTE−
If the formation flight is receiving ATC services, pilots can expect ATC to direct all non−lead aircraft to STOP SQUAWK, and should not do so until instructed.

h. Cooperative Surveillance Phraseology

Air traffic controllers, both civil and military, will use the following phraseology when referring to operation of cooperative ATC surveillance equipment. Except as noted, the following ATC instructions do not apply to military transponders operating in other than Mode 3/A/C/S.

1. SQUAWK (number). Operate radar beacon transponder/ADS−B on designated code with altitude reporting enabled.

2. IDENT. Engage the "IDENT" feature (military I/P) of the transponder/ADS−B.

3. SQUAWK (number) AND IDENT. Operate transponder/ADS−B on specified code with altitude reporting enabled, and engage the "IDENT" (military I/P) feature.

4. SQUAWK STANDBY. Switch transponder/ADS−B to standby position.

5. SQUAWK NORMAL. Resume normal transponder/ADS−B operation on previously assigned code. (Used after "SQUAWK STANDBY," or by military after specific transponder tests).

6. SQUAWK ALTITUDE. Activate Mode C with automatic altitude reporting.

7. STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK. Turn off automatic altitude reporting.

8. STOP SQUAWK (Mode in use). Stop transponder and ADS−B Out transmissions, or switch off only specified mode of the aircraft transponder (military).

9. SQUAWK MAYDAY. Operate transponder/ADS−B in the emergency position (Mode A Code 7700 for civil transponder. Mode 3 Code 7700 and emergency feature for military transponder.)

10. SQUAWK VFR. Operate radar beacon transponder/ADS−B on Code 1200 in the Mode A/3, or other appropriate VFR code, with altitude reporting enabled.

4−1−21. Airport Reservation Operations and Special Traffic Management Programs

This section describes procedures for obtaining required airport reservations at airports designated by the FAA and for airports operating under Special Traffic Management Programs.

a. Slot Controlled Airports.

1. The FAA may adopt rules to require advance operations for unscheduled operations at certain airports. In addition to the information in the rules adopted by the FAA, a listing of the airports and relevant information will be maintained on the FAA website listed below.

2. The FAA has established an Airport Reservation Office (ARO) to receive and process reservations for unscheduled flights at the slot controlled airports. The ARO uses the Enhanced Computer Voice Reservation System (e−CVRS) to allocate reservations. Reservations will be available beginning 72 hours in advance of the operation at the slot controlled airport. Standby lists are not maintained. Flights with declared emergencies do not require reservations. Refer to the website or touch−tone phone interface for the current listing of slot controlled airports, limitations, and reservation procedures.

NOTE−
The web interface/telephone numbers to obtain a reservation for unscheduled operations at a slot controlled airport are:
1. http://www.fly.faa.gov/ecvrs.
2. Touch−tone: 1−800−875−9694
3. Trouble number: 540−422−4246.

3. For more detailed information on operations and reservation procedures at a Slot Controlled Airport, please see 14 CFR Part 93, Subpart K – High Density Traffic Airports.

b. Special Traffic Management Programs (STMP).

1. Special procedures may be established when a location requires special traffic handling to accommodate above normal traffic demand (for example, the Indianapolis 500, Super Bowl, etc.) or reduced airport capacity (for example, airport runway/taxiway closures for airport construction). The special procedures may remain in effect until the problem has been resolved or until local traffic management procedures can handle the situation and a need for special handling no longer exists.

2. There will be two methods available for obtaining slot reservations through the ATCSCC: the web interface and the touch−tone interface. If these methods are used, a NOTAM will be issued relaying the website address and toll free telephone number. Be sure to check current NOTAMs to determine: what airports are included in the STMP, the dates and times reservations are required, the time limits for reservation requests, the point of contact for reservations, and any other instructions.

NOTE−
The telephone numbers/web address to obtain a STMP slot are:
1.Touch−tone interface: 1−800−875−9755.
2. Web interface: www.fly.faa.gov.
3. Trouble number: 540−422−4246.

c. Users may contact the ARO at (540) 422−4246 if they have a problem making a reservation or have a question concerning the slot controlled airport/ STMP regulations or procedures.

d. Making Reservations.

1. Internet Users. Detailed information and User Instruction Guides for using the Web interface to the reservation systems are available on the websites for the slot controlled airports (e−CVRS), http://www.fly.faa.gov/ecvrs; and STMPs (e−STMP), http://www.fly.faa.gov/estmp.

4−1−22. Requests for Waivers and Authorizations from Title 14, Code of Federal Regulations (14 CFR)

a. Requests for a Certificate of Waiver or Authorization (FAA Form 7711−2), or requests for renewal of a waiver or authorization, may be accepted by any FAA facility and will be forwarded, if necessary, to the appropriate office having waiver authority.

b. The grant of a Certificate of Waiver or Authorization from 14 CFR constitutes relief from specific regulations, to the degree and for the period of time specified in the certificate, and does not waive any state law or local ordinance. Should the proposed operations conflict with any state law or local ordinance, or require permission of local authorities or property owners, it is the applicant's responsibility to resolve the matter. The holder of a waiver is responsible for compliance with the terms of the waiver and its provisions.

c. A waiver may be canceled at any time by the Administrator, the person authorized to grant the waiver, or the representative designated to monitor a specific operation. In such case either written notice of cancellation, or written confirmation of a verbal cancellation will be provided to the holder.

4−1−23. Weather Systems Processor

The Weather Systems Processor (WSP) was developed for use in the National Airspace System to provide weather processor enhancements to selected Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR)−9 facilities. The WSP provides Air Traffic with warnings of hazardous wind shear and microbursts. The WSP also provides users with terminal area 6−level weather, storm cell locations and movement, as well as the location and predicted future position and intensity of wind shifts that may affect airport operations.

2. At times, a controller/specialist may be working a sector with multiple frequency assignments. In order to eliminate unnecessary verbiage and to free the controller/specialist for higher priority transmissions, the controller/specialist may request the pilot "(Identification), change to my frequency 134.5." This phrase should alert the pilot that the controller/specialist is only changing frequencies, not controller/specialist, and that initial callup phraseology may be abbreviated.

EXAMPLE−
"United Two Twenty−Two on one three four point five" or "one three four point five, United Two Twenty−Two."

e. Compliance with Frequency Changes.

When instructed by ATC to change frequencies, select the new frequency as soon as possible unless instructed to make the change at a specific time, fix, or altitude. A delay in making the change could result in an untimely receipt of important information. If you are instructed to make the frequency change at a specific time, fix, or altitude, monitor the frequency you are on until reaching the specified time, fix, or altitudes unless instructed otherwise by ATC.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5−3−1 , ARTCC Communications

4−2−4. Aircraft Call Signs

a. Precautions in the Use of Call Signs.

1. Improper use of call signs can result in pilots executing a clearance intended for another aircraft. Call signs should *never be abbreviated on an initial contact or at any time when other aircraft call signs have similar numbers/sounds or identical letters/number;* e.g., Cessna 6132F, Cessna 1622F, Baron 123F, Cherokee 7732F, etc.

EXAMPLE−
Assume that a controller issues an approach clearance to an aircraft at the bottom of a holding stack and an aircraft with a similar call sign (at the top of the stack) acknowledges the clearance with the last two or three numbers of the aircraft's call sign. If the aircraft at the bottom of the stack did not hear the clearance and intervene, flight safety would be affected, and there would be no reason for either the controller or pilot to suspect that anything is wrong. This kind of "human factors" error can strike swiftly and is extremely difficult to rectify.

2. Pilots, therefore, must be certain that aircraft identification is complete and clearly identified before taking action on an ATC clearance. ATC specialists will not abbreviate call signs of air carrier or other civil aircraft having authorized call signs. ATC specialists may initiate abbreviated call signs of other aircraft by using the *prefix and the last three digits/letters* of the aircraft identification after communications are established. The pilot may use the abbreviated call sign in subsequent contacts with the ATC specialist. When aware of similar/identical call signs, ATC specialists will take action to minimize errors by emphasizing certain numbers/letters, by repeating the entire call sign, by repeating the prefix, or by asking pilots to use a different call sign temporarily. Pilots should use the phrase "VERIFY CLEARANCE FOR (your complete call sign)" if doubt exists concerning proper identity.

3. Civil aircraft pilots should state the aircraft type, model or manufacturer's name, followed by the digits/letters of the registration number. When the aircraft manufacturer's name or model is stated, the prefix "N" is dropped; e.g., Aztec Two Four Six Four Alpha.

EXAMPLE−
1. *Bonanza Six Five Five Golf.*

2. *Breezy Six One Three Romeo Experimental (omit "Experimental" after initial contact).*

4. Air Taxi or other commercial operators *not* having FAA authorized call signs should prefix their normal identification with the phonetic word "Tango."

EXAMPLE−
Tango Aztec Two Four Six Four Alpha.

5. Air carriers and commuter air carriers having FAA authorized call signs should identify themselves by stating the complete call sign (using group form for the numbers) and the word "super" or "heavy" if appropriate.

EXAMPLE−
1. *United Twenty−Five Heavy.*

2. *Midwest Commuter Seven Eleven.*

6. Military aircraft use a variety of systems including serial numbers, word call signs, and combinations of letters/numbers. Examples include Army Copter 48931; Air Force 61782; REACH 31792; Pat 157; Air Evac 17652; Navy Golf Alfa Kilo 21; Marine 4 Charlie 36, etc.

b. Air Ambulance Flights.

Because of the priority afforded air ambulance flights in the ATC system, extreme discretion is necessary when using the term "MEDEVAC." It is only intended for those missions of an urgent medical nature and to be utilized only for that portion of the flight requiring priority handling. It is important for ATC to be aware of a flight's MEDEVAC status, and it is the pilot's responsibility to ensure that this information is provided to ATC.

1. To receive priority handling from ATC, the pilot must verbally identify the flight in radio transmissions by stating "MEDEVAC" followed by the FAA authorized call sign (ICAO 3LD, US Special, or local) or the aircraft civil "N" registration numbers/letters.

EXAMPLE−

If the aircraft identification of the flight indicates DAL51, the pilot states "MEDEVAC Delta Fifty One."

If the aircraft identification of the flight indicates MDSTR1, the pilot states "MEDEVAC Medstar One."

If the aircraft identification of the flight indicates N123G or LN123G, the pilot states "MEDEVAC One Two Three Golf".

2. If requested by the pilot, ATC will provide additional assistance (e.g., landline notifications) to expedite ground handling of patients, vital organs, or urgently needed medical materials. When possible make these requests to ATC via methods other than through ATC radio frequencies.

3. MEDEVAC flights may include:

(a) Civilian air ambulance flights responding to medical emergencies (e.g., first call to an accident scene, carrying patients, organ donors, organs, or other urgently needed lifesaving medical material).

(b) Air carrier and air taxi flights responding to medical emergencies. The nature of these medical emergency flights usually concerns the transportation of urgently needed lifesaving medical materials or vital organs, but can include inflight medical emergencies. It is imperative that the company/pilot determine, by the nature/urgency of the specific medical cargo, if priority ATC assistance is required.

4. When filing a flight plan, pilots may include "L" for MEDEVAC with the aircraft registration letters/digits and/or include "MEDEVAC" in Item 11 (Remarks) of the flight plan or Item 18 (Other Information) of an international flight plan. However, ATC will only use these flight plan entries for informational purposes or as a visual indicator. ATC will only provide priority handling when the pilot verbally identifies the "MEDEVAC" status of the flight as described in subparagraph b1 above.

NOTE−

Civilian air ambulance aircraft operating VFR and without a filed flight plan are eligible for priority handling in accordance with subparagraph b1 above.

5. ATC will also provide priority handling to HOSP and AIR EVAC flights when verbally requested. These aircraft may file "HOSP" or "AIR EVAC" in either Item 11 (Remarks) of the flight plan or Item 18 of an international flight plan. For aircraft identification in radio transmissions, civilian pilots will use normal call signs when filing "HOSP" and military pilots will use the "EVAC" call sign.

c. Student Pilots Radio Identification.

1. The FAA desires to help student pilots in acquiring sufficient practical experience in the environment in which they will be required to operate. To receive additional assistance while operating in areas of concentrated air traffic, student pilots need only identify themselves as a student pilot during their initial call to an FAA radio facility.

EXAMPLE−

Dayton tower, Fleetwing One Two Three Four, student pilot.

2. This special identification will alert FAA ATC personnel and enable them to provide student pilots with such extra assistance and consideration as they may need. It is recommended that student pilots identify themselves as such, on initial contact with each clearance delivery prior to taxiing, ground control, tower, approach and departure control frequency, or FSS contact.

4−2−5. Description of Interchange or Leased Aircraft

a. Controllers issue traffic information based on familiarity with airline equipment and color/markings. When an air carrier dispatches a flight using another company's equipment and the pilot does not advise the terminal ATC facility, the possible confusion in aircraft identification can compromise safety.

b. Pilots flying an "interchange" or "leased" aircraft not bearing the colors/markings of the company operating the aircraft should inform the terminal ATC facility on first contact the name of the operating company and trip number, followed by the company name as displayed on the aircraft, and aircraft type.

EXAMPLE–
Air Cal Three Eleven, United (interchange/lease), Boeing Seven Two Seven.

4–2–6. Ground Station Call Signs

Pilots, when calling a ground station, should begin with the name of the facility being called followed by the type of the facility being called as indicated in TBL 4–2–1.

TBL 4–2–1
Calling a Ground Station

Facility	Call Sign
Airport UNICOM	"Shannon UNICOM"
FAA Flight Service Station	"Chicago Radio"
Airport Traffic Control Tower	"Augusta Tower"
Clearance Delivery Position (IFR)	"Dallas Clearance Delivery"
Ground Control Position in Tower	"Miami Ground"
Radar or Nonradar Approach Control Position	"Oklahoma City Approach"
Radar Departure Control Position	"St. Louis Departure"
FAA Air Route Traffic Control Center	"Washington Center"

4–2–7. Phonetic Alphabet

The International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO) phonetic alphabet is used by FAA personnel when communications conditions are such that the information cannot be readily received without their use. ATC facilities may also request pilots to use phonetic letter equivalents when aircraft with similar sounding identifications are receiving communications on the same frequency. Pilots should use the phonetic alphabet when identifying their aircraft during initial contact with air traffic control facilities. Additionally, use the phonetic equivalents for single letters and to spell out groups of letters or difficult words during adverse communications conditions. (See TBL 4–2–2.)

TBL 4–2–2
Phonetic Alphabet/Morse Code

Character	Morse Code	Telephony	Phonic (Pronunciation)
A	—	Alfa	(AL–FAH)
B	— • • •	Bravo	(BRAH–VOH)
C	— • — •	Charlie	(CHAR–LEE) or (SHAR–LEE)
D	— • •	Delta	(DELL–TAH)
E		Echo	(ECK–OH)
F	• — •	Foxtrot	(FOKS–TROT)
G	— —	Golf	(GOLF)
H	• • •	Hotel	(HOH–TEL)
I	•	India	(IN–DEE–AH)
J	— — —	Juliett	(JEW–LEE–ETT)
K	— • —	Kilo	(KEY–LOH)
L	— •	Lima	(LEE–MAH)
M	— —	Mike	(MIKE)
N	—	November	(NO–VEM–BER)
O	— — —	Oscar	(OSS–CAH)
P	— — •	Papa	(PAH–PAH)
Q	— — —	Quebec	(KEH–BECK)
R	— •	Romeo	(ROW–ME–OH)
S	• •	Sierra	(SEE–AIR–RAH)
T	—	Tango	(TANG–GO)
U	• —	Uniform	(YOU–NEE–FORM) or (OO–NEE–FORM)
V	• • —	Victor	(VIK–TAH)
W	— —	Whiskey	(WISS–KEY)
X	— • • —	Xray	(ECKS–RAY)
Y	— • — —	Yankee	(YANG–KEY)
Z	— — • •	Zulu	(ZOO–LOO)
1	— — — —	One	(WUN)
2	— — —	Two	(TOO)
3	— —	Three	(TREE)
4	—	Four	(FOW–ER)
5		Five	(FIFE)
6	—	Six	(SIX)
7	— —	Seven	(SEV–EN)
8	— — —	Eight	(AIT)
9	— — — —	Nine	(NIN–ER)
0	— — — — —	Zero	(ZEE–RO)

4–2–8. Figures

a. Figures indicating hundreds and thousands in round number, as for ceiling heights, and upper wind levels up to 9,900 must be spoken in accordance with the following.

EXAMPLE–
1. *500 . . . . five hundred*
2. *4,500 . . . . . . four thousand five hundred*

b. Numbers above 9,900 must be spoken by separating the digits preceding the word "thousand."

EXAMPLE−
1. *10,000 . . . . . one zero thousand*

2. *13,500 . . . . . one three thousand five hundred*

c. Transmit airway or jet route numbers as follows.

EXAMPLE−
1. *V12 . . . . Victor Twelve*

2. *J533 . . . . J Five Thirty−Three*

d. All other numbers must be transmitted by pronouncing each digit.

EXAMPLE−
10 . . . . one zero

e. When a radio frequency contains a decimal point, the decimal point is spoken as "POINT."

EXAMPLE−
122.1 . . . . one two two point one

NOTE−
ICAO procedures require the decimal point be spoken as "DECIMAL." The FAA will honor such usage by military aircraft and all other aircraft required to use ICAO procedures.

4−2−9. Altitudes and Flight Levels

a. Up to but not including 18,000 feet MSL, state the separate digits of the thousands plus the hundreds if appropriate.

EXAMPLE−
1. *12,000 . . . . . one two thousand*

2. *12,500 . . . . . one two thousand five hundred*

b. At and above 18,000 feet MSL (FL 180), state the words "flight level" followed by the separate digits of the flight level.

EXAMPLE−
1. *190 . . . . Flight Level One Niner Zero*

2. *275 . . . . Flight Level Two Seven Five*

4−2−10. Directions

The three digits of bearing, course, heading, or wind direction should always be magnetic. The word "true" must be added when it applies.

EXAMPLE−
1. *(Magnetic course) 005 . . . . . . zero zero five*

2. *(True course) 050 . . . . zero five zero true*

3. *(Magnetic bearing) 360 . . . . . three six zero*

4. *(Magnetic heading) 100 . . . . . heading one zero zero*

5. *(Wind direction) 220 . . . . wind two two zero*

4−2−11. Speeds

The separate digits of the speed followed by the word "KNOTS." Except, controllers may omit the word "KNOTS" when using speed adjustment procedures; e.g., "REDUCE/INCREASE SPEED TO TWO FIVE ZERO."

EXAMPLE−
(Speed) 250 . . . . two five zero knots
(Speed) 190 . . . . one niner zero knots

The separate digits of the Mach Number preceded by "Mach."

EXAMPLE−
(Mach number) 1.5 . . . . Mach one point five
(Mach number) 0.64 . . . . Mach point six four
(Mach number) 0.7 . . . . Mach point seven

4−2−12. Time

a. FAA uses Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) for all operations. The word "local" or the time zone equivalent must be used to denote local when local time is given during radio and telephone communications. The term "Zulu" may be used to denote UTC.

EXAMPLE−
0920 UTC . . . . . zero niner two zero,
zero one two zero pacific or local,
or one twenty AM

b. To convert from Standard Time to Coordinated Universal Time:

TBL 4−2−3
Standard Time to Coordinated Universal Time

Eastern Standard Time	Add 5 hours
Central Standard Time	Add 6 hours
Mountain Standard Time	Add 7 hours
Pacific Standard Time	Add 8 hours
Alaska Standard Time	Add 9 hours
Hawaii Standard Time	Add 10 hours

NOTE−
For daylight time, subtract 1 hour.

c. A reference may be made to local daylight or standard time utilizing the 24−hour clock system. The hour is indicated by the first two figures and the minutes by the last two figures.

EXAMPLE−
0000 . . . . zero zero zero zero
0920 . . . . zero niner two zero

d. Time may be stated in minutes only (two figures) in radiotelephone communications when no misunderstanding is likely to occur.

e. Current time in use at a station is stated in the nearest quarter minute in order that pilots may use this information for time checks. Fractions of a quarter minute less than 8 seconds are stated as the preceding quarter minute; fractions of a quarter minute of 8 seconds or more are stated as the succeeding quarter minute.

EXAMPLE−
0929:05 . . . . . . time, zero niner two niner
0929:10 . . . . . . time, zero niner two niner and one−quarter

4−2−13. Communications with Tower when Aircraft Transmitter or Receiver or Both are Inoperative

a. Arriving Aircraft.

1. Receiver inoperative.

(a) If you have reason to believe your receiver is inoperative, remain outside or above the Class D surface area until the direction and flow of traffic has been determined; then, advise the tower of your type aircraft, position, altitude, intention to land, and request that you be controlled with light signals.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 4−3−13 , Traffic Control Light Signals

(b) When you are approximately 3 to 5 miles from the airport, advise the tower of your position and join the airport traffic pattern. From this point on, watch the tower for light signals. Thereafter, if a complete pattern is made, transmit your position downwind and/or turning base leg.

2. Transmitter inoperative. Remain outside or above the Class D surface area until the direction and flow of traffic has been determined; then, join the airport traffic pattern. Monitor the primary local control frequency as depicted on Sectional Charts for landing or traffic information, and look for a light signal which may be addressed to your aircraft. During hours of daylight, acknowledge tower transmissions or light signals by rocking your wings. At night, acknowledge by blinking the landing or navigation lights. To acknowledge tower transmissions during daylight hours, hovering helicopters will turn in the direction of the controlling facility and flash the landing light. While in flight, helicopters should show their acknowledgement of receiving a transmission by making shallow banks in opposite directions. At night, helicopters will acknowledge receipt of transmissions by flashing either the landing or the search light.

3. Transmitter and receiver inoperative. Remain outside or above the Class D surface area until the direction and flow of traffic has been determined; then, join the airport traffic pattern and maintain visual contact with the tower to receive light signals. Acknowledge light signals as noted above.

b. Departing Aircraft. If you experience radio failure prior to leaving the parking area, make every effort to have the equipment repaired. If you are unable to have the malfunction repaired, call the tower by telephone and request authorization to depart without two-way radio communications. If tower authorization is granted, you will be given departure information and requested to monitor the tower frequency or watch for light signals as appropriate. During daylight hours, acknowledge tower transmissions or light signals by moving the ailerons or rudder. At night, acknowledge by blinking the landing or navigation lights. If radio malfunction occurs after departing the parking area, watch the tower for light signals or monitor tower frequency.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Section 91.125 and 14 CFR Section 91.129.

4−2−14. Communications for VFR Flights

a. FSSs and Supplemental Weather Service Locations (SWSL) are allocated frequencies for different functions; for example, in Alaska, certain FSSs provide Local Airport Advisory on 123.6 MHz or other frequencies which can be found in the Chart Supplement U.S. If you are in doubt as to what frequency to use, 122.2 MHz is assigned to the majority of FSSs as a common en route simplex frequency.

NOTE−
In order to expedite communications, state the frequency being used and the aircraft location during initial callup.

EXAMPLE−
Dayton radio, November One Two Three Four Five on one two two point two, over Springfield V−O−R, over.

b. Certain VOR voice channels are being utilized for recorded broadcasts; for example, ATIS. These services and appropriate frequencies are listed in the Chart Supplement U.S. On VFR flights, pilots are urged to monitor these frequencies. When in contact with a control facility, notify the controller if you plan to leave the frequency to monitor these broadcasts.

4−3−7. Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Detection Systems

Low Level Wind Shear Alert System (LLWAS), Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR), Weather Systems Processor (WSP), and Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS) display information on hazardous wind shear and microburst activity in the vicinity of an airport to air traffic controllers who relay this information to pilots.

a. LLWAS provides wind shear alert and gust front information but does not provide microburst alerts. The LLWAS is designed to detect low level wind shear conditions around the periphery of an airport. It does not detect wind shear beyond that limitation. Controllers will provide this information to pilots by giving the pilot the airport wind followed by the boundary wind.

EXAMPLE−
Wind shear alert, airport wind 230 at 8, south boundary wind 170 at 20.

b. LLWAS "network expansion," (LLWAS NE) and LLWAS Relocation/Sustainment (LLWAS−RS) are systems integrated with TDWR. These systems provide the capability of detecting microburst alerts and wind shear alerts. Controllers will issue the appropriate wind shear alerts or microburst alerts. In some of these systems controllers also have the ability to issue wind information oriented to the threshold or departure end of the runway.

EXAMPLE−
Runway 17 arrival microburst alert, 40 knot loss 3 mile final.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 7−1−24, Microbursts.

c. More advanced systems are in the field or being developed such as ITWS. ITWS provides alerts for microbursts, wind shear, and significant thunderstorm activity. ITWS displays wind information oriented to the threshold or departure end of the runway.

d. The WSP provides weather processor enhancements to selected Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR)−9 facilities. The WSP provides Air Traffic with detection and alerting of hazardous weather such as wind shear, microbursts, and significant thunderstorm activity. The WSP displays terminal area 6 level weather, storm cell locations and movement, as well as the location and predicted future position and intensity of wind shifts that may affect airport operations. Controllers will receive and issue alerts based on Areas Noted for Attention (ARENA). An ARENA extends on the runway center line from a 3 mile final to the runway to a 2 mile departure.

e. An airport equipped with the LLWAS, ITWS, or WSP is so indicated in the Chart Supplement U.S. under Weather Data Sources for that particular airport.

4−3−8. Braking Action Reports and Advisories

a. When available, ATC furnishes pilots the quality of braking action received from pilots. The quality of braking action is described by the terms "good," "good to medium," "medium," "medium to poor," "poor," and "nil." When pilots report the quality of braking action by using the terms noted above, they should use descriptive terms that are easily understood, such as, "braking action poor the first/last half of the runway," together with the particular type of aircraft.

b. FICON NOTAMs will provide contaminant measurements for paved runways; however, a FICON NOTAM for braking action will only be used for non−paved runway surfaces, taxiways, and aprons. These NOTAMs are classified according to the most critical term ("good to medium," "medium," "medium to poor," and "poor").

1. FICON NOTAM reporting of a braking condition for paved runway surfaces is not permissible by Federally Obligated Airports or those airports certificated under 14 CFR Part 139.

2. A "NIL" braking condition at these airports must be mitigated by closure of the affected surface. Do not include the type of vehicle in the FICON NOTAM.

c. When tower controllers receive runway braking action reports which include the terms medium, poor, or nil, or whenever weather conditions are conducive to deteriorating or rapidly changing runway braking conditions, the tower will include on the ATIS broadcast the statement, *"BRAKING ACTION ADVISORIES ARE IN EFFECT."*

d. During the time that braking action advisories are in effect, ATC will issue the most recent braking action report for the runway in use to each arriving and departing aircraft. Pilots should be prepared for deteriorating braking conditions and should request current runway condition information if not issued by controllers. Pilots should also be prepared to provide a descriptive runway condition report to controllers after landing.

4−3−9. Runway Condition Reports

a. Aircraft braking coefficient is dependent upon the surface friction between the tires on the aircraft wheels and the pavement surface. Less friction means less aircraft braking coefficient and less aircraft braking response.

b. Runway condition code (RwyCC) values range from 1 (poor) to 6 (dry). For frozen contaminants on runway surfaces, a runway condition code reading of 4 indicates the level when braking deceleration or directional control is between good and medium.

NOTE−
A RwyCC of "0" is used to delineate a braking action report of NIL and is prohibited from being reported in a FICON NOTAM.

c. Airport management should conduct runway condition assessments on wet runways or runways covered with compacted snow and/or ice.

1. Numerical readings may be obtained by using the Runway Condition Assessment Matrix (RCAM). The RCAM provides the airport operator with data to complete the report that includes the following:

(a) Runway(s) in use

(b) Time of the assessment

(c) Runway condition codes for each zone (touchdown, mid−point, roll−out)

(d) Pilot−reported braking action report (if available)

(e) The contaminant (for example, wet snow, dry snow, slush, ice, etc.)

2. Assessments for each zone (see 4−3−9c1(c)) will be issued in the direction of takeoff and landing on the runway, ranging from "1" to "6" to describe contaminated surfaces.

NOTE−
A RwyCC of "0" is used to delineate a braking action report of NIL and is prohibited from being reported in a FICON NOTAM.

3. When any 1 or more runway condition codes are reported as less than 6, airport management must notify ATC for dissemination to pilots.

4. Controllers will not issue runway condition codes when all 3 segments of a runway are reporting values of 6.

d. When runway condition code reports are provided by airport management, the ATC facility providing approach control or local airport advisory must provide the report to all pilots.

e. Pilots should use runway condition code information with other knowledge including aircraft performance characteristics, type, and weight, previous experience, wind conditions, and aircraft tire type (such as bias ply vs. radial constructed) to determine runway suitability.

f. The Runway Condition Assessment Matrix identifies the descriptive terms "good," "good to medium," "medium," "medium to poor," "poor," and "nil" used in braking action reports.

REFERENCE−
Advisory Circular AC 91−79A (Revision 1), Mitigating the Risks of a Runway Overrun Upon Landing, Appendix 1

4−3−18. Taxiing

a. General. Approval must be obtained prior to moving an aircraft or vehicle onto the movement area during the hours an Airport Traffic Control Tower is in operation.

1. Always state your position on the airport when calling the tower for taxi instructions.

2. The movement area is normally described in local bulletins issued by the airport manager or control tower. These bulletins may be found in FSSs, fixed base operators offices, air carrier offices, and operations offices.

3. The control tower also issues bulletins describing areas where they cannot provide ATC service due to nonvisibility or other reasons.

4. A clearance must be obtained prior to taxiing on a runway, taking off, or landing during the hours an Airport Traffic Control Tower is in operation.

5. A clearance must be obtained prior to crossing any runway. ATC will issue an explicit clearance for all runway crossings.

6. When assigned a takeoff runway, ATC will first specify the runway, issue taxi instructions, and state any hold short instructions or runway crossing clearances if the taxi route will cross a runway. This does not authorize the aircraft to "enter" or "cross" the assigned departure runway at any point. In order to preclude misunderstandings in radio communications, ATC will not use the word "cleared" in conjunction with authorization for aircraft to taxi.

7. When issuing taxi instructions to any point other than an assigned takeoff runway, ATC will specify the point to taxi to, issue taxi instructions, and state any hold short instructions or runway crossing clearances if the taxi route will cross a runway.

NOTE−
ATC is required to obtain a readback from the pilot of all runway hold short instructions.

8. If a pilot is expected to hold short of a runway approach/departure (*Runway XX* APPCH/ *Runway XX* DEP) hold area or ILS holding position (see FIG 2−3−15, Taxiways Located in Runway Approach Area), ATC will issue instructions.

9. When taxi instructions are received from the controller, pilots should always read back:

(a) The runway assignment.

(b) Any clearance to enter a specific runway.

(c) Any instruction to hold short of a specific runway or line up and wait.

10. Controllers are required to request a readback of runway hold short assignment when it is not received from the pilot/vehicle.

b. ATC clearances or instructions pertaining to taxiing are predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions. Therefore, it is important that pilots clearly understand the clearance or instruction. Although an ATC clearance is issued for taxiing purposes, when operating in accordance with the CFRs, it is the responsibility of the pilot to avoid collision with other aircraft. Since "the pilot−in−command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to, the operation of that aircraft" the pilot should obtain clarification of any clearance or instruction which is not understood.

1. Good operating practice dictates that pilots acknowledge all runway crossing, hold short, or takeoff clearances unless there is some misunderstanding, at which time the pilot should query the controller until the clearance is understood.

NOTE−
Air traffic controllers are required to obtain from the pilot a readback of all runway hold short instructions.

2. Pilots operating a single pilot aircraft should monitor only assigned ATC communications after being cleared onto the active runway for departure. Single pilot aircraft should not monitor other than ATC communications until flight from Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area is completed. This same procedure should be practiced from after receipt of the clearance for landing until the landing and taxi activities are complete. Proper effective scanning for other aircraft, surface vehicles, or other objects should be continuously exercised in all cases.

3. If the pilot is unfamiliar with the airport or for any reason confusion exists as to the correct taxi routing, a request may be made for progressive taxi instructions which include step−by−step routing directions. Progressive instructions may also be issued if the controller deems it necessary due to traffic or field conditions (for example, construction or closed taxiways).

c. At those airports where the U.S. Government operates the control tower and ATC has authorized noncompliance with the requirement for two−way radio communications while operating within the Class B, Class C, or Class D surface area, or at those airports where the U.S. Government does not operate the control tower and radio communications cannot be established, pilots must obtain a clearance by visual light signal prior to taxiing on a runway and prior to takeoff and landing.

d. The following phraseologies and procedures are used in radiotelephone communications with aeronautical ground stations.

1. Request for taxi instructions prior to departure. State your aircraft identification, location, type of operation planned (VFR or IFR), and the point of first intended landing.

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft: *"Washington ground, Beechcraft One Three One Five Niner at hangar eight, ready to taxi, I–F–R to Chicago."*

Tower: *"Beechcraft one three one five niner, Washington ground, runway two seven, taxi via taxiways Charlie and Delta, hold short of runway three three left."*

Aircraft: *"Beechcraft One Three One Five Niner, runway two seven, hold short of runway three three left."*

2. Receipt of ATC clearance. ARTCC clearances are relayed to pilots by airport traffic controllers in the following manner.

EXAMPLE–
Tower: *"Beechcraft One Three One Five Niner, cleared to the Chicago Midway Airport via Victor Eight, maintain eight thousand."*

Aircraft: *"Beechcraft One Three One Five Niner, cleared to the Chicago Midway Airport via Victor Eight, maintain eight thousand."*

NOTE–
Normally, an ATC IFR clearance is relayed to a pilot by the ground controller. At busy locations, however, pilots may be instructed by the ground controller to "contact clearance delivery" on a frequency designated for this purpose. No surveillance or control over the movement of traffic is exercised by this position of operation.

3. Request for taxi instructions after landing. State your aircraft identification, location, and that you request taxi instructions.

EXAMPLE–
Aircraft: *"Dulles ground, Beechcraft One Four Two Six One clearing runway one right on taxiway echo three, request clearance to Page."*

Tower: *"Beechcraft One Four Two Six One, Dulles ground, taxi to Page via taxiways echo three, echo one, and echo niner."*

or

Aircraft: *"Orlando ground, Beechcraft One Four Two Six One clearing runway one eight left at taxiway bravo three, request clearance to Page."*

Tower: *"Beechcraft One Four Two Six One, Orlando ground, hold short of runway one eight right."*

Aircraft: *"Beechcraft One Four Two Six One, hold short of runway one eight right."*

e. During ground operations, jet blast, prop wash, and rotor wash can cause damage and upsets if encountered at close range. Pilots should consider the effects of jet blast, prop wash, and rotor wash on aircraft, vehicles, and maintenance equipment during ground operations.

4–3–19. Taxi During Low Visibility

a. Pilots and aircraft operators should be constantly aware that during certain low visibility conditions the movement of aircraft and vehicles on airports may not be visible to the tower controller. This may prevent visual confirmation of an aircraft's adherence to taxi instructions.

b. Of vital importance is the need for pilots to notify the controller when difficulties are encountered or at the first indication of becoming disoriented. Pilots should proceed with extreme caution when taxiing toward the sun. When vision difficulties are encountered pilots should immediately inform the controller.

c. Advisory Circular 120–57, Low Visibility Operations Surface Movement Guidance and Control System, commonly known as LVOSMGCS (pronounced "LVO SMIGS") describes an adequate example of a low visibility taxi plan for any airport which has takeoff or landing operations in less than 1,200 feet runway visual range (RVR) visibility conditions. These plans, which affect aircrew and vehicle operators, may incorporate additional lighting, markings, and procedures to control airport surface traffic. They will be addressed at two levels; operations less than 1,200 feet RVR to 500 feet RVR and operations less than 500 feet RVR.

NOTE–
Specific lighting systems and surface markings may be found in paragraph 2–1–10, Taxiway Lights, and paragraph 2–3–4, Taxiway Markings.

d. When low visibility conditions exist, pilots should focus their entire attention on the safe operation of the aircraft while it is moving. Checklists and nonessential communication should be withheld until the aircraft is stopped and the brakes set.

4–3–20. Exiting the Runway After Landing

The following procedures must be followed after landing and reaching taxi speed.

a. Exit the runway without delay at the first available taxiway or on a taxiway as instructed by ATC. Pilots must not exit the landing runway onto another runway unless authorized by ATC. At airports with an operating control tower, pilots should not stop or reverse course on the runway without first obtaining ATC approval.

b. Taxi clear of the runway unless otherwise directed by ATC. An aircraft is considered clear of the runway when all parts of the aircraft are past the runway edge and there are no restrictions to its continued movement beyond the runway holding position markings. In the absence of ATC instructions, the pilot is expected to taxi clear of the landing runway by taxiing beyond the runway holding position markings associated with the landing runway, even if that requires the aircraft to protrude into or cross another taxiway or ramp area. Once all parts of the aircraft have crossed the runway holding position markings, the pilot must hold unless further instructions have been issued by ATC.

NOTE–
1. *The tower will issue the pilot instructions which will permit the aircraft to enter another taxiway, runway, or ramp area when required.*

2. *Guidance contained in subparagraphs a and b above is considered an integral part of the landing clearance and satisfies the requirement of 14 CFR Section 91.129.*

c. Immediately change to ground control frequency when advised by the tower and obtain a taxi clearance.

NOTE–
1. *The tower will issue instructions required to resolve any potential conflictions with other ground traffic prior to advising the pilot to contact ground control.*

2. *Ground control will issue taxi clearance to parking. That clearance does not authorize the aircraft to "enter" or "cross" any runways. Pilots not familiar with the taxi route should request specific taxi instructions from ATC.*

4–3–21. Practice Instrument Approaches

a. Various air traffic incidents have indicated the necessity for adoption of measures to achieve more organized and controlled operations where practice instrument approaches are conducted. Practice instrument approaches are considered to be instrument approaches made by either a VFR aircraft not on an IFR flight plan or an aircraft on an IFR flight plan. To achieve this and thereby enhance air safety, it is Air Traffic's policy to provide for separation of such operations at locations where approach control facilities are located and, as resources permit, at certain other locations served by ARTCCs or parent approach control facilities. Pilot requests to practice instrument approaches may be approved by ATC subject to traffic and workload conditions. Pilots should anticipate that in some instances the controller may find it necessary to deny approval or withdraw previous approval when traffic conditions warrant. It must be clearly understood, however, that even though the controller may be providing separation, pilots on VFR flight plans are required to comply with basic VFR weather minimums (14 CFR Section 91.155). Application of ATC procedures or any action taken by the controller to avoid traffic conflictions does not relieve IFR and VFR pilots of their responsibility to see–and–avoid other traffic while operating in VFR conditions (14 CFR Section 91.113). In addition to the normal IFR separation minimums (which includes visual separation) during VFR conditions, 500 feet vertical separation may be applied between VFR aircraft and between a VFR aircraft and the IFR aircraft. Pilots not on IFR flight plans desiring practice instrument approaches should always state 'practice' when making requests to ATC. Controllers will instruct VFR aircraft requesting an instrument approach to maintain VFR. This is to preclude misunderstandings between the pilot and controller as to the status of the aircraft. If pilots wish to proceed in accordance with instrument flight rules, they must specifically request and obtain, an IFR clearance.

b. Before practicing an instrument approach, pilots should inform the approach control facility or the tower of the type of practice approach they desire to make and how they intend to terminate it, i.e., full−stop landing, touch−and−go, or missed or low approach maneuver. This information may be furnished progressively when conducting a series of approaches. Pilots on an IFR flight plan, who have made a series of instrument approaches to full stop landings should inform ATC when they make their final landing. The controller will control flights practicing instrument approaches so as to ensure that they do not disrupt the flow of arriving and departing itinerant IFR or VFR aircraft. The priority afforded itinerant aircraft over practice instrument approaches is not intended to be so rigidly applied that it causes grossly inefficient application of services. A minimum delay to itinerant traffic may be appropriate to allow an aircraft practicing an approach to complete that approach.

NOTE−
A clearance to land means that appropriate separation on the landing runway will be ensured. A landing clearance does not relieve the pilot from compliance with any previously issued restriction.

c. At airports without a tower, pilots wishing to make practice instrument approaches should notify the facility having control jurisdiction of the desired approach as indicated on the approach chart. All approach control facilities and ARTCCs are required to publish a Letter to Airmen depicting those airports where they provide standard separation to both VFR and IFR aircraft conducting practice instrument approaches.

d. The controller will provide approved separation between both VFR and IFR aircraft when authorization is granted to make practice approaches to airports where an approach control facility is located and to certain other airports served by approach control or an ARTCC. Controller responsibility for separation of VFR aircraft begins at the point where the approach clearance becomes effective, or when the aircraft enters Class B or Class C airspace, or a TRSA, whichever comes first.

e. VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches are not automatically authorized to execute the missed approach procedure. This authorization must be specifically requested by the pilot and approved by the controller. Where ATC procedures require application of IFR separation to VFR aircraft practicing instrument approaches, separation will be provided throughout the procedure including the missed approach. Where no separation services are provided during the practice approach, no separation services will be provided during the missed approach.

f. Except in an emergency, aircraft cleared to practice instrument approaches must not deviate from the approved procedure until cleared to do so by the controller.

g. At radar approach control locations when a full approach procedure (procedure turn, etc.,) cannot be approved, pilots should expect to be vectored to a final approach course for a practice instrument approach which is compatible with the general direction of traffic at that airport.

h. When granting approval for a practice instrument approach, the controller will usually ask the pilot to report to the tower prior to or over the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approaches) or over the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approaches).

i. When authorization is granted to conduct practice instrument approaches to an airport with a tower, but where approved standard separation is not provided to aircraft conducting practice instrument approaches, the tower will approve the practice approach, instruct the aircraft to maintain VFR and issue traffic information, as required.

j. When an aircraft notifies a FSS providing Local Airport Advisory to the airport concerned of the intent to conduct a practice instrument approach and whether or not separation is to be provided, the pilot will be instructed to contact the appropriate facility on a specified frequency prior to initiating the approach. At airports where separation is not provided, the FSS will acknowledge the message and issue known traffic information but will neither approve or disapprove the approach.

k. Pilots conducting practice instrument approaches should be particularly alert for other aircraft operating in the local traffic pattern or in proximity to the airport.

4−3−22. Option Approach

The "Cleared for the Option" procedure will permit an instructor, flight examiner or pilot the option to make a touch−and−go, low approach, missed approach, stop−and−go, or full stop landing. This procedure can be very beneficial in a training situation in that neither the student pilot nor examinee would know what maneuver would be accomplished.

The pilot should make a request for this procedure passing the final approach fix inbound on an instrument approach or entering downwind for a VFR traffic pattern. After ATC approval of the option, the pilot should inform ATC as soon as possible of any delay on the runway during their stop-and-go or full stop landing. The advantages of this procedure as a training aid are that it enables an instructor or examiner to obtain the reaction of a trainee or examinee under changing conditions, the pilot would not have to discontinue an approach in the middle of the procedure due to student error or pilot proficiency requirements, and finally it allows more flexibility and economy in training programs. This procedure will only be used at those locations with an operational control tower and will be subject to ATC approval.

4−3−23. Use of Aircraft Lights

a. Aircraft position lights are required to be lighted on aircraft operated on the surface and in flight from sunset to sunrise. In addition, aircraft equipped with an anti−collision light system are required to operate that light system during all types of operations (day and night). However, during any adverse meteorological conditions, the pilot−in−command may determine that the anti−collision lights should be turned off when their light output would constitute a hazard to safety (14 CFR Section 91.209). Supplementary strobe lights should be turned off on the ground when they adversely affect ground personnel or other pilots, and in flight when there are adverse reflection from clouds.

b. An aircraft anti−collision light system can use one or more rotating beacons and/or strobe lights, be colored either red or white, and have different (higher than minimum) intensities when compared to other aircraft. Many aircraft have both a rotating beacon and a strobe light system.

c. The FAA has a voluntary pilot safety program, Operation Lights On, to enhance the *see−and−avoid* concept. Pilots are encouraged to turn on their landing lights during takeoff; i.e., either after takeoff clearance has been received or when beginning takeoff roll. Pilots are further encouraged to turn on their landing lights when operating below 10,000 feet, day or night, especially when operating within 10 miles of any airport, or in conditions of reduced visibility and in areas where flocks of birds may be expected, i.e., coastal areas, lake areas, around refuse dumps, etc. Although turning on aircraft lights does enhance the *see−and−avoid* concept, pilots should not become complacent about keeping a sharp lookout for other aircraft. Not all aircraft are equipped with lights and some pilots may not have their lights turned on. Aircraft manufacturer's recommendations for operation of landing lights and electrical systems should be observed.

d. Prop and jet blast forces generated by large aircraft have overturned or damaged several smaller aircraft taxiing behind them. To avoid similar results, and in the interest of preventing upsets and injuries to ground personnel from such forces, the FAA recommends that air carriers and commercial operators turn on their rotating beacons anytime their aircraft engines are in operation. General aviation pilots using rotating beacon equipped aircraft are also encouraged to participate in this program which is designed to alert others to the potential hazard. Since this is a voluntary program, exercise caution and do not rely solely on the rotating beacon as an indication that aircraft engines are in operation.

e. Prior to commencing taxi, it is recommended to turn on navigation, position, anti-collision, and logo lights (if equipped). To signal intent to other pilots, consider turning on the taxi light when the aircraft is moving or intending to move on the ground, and turning it off when stopped or yielding to other ground traffic. Strobe lights should not be illuminated during taxi if they will adversely affect the vision of other pilots or ground personnel.

f. At the discretion of the pilot-in-command, all exterior lights should be illuminated when taxiing on or across any runway. This increases the conspicuousness of the aircraft to controllers and other pilots approaching to land, taxiing, or crossing the runway. Pilots should comply with any equipment operating limitations and consider the effects of landing and strobe lights on other aircraft in their vicinity.

g. When entering the departure runway for takeoff or to "line up and wait," all lights, except for landing lights, should be illuminated to make the aircraft conspicuous to ATC and other aircraft on approach. Landing lights should be turned on when takeoff clearance is received or when commencing takeoff roll at an airport without an operating control tower.

4−3−24. Flight Inspection/'Flight Check' Aircraft in Terminal Areas

a. *Flight check* is a call sign used to alert pilots and air traffic controllers when a FAA aircraft is engaged in flight inspection/certification of NAVAIDs and flight procedures. Flight check aircraft fly preplanned high/low altitude flight patterns such as grids, orbits, DME arcs, and tracks, including low passes along the full length of the runway to verify NAVAID performance.

b. Pilots should be especially watchful and avoid the flight paths of any aircraft using the call sign "Flight Check." These flights will normally receive special handling from ATC. Pilot patience and cooperation in allowing uninterrupted recordings can significantly help expedite flight inspections, minimize costly, repetitive runs, and reduce the burden on the U.S. taxpayer.

4−3−25. Hand Signals

FIG 4−3−11
Signalman Directs Towing

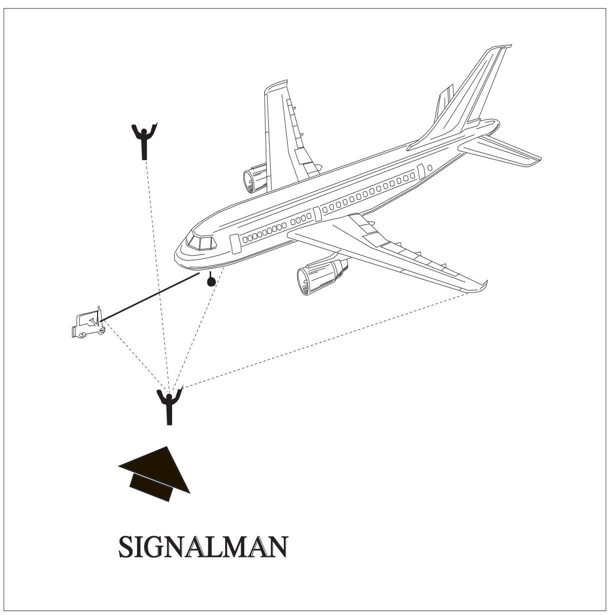


FIG 4−3−12
Signalman's Position

FIG 4−3−13
All Clear
(O.K.)

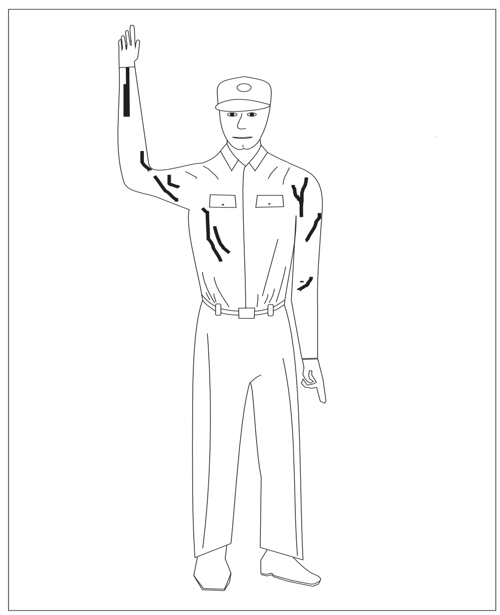


FIG 4-3-14
Start Engine

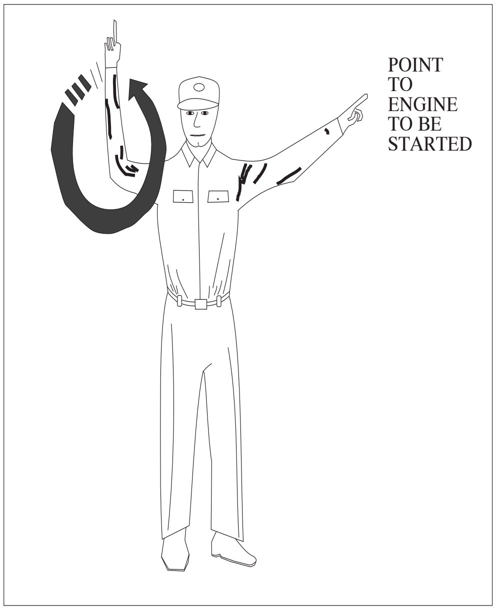


FIG 4-3-16
Proceed Straight Ahead

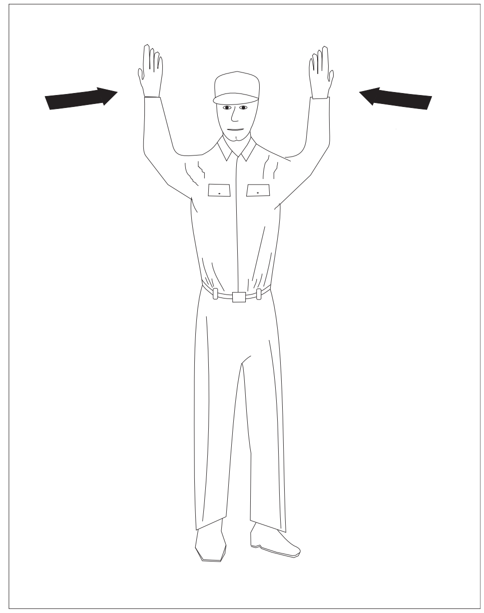


FIG 4-3-15
Pull Chocks

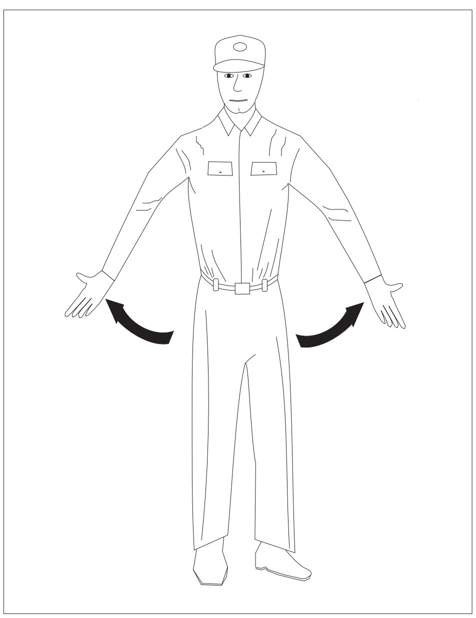


FIG 4-3-17
Left Turn

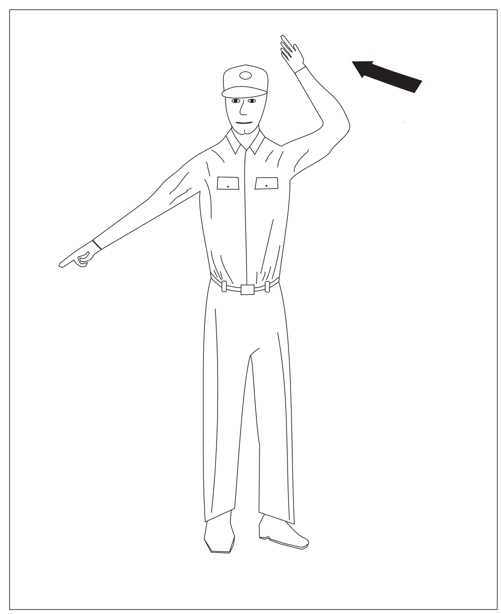


FIG 4-3-18
Right Turn

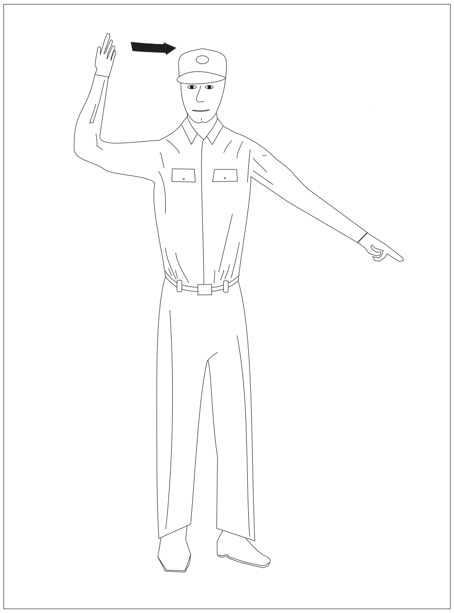


FIG 4-3-19
Slow Down

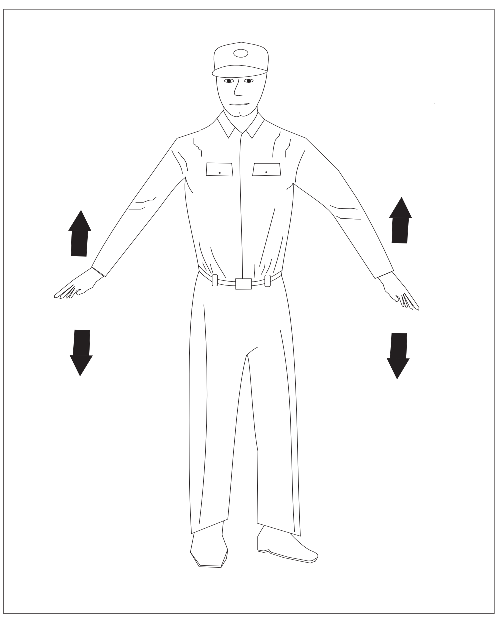


FIG 4-3-20
Flagman Directs Pilot

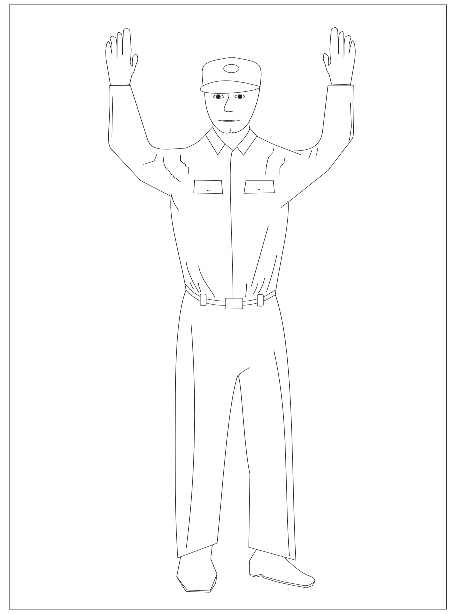


FIG 4-3-21
Insert Chocks

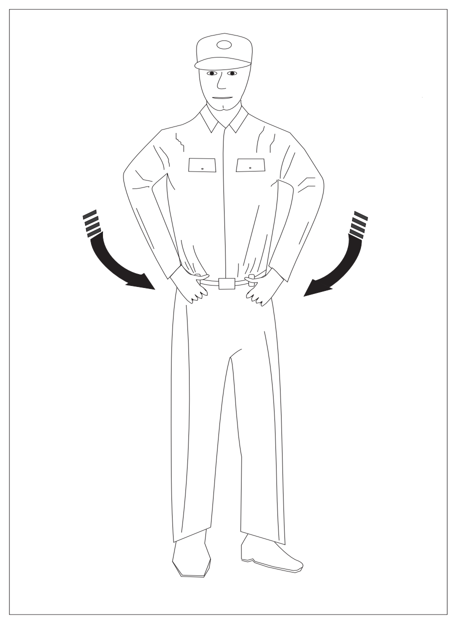


FIG 4−3−22
Cut Engines

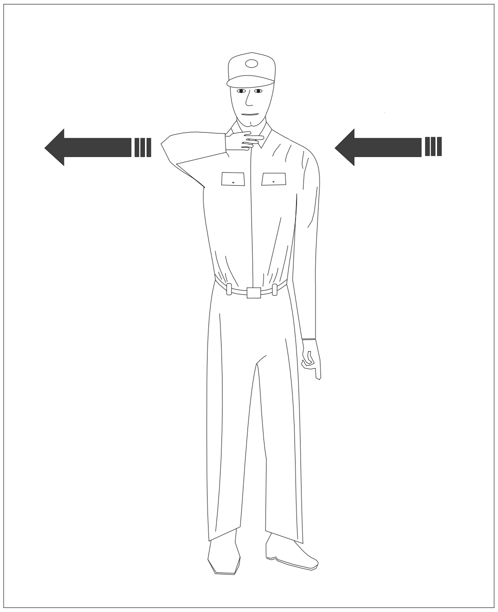


FIG 4−3−23
Night Operation

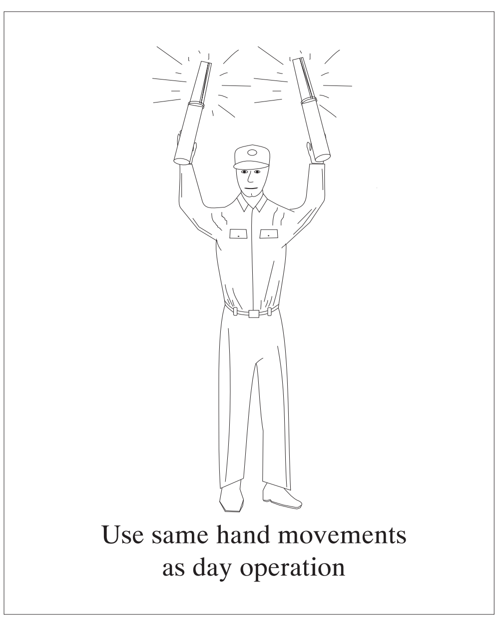
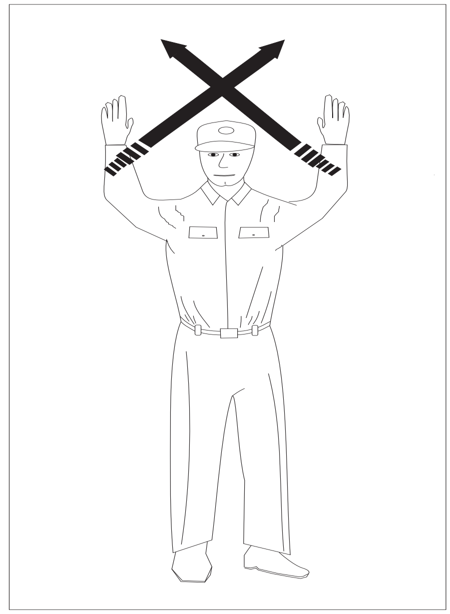


FIG 4−3−24
Stop



4−3−26. Operations at Uncontrolled Airports With Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS)/Automated Weather Observing System (AWOS)

a. Many airports throughout the National Airspace System are equipped with either ASOS or AWOS. At most airports with an operating control tower or human observer, the weather will be available to you in an Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR) hourly or special observation format on the Automatic Terminal Information Service (ATIS) or directly transmitted from the controller/observer.

b. At uncontrolled airports that are equipped with ASOS/AWOS with ground−to−air broadcast capability, the one−minute updated airport weather should be available to you within approximately 25 NM of the airport below 10,000 feet. The frequency for the weather broadcast will be published on sectional charts and in the Chart Supplement U.S. Some part−time towered airports may also broadcast the automated weather on their ATIS frequency during the hours that the tower is closed.

c. Controllers issue SVFR or IFR clearances based on pilot request, known traffic and reported weather, i.e., METAR/Nonroutine (Special) Aviation Weather Report (SPECI) observations, when they are available. Pilots have access to more current weather at uncontrolled ASOS/AWOS airports than do the controllers who may be located several miles away. Controllers will rely on the pilot to determine the current airport weather from the ASOS/AWOS. All aircraft arriving or departing an ASOS/AWOS equipped uncontrolled airport should monitor the airport weather frequency to ascertain the status of the airspace. Pilots in Class E airspace must be alert for changing weather conditions which may affect the status of the airspace from IFR/VFR. If ATC service is required for IFR/SVFR approach/departure or requested for VFR service, the pilot should advise the controller that he/she has received the one−minute weather and state his/her intentions.

EXAMPLE−
"I have the (airport) one−minute weather, request an ILS Runway 14 approach."

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 7−1−10, Weather Observing Programs.

routing and an alternative clearance if VFR−on−top is not reached by a specified altitude.

c. A pilot on an IFR flight plan, operating in VFR conditions, may request to climb/descend in VFR conditions.

d. ATC may not authorize VFR−on−top/VFR conditions operations unless the pilot requests the VFR operation or a clearance to operate in VFR conditions will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA approved noise abatement route or altitude.

e. When operating in VFR conditions with an ATC authorization to "maintain VFR−on−top/maintain VFR conditions" pilots on IFR flight plans must:

1. Fly at the appropriate VFR altitude as prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.159.

2. Comply with the VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria in 14 CFR Section 91.155 (Basic VFR Weather Minimums).

3. Comply with instrument flight rules that are applicable to this flight; i.e., minimum IFR altitudes, position reporting, radio communications, course to be flown, adherence to ATC clearance, etc.

NOTE−
Pilots should advise ATC prior to any altitude change to ensure the exchange of accurate traffic information.

f. ATC authorization to "maintain VFR−on−top" is not intended to restrict pilots so that they must operate only *above* an obscuring meteorological formation (layer). Instead, it permits operation above, below, between layers, or in areas where there is no meteorological obscuration. It is imperative, however, that pilots understand that clearance to operate "VFR−on−top/VFR conditions" does not imply cancellation of the IFR flight plan.

g. Pilots operating VFR−on−top/VFR conditions may receive traffic information from ATC on other pertinent IFR or VFR aircraft. However, aircraft operating in Class B airspace/TRSAs must be separated as required by FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control.

NOTE−
When operating in VFR weather conditions, it is the pilot's responsibility to be vigilant so as to see−and−avoid other aircraft.

h. ATC will not authorize VFR or VFR−on−top operations in Class A airspace.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 3−2−2, Class A Airspace

4−4−9. VFR/IFR Flights

A pilot departing VFR, either intending to or needing to obtain an IFR clearance en route, must be aware of the position of the aircraft and the relative terrain/obstructions. When accepting a clearance below the MEA/MIA/MVA/OROCA, pilots are responsible for their own terrain/obstruction clearance until reaching the MEA/MIA/MVA/OROCA. If pilots are unable to maintain terrain/obstruction clearance, the controller should be advised and pilots should state their intentions.

NOTE−
OROCA is a published altitude which provides 1,000 feet of terrain and obstruction clearance in the US (2,000 feet of clearance in designated mountainous areas). These altitudes are not assessed for NAVAID signal coverage, air traffic control surveillance, or communications coverage, and are published for general situational awareness, flight planning and in−flight contingency use.

4−4−10. Adherence to Clearance

a. When air traffic clearance has been obtained under either visual or instrument flight rules, the pilot−in−command of the aircraft must not deviate from the provisions thereof unless an amended clearance is obtained. When ATC issues a clearance or instruction, pilots are expected to execute its provisions upon receipt. ATC, in certain situations, will include the word "IMMEDIATELY" in a clearance or instruction to impress urgency of an imminent situation and expeditious compliance by the pilot is expected and necessary for safety. The addition of a VFR or other restriction; i.e., climb or descent point or time, crossing altitude, etc., does not authorize a pilot to deviate from the route of flight or any other provision of the ATC clearance.

b. When a heading is assigned or a turn is requested by ATC, pilots are expected to promptly initiate the turn, to complete the turn, and maintain the new heading unless issued additional instructions.

c. The term "AT PILOT'S DISCRETION" included in the altitude information of an ATC clearance means that ATC has offered the pilot the option to start climb or descent when the pilot wishes, is authorized to conduct the climb or descent at any rate, and to temporarily level off at any intermediate altitude as desired. However, once the aircraft has vacated an altitude, it may not return to that altitude.

d. When ATC has not used the term "AT PILOT'S DISCRETION" nor imposed any climb or descent restrictions, pilots should initiate climb or descent promptly on acknowledgement of the clearance. Descend or climb at an optimum rate consistent with the operating characteristics of the aircraft to 1,000 feet above or below the assigned altitude, and then attempt to descend or climb at a rate of between 500 and 1,500 fpm until the assigned altitude is reached. If at anytime the pilot is unable to climb or descend at a rate of at least 500 feet a minute, advise ATC. If it is necessary to level off at an intermediate altitude during climb or descent, advise ATC, except when leveling off at 10,000 feet MSL on descent, or 2,500 feet above airport elevation (prior to entering a Class C or Class D surface area), when required for speed reduction.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Section 91.117.

NOTE−
Leveling off at 10,000 feet MSL on descent or 2,500 feet above airport elevation (prior to entering a Class C or Class D surface area) to comply with 14 CFR Section 91.117 airspeed restrictions is commonplace. Controllers anticipate this action and plan accordingly. Leveling off at any other time on climb or descent may seriously affect air traffic handling by ATC. Consequently, it is imperative that pilots make every effort to fulfill the above expected actions to aid ATC in safely handling and expediting traffic.

e. If the altitude information of an ATC DESCENT clearance includes a provision to "CROSS (fix) AT" or "AT OR ABOVE/BELOW (altitude)," the manner in which the descent is executed to comply with the crossing altitude is at the pilot's discretion. This authorization to descend at pilot's discretion is only applicable to that portion of the flight to which the crossing altitude restriction applies, and the pilot is expected to comply with the crossing altitude as a provision of the clearance. Any other clearance in which pilot execution is optional will so state "AT PILOT'S DISCRETION."

EXAMPLE−
1. *"United Four Seventeen, descend and maintain six thousand."*

NOTE−
1. *The pilot is expected to commence descent upon receipt of the clearance and to descend at the suggested rates until reaching the assigned altitude of 6,000 feet.*

EXAMPLE−
2. *"United Four Seventeen, descend at pilot's discretion, maintain six thousand."*

NOTE−
2. *The pilot is authorized to conduct descent within the context of the term at pilot's discretion as described above.*

EXAMPLE−
3. *"United Four Seventeen, cross Lakeview V−O−R at or above Flight Level two zero zero, descend and maintain six thousand."*

NOTE−
3. *The pilot is authorized to conduct descent at pilot's discretion until reaching Lakeview VOR and must comply with the clearance provision to cross the Lakeview VOR at or above FL 200. After passing Lakeview VOR, the pilot is expected to descend at the suggested rates until reaching the assigned altitude of 6,000 feet.*

EXAMPLE−
4. *"United Four Seventeen, cross Lakeview V−O−R at six thousand, maintain six thousand."*

NOTE−
4. *The pilot is authorized to conduct descent at pilot's discretion, however, must comply with the clearance provision to cross the Lakeview VOR at 6,000 feet.*

EXAMPLE−
5. *"United Four Seventeen, descend now to Flight Level two seven zero, cross Lakeview V−O−R at or below one zero thousand, descend and maintain six thousand."*

NOTE−
5. *The pilot is expected to promptly execute and complete descent to FL 270 upon receipt of the clearance. After reaching FL 270 the pilot is authorized to descend "at pilot's discretion" until reaching Lakeview VOR. The pilot must comply with the clearance provision to cross Lakeview VOR at or below 10,000 feet. After Lakeview VOR the pilot is expected to descend at the suggested rates until reaching 6,000 feet.*

EXAMPLE−
6. *"United Three Ten, descend now and maintain Flight Level two four zero, pilot's discretion after reaching Flight Level two eight zero."*

NOTE−
6. *The pilot is expected to commence descent upon receipt of the clearance and to descend at the suggested rates until reaching FL 280. At that point, the pilot is authorized to continue descent to FL 240 within the context of the term "at pilot's discretion" as described above.*

f. In case emergency authority is used to deviate from provisions of an ATC clearance, the pilot−in−

4−5−3. Surveillance Radar

a. Surveillance radars are divided into two general categories: Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR) and Air Route Surveillance Radar (ARSR).

1. ASR is designed to provide relatively short−range coverage in the general vicinity of an airport and to serve as an expeditious means of handling terminal area traffic through observation of precise aircraft locations on a radarscope. The ASR can also be used as an instrument approach aid.

2. ARSR is a long−range radar system designed primarily to provide a display of aircraft locations over large areas.

3. Center Radar Automated Radar Terminal Systems (ARTS) Processing (CENRAP) was developed to provide an alternative to a nonradar environment at terminal facilities should an ASR fail or malfunction. CENRAP sends aircraft radar beacon target information to the ASR terminal facility equipped with ARTS. Procedures used for the separation of aircraft may increase under certain conditions when a facility is utilizing CENRAP because radar target information updates at a slower rate than the normal ASR radar. Radar services for VFR aircraft are also limited during CENRAP operations because of the additional workload required to provide services to IFR aircraft.

b. Surveillance radars scan through 360 degrees of azimuth and present target information on a radar display located in a tower or center. This information is used independently or in conjunction with other navigational aids in the control of air traffic.

4−5−4. Precision Approach Radar (PAR)

a. PAR is designed for use as a landing aid rather than an aid for sequencing and spacing aircraft. PAR equipment may be used as a primary landing aid (See Chapter 5, Air Traffic Procedures, for additional information), or it may be used to monitor other types of approaches. It is designed to display range, azimuth, and elevation information.

b. Two antennas are used in the PAR array, one scanning a vertical plane, and the other scanning horizontally. Since the range is limited to 10 miles, azimuth to 20 degrees, and elevation to 7 degrees, only the final approach area is covered. Each scope is divided into two parts. The upper half presents altitude and distance information, and the lower half presents azimuth and distance.

4−5−5. Airport Surface Detection Equipment (ASDE−X)/Airport Surface Surveillance Capability (ASSC)

a. ASDE−X/ASSC is a multi−sensor surface surveillance system the FAA is acquiring for airports in the United States. This system provides high resolution, short−range, clutter free surveillance information about aircraft and vehicles, both moving and fixed, located on or near the surface of the airport's runways and taxiways under all weather and visibility conditions. The system consists of:

1. A Primary Radar System. ASDE−X/ASSC system coverage includes the airport surface and the airspace up to 200 feet above the surface. Typically located on the control tower or other strategic location on the airport, the Primary Radar antenna is able to detect and display aircraft that are not equipped with or have malfunctioning transponders or ADS−B.

2. Interfaces. ASDE−X/ASSC contains an automation interface for flight identification via all automation platforms and interfaces with the terminal radar for position information.

3. Automation. A Multi−sensor Data Processor (MSDP) combines all sensor reports into a single target which is displayed to the air traffic controller.

4. Air Traffic Control Tower Display. A high resolution, color monitor in the control tower cab provides controllers with a seamless picture of airport operations on the airport surface.

b. The combination of data collected from the multiple sensors ensures that the most accurate information about aircraft location is received in the tower, thereby increasing surface safety and efficiency.

c. The following facilities are operational with ASDE−X:

TBL 4−5−1

BWI	Baltimore Washington International
BOS	Boston Logan International
BDL	Bradley International
MDW	Chicago Midway
ORD	Chicago O'Hare International
CLT	Charlotte Douglas International
DFW	Dallas/Fort Worth International
DEN	Denver International
DTW	Detroit Metro Wayne County
FLL	Fort Lauderdale/Hollywood Intl
MKE	General Mitchell International
IAH	George Bush International
ATL	Hartsfield−Jackson Atlanta Intl
HNL	Honolulu International
JFK	John F. Kennedy International
SNA	John Wayne−Orange County
LGA	LaGuardia
STL	Lambert St. Louis International
LAS	Las Vegas Harry Reid International
LAX	Los Angeles International
SDF	Louisville International
MEM	Memphis International
MIA	Miami International
MSP	Minneapolis St. Paul International
EWR	Newark International
MCO	Orlando International
PHL	Philadelphia International
PHX	Phoenix Sky Harbor International
DCA	Ronald Reagan Washington National
SAN	San Diego International
SLC	Salt Lake City International
SEA	Seattle−Tacoma International
PVD	Theodore Francis Green State
IAD	Washington Dulles International
HOU	William P. Hobby International

d. The following facilities have been projected to receive ASSC:

TBL 4−5−2

SFO	San Francisco International
CLE	Cleveland−Hopkins International
MCI	Kansas City International
CVG	Cincinnati/Northern Kentucky Intl
PDX	Portland International
MSY	Louis Armstrong New Orleans Intl
PIT	Pittsburgh International
ANC	Ted Stevens Anchorage International
ADW	Joint Base Andrews AFB

4−5−6. Traffic Information Service (TIS)

a. Introduction.

The Traffic Information Service (TIS) provides information to the cockpit via data link, that is similar to VFR radar traffic advisories normally received over voice radio. Among the first FAA−provided data services, TIS is intended to improve the safety and efficiency of "see and avoid" flight through an automatic display that informs the pilot of nearby traffic and potential conflict situations. This traffic display is intended to assist the pilot in visual acquisition of these aircraft. TIS employs an enhanced capability of the terminal Mode S radar system, which contains the surveillance data, as well as the data link required to "uplink" this information to suitably−equipped aircraft (known as a TIS "client"). TIS provides estimated position, altitude, altitude trend, and ground track information for up to 8 intruder aircraft within 7 NM horizontally, +3,500 and −3,000 feet vertically of the client aircraft (see FIG 4−5−4, TIS Proximity Coverage Volume). The range of a target reported at a distance greater than 7 NM only indicates that this target will be a threat within 34 seconds and does not display a precise distance. TIS will alert the pilot to aircraft (under surveillance of the Mode S radar) that are estimated to be within 34 seconds of potential collision, regardless of distance or altitude. TIS surveillance data is derived from the same radar used by ATC; this data is uplinked to the client aircraft on each radar scan (nominally every 5 seconds).

performance is monitored by maintenance personnel rather than ATC, report malfunctions to the nearest Flight Service Station (FSS) facility by radio or telephone, or by sending an email to the ADS−B help desk at adsb@faa.gov. Reports should include:

1. Condition observed;

2. Date and time of observation;

3. Altitude and location of observation;

4. Type and call sign of the aircraft; and

5. Type and software version of avionics system.

4−5−8. Traffic Information Service− Broadcast (TIS−B)

a. Introduction

TIS−B is the broadcast of ATC derived traffic information to ADS−B equipped (1090ES or UAT) aircraft from ground radio stations. The source of this traffic information is derived from ground−based air traffic surveillance sensors. TIS−B service will be available throughout the NAS where there are both adequate surveillance coverage from ground sensors and adequate broadcast coverage from ADS−B ground radio stations. The quality level of traffic information provided by TIS−B is dependent upon the number and type of ground sensors available as TIS−B sources and the timeliness of the reported data. (See FIG 4−5−8 and FIG 4−5−9.)

b. TIS−B Requirements.

In order to receive TIS−B service, the following conditions must exist:

1. Aircraft must be equipped with an ADS−B transmitter/receiver or transceiver, and a cockpit display of traffic information (CDTI).

2. Aircraft must fly within the coverage volume of a compatible ground radio station that is configured for TIS−B uplinks. (Not all ground radio stations provide TIS−B due to a lack of radar coverage or because a radar feed is not available).

3. Aircraft must be within the coverage of and detected by at least one ATC radar serving the ground radio station in use.

c. TIS−B Capabilities.

1. TIS−B is intended to provide ADS−B equipped aircraft with a more complete traffic picture in situations where not all nearby aircraft are equipped with ADS−B Out. This advisory−only application is intended to enhance a pilot's visual acquisition of other traffic.

2. Only transponder−equipped targets (i.e., Mode A/C or Mode S transponders) are transmitted through the ATC ground system architecture. Current radar siting may result in limited radar surveillance coverage at lower altitudes near some airports, with subsequently limited TIS−B service volume coverage. If there is no radar coverage in a given area, then there will be no TIS−B coverage in that area.

d. TIS−B Limitations.

1. TIS−B is <u>NOT</u> intended to be used as a collision avoidance system and does not relieve the pilot's responsibility to "see and avoid" other aircraft, in accordance with 14CFR §91.113b. TIS−B must not be used for avoidance maneuvers during times when there is no visual contact with the intruder aircraft. TIS−B is intended only to assist in the visual acquisition of other aircraft.

NOTE−
No aircraft avoidance maneuvers are authorized as a direct result of a TIS−B target being displayed in the cockpit.

2. While TIS−B is a useful aid to visual traffic avoidance, its inherent system limitations must be understood to ensure proper use.

(a) A pilot may receive an intermittent TIS−B target of themselves, typically when maneuvering (e.g., climbing turns) due to the radar not tracking the aircraft as quickly as ADS−B.

(b) The ADS−B−to−radar association process within the ground system may at times have difficulty correlating an ADS−B report with corresponding radar returns from the same aircraft. When this happens the pilot may see duplicate traffic symbols (i.e., "TIS−B shadows") on the cockpit display.

(c) Updates of TIS−B traffic reports will occur less often than ADS−B traffic updates. TIS−B position updates will occur approximately once every 3−13 seconds depending on the type of radar system in use within the coverage area. In comparison, the update rate for ADS−B is nominally once per second.

(d) The TIS−B system only uplinks data pertaining to transponder−equipped aircraft. Aircraft without a transponder will not be displayed as TIS−B traffic.

(e) There is no indication provided when any aircraft is operating inside or outside the TIS−B service volume, therefore it is difficult to know if one is receiving uplinked TIS−B traffic information.

3. Pilots and operators are reminded that the airborne equipment that displays TIS−B targets is for pilot situational awareness only and is not approved as a collision avoidance tool. Unless there is an imminent emergency requiring immediate action, any deviation from an air traffic control clearance in response to perceived converging traffic appearing on a TIS−B display must be approved by the controlling ATC facility before commencing the maneuver, except as permitted under certain conditions in 14CFR §91.123. Uncoordinated deviations may place an aircraft in close proximity to other aircraft under ATC control not seen on the airborne equipment and may result in a pilot deviation or other incident.

e. Reports of TIS−B Malfunctions.

Users of TIS−B can provide valuable assistance in the correction of malfunctions by reporting instances of undesirable system performance. Since TIS−B performance is monitored by maintenance personnel rather than ATC, report malfunctions to the nearest Flight Service Station (FSS) facility by radio or telephone, or by sending an email to the ADS−B help desk at adsb@faa.gov. Reports should include:

1. Condition observed;

2. Date and time of observation;

3. Altitude and location of observation;

4. Type and call sign of the aircraft; and

5. Type and software version of avionics system.

4−5−9. Flight Information Service−Broadcast (FIS−B)

a. Introduction.

FIS−B is a ground broadcast service provided through the ADS−B Services network over the 978 MHz UAT data link. The FAA FIS−B system provides pilots and flight crews of properly equipped aircraft with a cockpit display of certain aviation weather and aeronautical information. FIS−B reception is line−of−sight within the service volume of the ground infrastructure. (See FIG 4−5−8 and FIG 4−5−9.)

b. Weather Products.

FIS-B does not replace a preflight weather briefing from a source listed in paragraph 7−1−2, FAA Weather Services, or inflight updates from an FSS or ATC. FIS-B information may be used by the pilot for the safe conduct of flight and aircraft movement; however, the information should not be the only source of weather or aeronautical information. A pilot should be particularly alert and understand the limitations and quality assurance issues associated with individual products. This includes graphical representation of next generation weather radar (NEXRAD) imagery and Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs)/temporary flight restrictions (TFRs).

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 7−1−9, Flight Information Services (FIS).
Advisory Circular (AC) 00−63, "Use of Cockpit Displays of Digital Weather and Aeronautical Information."

c. Reports of FIS−B Malfunctions.

Users of FIS−B can provide valuable assistance in the correction of malfunctions by reporting instances of undesirable system performance. Since FIS−B performance is monitored by maintenance personnel rather than ATC, report malfunctions to the nearest Flight Service Station (FSS) facility by radio or telephone, or by sending an email to the ADS−B help desk at adsb@faa.gov. Reports should include:

1. Condition observed;

2. Date and time of observation;

3. Altitude and location of observation;

4. Type and call sign of the aircraft; and

5. Type and software version of avionics system.

Section 6. Operational Policy/Procedures for Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) in the Domestic U.S., Alaska, Offshore Airspace and the San Juan FIR

4−6−1. Applicability and RVSM Mandate (Date/Time and Area)

a. Applicability. The policies, guidance and direction in this section apply to RVSM operations in the airspace over the lower 48 states, Alaska, Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico High Offshore Airspace and airspace in the San Juan FIR where VHF or UHF voice direct controller−pilot communication (DCPC) is normally available. Policies, guidance and direction for RVSM operations in oceanic airspace where VHF or UHF voice DCPC is not available and the airspace of other countries can be found in the Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP), Part II− En Route, ENR 1. General Rules and Procedures, and ENR 7.Oceanic Operations.

b. Requirement. The FAA implemented RVSM between flight level (FL) 290−410 (inclusive) in the following airspace: the airspace of the lower 48 states of the United States, Alaska, Atlantic and Gulf of Mexico High Offshore Airspace and the San Juan FIR. RVSM has been implemented worldwide and may be applied in all ICAO Flight Information Regions (FIR).

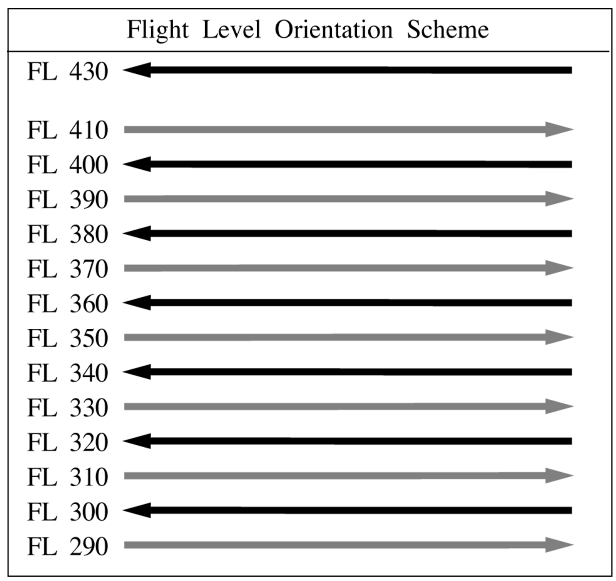
c. RVSM Authorization. In accordance with 14 CFR Section 91.180, with only limited exceptions, prior to operating in RVSM airspace, operators must comply with the standards of Part 91, Appendix G, and be authorized by the Administrator. If either the operator or the operator's aircraft have not met the applicable RVSM standards, the aircraft will be referred to as a "non−RVSM" aircraft. Paragraph 4−6−10 discusses ATC policies for accommodation of non−RVSM aircraft flown by the Department of Defense, Air Ambulance (MEDEVAC) operators, foreign State governments and aircraft flown for certification and development. Paragraph 4−6−11, Non−RVSM Aircraft Requesting Climb to and Descent from Flight Levels Above RVSM Airspace Without Intermediate Level Off, contains policies for non−RVSM aircraft climbing and descending through RVSM airspace to/from flight levels above RVSM airspace.

d. Benefits. RVSM enhances ATC flexibility, mitigates conflict points, enhances sector throughput, reduces controller workload and enables crossing traffic. Operators gain fuel savings and operating efficiency benefits by flying at more fuel efficient flight levels and on more user preferred routings.

4−6−2. Flight Level Orientation Scheme

Altitude assignments for direction of flight follow a scheme of odd altitude assignment for magnetic courses 000−179 degrees and even altitudes for magnetic courses 180−359 degrees for flights up to and including FL 410, as indicated in FIG 4−6−1.

FIG 4−6−1
Flight Level Orientation Scheme



NOTE−
Odd Flight Levels: Magnetic Course 000−179 Degrees
Even Flight Levels: Magnetic Course 180−359 Degrees.

4−6−3. Aircraft and Operator Approval Policy/Procedures, RVSM Monitoring and Databases for Aircraft and Operator Approval

a. RVSM Authority. 14 CFR Section 91.180 applies to RVSM operations within the U.S. 14 CFR Section 91.706 applies to RVSM operations outside the U.S. Both sections require that the operator be authorized prior to operating in RVSM airspace. For Domestic RVSM operations, an operator may choose to operate under the provisions of Part 91, Appendix G, Section 9; or if intending to operate outside U.S. airspace, hold a specific approval (OpSpec/MSpec/LOA) under the provisions of Section 3 of Part 91, Appendix G.

b. Sources of Information. Advisory Circular (AC) 91−85, Authorization of Aircraft and Operators for Flight in Reduced Vertical Separation Minimum (RVSM) Airspace, and the FAA RVSM website.

c. TCAS Equipage. TCAS equipage requirements are contained in 14 CFR Sections 121.356, 125.224, 129.18 and 135.189. Part 91, Appendix G, does not contain TCAS equipage requirements specific to RVSM, however, Appendix G does require that aircraft equipped with TCAS II and flown in RVSM airspace be modified to incorporate TCAS II Version 7.0 or a later version.

d. Aircraft Monitoring. Operators are required to participate in the RVSM altitude−keeping performance monitoring program that is appropriate for the type of operation being conducted. The monitoring programs are described in AC 91−85. Monitoring is a quality control program that enables the FAA and other civil aviation authorities to assess the in−service altitude−keeping performance of aircraft and operators.

e. Purpose of RVSM Approvals Databases. All RVSM designated airspace is monitored airspace. ATC does not use RVSM approvals databases to determine whether or not a clearance can be issued into RVSM airspace. RVSM program managers do regularly review the operators and aircraft that operate in RVSM airspace to identify and investigate those aircraft and operators flying in RVSM airspace, but not listed on the RVSM approvals databases.

f. Registration of U.S. Operators. When U.S. operators and aircraft are granted specific RVSM authority, the Separation Standards Group at the FAA Technical Center obtains PTRS operator and aircraft information to update the FAA maintained U.S. Operator/Aircraft RVSM Approvals database. Basic database operator and aircraft information can be viewed on the RVSM Documentation web page in the "RVSM Approvals" section.

4−6−4. Flight Planning into RVSM Airspace

a. Operators that do not file the correct aircraft equipment suffix on the FAA or ICAO Flight Plan may be denied clearance into RVSM airspace. Policies for the FAA Flight Plan are detailed in subparagraph c below. Policies for the ICAO Flight Plan are detailed in subparagraph d.

b. The operator will annotate the equipment block of the FAA or ICAO Flight Plan with an aircraft equipment suffix indicating RVSM capability only after determining that both the operator is authorized and its aircraft are RVSM−compliant.

1. An operator may operate in RVSM airspace under the provisions of Part 91, Appendix G, Section 9, without specific authorization and should file "/w" in accordance with paragraph d.

2. An operator must get an OpSpec/MSpec/LOA when intending to operate RVSM outside U.S. airspace. Once issued, that operator can file "/w" in accordance with paragraph d.

3. An operator should not file "/w" when intending to operate in RVSM airspace outside of the U.S., if they do not hold a valid OpSpec/MSpec/LOA.

c. General Policies for FAA Flight Plan Equipment Suffix. Appendix 4, TBL 4−2, allows operators to indicate that the aircraft has both RVSM and Advanced Area Navigation (RNAV) capabilities or has only RVSM capability.

1. The operator will annotate the equipment block of the FAA Flight Plan with the appropriate aircraft equipment suffix from Appendix 4, TBL 4−2 and/or TBL 4−3.

2. Operators can only file one equipment suffix in block 3 of the FAA Flight Plan. Only this equipment suffix is displayed directly to the controller.

3. Aircraft with RNAV Capability. For flight in RVSM airspace, aircraft with RNAV capability, but not Advanced RNAV capability, will file "/W". Filing "/W" will not preclude such aircraft from filing and flying direct routes in en route airspace.

d. Policy for ICAO Flight Plan Equipment Suffixes.

1. Operators/aircraft that are RVSM−compliant and that file ICAO flight plans will file "/W" in block 10 (Equipment) to indicate RVSM authorization and will also file the appropriate ICAO Flight Plan suffixes to indicate navigation and communication capabilities.

2. Operators/aircraft that file ICAO flight plans that include flight in Domestic U.S. RVSM airspace must file "/W" in block 10 to indicate RVSM authorization.

e. Importance of Flight Plan Equipment Suffixes. Military users, and civilians who file stereo route flight plans, must file the appropriate equipment suffix in the equipment block of the FAA Form 7233−1, Flight Plan, or DD Form 175, Military Flight Plan, or FAA Form 7233−4, International Flight Plan, or DD Form 1801, DOD International Flight Plan. All other users must file the appropriate equipment suffix in the equipment block of FAA Form 7233−4, International Flight Plan. The equipment suffix informs ATC:

1. Whether or not the operator and aircraft are authorized to fly in RVSM airspace.

2. The navigation and/or transponder capability of the aircraft (e.g., advanced RNAV, transponder with Mode C).

f. Significant ATC uses of the flight plan equipment suffix information are:

1. To issue or deny clearance into RVSM airspace.

2. To apply a 2,000 foot vertical separation minimum in RVSM airspace to aircraft that are not authorized for RVSM, but are in one of the limited categories that the FAA has agreed to accommodate. (See paragraphs 4−6−10, Procedures for Accommodation of Non−RVSM Aircraft, and 4−6−11, Non−RVSM Aircraft Requesting Climb to and Descent from Flight Levels Above RVSM Airspace Without Intermediate Level Off, for policy on limited operation of unapproved aircraft in RVSM airspace).

3. To determine if the aircraft has "Advanced RNAV" capabilities and can be cleared to fly procedures for which that capability is required.

g. Improperly changing an aircraft equipment suffix and/or adding "NON-RVSM" in the NOTES or REMARKS section (Field 18) while not removing the "W" from Field 10, will not provide air traffic control with the proper visual indicator necessary to detect Non-RVSM aircraft. To ensure information processes correctly for Non-RVSM aircraft, the "W" in Field 10 must be removed. Entry of information in the NOTES or REMARKS section (Field 18) will not affect the determination of RVSM capability and must not be used to indicate a flight is Non-RVSM.

4−6−5. Pilot RVSM Operating Practices and Procedures

a. RVSM Mandate. If either the operator is not authorized for RVSM operations or the aircraft is not RVSM−compliant, the pilot will neither request nor accept a clearance into RVSM airspace unless:

1. The flight is conducted by a non−RVSM DOD, MEDEVAC, certification/development or foreign State (government) aircraft in accordance with paragraph 4−6−10, Procedures for Accommodation of Non−RVSM Aircraft.

2. The pilot intends to climb to or descend from FL 430 or above in accordance with paragraph 4−6−11, Non−RVSM Aircraft Requesting Climb to and Descent from Flight Levels Above RVSM Airspace Without Intermediate Level Off.

3. An emergency situation exists.

b. Basic RVSM Operating Practices and Procedures. AC 91−85 contains pilot practices and procedures for RVSM. Operators must incorporate applicable practices and procedures, as supplemented by the applicable paragraphs of this section, into operator training or pilot knowledge programs and operator documents containing RVSM operational policies.

c. AC 91−85 contains practices and procedures for flight planning, preflight procedures at the aircraft, procedures prior to RVSM airspace entry, inflight (en route) procedures, contingency procedures and post flight.

d. The following paragraphs either clarify or supplement AC 91−85 practices and procedures.

4−6−6. Guidance on Severe Turbulence and Mountain Wave Activity (MWA)

a. Introduction/Explanation

1. The information and practices in this paragraph are provided to emphasize to pilots and controllers the importance of taking appropriate action in RVSM airspace when aircraft experience severe turbulence and/or MWA that is of sufficient magnitude to significantly affect altitude−keeping.

2. Severe Turbulence. Severe turbulence causes large, abrupt changes in altitude and/or attitude usually accompanied by large variations in indicated airspeed. Aircraft may be momentarily out of control. Encounters with severe turbulence must be remedied immediately in any phase of flight. Severe turbulence may be associated with MWA.

3. Mountain Wave Activity (MWA)

(a) Significant MWA occurs both below and above the floor of RVSM airspace, FL 290. MWA often occurs in western states in the vicinity of mountain ranges. It may occur when strong winds blow perpendicular to mountain ranges resulting in up and down or wave motions in the atmosphere. Wave action can produce altitude excursions and airspeed fluctuations accompanied by only light turbulence. With sufficient amplitude, however, wave action can induce altitude and airspeed fluctuations accompanied by severe turbulence. MWA is difficult to forecast and can be highly localized and short lived.

(b) Wave activity is not necessarily limited to the vicinity of mountain ranges. Pilots experiencing wave activity anywhere that significantly affects altitude−keeping can follow the guidance provided below.

(c) Inflight MWA Indicators (Including Turbulence). Indicators that the aircraft is being subjected to MWA are:

(1) Altitude excursions and/or airspeed fluctuations with or without associated turbulence.

(2) Pitch and trim changes required to maintain altitude with accompanying airspeed fluctuations.

(3) Light to severe turbulence depending on the magnitude of the MWA.

4. Priority for Controller Application of Merging Target Procedures

(a) Explanation of Merging Target Procedures. As described in subparagraph c3 below, ATC will use "merging target procedures" to mitigate the effects of both severe turbulence and MWA. The procedures in subparagraph c3 have been adapted from existing procedures published in FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, paragraph 5−1−4, Merging Target Procedures. paragraph 5−1−4 calls for en route controllers to advise pilots of potential traffic that they perceive may fly directly above or below his/her aircraft at minimum vertical separation. In response, pilots are given the option of requesting a radar vector to ensure their radar target will not merge or overlap with the traffic's radar target.

(b) The provision of "merging target procedures" to mitigate the effects of severe turbulence and/or MWA is not optional for the controller, but rather is a priority responsibility. Pilot requests for vectors for traffic avoidance when encountering MWA or pilot reports of "Unable RVSM due turbulence or MWA" are considered first priority aircraft separation and sequencing responsibilities. (FAA Order JO 7110.65, paragraph 2−1−2, Duty Priority, states that the controller's first priority is to separate aircraft and issue safety alerts).

(c) Explanation of the term "traffic permitting." The contingency actions for MWA and severe turbulence detailed in paragraph 4−6−9, Contingency Actions: Weather Encounters and Aircraft System Failures that Occur After Entry into RVSM Airspace, state that the controller will "vector aircraft to avoid merging targets with traffic at adjacent flight levels, traffic permitting." The term "traffic permitting" is not intended to imply that merging target procedures are not a priority duty. The term is intended to recognize that, as stated in FAA Order JO 7110.65, paragraph 2−1−2, Duty Priority, there are circumstances when the controller is required to perform more than one action and must "exercise their best judgment based on the facts and circumstances known to them" to prioritize their actions. Further direction given is: "That action which is most critical from a safety standpoint is performed first."

5. TCAS Sensitivity. For both MWA and severe turbulence encounters in RVSM airspace, an additional concern is the sensitivity of collision avoidance systems when one or both aircraft operating in close proximity receive TCAS advisories in response to disruptions in altitude hold capability.

b. Pre−flight tools. Sources of observed and forecast information that can help the pilot ascertain the possibility of MWA or severe turbulence are: Forecast Winds and Temperatures Aloft (FD), Area Forecast (FA), Graphical Turbulence Guidance (GTG), SIGMETs and PIREPs.

c. Pilot Actions When Encountering Weather (e.g., Severe Turbulence or MWA)

1. Weather Encounters Inducing Altitude Deviations of Approximately 200 feet. When the pilot experiences weather induced altitude deviations of approximately 200 feet, the pilot will contact ATC and state "Unable RVSM Due (state reason)" (e.g., turbulence, mountain wave). See contingency actions in paragraph 4−6−9.

2. Severe Turbulence (including that associated with MWA). When pilots encounter severe turbulence, they should contact ATC and report the situation. Until the pilot reports clear of severe turbulence, the controller will apply merging target vectors to one or both passing aircraft to prevent their targets from merging:

EXAMPLE−
"Yankee 123, FL 310, unable RVSM due severe turbulence."

"Yankee 123, fly heading 290; traffic twelve o'clock, 10 miles, opposite direction; eastbound MD−80 at FL 320" (or the controller may issue a vector to the MD−80 traffic to avoid Yankee 123).

3. MWA. When pilots encounter MWA, they should contact ATC and report the magnitude and location of the wave activity. When a controller makes a merging targets traffic call, the pilot may request a vector to avoid flying directly over or under the traffic. In situations where the pilot is experiencing altitude deviations of 200 feet or greater, the pilot will request a vector to avoid traffic. Until the pilot reports clear of MWA, the controller will apply merging target vectors to one or both passing aircraft to prevent their targets from merging:

EXAMPLE−
"Yankee 123, FL 310, unable RVSM due mountain wave."

"Yankee 123, fly heading 290; traffic twelve o'clock, 10 miles, opposite direction; eastbound MD−80 at FL 320" (or the controller may issue a vector to the MD−80 traffic to avoid Yankee 123).

4. FL Change or Re−route. To leave airspace where MWA or severe turbulence is being encountered, the pilot may request a FL change and/or re−route, if necessary.

4−6−7. Guidance on Wake Turbulence

a. Pilots should be aware of the potential for wake turbulence encounters in RVSM airspace. Experience gained since 1997 has shown that such encounters in RVSM airspace are generally moderate or less in magnitude.

b. Prior to DRVSM implementation, the FAA established provisions for pilots to report wake turbulence events in RVSM airspace using the NASA Aviation Safety Reporting System (ASRS). A "Safety Reporting" section established on the FAA RVSM Documentation web page provides contacts, forms, and reporting procedures.

c. To date, wake turbulence has not been reported as a significant factor in DRVSM operations. European authorities also found that reports of wake turbulence encounters did not increase significantly after RVSM implementation (eight versus seven reports in a ten−month period). In addition, they found that reported wake turbulence was generally similar to moderate clear air turbulence.

d. Pilot Action to Mitigate Wake Turbulence Encounters

1. Pilots should be alert for wake turbulence when operating:

(a) In the vicinity of aircraft climbing or descending through their altitude.

(b) Approximately 10−30 miles after passing 1,000 feet below opposite−direction traffic.

(c) Approximately 10−30 miles behind and 1,000 feet below same−direction traffic.

2. Pilots encountering or anticipating wake turbulence in DRVSM airspace have the option of requesting a vector, FL change, or if capable, a lateral offset.

NOTE−
1. *Offsets of approximately a wing span upwind generally can move the aircraft out of the immediate vicinity of another aircraft's wake vortex.*

2. *In domestic U.S. airspace, pilots must request clearance to fly a lateral offset. Strategic lateral offsets flown in oceanic airspace do not apply.*

4−6−8. Pilot/Controller Phraseology

TBL 4−6−1 shows standard phraseology that pilots and controllers will use to communicate in DRVSM operations.

TBL 4−6−1

Pilot/Controller Phraseology

Message	Phraseology
For a controller to ascertain the RVSM approval status of an aircraft:	(call sign) confirm RVSM approved
Pilot indication that flight is RVSM approved	Affirm RVSM
Pilot report of lack of RVSM approval (non−RVSM status). Pilot will report non−RVSM status, as follows: **a.** On the initial call on any frequency in the RVSM airspace and . . .. **b.** In all requests for flight level changes pertaining to flight levels within the RVSM airspace and . . .. **c.** In all read backs to flight level clearances pertaining to flight levels within the RVSM airspace and . . .. **d.** In read back of flight level clearances involving climb and descent through RVSM airspace (FL 290 − 410).	Negative RVSM, (supplementary information, e.g., "Certification flight").
Pilot report of one of the following after entry into RVSM airspace: all primary altimeters, automatic altitude control systems or altitude alerters have failed. (See paragraph 4−6−9, Contingency Actions: Weather Encounters and Aircraft System Failures that Occur After Entry into RVSM Airspace.) ***NOTE−*** *This phrase is to be used to convey both the initial indication of RVSM aircraft system failure and on initial contact on all frequencies in RVSM airspace until the problem ceases to exist or the aircraft has exited RVSM airspace.*	Unable RVSM Due Equipment
ATC denial of clearance into RVSM airspace	Unable issue clearance into RVSM airspace, maintain FL
*Pilot reporting inability to maintain cleared flight level due to weather encounter. (See Paragraph 4−6−9, Contingency Actions: Weather Encounters and Aircraft System Failures that Occur After Entry into RVSM Airspace.).	*Unable RVSM due (state reason) (e.g., turbulence, mountain wave)
ATC requesting pilot to confirm that an aircraft has regained RVSM−approved status or a pilot is ready to resume RVSM	Confirm able to resume RVSM
Pilot ready to resume RVSM after aircraft system or weather contingency	Ready to resume RVSM

4−6−9. Contingency Actions: Weather Encounters and Aircraft System Failures that Occur After Entry into RVSM Airspace

TBL 4−6−2 provides pilot guidance on actions to take under certain conditions of aircraft system failure that occur after entry into RVSM airspace and weather encounters. It also describes the expected ATC controller actions in these situations. It is recognized that the pilot and controller will use judgment to determine the action most appropriate to any given situation.

TBL 4−6−2

Contingency Actions: Weather Encounters and Aircraft System Failures that Occur After Entry into RVSM Airspace

Initial Pilot Actions in Contingency Situations
Initial pilot actions when unable to maintain flight level (FL) or unsure of aircraft altitude−keeping capability: •Notify ATC and request assistance as detailed below. •Maintain cleared flight level, to the extent possible, while evaluating the situation. •Watch for conflicting traffic both visually and by reference to TCAS, if equipped**.** •Alert nearby aircraft by illuminating exterior lights (commensurate with aircraft limitations).

Severe Turbulence and/or Mountain Wave Activity (MWA) Induced Altitude Deviations of Approximately 200 feet	
Pilot will:	**Controller will:**
•When experiencing severe turbulence and/or MWA induced altitude deviations of approximately 200 feet or greater, pilot will contact ATC and state “Unable RVSM Due (state reason)” (e.g., turbulence, mountain wave) •If not issued by the controller, request vector clear of traffic at adjacent FLs •If desired, request FL change or re−route •Report location and magnitude of turbulence or MWA to ATC	•Vector aircraft to avoid merging target with traffic at adjacent flight levels, traffic permitting •Advise pilot of conflicting traffic •Issue FL change or re−route, traffic permitting •Issue PIREP to other aircraft
See Paragraph 4−6−6, Guidance on Severe Turbulence and Mountain Wave Activity (MWA) for detailed guidance.	Paragraph 4−6−6 explains “traffic permitting.”

Mountain Wave Activity (MWA) Encounters − General	
Pilot actions:	**Controller actions:**
•Contact ATC and report experiencing MWA •If so desired, pilot may request a FL change or re−route •Report location and magnitude of MWA to ATC	•Advise pilot of conflicting traffic at adjacent FL •If pilot requests, vector aircraft to avoid merging target with traffic at adjacent RVSM flight levels, traffic permitting •Issue FL change or re−route, traffic permitting •Issue PIREP to other aircraft
See paragraph 4−6−6 for guidance on MWA.	Paragraph 4−6−6 explains “traffic permitting.”
NOTE− *MWA encounters do not necessarily result in altitude deviations on the order of 200 feet. The guidance below is intended to address less significant MWA encounters.*	

Wake Turbulence Encounters	
Pilot should:	**Controller should:**
•Contact ATC and request vector, FL change or, if capable, a lateral offset	•Issue vector, FL change or lateral offset clearance, traffic permitting
See Paragraph 4−6−7, Guidance on Wake Turbulence.	Paragraph 4−6−6 explains "traffic permitting."

"Unable RVSM Due Equipment" Failure of Automatic Altitude Control System, Altitude Alerter or All Primary Altimeters	
Pilot will:	**Controller will:**
•Contact ATC and state "Unable RVSM Due Equipment"	•Provide 2,000 feet vertical separation or appropriate horizontal separation
•Request clearance out of RVSM airspace unless operational situation dictates otherwise	•Clear aircraft out of RVSM airspace unless operational situation dictates otherwise

One Primary Altimeter Remains Operational	
Pilot will:	**Controller will:**
•Cross check stand−by altimeter	•Acknowledge operation with single primary altimeter
•Notify ATC of operation with single primary altimeter	
•If unable to confirm primary altimeter accuracy, follow actions for failure of all primary altimeters	

Transponder Failure	
Pilot will:	**Controller will:**
•Contact ATC and request authority to continue to operate at cleared flight level	•Consider request to continue to operate at cleared flight level
•Comply with revised ATC clearance, if issued	•Issue revised clearance, if necessary
NOTE− *14 CFR Section 91.215 (ATC transponder and altitude reporting equipment and use) regulates operation with the transponder inoperative.*	

4−6−10. Procedures for Accommodation of Non−RVSM Aircraft

a. General Policies for Accommodation of Non−RVSM Aircraft

1. The RVSM mandate calls for only RVSM authorized aircraft/operators to fly in designated RVSM airspace with limited exceptions. The policies detailed below are intended exclusively for use by aircraft that the FAA has agreed to accommodate. They are not intended to provide other operators a means to circumvent the normal RVSM approval process.

2. If the operator is not authorized or the aircraft is not RVSM−compliant, the aircraft will be referred to as a "non−RVSM" aircraft. 14 CFR Section 91.180 and Part 91, Appendix G, enable the FAA to authorize a deviation to operate a non−RVSM aircraft in RVSM airspace.

3. Non−RVSM aircraft flights will be handled on a workload permitting basis. The vertical separation standard applied between aircraft not approved for RVSM and all other aircraft must be 2,000 feet.

4. Required Pilot Calls. The pilot of non−RVSM aircraft will inform the controller of the lack of RVSM approval in accordance with the direction provided in Paragraph 4−6−8, Pilot/Controller Phraseology.

b. Categories of Non−RVSM Aircraft that may be Accommodated

Subject to FAA approval and clearance, the following categories of non−RVSM aircraft may operate in domestic U.S. RVSM airspace provided they have an operational transponder.

1. Department of Defense (DOD) aircraft.

2. Flights conducted for aircraft certification and development purposes.

3. Active air ambulance flights utilizing a "MEDEVAC" call sign.

4. Aircraft climbing/descending through RVSM flight levels (without intermediate level off) to/from FLs above RVSM airspace (Policies for these flights are detailed in paragraph 4−6−11, Non−RVSM Aircraft Requesting Climb to and Descent from Flight Levels Above RVSM Airspace Without Intermediate Level Off.

5. Foreign State (government) aircraft.

c. Methods for operators of non−RVSM aircraft to request access to RVSM Airspace. Operators may:

1. LOA/MOU. Enter into a Letter of Agreement (LOA)/Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with the RVSM facility (the Air Traffic facility that provides air traffic services in RVSM airspace). Operators must comply with LOA/MOU.

2. File−and−Fly. File a flight plan to notify the FAA of their intention to request access to RVSM airspace.

NOTE−
Priority for access to RVSM airspace will be afforded to RVSM compliant aircraft, then File−and−Fly flights.

4−6−11. Non−RVSM Aircraft Requesting Climb to and Descent from Flight Levels Above RVSM Airspace Without Intermediate Level Off

a. File−and−Fly. Operators of Non−RVSM aircraft climbing to and descending from RVSM flight levels should just file a flight plan.

b. Non−RVSM aircraft climbing to and descending from flight levels above RVSM airspace will be handled on a workload permitting basis. The vertical separation standard applied in RVSM airspace between non−RVSM aircraft and all other aircraft must be 2,000 feet.

c. Non−RVSM aircraft climbing to/descending from RVSM airspace can only be considered for accommodation provided:

1. Aircraft is capable of a continuous climb/descent and does not need to level off at an intermediate altitude for any operational considerations and

2. Aircraft is capable of climb/descent at the normal rate for the aircraft.

d. Required Pilot Calls. The pilot of non−RVSM aircraft will inform the controller of the lack of RVSM approval in accordance with the direction provided in paragraph 4−6−8, Pilot/Controller Phraseology.

Chapter 5. Air Traffic Procedures

Section 1. Preflight

5−1−1. Preflight Preparation

a. Prior to every flight, pilots should gather all information vital to the nature of the flight, assess whether the flight would be safe, and then file a flight plan. Pilots can receive a regulatory compliant briefing without contacting Flight Service. Pilots are encouraged to use automated resources and review Advisory Circular AC 91−92, Pilot's Guide to a Preflight Briefing, for more information. Pilots who prefer to contact Flight Service are encouraged to conduct a self−brief prior to calling. Conducting a self−brief before contacting Flight Service provides familiarity of meteorological and aeronautical conditions applicable to the route of flight and promotes a better understanding of weather information. Pilots may access Flight Service through www.1800wxbrief.com or by calling 1−800−WX−BRIEF. Flight planning applications are also available for conducting a self−briefing and filing flight plans.

NOTE−
Alaska only: Pilots filing flight plans via "fast file" who desire to have their briefing recorded, should include a statement at the end of the recording as to the source of their weather briefing.

b. The information required by the FAA to process flight plans is obtained from FAA Form 7233−4, International Flight Plan. Only DOD users, and civilians who file stereo route flight plans, may use FAA Form 7233−1, Flight Plan.

NOTE−
FAA and DOD Flight Plan Forms are equivalent. Where the FAA specifies Form 7233−1, Flight Plan and FAA Form 7233−4, International Flight Plan, the DOD may substitute their Form DD 175, Military Flight Plan and Form DD−1801, DOD International Flight Plan as necessary. NAS automation systems process and convert data in the same manner, although for computer acceptance, input fields may be adjusted to follow FAA format.

c. FSSs are required to advise of pertinent NOTAMs if a *standard* briefing is requested, but if they are overlooked, do not hesitate to remind the specialist that you have not received NOTAM information. Additionally, FSS briefers do not provide FDC NOTAM information for special instrument approach procedures unless specifically asked. Pilots authorized by the FAA to use special instrument approach procedures must specifically request FDC NOTAM information for these procedures. Pilots who receive the information electronically will receive NOTAMs for special IAPs automatically.

NOTE−
Domestic Notices and International Notices are not provided during a briefing unless specifically requested by the pilot since the FSS specialist has no way of knowing whether the pilot has already checked the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search website external links prior to calling. Airway NOTAMs, procedural NOTAMs, and NOTAMs that are general in nature and not tied to a specific airport/facility (for example, flight advisories and restrictions, open duration special security instructions, and special flight rules areas) are briefed solely by pilot request. Remember to ask for these notices if you have not already reviewed this information, and to request all pertinent NOTAMs specific to your flight.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 5−1−3, Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) System.

d. Pilots are urged to use only the latest issue of aeronautical charts in planning and conducting flight operations. Aeronautical charts are revised and reissued on a regular scheduled basis to ensure that depicted data are current and reliable. In the conterminous U.S., Sectional Charts are updated every 6 months, IFR En Route Charts every 56 days, and amendments to civil IFR Approach Charts are accomplished on a 56−day cycle with a change notice volume issued on the 28−day midcycle. Charts that have been superseded by those of a more recent date may contain obsolete or incomplete flight information.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 9−1−4, General Description of Each Chart Series

e. When requesting a preflight briefing, identify yourself as a pilot and provide the following:

1. Type of flight planned; e.g., VFR or IFR.

2. Aircraft's number or pilot's name.

3. Aircraft type.

4. Departure Airport.

5. Route of flight.

6. Destination.

7. Flight altitude(s).

8. ETD and ETE.

f. Prior to conducting a briefing, briefers are required to have the background information listed above so that they may tailor the briefing to the needs of the proposed flight. The objective is to communicate a "picture" of meteorological and aeronautical information necessary for the conduct of a safe and efficient flight. Briefers use all available weather and aeronautical information to summarize data applicable to the proposed flight. Pilots who have briefed themselves before calling Flight Service should advise the briefer what information has been obtained from other sources.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 7−1−5, Preflight Briefings, contains those items of a weather briefing that should be expected or requested.

g. FAA by 14 CFR Part 93, Subpart K, has designated High Density Traffic Airports (HDTA) and has prescribed air traffic rules and requirements for operating aircraft (excluding helicopter operations) to and from these airports.

REFERENCE−
Chart Supplement U.S., Special Notices Section
AIM, Paragraph 4−1−21, Airport Reservation Operations and Special Traffic Management Programs

h. In addition to the filing of a flight plan, if the flight will traverse or land in one or more foreign countries, it is particularly important that pilots leave a complete itinerary with someone directly concerned and keep that person advised of the flight's progress. If serious doubt arises as to the safety of the flight, that person should first contact the FSS.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5−1−11, Flights Outside the U.S. and U.S. Territories

i. Pilots operating under provisions of 14 CFR Part 135 on a domestic flight without having an FAA assigned 3−letter designator, must prefix the normal registration (N) number with the letter "T" on flight plan filing; for example, TN1234B.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 4−2−4, Aircraft Call Signs
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Paragraph 2−3−5a, Aircraft Identity
FAA Order JO 7110.10, Paragraph 6−2−1b1, Flight Plan Recording

5−1−2. Follow IFR Procedures Even When Operating VFR

a. To maintain IFR proficiency, pilots are urged to practice IFR procedures whenever possible, even when operating VFR. Some suggested practices include:

1. Obtain a complete preflight briefing and check NOTAMs. Prior to every flight, pilots should gather all information vital to the nature of the flight. Pilots can receive a regulatory compliant briefing without contacting Flight Service. Pilots are encouraged to use automated resources and review AC 91−92, Pilot's Guide to a Preflight Briefing, for more information. NOTAMs are available online from the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search website (https://notams.aim.faa.gov/notam-Search/), private vendors, or on request from Flight Service.

2. File a flight plan. This is an excellent low cost insurance policy. The cost is the time it takes to fill it out. The insurance includes the knowledge that someone will be looking for you if you become overdue at your destination. Pilots can file flight plans either by using a website or by calling Flight Service. Flight planning applications are also available to file, activate, and close VFR flight plans.

3. Use current charts.

4. Use the navigation aids. Practice maintaining a good course−keep the needle centered.

5. Maintain a constant altitude which is appropriate for the direction of flight.

6. Estimate en route position times.

7. Make accurate and frequent position reports to the FSSs along your route of flight.

b. Simulated IFR flight is recommended (under the hood); however, pilots are cautioned to review and adhere to the requirements specified in 14 CFR Section 91.109 before and during such flight.

c. When flying VFR at night, in addition to the altitude appropriate for the direction of flight, pilots should maintain an altitude which is at or above the minimum en route altitude as shown on charts. This is especially true in mountainous terrain, where there is usually very little ground reference. Do not depend on your eyes alone to avoid rising unlighted terrain, or even lighted obstructions such as TV towers.

5−1−3. Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) System

a. General. The NOTAM system provides pilots with time critical aeronautical information that is temporary, or information to be published on aeronautical charts at a later date, or information from another operational publication. The NOTAM is cancelled when the information in the NOTAM is published on the chart or when the temporary condition is returned to normal status. NOTAMs may be disseminated up to 7 days before the start of activity. Pilots can access NOTAM information online via NOTAM Search at: https://notams.aim.faa.gov/notamSearch/ or from an FSS.

b. Preflight. 14 CFR § 91.103, Preflight Action directs pilots to become familiar with all available information concerning a planned flight prior to departure, including NOTAMs. Pilots may change their flight plan based on available information. Current NOTAM information may affect:

1. Aerodromes.

2. Runways, taxiways, and ramp restrictions.

3. Obstructions.

4. Communications.

5. Airspace.

6. Status of navigational aids or radar service availability.

7. Other information essential to planned en route, terminal, or landing operations.

c. ARTCC NOTAMs. Pilots should also review NOTAMs for the ARTCC area (for example, Washington Center (ZDC), Cleveland Center (ZOB), etc.) in which the flight will be operating. You can find the 3 letter code for each ARTCC on the FAA's NOTAM webpage. These NOTAMs may affect the planned flight. Some of the operations include Central Altitude Reservation Function (CARF), Special Use Airspace (SUA), Temporary Flight Restrictions (TFR), Global Positioning System (GPS), Flight Data Center (FDC) changes to routes, wind turbine, and Unmanned Aircraft System (UAS).

NOTE−
NOTAM information is transmitted using ICAO contractions to reduce transmission time. See TBL 5−1−2 for a listing of the most commonly used contractions, or go online to the following URL: https://www.notams.faa.gov/downloads/contractions.pdf. For a complete listing of approved NOTAM Contractions, see FAA JO Order 7340.2, Contractions.

d. Destination Update. Pilots should also contact ATC or FSS while en route to obtain updated airfield information for their destination. This is particularly important when flying to the airports without an operating control tower. Snow removal, fire and rescue activities, construction, and wildlife encroachment, may pose hazards to pilots. This information may not be available to pilots prior to arrival/departure.

e. NAVAID NOTAMs. Pilots should check NOTAMs to ensure NAVAIDs required for the flight are in service. A NOTAM is published when a NAVAID is out of service or Unserviceable (U/S). Although a NAVAID is deemed U/S and planned for removal from service, it may be a long time before that NAVAID is officially decommissioned and removed from charts. A NOTAM is the primary method of alerting pilots to its unavailability. It is recommended that pilots using VFR charts should regularly consult the Chart Update Bulletin. This bulletin identifies any updates to the chart that have not yet been accounted for.

f. GPS NOTAMs. The FAA issues information on the status of GPS through the NOTAM system. Operators may find information on GPS satellite outages, GPS testing, and GPS anomalies by specifically searching for GPS NOTAMS prior to flight.

1. The NOTAM system uses the terms UNRELIABLE (UNREL), MAY NOT BE AVAILABLE (AVBL), and NOT AVAILABLE (AVBL) when describing the status of GPS. UNREL indicates the expected level of service of the GPS and/or WAAS may not be available. Pilots must then determine the adequacy of the signal for desired use. Aircraft should have additional navigation equipment for their intended route.

NOTE−
Unless associated with a known testing NOTAM, pilots should report GPS anomalies, including degraded operation and/or loss of service, as soon as possible via radio or telephone, and via the GPS Anomaly Reporting Form. (See 1−1−13.)

2. GPS operations may also be NOTAMed for testing. This is indicated in the NOTAM language with the name of the test in parenthesis. When GPS testing NOTAMS are published and testing is actually occurring, ATC will advise pilots requesting or cleared for a GPS or RNAV (GPS) approach, that GPS may not be available and request the pilot's intentions. TBL 5−1−1 lists an example of a GPS testing NOTAM.

g. NOTAM Classification. NOTAM information is classified as Domestic NOTAMs (NOTAM D), Flight Data Center (FDC) NOTAMs, International NOTAMs, or Military NOTAMs.

1. NOTAM (D) information is disseminated for all navigational facilities that are part of the National Airspace System (NAS), all public use aerodromes, seaplane bases, and heliports listed in the Chart Supplement. U.S. NOTAM (D) information includes taxiway closures, personnel and equipment near or crossing runways, and airport lighting aids that do not affect instrument approach criteria (i.e., VGSI). All NOTAM Ds must have one of the keywords listed in TBL 5−1−1, as the first part of the text after the location identifier. These keywords categorize NOTAM Ds by subject, for example, APRON (ramp), RWY (runway), SVC (Services), etc. There are several types of NOTAM Ds:

(a) Aerodrome activity and conditions, to include field conditions.

(b) Airspace to include CARF, SUA, and general airspace activity like UAS or pyrotechnics.

(c) Visual and radio navigational aids.

(d) Communication and services.

(e) Pointer NOTAMs. NOTAMs issued to point to additional aeronautical information. When pointing to another NOTAM, the keyword in the pointer NOTAM must match the keyword in the original NOTAM. Pointer NOTAMs should be issued for, but are not limited to, TFRs, Airshows, Temporary SUA, major NAS system interruptions, etc.

2. FDC NOTAMs are issued when it is necessary to disseminate regulatory information. FDC NOTAMs include:

(a) Amendments to published IAPs and other current aeronautical charts.

(b) Temporary Flight Restrictions (TFR) restrict entrance to a certain airspace at a certain time, however, some TFRs provide relief if ATC permission is given to enter the area when requested. Online preflight resources for TFRs provide graphics and plain language interpretations.

(c) High barometric pressure warning.

(d) Laser light activity.

(e) ADS−B, TIS−B, and FIS−B service availability.

(f) Satellite−based systems such as WAAS or GPS.

(g) Special Notices.

3. International NOTAMs are published in ICAO format per Annex 15 and distributed to multiple countries.

(a) International NOTAMs issued by the U.S. NOTAM Office use Series A followed by 4 sequential numbers, a slant "/" and a 2−digit number representing the year the NOTAM was issued. International NOTAMs basically duplicate data found in a U.S. Domestic NOTAM.

(b) Not every topic of a U.S. Domestic NOTAM is issued as an International NOTAM by the U.S. The U.S. International NOTAM will be linked to the appropriate U.S. Domestic NOTAM when possible.

(c) International NOTAMs received by the FAA from other countries are stored in the U.S. NOTAM System.

(d) The International NOTAM format includes a "Q" Line that can be easily read/parsed by a computer and allows the NOTAM to be displayed digitally.

(1) Field A: ICAO location identifier or FIR affected by the NOTAM.

(2) Field B: Start of Validity.

(3) Field C: End of Validity (both in [Year][Month][Day][Hour][Minute] format).

(4) Field D: (when present) Schedule.

(5) Field E: Full NOTAM description.

(6) Field F: (when present) Lowest altitude, or "SFC."

(7) Field G: (when present) Highest altitude, or "UNL."

(e) For more on International format, please see Annex 15.

4. **Military NOTAMs** are NOTAMs originated by the U.S. Air Force, Army, Marine, or Navy, and pertaining to military or joint−use navigational aids/airports that are part of the NAS. Military NOTAMs are published in the International NOTAM format and should be reviewed by users of a military or joint−use facility.

h. Security NOTAMS:

1. U.S. Domestic Security NOTAMS are FDC NOTAMS that inform pilots of certain U.S. security activities or requirements, such as Special Security Instructions for aircraft operations to, from, within, or transitioning U.S. territorial airspace. These NOTAMS are found on the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search website under the location designator KZZZ.

2. United States International Flight Prohibitions, Potential Hostile Situations, and Foreign Notices are issued by the FAA and are found on the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search website under the location designator KICZ.

TBL 5−1−1

NOTAM Keywords

Keyword	Definition
RWY . . . . *Example*	**Runway** !BNA BNA RWY 18/36 CLSD YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
TWY . . . . *Example*	**Taxiway** !BTV BTV TWY C EDGE LGT OBSC YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
APRON . . . . . *Example*	**Apron/Ramp** !BNA BNA APRON NORTH APN E 100FT CLSD YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
AD . . . . *Example*	**Aerodrome** !BET BET AD AP ELK NEAR MOVEMENT AREAS YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
OBST . . . . *Example*	**Obstruction** !SJT SJT OBST MOORED BALLOON WI AN AREA DEFINED AS 1NM RADIUS OF SJT 2430FT (510FT AGL) FLAGGED YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
NAV . . . . *Example*	**Navigation Aids** !SHV SHV NAV ILS RWY 32 110.3 COMMISSIONED YYMMDDHHMM−PERM
COM . . . . *Example*	**Communications** !INW INW COM REMOTE COM OUTLET 122.6 U/S YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM EST (Note* EST will auto cancel)
SVC . . . . *Example*	**Services** !ROA ROA SVC TWR COMMISSIONED YYMMDDHHMM−PERM
AIRSPACE . . *Example*	**Airspace** !MHV MHV AIRSPACE AEROBATIC ACFT WI AN AREA DEFINED AS 4.3NM RADIUS OF MHV 5500FT−10500FT AVOIDANCE ADZ CTC JOSHUA APP DLY YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
ODP . . . . *Example*	**Obstacle Departure Procedure** !FDC 2/9700 DIK ODP DICKINSON − THEODORE ROOSEVELT RGNL, DICKINSON, ND. TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND (OBSTACLE) DEPARTURE PROCEDURES AMDT 1... DEPARTURE PROCEDURE: RWY 25, CLIMB HEADING 250 TO 3500 BEFORE TURNING LEFT. ALL OTHER DATA REMAINS AS PUBLISHED. THIS IS TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND (OBSTACLE) DEPARTURE PROCEDURES, AMDT 1A. YYMMDDHHMM−PERM
SID . . . . *Example*	**Standard Instrument Departure** !FDC x/xxxx DFW SID DALLAS/FORT WORTH INTL, DALLAS, TX. PODDE THREE DEPARTURE... CHANGE NOTES TO READ: RWYS 17C/R, 18L/R: DO NOT EXCEED 240KT UNTIL LARRN. RWYS 35L/C, 36L/R: DO NOT EXCEED 240KT UNTIL KMART YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
STAR . . . . *Example*	**Standard Terminal Arrival** !FDC x/xxxx DCA STAR RONALD REAGAN WASHINGTON NATIONAL,WASHINGTON, DC. WZRRD TWO ARRIVAL... SHAAR TRANSITION: ROUTE FROM DRUZZ INT TO WZRRD INT NOT AUTHORIZED. AFTER DRUZZ INT EXPECT RADAR VECTORS TO AML VORTAC YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM

Keyword	Definition
CHART . . . . . *Example*	**Chart** !FDC 2/9997 DAL IAP DALLAS LOVE FIELD, DALLAS, TX. ILS OR LOC RWY 31R, AMDT 5... CHART NOTE: SIMULTANEOUS APPROACH AUTHORIZED WITH RWY 31L. MISSED APPROACH: CLIMB TO 1000 THEN CLIMBING RIGHT TURN TO 5000 ON HEADING 330 AND CVE R−046 TO FINGR INT/ CVE 36.4 DME AND HOLD. CHART LOC RWY 31L. THIS IS ILS OR LOC RWY 31R, AMDT 5A. YYMMDDHHMM−PERM
DATA . . . . *Example*	**Data** !FDC 2/9700 DIK ODP DICKINSON − THEODORE ROOSEVELT RGNL, DICKINSON, ND. TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND (OBSTACLE) DEPARTURE PROCEDURES AMDT 1... DEPARTURE PROCEDURE: RWY 25, CLIMB HEADING 250 TO 3500 BEFORE TURNING LEFT. ALL OTHER DATA REMAINS AS PUBLISHED. THIS IS TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND (OBSTACLE) DEPARTURE PROCEDURES, AMDT 1A. YYMMDDHHMM−PERM
IAP . . . . *Example*	**Instrument Approach Procedure** !FDC 2/9997 DAL IAP DALLAS LOVE FIELD, DALLAS, TX. ILS OR LOC RWY 31R, AMDT 5... CHART NOTE: SIMULTANEOUS APPROACH AUTHORIZED WITH RWY 31L. MISSED APPROACH: CLIMB TO 1000 THEN CLIMBING RIGHT TURN TO 5000 ON HEADING 330 AND CVE R−046 TO FINGR INT/ CVE 36.4 DME AND HOLD. CHART LOC RWY 31L. THIS IS ILS OR LOC RWY 31R, AMDT 5A. YYMMDDHHMM−PERM
VFP . . . . *Example*	**Visual Flight Procedures** !FDC X/XXXX JFK VFP JOHN F KENNEDY INTL, NEW YORK, NY. PARKWAY VISUAL RWY 13L/R, ORIG...WEATHER MINIMUMS 3000 FOOT CEILING AND 3 MILES VISIBILITY. YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
ROUTE . . . . . *Example*	**Route** !FDC x/xxxx ZFW ROUTE ZFW ZKC. V140 SAYRE (SYO) VORTAC, OK TO TULSA (TUL) VORTAC, OK MEA 4300. YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM EST
SPECIAL . . . *Example*	**Special** !FDC x/xxxx JNU SPECIAL JUNEAU INTERNATIONAL, JUNEAU, AK. LDA−2 RWY 8 AMDT 9 PROCEDURE TURN NA. YYMMDDHHMM−YYMMDDHHMM
SECURITY . . *Example*	**Security** !FDC x/xxxx FDC ...SPECIAL NOTICE... THIS IS A RESTATEMENT OF A PREVIOUSLY ISSUED ADVISORY NOTICE. IN THE INTEREST OF NATIONAL SECURITY AND TO THE EXTENT PRACTICABLE, PILOTS ARE STRONGLY ADVISED TO AVOID THE AIRSPACE ABOVE, OR IN PROXIMITY TO SUCH SITES AS POWER PLANTS (NUCLEAR, HYDRO−ELECTRIC, OR COAL), DAMS, REFINERIES, INDUSTRIAL COMPLEXES, MILITARY FACILITIES AND OTHER SIMILAR FACILITIES. PILOTS SHOULD NOT CIRCLE AS TO LOITER IN THE VICINITY OVER THESE TYPES OF FACILITIES.
GPS TESTING *Example*	**Global Positioning System Testing** !GPS 01/028 ZAB NAV GPS (YPG_AZ GPS 21−06)(INCLUDING WAAS, GBAS, AND ADS−B) MAYNOT BE AVBL WI A276NM RADIUS CENTERED AT 332347N1142221W (BLH108023) FL400−UNL, 232NM RADIUS AT FL250, 164NM RADIUS AT 100000FT 160NM RADIUS AT 4000FT AGL 126NM RADIUS AT 50FT AGL DLY 1830−2230 2101281830−2101292230
PRN (GPS) *Example*	Pseudo−random noise code used to differentiate GPS satellites. This code allows any receiver to identify exactly which satellite(s) it is receiving. !GPS GPS NAV PRN 16 U/S 2109231600−2109242300EST

TBL 5−1−2

Contractions Commonly Found in NOTAMs

	A
ABN	Aerodrome Beacon
ACFT	Aircraft
ACT	Active
ADJ	Adjacent
AGL	Above Ground Level
ALS	Approach Light System
AP	Airport
APN	Apron
APP	Approach control office *or* approach control *or* approach control service
ARST	Arresting *(specify (part of) aircraft arresting equipment)*
ASDA	Accelerate Stop Distance Available
ASPH	Asphalt
AUTH	Authorized *or* authorization
AVBL	Available *or* availability

AVGAS	Aviation gasoline
AWOS	Automatic Weather Observing System
AZM	Azimuth
	B
BA	Braking action
BCN	Beacon *(aeronautical ground light)*
BCST	Broadcast
BDRY	Boundary
BLDG	Building
BLW	Below
BTN	Between
	C
C	Center *(preceded by runway designator number to identify a parallel runway)*
CD	Clearance delivery
CIV	Civil
CL	Centerline
CLSD	Close *or* closed *or* closing
COM	Communication
CONC	Concrete
COND	Condition
CONS	Continuous
CONST	Construction *or* constructed
CPDLC	Controller Pilot Data Link Communications
CTC	Contact
CUST	Customs
	D
DA	Decision altitude
DEG	Degrees
DEP	Depart *or* Departure
DER	Departure end of the runway
DH	Decision Height
DIST	Distance
DLY	Daily
DP	Dew Point Temperature
DPT	Depth
DTHR	Displaced Runway Threshold
	E
E	East *or* eastern longititude
EB	Eastbound
EMERG	Emergency
ENE	East−northeast
EQPT	Equipment
ESE	East−southeast
EST	Estimate *or* estimated *or* estimation *(message type designator)*
EXC	Except
	F
FL	Flight level
FREQ	Frequency
FRI	Friday
FSS	Flight Service Station
FST	First
FT	Feet *(dimensional unit)*
	G
G	Green
GA	General aviation
GLD	Glider
GND	Ground
GP	Glide Path
GRVL	Gravel
	H
HEL	Helicopter
HGT	Height *or* height above
HLDG	Holding
HLP	Heliport
HVY	Heavy
	I
IFR	Instrument Flight Rules
ILS	Instrument Landing System
IM	Inner Marker
INOP	Inoperative
INT	Intersection
	K
KT	Knots
	L
L	Left *(preceded by runway designator number to identify a parallel runway)*
LAT	Latitude
LDA	Landing Distance Available
LDG	Landing
LEN	Length
LGT	Light *or* lighting
LGTD	Lighted
LOC	Localizer
LONG	Longitude
	M
MAINT	Maintenance
MBST	Microburst
MIL	Military
MIN	Minutes
MNT	Monitor *or* monitoring *or* monitored
MON	Monday
MOV	Move *or* moving *or* movement
	N
N	North
NAVAID	Navigational aid
NB	Northbound
NDB	Nondirectional Radio Beacon
NE	Northeast
NEB	Northeast bound
NM	Nautical Mile/s
NNE	North−northeast
NNW	North−northwest
NOV	November
NW	Northwest
NWB	Northwest bound
	O
OBSC	Obscure *or* obscured *or* obscuring
OBST	Obstacle
OPN	Open *or* opening *or* opened
OPS	Operations

	P
PAPI	Precision Approach Path Indicator
PARL	Parallel
PAX	Passenger/s
PCL	Pilot Controlled Lighting
PCT	Percent
PERM	Permanent
PJE	Parachute Jumping Activities
PLA	Practice Low Approach
PPR	Prior Permission Required
PRN	Pseudo−random Navigation
PT	Procedure Turn
	R
R	Red
R	Right *(preceded by runway designator number to identify a parallel runway)*
RAI	Runway Alignment Indicator
RCL	Runway Centerline
RCLL	Runway Centerline Light
REDL	Receive/Receiver
RLLS	Runway Lead−in Light System
RMK	Remark
RTS	Return to Service
RTZL	Runway Touchdown Zone Light(s)
RVR	Runway Visual Range
RWY	Runway
	S
S	South *or* southern latitude
SA	Sand
SAT	Saturday
SB	Southbound
SE	Southeast
SEC	Seconds
SFC	Surface
SN	Snow
SR	Sunrise
SS	Sunset
SSR	Secondary surveillance radar
SSW	South−southwest
STD	Standard
SUN	Sunday
SW	Southwest
SWB	Southwest bound
	T
TAR	Terminal area surveillance radar
TAX	Taxing *or* taxiing
TDZ	Touchdown Zone
TEMPO	Temporary *or* temporarily
TFC	Traffic
THR	Threshold
THU	Thursday
TKOF	Takeoff
TODA	Take−off Distance Available
TORA	Take−off Run Available
TRG	Training
TUE	Tuesday
TWR	Aerodrome Control Tower
TWY	Taxiway
TX	Taxilane
	U
U/S	Unserviceable
UAS	Unmanned Aircraft System
UNL	Unlimited
UNREL	Unreliable
	V
VIS	Visibility
VOR	VHF Omni-Directional Radio Range
VORTAC	VOR and TACAN (collocated)
VOT	VOR Test Facility
	W
W	West *or* western longitude
WB	Westbound
WDI	Wind Direction Indicator
WED	Wednesday
WI	Within
WID	Width *or* wide
WIP	Work in progress
WNW	West−northwest
WS	Wind shear
WSW	West−southwest

5−1−4. Operational Information System (OIS)

a. The FAA's Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC) maintains a website with near real−time National Airspace System (NAS) status information. NAS operators are encouraged to access the website at http://www.fly.faa.gov prior to filing their flight plan.

b. The website consolidates information from advisories. An advisory is a message that is disseminated electronically by the ATCSCC that contains information pertinent to the NAS.

1. Advisories are normally issued for the following items:

(a) Ground Stops.

(b) Ground Delay Programs.

(c) Route Information.

(d) Plan of Operations.

(e) Facility Outages and Scheduled Facility Outages.

(f) Volcanic Ash Activity Bulletins.

(g) Special Traffic Management Programs.

2. This list is not all−inclusive. Any time there is information that may be beneficial to a large number of people, an advisory may be sent. Additionally, there may be times when an advisory is not sent due to workload or the short length of time of the activity.

3. Route information is available on the website and in specific advisories. Some route information, subject to the 56−day publishing cycle, is located on the "OIS" under "Products," Route Management Tool (RMT), and "What's New" Playbook. The RMT and Playbook contain routings for use by Air Traffic and NAS operators when they are coordinated "real−time" and are then published in an ATCSCC advisory.

4. Route advisories are identified by the word "Route" in the header; the associated action is required (RQD), recommended (RMD), planned (PLN), or for your information (FYI). Operators are expected to file flight plans consistent with the Route RQD advisories.

5. Electronic System Impact Reports are on the intranet at http://www.atcscc.faa.gov/ois/ under "System Impact Reports." This page lists scheduled outages/events/projects that significantly impact the NAS; for example, runway closures, air shows, and construction projects. Information includes anticipated delays and traffic management initiatives (TMI) that may be implemented.

5−1−5. Flight Plan − VFR Flights

(See Appendix 4, FAA Form 7233−4 − International Flight Plan)

a. The requirements for the filing and activation of VFR flight plans can vary depending in which airspace the flight is operating. Pilots are responsible for activating flight plans with a Flight Service Station. Control tower personnel do not automatically activate VFR flight plans.

1. Within the continental U.S., a VFR flight plan is not normally required.

2. VFR flights (except for DOD and law enforcement flights) into an Air Defense Identification Zone (ADIZ) are required to file DVFR flight plans.

NOTE−
Detailed ADIZ procedures are found inSection 6, National Security and Interception Procedures, of this chapter. (See 14 CFR Part 99).

3. Flights within the Washington, DC Special Flight Rules Area have additional requirements that must be met. Visit http://www.faasafety.gov for the required Special Awareness Training that must be completed before flight within this area.

4. VFR flight to an international destination requires a filed and activated flight plan.

NOTE−
ICAO flight plan guidance is published in ICAO Document 4444 PANS−ATM Appendix 2.

b. It is strongly recommended that a VFR flight plan be filed with a Flight Service Station or equivalent flight plan filing service. When filing, pilots must use FAA Form 7233−4, International Flight Plan or DD Form 1801. Only DOD users, and civilians who file stereo route flight plans, may use FAA Form 7233−1, Flight Plan. Pilots may take advantage of advances in technology by filing their flight plans using any available electronic means. Activating the flight plan will ensure that you receive VFR Search and Rescue services.

c. When a stopover flight is anticipated, it is recommended that a separate flight plan be filed for each leg of the flight.

d. Pilots are encouraged to activate their VFR flight plans with Flight Service by the most expeditious means possible. This may be via radio or other electronic means. VFR flight plan proposals are normally retained for two hours following the proposed time of departure.

e. Pilots may also activate a VFR flight plan by using an assumed departure time. This assumed departure time will cause the flight plan to become active at the designated time. This may negate the need for communication with a flight service station or flight plan filing service upon departure. It is the pilot's responsibility to revise his actual departure time, time en route, or ETA with flight service.

NOTE−
Pilots are strongly advised to remain mindful when using an assumed departure time. If not updated, search and rescue activities will be based on the assumed departure time.

f. U.S. air traffic control towers do not routinely activate VFR flight plans. Foreign pilots especially must be mindful of the need to communicate directly with a flight service station, or use an assumed departure time procedure clearly communicated with the flight plan filing service.

g. Although position reports are not required for VFR flight plans, periodic reports to FSSs along the route are good practice. Such contacts permit significant information to be passed to the transiting aircraft and also serve to check the progress of the flight should it be necessary for any reason to locate the aircraft.

h. Pilots flying VFR should fly an appropriate cruising altitude for their direction of flight.

i. When filing a VFR Flight plan, indicate the appropriate aircraft equipment capability as prescribed for an IFR flight plan.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 5−1−6, IFR Flights.

j. ATC radar history data can be useful in finding a downed or missing aircraft; therefore, surveillance equipment should be listed in Item 18. Pilots using commercial GPS tracking services are encouraged to note the specific service in Item 19 N/ (survival equip remarks) of FAA Form 7233−4 or DD Form 1801.

5−1−6. Flight Plan − IFR Flights

(See Appendix 4, FAA Form 7233−4 − International Flight Plan)

a. General

1. Use of FAA Form 7233−4 or DD Form 1801 is mandatory for:

(a) Assignment of RNAV SIDs and STARs or other PBN routing,

(b) All civilian IFR flights that will depart U.S. domestic airspace, and

(c) Domestic IFR flights except military/ DOD and civilians who file stereo route flight plans.

(d) All military/DOD IFR flights that will depart U.S. controlled airspace.

2. Military/DOD flights using FAA Form 7233−1, or DD Form 175, may not be eligible for assignment of RNAV SIDs or STARs. Military flights desiring assignment of these procedures should file using FAA Form 7233−4 or DD 1801, as described in this section.

3. When filing an IFR flight plan using FAA Form 7233−4 or DD Form 1801, it is recommended that filers include all operable navigation, communication, and surveillance equipment capabilities by adding appropriate equipment qualifiers as shown in Appendix 4, FAA Form 7233−4, International Flight Plan.

4. ATC issues clearances based on aircraft capabilities filed in Items 10 and 18 of FAA Form 7233−4 or DD 1801. Operators should file all capabilities for which the aircraft and crew is certified, capable, and authorized. PBN/capability must be filed in Item 18, Other Information. When filing a capability, ATC expects filers to use that capability; for example, answer a SATVOICE call from ATC if code M1 or M2 is filed in Item 10.

5. Prior to departure from within, or prior to entering controlled airspace, a pilot must submit a complete flight plan and receive an air traffic clearance, if weather conditions are below VFR minimums. IFR flight plans may be submitted to an FSS or flight plan filing service.

6. Pilots should file IFR flight plans at least 30 minutes prior to estimated time of departure to preclude possible delay in receiving a departure clearance from ATC.

7. In order to provide FAA traffic management units' strategic route planning capabilities, nonscheduled operators conducting IFR operations above FL 230 are requested to voluntarily file IFR flight plans at least 4 hours prior to estimated time of departure (ETD).

8. To minimize your delay in entering Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E surface areas at destination when IFR weather conditions exist or are forecast at that airport, an IFR flight plan should be filed before departure. Otherwise, a 30−minute delay is not unusual in receiving an ATC clearance because of time spent in processing flight plan data.

9. Traffic saturation frequently prevents control personnel from accepting flight plans by radio. In such cases, the pilot is advised to contact a flight plan filing service for the purpose of filing the flight plan.

10. When requesting an IFR clearance, it is highly recommended that the departure airport be identified by stating the city name and state and/or the airport location identifier in order to clarify to ATC the exact location of the intended airport of departure.

11. Multiple versions of flight plans for the same flight may lead to unsafe conditions and errors within the air traffic system. Pilots must not file more than one flight plan for the same flight without ensuring that the previous flight plan has been successfully removed.

12. When a pilot is aware that the possibility for multiple flight plans on the same aircraft may exist, ensuring receipt of a full route clearance will help mitigate chances of error.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 5−1−12, Change in Flight Plan.
AIM, Para 5−1−13, Change in Proposed Departure Time.

b. Airways and Jet Routes Depiction on Flight Plan

1. It is vitally important that the route of flight be accurately and completely described in the flight plan. To simplify definition of the proposed route, and to facilitate ATC, pilots are requested to file via airways or jet routes established for use at the altitude or flight level planned.

2. If flight is to be conducted via designated airways or jet routes, describe the route by indicating the type and number designators of the airway(s) or jet route(s) requested. If more than one airway or jet route is to be used, clearly indicate points of transition. If the transition is made at an unnamed intersection, show the next succeeding NAVAID or named intersection on the intended route and the complete route from that point. Reporting points may be identified by using authorized name/code as depicted on appropriate aeronautical charts. The following two examples illustrate the need to specify the transition point when two routes share more than one transition fix.

EXAMPLE−
1. *ALB J37 BUMPY J14 BHM Spelled out: from Albany, New York, via Jet Route 37 transitioning to Jet Route 14 at BUMPY intersection, thence via Jet Route 14 to Birmingham, Alabama.*

2. *ALB J37 ENO J14 BHM Spelled out: from Albany, New York, via Jet Route 37 transitioning to Jet Route 14 at Smyrna VORTAC (ENO) thence via Jet Route 14 to Birmingham, Alabama.*

3. The route of flight may also be described by naming the reporting points or NAVAIDs over which the flight will pass, provided the points named are established for use at the altitude or flight level planned.

EXAMPLE−
BWI V44 SWANN V433 DQO Spelled out: from Baltimore−Washington International, via Victor 44 to Swann intersection, transitioning to Victor 433 at Swann, thence via Victor 433 to Dupont.

4. When the route of flight is defined by named reporting points, whether alone or in combination with airways or jet routes, and the navigational aids (VOR, VORTAC, TACAN, NDB) to be used for the flight are a combination of different types of aids, enough information should be included to clearly indicate the route requested.

EXAMPLE−
LAX J5 LKV J3 GEG YXC FL 330 J500 VLR J515 YWG Spelled out: from Los Angeles International via Jet Route 5 Lakeview, Jet Route 3 Spokane, direct Cranbrook, British Columbia VOR/DME, Flight Level 330 Jet Route 500 to Langruth, Manitoba VORTAC, Jet Route 515 to Winnipeg, Manitoba.

5. When filing IFR, it is to the pilot's advantage to file a preferred route.

REFERENCE−
Preferred IFR Routes are described and tabulated in the Chart Supplement U.S.
Additionally available at U.S.
http://www.fly.faa.gov/Products/Coded_Departure_Routes/NFDC_Preferred_Routes_Database/nfdc_preferred_routes_database.html.

6. ATC may issue a SID or a STAR, as appropriate.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 5−2−9, Instrument Departure Procedures (DP) − Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP) and Standard Instrument Departures (SID), and Diverse Vector Areas (DVA).
AIM, Para 5−4−1, Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Procedures.

NOTE−
Pilots not desiring an RNAV SID or RNAV STAR should enter in Item #18, PBN code: NAV/RNV A0 and/or D0.

c. Direct Flights

1. All or any portions of the route which will not be flown on the radials or courses of established airways or routes, such as direct route flights, must be defined by indicating the radio fixes over which the flight will pass. Fixes selected to define the route must be those over which the position of the aircraft can be accurately determined. Such fixes automatically become compulsory reporting points for the flight, unless advised otherwise by ATC. Only those navigational aids established for use in a particular structure; i.e., in the low or high structures, may be used to define the en route phase of a direct flight within that altitude structure.

2. The azimuth feature of VOR aids and the azimuth and distance (DME) features of VORTAC and TACAN aids are assigned certain frequency protected areas of airspace which are intended for application to established airway and route use, and to provide guidance for planning flights outside of established airways or routes. These areas of airspace are expressed in terms of cylindrical service volumes of specified dimensions called "class limits" or "categories."

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 1−1−8, Navigational Aid (NAVAID) Service Volumes.

3. An operational service volume has been established for each class in which adequate signal coverage and frequency protection can be assured. To facilitate use of VOR, VORTAC, or TACAN aids, consistent with their operational service volume limits, pilot use of such aids for defining a direct route of flight in controlled airspace should not exceed the following:

(a) Operations above FL 450 − Use aids not more than 200 NM apart. These aids are depicted on en route high altitude charts.

(b) Operation off established routes from 18,000 feet MSL to FL 450 − Use aids not more than 260 NM apart. These aids are depicted on en route high altitude charts.

(c) Operation off established airways below 18,000 feet MSL − Use aids not more than 80 NM apart. These aids are depicted on en route low altitude charts.

(d) Operation off established airways between 14,500 feet MSL and 17,999 feet MSL in the conterminous U.S. − (H) facilities not more than 200 NM apart may be used.

4. Increasing use of self−contained airborne navigational systems which do not rely on the VOR/VORTAC/TACAN system has resulted in pilot requests for direct routes which exceed NAVAID service volume limits.

5. At times, ATC will initiate a direct route in a surveillance environment which exceeds NAVAID service volume limits. Pilots must adhere to the altitude specified in the clearance.

6. Appropriate airway or jet route numbers may also be included to describe portions of the route to be flown.

EXAMPLE−
MDW V262 BDF V10 BRL STJ SLN GCK Spelled out: from Chicago Midway Airport via Victor 262 to Bradford, Victor 10 to Burlington, Iowa, direct St. Joseph, Missouri, direct Salina, Kansas, direct Garden City, Kansas.

NOTE−
When route of flight is described by radio fixes, the pilot will be expected to fly a direct course between the points named.

7. Pilots are reminded that they are responsible for adhering to obstruction clearance requirements on those segments of direct routes that are outside of controlled airspace and ATC surveillance capability. The MEAs and other altitudes shown on IFR en route charts pertain to those route segments within controlled airspace, and those altitudes may not meet obstruction clearance criteria when operating off those routes.

NOTE−
Refer to 14 CFR 91.177 for pilot responsibility when flying random point to point routes.

d. Area Navigation (RNAV)/Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS)

1. When not being radar monitored, GNSS−equipped RNAV aircraft on random RNAV routes must be cleared via or reported to be established on a point−to−point route.

(a) The points must be published NAVAIDs, waypoints, fixes or airports recallable from the aircraft's navigation database. The points must be displayed on controller video maps or depicted on the controller chart displayed at the control position. When applying non−radar separation the maximum distance between points must not exceed 500 miles.

(b) ATC will protect 4 miles either side of the route centerline.

(c) Assigned altitudes must be at or above the highest MIA along the projected route segment being flown, including the protected airspace of that route segment.

2. Pilots of aircraft equipped with approved area navigational equipment may file for RNAV routes throughout the National Airspace System in accordance with the following procedures:

(a) File airport−to−airport flight plans.

(b) File the appropriate indication of RNAV and/or RNP capability in the flight plan.

(c) Plan the random route portion of the flight plan to begin and end over appropriate arrival and departure transition fixes or appropriate navigation aids for the altitude stratum within which the flight will be conducted. The use of normal preferred departure and arrival routes (DP/STAR), where established, is recommended.

(d) File route structure transitions to and from the random route portion of the flight.

(e) Define the random route by waypoints. File route description waypoints by using degree distance fixes based on navigational aids which are appropriate for the altitude stratum.

(f) File a minimum of one route description waypoint for each ARTCC through whose area the random route will be flown. These waypoints must be located within 200 NM of the preceding center's boundary.

(g) File an additional route description waypoint for each turn point in the route.

(h) Plan additional route description waypoints as required to ensure accurate navigation via the filed route of flight. Navigation is the pilot's responsibility unless ATC assistance is requested.

(i) Plan the route of flight so as to avoid prohibited and restricted airspace by 3 NM unless permission has been obtained to operate in that airspace and the appropriate ATC facilities are advised.

NOTE−
To be approved for use in the National Airspace System, RNAV equipment must meet system availability, accuracy, and airworthiness standards. For additional information and guidance on RNAV equipment requirements see Advisory Circular (AC) 20−138 Airworthiness Approval of Positioning and Navigation Systems and AC 90−100 U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations.

3. Pilots of aircraft equipped with latitude/longitude coordinate navigation capability, independent of VOR/TACAN references, may file for random RNAV using the following procedures:

(a) File airport−to−airport flight plans prior to departure.

(b) File the appropriate RNAV capability certification suffix in the flight plan.

(c) Plan the random route portion of the flight to begin and end over published departure/arrival transition fixes or appropriate navigation aids for airports without published transition procedures. The use of preferred departure and arrival routes, such as DP and STAR, where established, is recommended.

(d) Plan the route of flight so as to avoid prohibited and restricted airspace by 3 NM unless permission has been obtained to operate in that airspace and the appropriate ATC facility is advised.

(e) Define the route of flight after the departure fix, including each intermediate fix (turnpoint) and the arrival fix for the destination airport in terms of latitude/longitude coordinates plotted to the nearest minute or in terms of Navigation Reference System (NRS) waypoints. For latitude/longitude filing the arrival fix must be identified by both the latitude/longitude coordinates and a fix identifier.

EXAMPLE−
MIA[1] SRQ[2] 3407/10615[3] 3407/11546 TNP[4] LAX[5]
[1] Departure airport.
[2] Departure fix.
[3] Intermediate fix (turning point).
[4] Arrival fix.
[5] Destination airport.

or

ORD[1] IOW[2] KP49G[3] KD34U[4] KL16O[5] OAL[6] MOD2[7] SFO[8]
[1] Departure airport.
[2] Transition fix.
[3] Minneapolis ARTCC waypoint.
[4] Denver ARTCC Waypoint.
[5] Los Angeles ARTCC waypoint.
[6] Transition fix.
[7] Arrival.
[8] Destination airport.

(f) Record latitude/longitude coordinates by two or four figures describing latitude in degrees followed by an N or S, followed by 3 or 5 digits longitude, followed by an E or W. Separate latitude and longitude with a solidus "/." Use leading zeros if necessary.

(g) File at FL 390 or above for the random RNAV portion of the flight.

(h) Fly all routes/route segments on Great Circle tracks.

(i) Make any inflight requests for random RNAV clearances or route amendments to an en route ATC facility.

5−1−7. Flight Plans For Military/DOD Use Only

(See Appendix 4, FAA Form 7233−1, Flight Plan)

Within U.S. controlled airspace, FAA Form 7233−1 or DD Form 175 may be used by DOD aircraft. However, use of the DD Form 1801 by DOD aircraft is recommended for IFR flights and is mandatory for:

a. Any flight that will depart U.S. controlled airspace.

b. Any flight requesting routing that requires Performance Based Navigation.

c. Any flight requesting services that require filing of capabilities only supported in the international flight plan.

NOTE−
1. *The order of flight plan elements in DD Form 175 is equivalent to that of FAA Form 7233−1.*

2. *Civilians who file stereo route flight plans, may use FAA Form 7233−1, Flight Plan.*

5−1−8. Flight Plan – Defense VFR (DVFR) Flights

VFR flights (except for DOD and law enforcement flights) into an ADIZ are required to file DVFR flight plans for security purposes. Detailed ADIZ procedures are found in Section 6, National Security and Interception Procedures, of this chapter.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Part 99, Security Control for Air Traffic.

a. DVFR flight plans must be filed using FAA Form 7233−4 or DD Form 1801.

b. Enter the letter "D" in Item 8, Type of Flight, of FAA Form 7233−4 or DD Form 1801.

c. DVFR flights where pilots decline search and rescue coverage must clearly indicate "NORIV" in Item 18 following the indicator "RMK/." This flight plan must still be activated in order to properly notify NORAD, however no flight plan cancellation will be expected.

EXAMPLE−
RMK/NORIV

5−1−9. Single Flights Conducted With Both VFR and IFR Flight Plans

a. Flight plans which combine VFR operation on an active VFR flight plan for one portion of a flight, and IFR for another portion, sometimes known as a composite flight plan, cannot be accepted or processed by current en route automation systems.

b. Pilots are free to operate VFR in VFR conditions prior to accepting an IFR clearance from the appropriate control facility, or may cancel an IFR clearance and proceed VFR as desired. However, if a pilot desires to be on an active VFR flight plan, with search and rescue provisions, for the portion of flight not conducted under an IFR clearance, a separate VFR flight plan must be filed, activated, and closed.

c. If a pilot desires to be on an active VFR flight plan prior to or following the IFR portion of the flight, that flight plan must be filed and processed as a distinct and separate flight plan. The VFR flight plan must be opened and closed with either a Flight Service Station or other service provider having the capability to open and close VFR flight plans. Air Traffic Control does not have the ability to determine if an aircraft is operating on an active VFR flight plan and cannot process the activation or cancellation of a VFR flight plan.

d. Pilots may propose to commence the IFR portion of flight at a defined airborne point. This airborne point, or fix, is entered as the departure point in Item 13 of FAA Form 7233−4 or DD Form 1801.

e. Pilots may indicate in the IFR flight plan the intention to terminate the IFR portion of flight at any defined airborne point. The airborne point, or fix, is entered as the destination point in Item 16 of FAA Form 7233−4 or DD Form 1801.

f. Prior to beginning the IFR portion of flight, a pilot must receive an IFR clearance from the appropriate control facility.

g. If the pilot does not desire further clearance after reaching the clearance limit, he or she must advise ATC to cancel the IFR clearance.

5−1−10. IFR Operations to High Altitude Destinations

a. Pilots planning IFR flights to airports located in mountainous terrain are cautioned to consider the necessity for an alternate airport even when the forecast weather conditions would technically relieve them from the requirement to file one.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Section 91.167.
AIM, Paragraph 4−1−19 , Tower En Route Control (TEC)

b. The FAA has identified three possible situations where the failure to plan for an alternate airport when flying IFR to such a destination airport could result in a critical situation if the weather is less than forecast and sufficient fuel is not available to proceed to a suitable airport.

1. An IFR flight to an airport where the Minimum Descent Altitudes (MDAs) or landing visibility minimums for *all instrument approaches* are higher than the forecast weather minimums specified in 14 CFR Section 91.167(b). For example, there are 3 high altitude airports in the U.S. with approved instrument approach procedures where all of the MDAs are greater than 2,000 feet and/or the landing visibility minimums are greater than 3 miles (Bishop, California; South Lake Tahoe, California; and Aspen−Pitkin Co./Sardy Field, Colorado). In the case of these airports, it is possible for a pilot to elect, on the basis of forecasts, not to carry sufficient fuel to get to an alternate when the ceiling and/or visibility is actually lower than that necessary to complete the approach.

2. A small number of other airports in mountainous terrain have MDAs which are slightly (100 to 300 feet) below 2,000 feet AGL. In situations where there is an option as to whether to plan for an alternate, pilots should bear in mind that just a slight worsening of the weather conditions from those forecast could place the airport below the published IFR landing minimums.

3. An IFR flight to an airport which requires special equipment; i.e., DME, glide slope, etc., in order to make the available approaches to the lowest minimums. Pilots should be aware that all other minimums on the approach charts may require weather conditions better than those specified in 14 CFR Section 91.167(b). An inflight equipment malfunction could result in the inability to comply with the published approach procedures or, again, in the position of having the airport below the published IFR landing minimums for all remaining instrument approach alternatives.

5−1−11. Flights Outside U.S. Territorial Airspace

a. When conducting flights, particularly extended flights, outside the U.S. and its territories, full account should be taken of the amount and quality of air navigation services available in the airspace to be traversed. Every effort should be made to secure information on the location and range of navigational aids, availability of communications and meteorological services, the provision of air traffic services, including alerting service, and the existence of search and rescue services.

b. Pilots should remember that there is a need to continuously guard the VHF emergency frequency 121.5 MHz when on long over-water flights, except when communications on other VHF channels, equipment limitations, or cockpit duties prevent simultaneous guarding of two channels. Guarding of 121.5 MHz is particularly critical when operating in proximity to Flight Information Region (FIR) boundaries, for example, operations on Route R220 between Anchorage and Tokyo, since it serves to facilitate communications with regard to aircraft which may experience in-flight emergencies, communications, or navigational difficulties.

REFERENCE−
ICAO Annex 10, Vol II, Paras 5.2.2.1.1.1 and 5.2.2.1.1.2.

c. The filing of a flight plan, always good practice, takes on added significance for extended flights outside U.S. airspace and is, in fact, usually required by the laws of the countries being visited or overflown. It is also particularly important in the case of such flights that pilots leave a complete itinerary and schedule of the flight with someone directly concerned and keep that person advised of the flight's progress. If serious doubt arises as to the safety of the flight, that person should first contact the appropriate FSS. Round Robin Flight Plans to Canada and Mexico are not accepted.

d. All pilots should review the foreign airspace and entry restrictions published in the appropriate Aeronautical Information Publication (AIP) during the flight planning process. Foreign airspace penetration without official authorization can involve both danger to the aircraft and the imposition of severe penalties and inconvenience to both passengers and crew. A flight plan on file with ATC authorities does not necessarily constitute the prior permission required by certain other authorities. The possibility of fatal consequences cannot be ignored in some areas of the world.

e. Current NOTAMs for foreign locations must also be reviewed. International Notices regarding specific countries may be obtained through the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search External Links or the Air Traffic Plans and Publications website. For additional flight information at foreign locations, pilots should also review the FAA's Prohibitions, Restrictions, and Notices website at https://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/publications/us_restrictions/.

f. When customs notification to foreign locations is required, it is the responsibility of the pilot to arrange for customs notification in a timely manner.

g. Aircraft arriving to locations in U.S. territorial airspace must meet the entry requirements as described in AIM Section 6, National Security and Interception Procedures.

5−1−12. Change in Flight Plan

a. In addition to altitude or flight level, destination and/or route changes, increasing or decreasing the speed of an aircraft constitutes a change in a flight plan. Therefore, at any time the average true airspeed at cruising altitude between reporting points varies or is expected to vary from that given in the flight plan by *plus or minus 5 percent, or 10 knots, whichever is greater,* ATC should be advised.

b. All changes to existing flight plans should be completed more than 46 minutes prior to the proposed departure time. Changes must be made with the initial flight plan service provider. If the initial flight plan's service provider is unavailable, filers may contact an ATC facility or FSS to make the necessary revisions. Any revision 46 minutes or less from the proposed departure time must be coordinated through an ATC facility or FSS.

5−1−13. Change in Proposed Departure Time

a. To prevent computer saturation in the en route environment, parameters have been established to delete proposed departure flight plans which have not been activated. Most centers have this parameter set so as to delete these flight plans a minimum of 2 hours after the proposed departure time or Expect Departure Clearance Time (EDCT). To ensure that a flight plan remains active, pilots whose actual departure time will be delayed 2 hours or more beyond their filed departure time, are requested to notify ATC of their new proposed departure time.

b. Due to traffic saturation, ATC personnel frequently will be unable to accept these revisions via radio. It is recommended that you forward these revisions to a flight plan service provider or FSS.

5−1−14. Closing VFR/DVFR Flight Plans

A pilot is responsible for ensuring that his/her VFR or DVFR flight plan is canceled. You should close your flight plan with the nearest FSS, or if one is not available, you may request any ATC facility to relay your cancellation to the FSS. Control towers do not automatically close VFR or DVFR flight plans since they do not know if a particular VFR aircraft is on a flight plan. If you fail to report or cancel your flight plan within $^{1}/_{2}$ hour after your ETA, search and rescue procedures are started.

REFERENCE−
14 CFR Section 91.153.
14 CFR Section 91.169.

5−1−15. Canceling IFR Flight Plan

a. 14 CFR Sections 91.153 and 91.169 include the statement "When a flight plan has been activated, the pilot-in-command, upon canceling or completing the flight under the flight plan, must notify an FAA Flight Service Station or ATC facility."

b. An IFR flight plan may be canceled at any time the flight is operating in VFR conditions outside Class A airspace by pilots stating "CANCEL MY IFR FLIGHT PLAN" to the controller or air/ground station with which they are communicating. Immediately after canceling an IFR flight plan, a pilot should take the necessary action to change to the appropriate air/ground frequency, VFR radar beacon code and VFR altitude or flight level.

c. ATC separation and information services will be discontinued, including radar services (where applicable). Consequently, if the canceling flight desires VFR radar advisory service, the pilot must specifically request it.

NOTE−
Pilots must be aware that other procedures may be applicable to a flight that cancels an IFR flight plan within an area where a special program, such as a designated

TRSA, Class C airspace, or Class B airspace, has been established.

d. If a DVFR flight plan requirement exists, the pilot is responsible for filing this flight plan to replace the canceled IFR flight plan. If a subsequent IFR operation becomes necessary, a new IFR flight plan must be filed and an ATC clearance obtained before operating in IFR conditions.

e. If operating on an IFR flight plan to an airport with a functioning control tower, the flight plan is automatically closed upon landing.

f. If operating on an IFR flight plan to an airport where there is no functioning control tower, the pilot must initiate cancellation of the IFR flight plan. This can be done after landing if there is a functioning FSS or other means of direct communications with ATC. In the event there is no FSS and/or air/ground communications with ATC is not possible below a certain altitude, the pilot should, weather conditions permitting, cancel the IFR flight plan while still airborne and able to communicate with ATC by radio. This will not only save the time and expense of canceling the flight plan by telephone but will quickly release the airspace for use by other aircraft.

5−1−16. RNAV and RNP Operations

a. During the pre−flight planning phase the availability of the navigation infrastructure required for the intended operation, including any non−RNAV contingencies, must be confirmed for the period of intended operation. Availability of the onboard navigation equipment necessary for the route to be flown must be confirmed. Pilots are reminded that on composite VFR to IFR flight plan, or on an IFR clearance, while flying unpublished departures via RNAV into uncontrolled airspace, the PIC is responsible for terrain and obstruction clearance until reaching the MEA/MIA/MVA/OROCA.

NOTE−
OROCA is a published altitude which provides 1,000 feet of terrain and obstruction clearance in the U.S. (2,000 feet of clearance in designated mountainous areas). These altitudes are not assessed for NAVAID signal coverage, air traffic control surveillance, or communications coverage, and are published for general situational awareness, flight planning and in−flight contingency use.

b. If a pilot determines a specified RNP level cannot be achieved, revise the route or delay the operation until appropriate RNP level can be ensured.

c. The onboard navigation database must be current and appropriate for the region of intended operation and must include the navigation aids, waypoints, and coded terminal airspace procedures for the departure, arrival and alternate airfields.

d. During system initialization, pilots of aircraft equipped with a Flight Management System or other RNAV−certified system, must confirm that the navigation database is current, and verify that the aircraft position has been entered correctly. Flight crews should crosscheck the cleared flight plan against charts or other applicable resources, as well as the navigation system textual display and the aircraft map display. This process includes confirmation of the waypoints sequence, reasonableness of track angles and distances, any altitude or speed constraints, and identification of fly−by or fly−over waypoints. A procedure must not be used if validity of the navigation database is in doubt.

e. Prior to commencing takeoff, the flight crew must verify that the RNAV system is operating correctly and the correct airport and runway data have been loaded.

f. During the pre−flight planning phase RAIM prediction must be performed if TSO−C129() equipment is used to solely satisfy the RNAV and RNP requirement. GPS RAIM availability must be confirmed for the intended route of flight (route and time) using current GPS satellite information. In the event of a predicted, continuous loss of RAIM of more than five (5) minutes for any part of the intended flight, the flight should be delayed, canceled, or re−routed where RAIM requirements can be met. Operators may satisfy the predictive RAIM requirement through any one of the following methods:

1. Operators may monitor the status of each satellite in its plane/slot position, by accounting for the latest GPS constellation status (for example, NOTAMs or NANUs), and compute RAIM availability using model−specific RAIM prediction software;

2. Operators may use the Service Availability Prediction Tool (SAPT) on the FAA en route and terminal RAIM prediction website;

3. Operators may contact a Flight Service Station to obtain non−precision approach RAIM;

4. Operators may use a third party interface, incorporating FAA/VOLPE RAIM prediction data without altering performance values, to predict

RAIM outages for the aircraft's predicted flight path and times;

5. Operators may use the receiver's installed RAIM prediction capability (for TSO−C129a/Class A1/B1/C1 equipment) to provide non−precision approach RAIM, accounting for the latest GPS constellation status (for example, NOTAMs or NANUs). Receiver non−precision approach RAIM should be checked at airports spaced at intervals not to exceed 60 NM along the RNAV 1 procedure's flight track. "Terminal" or "Approach" RAIM must be available at the ETA over each airport checked; or,

6. Operators not using model−specific software or FAA/VOLPE RAIM data will need FAA operational approval.

NOTE−
If TSO−C145/C146 equipment is used to satisfy the RNAV and RNP requirement, the pilot/operator need not perform the prediction if WAAS coverage is confirmed to be available along the entire route of flight. Outside the U.S. or in areas where WAAS coverage is not available, operators using TSO−C145/C146 receivers are required to check GPS RAIM availability.

5−1−17. Cold Temperature Operations

a. Pilots should begin planning for cold temperature operations during the preflight planning phase. Cold temperatures produce barometric altimetry errors, which affect instrument flight procedures. Currently there are two temperature limitations that may be published in the notes box of the middle briefing strip on an instrument approach procedure (IAP). The two published temperature limitations are:

1. A temperature range limitation associated with the use of baro−VNAV that may be published on an United States PBN IAP titled RNAV (GPS) or RNAV (RNP); and/or

2. A Cold Temperature Airport (CTA) limitation designated by a snowflake ICON and temperature in Celsius (C) that is published on every IAP for the airfield.

b. Pilots should request the lowest forecast temperature +/− 1 hour for arrival and departure operations. If the temperature is forecast to be outside of the baro−VNAV or at or below the CTA temperature limitation, consider the following:

1. When using baro−VNAV with an aircraft that does not have an automated temperature compensating function, pilots should plan to use the appropriate minima and/or IAP.

(a) The LNAV/VNAV line of minima on an RNAV (GPS) may not be used without an approved automated temperature compensating function if the temperature is outside of the baro−VNAV temperature range limitation. The LNAV minima may be used.

(b) The RNAV (RNP) procedure may not be accomplished without an approved automated temperature compensating function if the temperature is outside of the baro−VNAV temperature range limitation.

2. If the temperature is forecast to be at or below the published CTA temperature, pilots should calculate a correction for the appropriate segment/s or a correction for all the segments if using the "All Segments Method."

Pilots should review the operating procedures for the aircraft's temperature compensating system when planning to use the system for any cold temperature corrections. Any planned altitude correction for the intermediate and/or missed approach holding segments must be coordinated with ATC. Pilots do not have to advise ATC of a correction in the final segment.

NOTE−
The charted baro−VNAV temperature range limitation does not apply to pilots operating aircraft with an airworthiness approval to conduct an RNAV (GPS) approach to LNAV/VNAV minimums with the use of SBAS vertical guidance.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Chapter 7, Section 3, Cold Temperature Barometric Altimeter Errors, Setting Procedures, and Cold Temperature Airports (CTA).

that you confirm a takeoff clearance rather than mistake another aircraft's clearance for your own.

g. When ATC issues intersection "line up and wait" and takeoff clearances, the intersection designator will be used. If ATC omits the intersection designator, call ATC for clarification.

EXAMPLE−
Aircraft: "Cherokee 234AR, Runway 24L at November 4, line up and wait."

h. If landing traffic is a factor during line up and wait operations, ATC will inform the aircraft in position of the closest traffic within 6 flying miles requesting a full−stop, touch−and−go, stop−and−go, or an unrestricted low approach to the same runway. Pilots should take care to note the position of landing traffic. ATC will also advise the landing traffic when an aircraft is authorized to "line up and wait" on the same runway.

EXAMPLE−
Tower: "Cessna 234AR, Runway 24L, line up and wait. Traffic a Boeing 737, six mile final."
Tower: "Delta 1011, continue, traffic a Cessna 210 holding in position Runway 24L."

NOTE−
ATC will normally withhold landing clearance to arrival aircraft when another aircraft is in position and holding on the runway.

i. Never land on a runway that is occupied by another aircraft, even if a landing clearance was issued. Do not hesitate to ask the controller about the traffic on the runway and be prepared to execute a go−around.

NOTE−
Always clarify any misunderstanding or confusion concerning ATC instructions or clearances. ATC should be advised immediately if there is any uncertainty about the ability to comply with any of their instructions.

5−2−6. Abbreviated IFR Departure Clearance (Cleared. . .as Filed) Procedures

a. ATC facilities will issue an abbreviated IFR departure clearance based on the ROUTE of flight filed in the IFR flight plan, provided the filed route can be approved with little or no revision. These abbreviated clearance procedures are based on the following conditions:

1. The aircraft is on the ground or it has departed visual flight rules (VFR) and the pilot is requesting IFR clearance while airborne.

2. That a pilot will not accept an abbreviated clearance if the route or destination of a flight plan filed with ATC has been changed by the pilot or the company or the operations officer before departure.

3. That it is the responsibility of the company or operations office to inform the pilot when they make a change to the filed flight plan.

4. That it is the responsibility of the pilot to inform ATC in the initial call-up (for clearance) when the filed flight plan has been either:

(a) Amended, or

(b) Canceled and replaced with a new filed flight plan.

NOTE−
The facility issuing a clearance may not have received the revised route or the revised flight plan by the time a pilot requests clearance.

b. Controllers will issue a detailed clearance when they know that the original filed flight plan has been changed or when the pilot requests a full route clearance.

c. The clearance as issued will include the destination airport filed in the flight plan.

d. ATC procedures now require the controller to state the DP name, the current number and the DP transition name after the phrase "Cleared to (destination) airport" and prior to the phrase, "then as filed," for ALL departure clearances when the DP or DP transition is to be flown. The procedures apply whether or not the DP is filed in the flight plan.

e. STARs, when filed in a flight plan, are considered a part of the filed route of flight and will not normally be stated in an initial departure clearance. If the ARTCC's jurisdictional airspace includes both the departure airport and the fix where a STAR or STAR transition begins, the STAR name, the current number and the STAR transition name MAY be stated in the initial clearance.

f. "Cleared to (destination) airport as filed" does NOT include the en route altitude filed in a flight plan. An en route altitude will be stated in the clearance or the pilot will be advised to expect an assigned or filed altitude within a given time frame or at a certain point after departure. This may be done verbally in the departure instructions or stated in the DP.

g. In both radar and nonradar environments, the controller will state "Cleared to (destination) airport as filed" or:

1. If a DP or DP transition is to be flown, specify the DP name, the current DP number, the DP transition name, the assigned altitude/flight level, and any additional instructions (departure control frequency, beacon code assignment, etc.) necessary to clear a departing aircraft via the DP or DP transition and the route filed.

EXAMPLE–
National Seven Twenty cleared to Miami Airport Intercontinental one departure, Lake Charles transition then as filed, maintain Flight Level two seven zero.

2. When there is no DP or when the pilot cannot accept a DP, the controller will specify the assigned altitude or flight level, and any additional instructions necessary to clear a departing aircraft via an appropriate departure routing and the route filed.

NOTE–
A detailed departure route description or a radar vector may be used to achieve the desired departure routing.

3. If it is necessary to make a minor revision to the filed route, the controller will specify the assigned DP or DP transition (or departure routing), the revision to the filed route, the assigned altitude or flight level and any additional instructions necessary to clear a departing aircraft.

EXAMPLE–
Jet Star One Four Two Four cleared to Atlanta Airport, South Boston two departure then as filed except change route to read South Boston Victor 20 Greensboro, maintain one seven thousand.

4. Additionally, in a nonradar environment, the controller will specify one or more fixes, as necessary, to identify the initial route of flight.

EXAMPLE–
Cessna Three One Six Zero Foxtrot cleared to Charlotte Airport as filed via Brooke, maintain seven thousand.

h. To ensure success of the program, pilots should:

1. Avoid making changes to a filed flight plan just prior to departure.

2. State the following information in the initial call-up to the facility when no change has been made to the filed flight plan: Aircraft call sign, location, type operation (IFR) and the name of the airport (or fix) to which you expect clearance.

EXAMPLE–
"Washington clearance delivery (or ground control if appropriate) American Seventy Six at gate one, IFR Los Angeles."

3. If the flight plan has been changed, state the change and request a full route clearance.

EXAMPLE–
"Washington clearance delivery, American Seventy Six at gate one. IFR San Francisco. My flight plan route has been amended (or destination changed). Request full route clearance."

4. Request verification or clarification from ATC if ANY portion of the clearance is not clearly understood.

5. When requesting clearance for the IFR portion of a VFR/IFR flight, request such clearance prior to the fix where IFR operation is proposed to commence in sufficient time to avoid delay. Use the following phraseology:

EXAMPLE–
"Los Angeles center, Apache Six One Papa, VFR estimating Paso Robles VOR at three two, one thousand five hundred, request IFR to Bakersfield."

5–2–7. Departure Restrictions, Clearance Void Times, Hold for Release, and Release Times

a. ATC may assign departure restrictions, clearance void times, hold for release, and release times, when necessary, to separate departures from other traffic or to restrict or regulate the departure flow. Departures from an airport without an operating control tower must be issued either a departure release (along with a release time and/or void time if applicable), or a hold for release.

REFERENCE–
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 4–3–4, Departure Release, Hold for Release, Release Times, Departure Restrictions, and Clearance Void Times.

1. Clearance Void Times. A pilot may receive a clearance, when operating from an airport without a control tower, which contains a provision for the clearance to be void if not airborne by a specific time. A pilot who does not depart prior to the clearance void time must advise ATC as soon as possible of their intentions. ATC will normally advise the pilot of the time allotted to notify ATC that the aircraft did not depart prior to the clearance void time. This time cannot exceed 30 minutes. Failure of an aircraft to contact ATC within 30 minutes after the clearance void time will result in the aircraft being considered overdue and search and rescue procedures initiated.

NOTE−

1. *Other IFR traffic for the airport where the clearance is issued is suspended until the aircraft has contacted ATC or until 30 minutes after the clearance void time or 30 minutes after the clearance release time if no clearance void time is issued.*

2. *If the clearance void time expires, it does not cancel the departure clearance or IFR flight plan. It withdraws the pilot's authority to depart IFR until a new departure release/release time has been issued by ATC and is acknowledged by the pilot.*

3. *Pilots who depart at or after their clearance void time are not afforded IFR separation and may be in violation of 14 CFR Section 91.173 which requires that pilots receive an appropriate ATC clearance before operating IFR in controlled airspace.*

4. *Pilots who choose to depart VFR after their clearance void time has expired should not depart using the previously assigned IFR transponder code.*

EXAMPLE−

Clearance void if not off by (clearance void time) and, if required, if not off by (clearance void time) advise (facility) not later than (time) of intentions.

2. Hold for Release. ATC may issue "hold for release" instructions in a clearance to delay an aircraft's departure for traffic management reasons (i.e., weather, traffic volume, etc.). When ATC states in the clearance, "hold for release," the pilot may not depart utilizing that IFR clearance until a release time or additional instructions are issued by ATC. In addition, ATC will include departure delay information in conjunction with "hold for release" instructions. The ATC instruction, "hold for release," applies to the IFR clearance and does not prevent the pilot from departing under VFR. However, prior to takeoff the pilot should cancel the IFR flight plan and operate the transponder/ADS−B on the appropriate VFR code. An IFR clearance may not be available after departure.

EXAMPLE−

(Aircraft identification) cleared to (destination) airport as filed, maintain (altitude), and, if required (additional instructions or information), hold for release, expect (time in hours and/or minutes) departure delay.

3. Release Times. A "release time" is a departure restriction issued to a pilot by ATC, specifying the earliest time an aircraft may depart. ATC will use "release times" in conjunction with traffic management procedures and/or to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.

EXAMPLE−

(Aircraft identification) released for departure at (time in hours and/or minutes).

4. Expect Departure Clearance Time (EDCT). The EDCT is the runway release time assigned to an aircraft included in traffic management programs. Aircraft are expected to depart no earlier than 5 minutes before, and no later than 5 minutes after the EDCT.

b. If practical, pilots departing uncontrolled airports should obtain IFR clearances prior to becoming airborne when two-way communications with the controlling ATC facility is available.

5−2−8. Departure Control

a. Departure Control is an approach control function responsible for ensuring separation between departures. So as to expedite the handling of departures, Departure Control may suggest a takeoff direction other than that which may normally have been used under VFR handling. Many times it is preferred to offer the pilot a runway that will require the fewest turns after takeoff to place the pilot on course or selected departure route as quickly as possible. At many locations particular attention is paid to the use of preferential runways for local noise abatement programs, and route departures away from congested areas.

b. Departure Control utilizing radar will normally clear aircraft out of the terminal area using vectors, a diverse vector area (DVA), or published DPs.

1. When a departure is to be vectored immediately following takeoff using vectors, a DVA, or published DPs that begins with an ATC assigned heading off the ground, the pilot will be advised prior to takeoff of the initial heading to be flown but may not be advised of the purpose of the heading. When ATC assigns an initial heading with the takeoff clearance that will take the aircraft off an assigned procedure (for example, an RNAV SID with a published lateral path to a waypoint and crossing restrictions from the departure end of runway), the controller will assign an altitude to maintain with the initial heading and, if necessary, a speed to maintain.

2. At some airports when a departure will fly an RNAV SID that begins at the runway, ATC may advise aircraft of the initial fix/waypoint on the

RNAV route. The purpose of the advisory is to remind pilots to verify the correct procedure is programmed in the FMS before takeoff. Pilots must immediately advise ATC if a different RNAV SID is entered in the aircraft's FMC. When this advisory is absent, pilots are still required to fly the assigned SID as published.

EXAMPLE–
Delta 345 RNAV to MPASS, Runway26L, cleared for takeoff.

NOTE–
1. *The SID transition is not restated as it is contained in the ATC clearance.*

2. *Aircraft cleared via RNAV SIDs designed to begin with a vector to the initial waypoint are assigned a heading before departure.*

3. Pilots operating in a radar environment are expected to associate departure headings or an RNAV departure advisory with vectors or the flight path to their planned route or flight. When given a vector taking the aircraft off a previously assigned nonradar route, the pilot will be advised briefly what the vector is to achieve. Thereafter, radar service will be provided until the aircraft has been reestablished "on-course" using an appropriate navigation aid and the pilot has been advised of the aircraft's position or a handoff is made to another radar controller with further surveillance capabilities.

c. Controllers will inform pilots of the departure control frequencies and, if appropriate, the transponder code before takeoff. Pilots must ensure their transponder/ADS−B is adjusted to the "on" or normal operating position as soon as practical and remain on during all operations unless otherwise requested to change to "standby" by ATC. Pilots should not change to the departure control frequency until requested. Controllers may omit the departure control frequency if a DP has or will be assigned and the departure control frequency is published on the DP.

5−2−9. Instrument Departure Procedures (DP) − Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP), Standard Instrument Departures (SID), and Diverse Vector Areas (DVA)

a. Instrument departure procedures are preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) procedures which provide obstruction clearance from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. There are two types of DPs, Obstacle Departure Procedures (ODP), printed either textually or graphically, and Standard Instrument Departures (SID), always printed graphically. All DPs, either textual or graphic may be designed using either conventional or RNAV criteria. RNAV procedures will have RNAV printed in the title; for example, SHEAD TWO DEPARTURE (RNAV). ODPs provide obstruction clearance via the least onerous route from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC. Graphic ODPs will have (OBSTACLE) printed in the procedure title; for example, GEYSR THREE DEPARTURE (OBSTACLE), or, CROWN ONE DEPARTURE (RNAV) (OBSTACLE). Standard Instrument Departures are air traffic control (ATC) procedures printed for pilot/controller use in graphic form to provide obstruction clearance and a transition from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. SIDs are primarily designed for system enhancement and to reduce pilot/controller workload. ATC clearance must be received prior to flying a SID. All DPs provide the pilot with a way to depart the airport and transition to the en route structure safely.

b. A Diverse Vector Area (DVA) is an area in which ATC may provide random radar vectors during an uninterrupted climb from the departure runway until above the MVA/MIA, established in accordance with the TERPS criteria for diverse departures. The DVA provides obstacle and terrain avoidance in lieu of taking off from the runway under IFR using an ODP or SID.

c. Pilots operating under 14 CFR Part 91 are strongly encouraged to file and fly a DP at night, during marginal Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC) and Instrument Meteorological Conditions (IMC), when one is available. The following paragraphs will provide an overview of the DP program, why DPs are developed, what criteria are used, where to find them, how they are to be flown, and finally pilot and ATC responsibilities.

d. Why are DPs necessary? The primary reason is to provide obstacle clearance protection information to pilots. A secondary reason, at busier airports, is to increase efficiency and reduce communications and departure delays through the use of SIDs. When an instrument approach is initially developed for an airport, the need for DPs is assessed. The procedure designer conducts an obstacle analysis to support departure operations. If an aircraft may turn in any direction from a runway within the limits of the assessment area (see paragraph 5−2−9e3) and remain clear of obstacles, that runway passes what is called a diverse departure assessment and no ODP will be published. A SID may be published if needed for air traffic control purposes. However, if an obstacle penetrates what is called the 40:1 obstacle identification surface, then the procedure designer chooses whether to:

1. Establish a steeper than normal climb gradient; or

2. Establish a steeper than normal climb gradient with an alternative that increases takeoff minima to allow the pilot to visually remain clear of the obstacle(s); or

3. Design and publish a specific departure route; or

4. A combination or all of the above.

e. What criteria is used to provide obstruction clearance during departure?

1. Unless specified otherwise, required obstacle clearance for all departures, including diverse, is based on the pilot crossing the departure end of the runway at least 35 feet above the departure end of runway elevation, climbing to 400 feet above the departure end of runway elevation before making the initial turn, and maintaining a minimum climb gradient of 200 feet per nautical mile (FPNM), unless required to level off by a crossing restriction, until the minimum IFR altitude. A greater climb gradient may be specified in the DP to clear obstacles or to achieve an ATC crossing restriction. If an initial turn higher than 400 feet above the departure end of runway elevation is specified in the DP, the turn should be commenced at the higher altitude. If a turn is specified at a fix, the turn must be made at that fix. Fixes may have minimum and/or maximum crossing altitudes that must be adhered to prior to passing the fix. In rare instances, obstacles that exist on the extended runway centerline may make an "early turn" more desirable than proceeding straight ahead. In these cases, the published departure instructions will include the language "turn left(right) as soon as practicable." These departures will also include a ceiling and visibility minimum of at least 300 and 1. Pilots encountering one of these DPs should preplan the climb out to gain altitude and begin the turn as quickly as possible within the bounds of safe operating practices and operating limitations. This type of departure procedure is being phased out.

NOTE−
"Practical" or "feasible" may exist in some existing departure text instead of "practicable."

2. ODPs, SIDs, and DVAs assume normal aircraft performance, and that all engines are operating. Development of contingency procedures, required to cover the case of an engine failure or other emergency in flight that may occur after liftoff, is the responsibility of the operator. (More detailed information on this subject is available in Advisory Circular AC 120−91, Airport Obstacle Analysis, and in the "Departure Procedures" section of chapter 2 in the Instrument Procedures Handbook, FAA−H−8083−16.)

3. The 40:1 obstacle identification surface (OIS) begins at the departure end of runway (DER) and slopes upward at 152 FPNM until reaching the minimum IFR altitude or entering the en route structure. This assessment area is limited to 25 NM from the airport in nonmountainous areas and 46 NM in designated mountainous areas. Beyond this distance, the pilot is responsible for obstacle clearance if not operating on a published route, if below (having not reached) the MEA or MOCA of a published route, or an ATC assigned altitude. See FIG 5−2−1. (Ref 14 CFR 91.177 for further information on en route altitudes.)

NOTE−
ODPs are normally designed to terminate within these distance limitations, however, some ODPs will contain routes that may exceed 25/46 NM; these routes will ensure obstacle protection until reaching the end of the ODP.

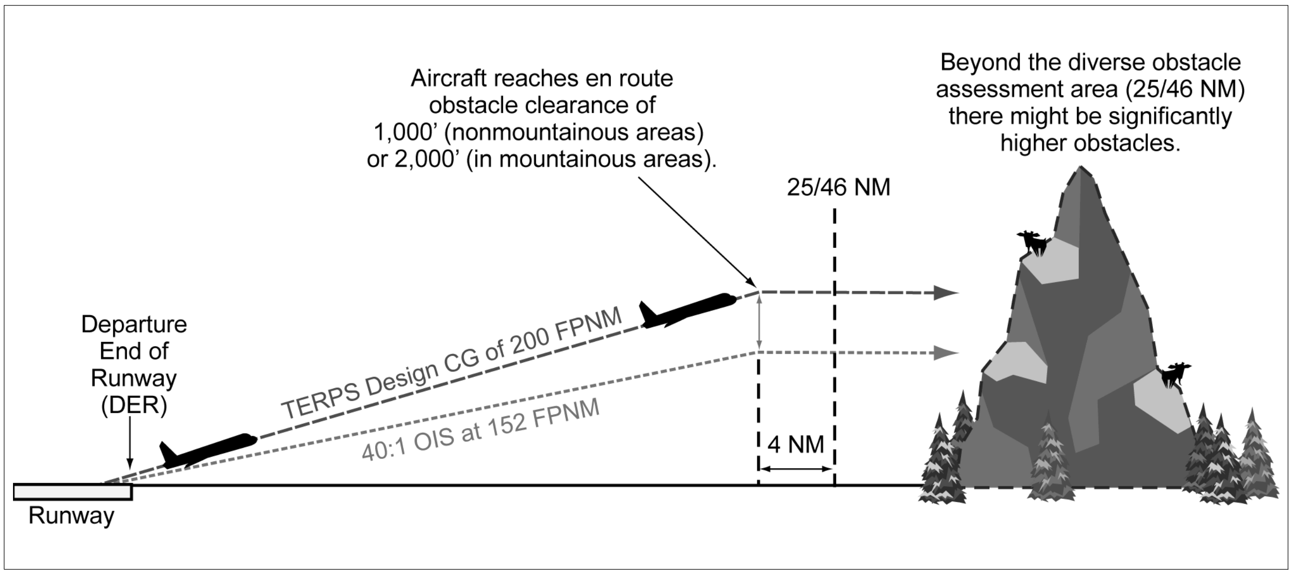
4. Obstacles that are located within 1 NM of the DER and penetrate the 40:1 OCS are referred to as "low, close−in obstacles." The standard required obstacle clearance (ROC) of 48 feet per NM to clear these obstacles would require a climb gradient greater than 200 feet per NM for a very short distance, only until the aircraft was 200 feet above the DER. To eliminate publishing an excessive climb gradient, the obstacle AGL/MSL height and location relative to the DER is noted in the "Take−off Minimums and (OBSTACLE) Departure Procedures" section of a given Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP) booklet.

(a) Pilots must refer to the TPP booklet or the Graphic ODP for information on these obstacles.

These obstacle notes will no longer be published on SIDs. Pilots assigned a SID for departure must refer to the airport entry in the TPP to obtain information on these obstacles.

(b) The purpose of noting obstacles in the "Take−off Minimums and (OBSTACLE) Departure Procedures" section of the TPP is to identify the obstacle(s) and alert the pilot to the height and location of the obstacle(s) so they can be avoided. This can be accomplished in a variety of ways; for example, the pilot may be able to see the obstruction and maneuver around the obstacle(s) if necessary; early liftoff/climb performance may allow the aircraft to cross well above the obstacle(s); or if the obstacle(s) cannot be visually acquired during departure, preflight planning should take into account what turns or other maneuvers may be necessary immediately after takeoff to avoid the obstruction(s).

FIG 5−2−1
Diverse Departure Obstacle Assessment to 25/46 NM



EXAMPLE−
TAKEOFF OBSTACLE NOTES: Rwy 14, trees 2011' from DER, 29' left of centerline, 100' AGL/3829' MSL. Rwy 32, trees 1009' from DER, 697' left of centerline, 100' AGL/3839' MSL. Tower 4448' from DER, 1036' left of centerline, 165' AGL/3886' MSL.

NOTE−
Compliance with 14 CFR Part 121 or 135 one−engine−inoperative (OEI) departure performance requirements, or similar ICAO/State rules, cannot be assured by the sole use of "low, close−in" obstacle data as published in the TPP. Operators should refer to precise data sources (for example, GIS database, etc.) specifically intended for OEI departure planning for those operations.

5. Climb gradients greater than 200 FPNM are specified when required to support procedure design constraints, obstacle clearance, and/or airspace restrictions. Compliance with a climb gradient for these purposes is mandatory when the procedure is part of the ATC clearance, unless increased takeoff minimums are provided and weather conditions allow compliance with these minimums.

NOTE−
Climb gradients for ATC purposes are being phased out on SIDs.

EXAMPLE−
"Cross ALPHA intersection at or below 4000; maintain 6000." The pilot climbs at least 200 FPNM to 6000. If 4000 is reached before ALPHA, the pilot levels off at 4000 until passing ALPHA; then immediately resumes at least 200 FPNM climb.

EXAMPLE−
"TAKEOFF MINIMUMS: RWY 27, Standard with a minimum climb of 280' per NM to 2500." A climb of at least 280 FPNM is required to 2500 and is mandatory when the departure procedure is included in the ATC clearance.

NOTE−
Some SIDs still retain labeled "ATC" climb gradients published or have climb gradients that are established to meet a published altitude restriction that is not required for obstacle clearance or procedure design criteria. These procedures will be revised in the course of the normal procedure amendment process.

6. Climb gradients may be specified only to an altitude/fix, above which the normal gradient applies.

An ATC−required altitude restriction published at a fix, will not have an associated climb gradient published with that restriction. Pilots are expected to determine if crossing altitudes can be met, based on the performance capability of the aircraft they are operating.

EXAMPLE−
"Minimum climb 340 FPNM to ALPHA." The pilot climbs at least 340 FPNM to ALPHA, then at least 200 FPNM to MIA.

7. A Visual Climb Over Airport (VCOA) procedure is a departure option for an IFR aircraft, operating in visual meteorological conditions equal to or greater than the specified visibility and ceiling, to visually conduct climbing turns over the airport to the published "at or above" altitude. At this point, the pilot may proceed in instrument meteorological conditions to the first en route fix using a diverse departure, or to proceed via a published routing to a fix from where the aircraft may join the IFR en route structure, while maintaining a climb gradient of at least 200 feet per nautical mile. VCOA procedures are developed to avoid obstacles greater than 3 statute miles from the departure end of the runway as an alternative to complying with climb gradients greater than 200 feet per nautical mile. Pilots are responsible to advise ATC as early as possible of the intent to fly the VCOA option prior to departure. Pilots are expected to remain within the distance prescribed in the published visibility minimums during the climb over the airport until reaching the "at or above" altitude for the VCOA procedure. If no additional routing is published, then the pilot may proceed in accordance with their IFR clearance. If additional routing is published after the "at−or−above" altitude, the pilot must comply with the route to a fix that may include a climb−in−holding pattern to reach the MEA/MIA for the en route portion of their IFR flight. These textual procedures are published in the Take−Off Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures section of the Terminal Procedures Publications and/or appear as an option on a Graphic ODP.

EXAMPLE−
TAKEOFF MINIMUMS: Rwy 32, standard with minimum climb of 410' per NM to 3000' or 1100−3 for VCOA.
VCOA: Rwy 32, obtain ATC approval for VCOA when requesting IFR clearance. Climb in visual conditions to cross Broken Bow Muni/Keith Glaze Field at or above 3500' before proceeding on course.

f. Who is responsible for obstacle clearance? DPs are designed so that adherence to the procedure by the pilot will ensure obstacle protection. Additionally:

1. Obstacle clearance responsibility also rests with the pilot when he/she chooses to climb in visual conditions in lieu of flying a DP and/or depart under increased takeoff minima rather than fly the climb gradient. Standard takeoff minima are one statute mile for aircraft having two engines or less and one−half statute mile for aircraft having more than two engines. Specified ceiling and visibility minima will allow visual avoidance of obstacles during the initial climb at the standard climb gradient. When departing using the VCOA, obstacle avoidance is not guaranteed if the pilot maneuvers farther from the airport than the published visibility minimum for the VCOA prior to reaching the published VCOA altitude. DPs may also contain what are called Low Close in Obstacles. These obstacles are less than 200 feet above the departure end of runway elevation and within one NM of the runway end and do not require increased takeoff minimums. These obstacles are identified on the SID chart or in the Take−off Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures section of the U. S. Terminal Procedure booklet. These obstacles are especially critical to aircraft that do not lift off until close to the departure end of the runway or which climb at the minimum rate. Pilots should also consider drift following lift−off to ensure sufficient clearance from these obstacles. That segment of the procedure that requires the pilot to see and avoid obstacles ends when the aircraft crosses the specified point at the required altitude. In all cases continued obstacle clearance is based on having climbed a minimum of 200 feet per nautical mile to the specified point and then continuing to climb at least 200 foot per nautical mile during the departure until reaching the minimum en route altitude unless specified otherwise.

2. ATC may vector the aircraft beginning with an ATC−assigned heading issued with the initial or takeoff clearance followed by subsequent vectors, if required, until reaching the minimum vectoring altitude by using a published Diverse Vector Area (DVA).

3. The DVA may be established below the Minimum Vectoring Altitude (MVA) or Minimum IFR Altitude (MIA) in a radar environment at the request of Air Traffic. This type of DP meets the TERPS criteria for diverse departures, obstacles, and terrain avoidance in which vectors below the MVA/MIA may be issued to departing aircraft. The DVA has been assessed for departures which do not follow a specific ground track, but will remain within the specified area. Use of a DVA is valid only when aircraft are permitted to climb uninterrupted from the departure runway to the MVA/MIA (or higher). ATC will not assign an altitude below the MVA/MIA within a DVA. At locations that have a DVA, ATC is not permitted to utilize a SID and DVA concurrently.

(a) The existence of a DVA will be noted in the Takeoff Minimums and Obstacle Departure Procedure section of the U.S. Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP). The Takeoff Departure procedure will be listed first, followed by any applicable DVA.

EXAMPLE−
DIVERSE VECTOR AREA (RADAR VECTORS)
AMDT 1 14289 (FAA)
***Rwy 6R**, headings as assigned by ATC; requires minimum climb of 290' per NM to 400.*
***Rwys 6L, 7L, 7R, 24R, 25R**, headings as assigned by ATC.*

(b) Pilots should be aware that a published climb gradient greater than the standard 200 FPNM can exist within a DVA. Pilots should note that the DVA has been assessed for departures which do not follow a specific ground track.

(c) ATC may also vector an aircraft off a previously assigned DP. If the aircraft is airborne and established on a SID or ODP and subsequently vectored off, ATC is responsible for terrain and obstruction clearance. In all cases, the minimum 200 FPNM climb gradient is assumed.

NOTE−
As is always the case, when used by the controller during departure, the term "radar contact" should not be interpreted as relieving pilots of their responsibility to maintain appropriate terrain and obstruction clearance, which may include flying the obstacle DP.

4. Pilots must preplan to determine if the aircraft can meet the climb gradient (expressed in feet per nautical mile) required by the departure procedure or DVA, and be aware that flying at a higher than anticipated ground speed increases the climb rate requirement in feet per minute. Higher than standard climb gradients are specified by a note on the departure procedure chart for graphic DPs, or in the Take−Off Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures section of the U.S. Terminal Procedures booklet for textual ODPs. The required climb gradient, or higher, must be maintained to the specified altitude or fix, then the standard climb gradient of 200 ft/NM can be resumed. A table for the conversion of climb gradient (feet per nautical mile) to climb rate (feet per minute), at a given ground speed, is included on the inside of the back cover of the U.S. Terminal Procedures booklets.

g. Where are DPs located? DPs and DVAs will be listed by airport in the IFR Takeoff Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures Section, Section L, of the Terminal Procedures Publications (TPP). If the DP is textual, it will be described in TPP Section L. SIDs and complex ODPs will be published graphically and named. The name will be listed by airport name and runway in Section L. Graphic ODPs will also have the term "(OBSTACLE)" printed in the charted procedure title, differentiating them from SIDs.

1. An ODP that has been developed solely for obstacle avoidance will be indicated with the symbol "T" on appropriate Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) charts and DP charts for that airport. The "T" symbol will continue to refer users to TPP Section C. In the case of a graphic ODP, the TPP Section C will only contain the name of the ODP. Since there may be both a textual and a graphic DP, Section C should still be checked for additional information. The nonstandard takeoff minimums and minimum climb gradients found in TPP Section C also apply to charted DPs and radar vector departures unless different minimums are specified on the charted DP. Takeoff minimums and departure procedures apply to all runways unless otherwise specified. New graphic DPs will have all the information printed on the graphic depiction. As a general rule, ATC will only assign an ODP from a non−towered airport when compliance with the ODP is necessary for aircraft to aircraft separation. Pilots may use the ODP to help ensure separation from terrain and obstacles.

h. Responsibilities

1. Each pilot, prior to departing an airport on an IFR flight should:

(a) Consider the type of terrain and other obstacles on or in the vicinity of the departure airport;

(b) Determine whether an ODP is available;

(c) Determine if obstacle avoidance can be maintained visually or if the ODP should be flown; and

(d) Consider the effect of degraded climb performance and the actions to take in the event of an engine loss during the departure. Pilots should notify ATC as soon as possible of reduced climb capability in that circumstance.

NOTE−
Guidance concerning contingency procedures that address an engine failure on takeoff after V_1 speed on a large or turbine−powered transport category airplane may be found in AC 120−91, Airport Obstacle Analysis.

(e) Determine if a DVA is published and whether the aircraft is capable of meeting the published climb gradient. Advise ATC when requesting the IFR clearance, or as soon as possible, if unable to meet the DVA climb gradient.

(f) Check for Takeoff Obstacle Notes published in the TPP for the takeoff runway.

2. Pilots should not exceed a published speed restriction associated with a SID waypoint until passing that waypoint.

3. After an aircraft is established on a SID and subsequently vectored or cleared to deviate off of the SID or SID transition, pilots must consider the SID canceled, unless the controller adds "expect to resume SID;" pilots should then be prepared to rejoin the SID at a subsequent fix or procedure leg. If the SID contains published altitude and/or speed restrictions, those restrictions are canceled and pilots will receive an altitude to maintain and, if necessary, a speed. ATC may also interrupt the vertical navigation of a SID and provide alternate altitude instructions while the aircraft remains established on the published lateral path. Aircraft may be vectored off of an ODP, or issued an altitude lower than a published altitude on an ODP, at which time the ODP is canceled. In these cases, ATC assumes responsibility for terrain and obstacle clearance. In all cases, the minimum 200 FPNM climb gradient is assumed.

4. Aircraft instructed to resume a SID procedure such as a DP or SID which contains speed and/or altitude restrictions, must be:

(a) Issued/reissued all applicable restrictions, or

(b) Advised to "Climb via SID" or resume published speed.

EXAMPLE−
"Resume the Solar One departure, Climb via SID."
"Proceed direct CIROS, resume the Solar One departure, Climb via SID."

5. A clearance for a SID which does not contain published crossing restrictions, and/or is a SID with a Radar Vector segment or a Radar Vector SID, will be issued using the phraseology "Maintain (*altitude).*"

6. A clearance for a SID which contains published altitude restrictions may be issued using the phraseology "climb via." Climb via is an abbreviated clearance that requires compliance with the procedure lateral path, associated speed and altitude restrictions along the cleared route or procedure. Clearance to "climb via" authorizes the pilot to:

(a) When used in the IFR departure clearance, in a PDC, DCL or when cleared to a waypoint depicted on a SID, to join the procedure after departure or to resume the procedure.

(b) When vertical navigation is interrupted and an altitude is assigned to maintain which is not contained on the published procedure, to climb from that previously-assigned altitude at pilot's discretion to the altitude depicted for the next waypoint.

(c) Once established on the depicted departure, to navigate laterally and climb to meet all published or assigned altitude and speed restrictions.

NOTE−
1. *When otherwise cleared along a route or procedure that contains published speed restrictions, the pilot must comply with those speed restrictions independent of a climb via clearance.*

2. *ATC anticipates pilots will begin adjusting speed the minimum distance necessary prior to a published speed restriction so as to cross the waypoint/fix at the published speed. Once at the published speed ATC expects pilots will maintain the published speed until additional adjustment is required to comply with further published or ATC assigned speed restrictions or as required to ensure compliance with 14 CFR Section 91.117.*

3. *If ATC interrupts lateral/vertical navigation while an aircraft is flying a SID, ATC must ensure obstacle clearance. When issuing a "climb via" clearance to join or* *resume a procedure ATC must ensure obstacle clearance until the aircraft is established on the lateral and vertical path of the SID.*

4. *ATC will assign an altitude to cross if no altitude is depicted at a waypoint/fix or when otherwise necessary/required, for an aircraft on a direct route to a waypoint/fix where the SID will be joined or resumed.*

5. *SIDs will have a "top altitude;" the "top altitude" is the charted "maintain" altitude contained in the procedure description or assigned by ATC.*

REFERENCE–
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Paragraph 5-6-2, Methods
PCG, Climb Via, Top Altitude

EXAMPLE–
1. ***Lateral route clearance:***
"Cleared Loop Six departure."

NOTE–
The aircraft must comply with the SID lateral path, and any published speed restrictions.

2. ***Routing with assigned altitude:***
"Cleared Loop Six departure, climb and maintain four thousand."

NOTE–
The aircraft must comply with the SID lateral path, and any published speed restriction while climbing unrestricted to four thousand.

3. *(A pilot filed a flight plan to the Johnston Airport using the Scott One departure, Jonez transition, then Q-145. The pilot filed for FL350. The Scott One includes altitude restrictions, a top altitude and instructions to expect the filed altitude ten minutes after departure). Before departure ATC uses PDC, DCL or clearance delivery to issue the clearance:*
"Cleared to Johnston Airport, Scott One departure, Jonez transition, Q-OneForty-five. Climb via SID."

NOTE–
In Example 3, the aircraft must comply with the Scott One departure lateral path and any published speed and altitude restrictions while climbing to the SID top altitude.

4. *(Using the Example 3 flight plan, ATC determines the top altitude must be changed to FL180). The clearance will read:*
"Cleared to Johnston Airport, Scott One departure, Jonez transition, Q-One Forty-five, Climb via SID except maintain flight level one eight zero."

NOTE–
In Example 4, the aircraft must comply with the Scott One departure lateral path and any published speed and altitude restrictions while climbing to FL180. The aircraft must stop climb at FL180 until issued further clearance by ATC.

5. *(An aircraft was issued the Suzan Two departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. After departure ATC must change a waypoint crossing restriction). The clearance will be:*
"Climb via SID except cross Mkala at or above seven thousand."

NOTE–
In Example 5, the aircraft will comply with the Suzan Two departure lateral path and any published speed and altitude restrictions and climb so as to cross Mkala at or above 7,000; remainder of the departure must be flown as published.

6. *(An aircraft was issued the Teddd One departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. An interim altitude of 10,000 was issued instead of the published top altitude of FL 230). After departure ATC is able to issue the published top altitude. The clearance will be:*
"Climb via SID."

NOTE–
In Example 6, the aircraft will track laterally and vertically on the Teddd One departure and initially climb to 10,000; Once re-issued the "climb via" clearance the interim altitude is canceled aircraft will continue climb to FL230 while complying with published restrictions.

7. *(An aircraft was issued the Bbear Two departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. An interim altitude of 16,000 was issued instead of the published top altitude of FL 190). After departure, ATC is able to issue a top altitude of FL300 and still requires compliance with the published SID restrictions. The clearance will be:*
"Climb via SID except maintain flight level three zero zero."

NOTE–
In Example 7, the aircraft will track laterally and vertically on the Bbear Two departure and initially climb to 16,000; Once re-issued the "climb via" clearance the interim altitude is canceled and the aircraft will continue climb to FL300 while complying with published restrictions.

8. *(An aircraft was issued the Bizee Two departure, "climb via SID." After departure, ATC vectors the aircraft off of the SID, and then issues a direct routing to rejoin the SID at Rockr waypoint which does not have a published altitude restriction. ATC wants the aircraft to cross at or above 10,000). The clearance will read:*
"Proceed direct Rockr, cross Rockr at or above one-zero thousand, climb via the Bizee Two departure."

NOTE–
In Example 8, the aircraft will join the Bizee Two SID at Rockr at or above 10,000 and then comply with the

published lateral path and any published speed or altitude restrictions while climbing to the SID top altitude.

9. *(An aircraft was issued the Suzan Two departure, "climb via SID" in the IFR departure clearance. After departure ATC vectors the aircraft off of the SID, and then clears the aircraft to rejoin the SID at Dvine waypoint, which has a published crossing restriction). The clearance will read:*

"Proceed direct Dvine, Climb via the Suzan Two departure."

NOTE−
In Example 9, the aircraft will join the Suzan Two departure at Dvine, at the published altitude, and then comply with the published lateral path and any published speed or altitude restrictions.

7. Pilots cleared for vertical navigation using the phraseology "climb via" must inform ATC, upon initial contact, of the altitude leaving and any assigned restrictions not published on the procedure.

EXAMPLE−
1. *(Cactus 711 is cleared to climb via the Laura Two departure. The Laura Two has a top altitude of FL190): "Cactus Seven Eleven leaving two thousand, climbing via the Laura Two departure."*

2. *(Cactus 711 is cleared to climb via the Laura Two departure, but ATC changed the top altitude to16,000): "Cactus Seven Eleven leaving two thousand for one-six thousand, climbing via the Laura Two departure."*

8. If prior to or after takeoff an altitude restriction is issued by ATC, all previously issued "ATC" altitude restrictions are canceled including those published on a SID. Pilots must still comply with all speed restrictions and lateral path requirements published on the SID unless canceled by ATC.

EXAMPLE−
Prior to takeoff or after departure ATC issues an altitude change clearance to an aircraft cleared to climb via a SID but ATC no longer requires compliance with published altitude restrictions:

"Climb and maintain flight level two four zero."

NOTE−
The published SID altitude restrictions are canceled; The aircraft should comply with the SID lateral path and begin an unrestricted climb to FL240. Compliance with published speed restrictions is still required unless specifically deleted by ATC.

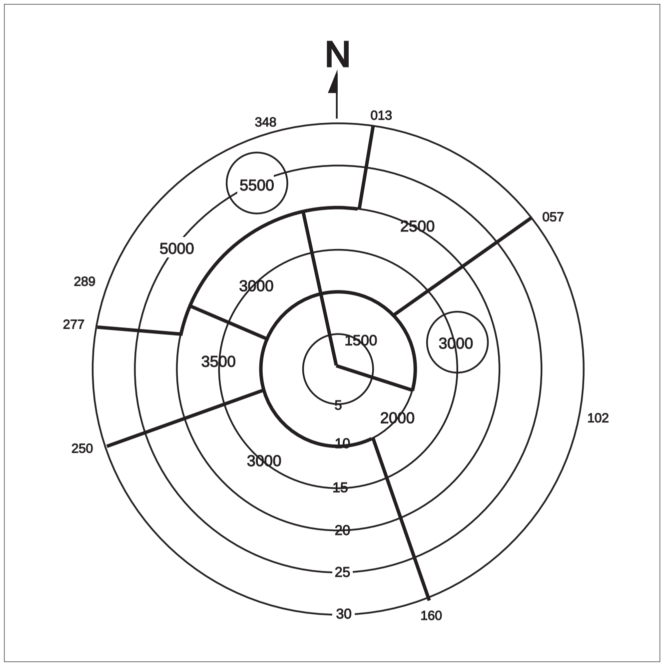
9. Altitude restrictions published on an ODP are necessary for obstacle clearance and/or design constraints. Crossing altitudes and speed restrictions on ODPs cannot be canceled or amended by ATC.

i. PBN Departure Procedures

1. All public PBN SIDs and graphic ODPs are normally designed using RNAV 1, RNP 1, or A−RNP NavSpecs. These procedures generally start with an initial track or heading leg near the departure end of runway (DER). In addition, these procedures require system performance currently met by GPS or DME/DME/IRU PBN systems that satisfy the criteria discussed in the latest AC 90−100, U.S. Terminal and En Route Area Navigation (RNAV) Operations. RNAV 1 and RNP 1 procedures must maintain a total system error of not more than 1 NM for 95 percent of the total flight time. Minimum values for A−RNP procedures will be charted in the PBN box (for example, 1.00 or 0.30).

2. In the U.S., a specific procedure's PBN requirements will be prominently displayed in separate, standardized notes boxes. For procedures with PBN elements, the "PBN box" will contain the procedure's NavSpec(s); and, if required: specific sensors or infrastructure needed for the navigation solution, any additional or advanced functional requirements, the minimum RNP value, and any amplifying remarks. Items listed in this PBN box are REQUIRED for the procedure's PBN elements.

FIG 5−4−11
Minimum Vectoring Altitude Charts



e. Minimum Vectoring Altitudes (MVAs) are established for use by ATC when radar ATC is exercised. MVA charts are prepared by air traffic facilities at locations where there are numerous different minimum IFR altitudes. Each MVA chart has sectors large enough to accommodate vectoring of aircraft within the sector at the MVA. Each sector boundary is at least 3 miles from the obstruction determining the MVA. To avoid a large sector with an excessively high MVA due to an isolated prominent obstruction, the obstruction may be enclosed in a buffer area whose boundaries are at least 3 miles from the obstruction. This is done to facilitate vectoring around the obstruction. (See FIG 5−4−11.)

1. The minimum vectoring altitude in each sector provides 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle in nonmountainous areas and 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle in designated mountainous areas. Where lower MVAs are required in designated mountainous areas to achieve compatibility with terminal routes or to permit vectoring to an IAP, 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance may be authorized with the use of ATC surveillance. The minimum vectoring altitude will provide at least 300 feet above the floor of controlled airspace.

NOTE−
OROCA is a published altitude which provides 1,000 feet of terrain and obstruction clearance in the U.S. (2,000 feet of clearance in designated mountainous areas). These altitudes are not assessed for NAVAID signal coverage, air traffic control surveillance, or communications coverage, and are published for general situational awareness, flight planning and in−flight contingency use.

2. Because of differences in the areas considered for MVA, and those applied to other minimum altitudes, and the ability to isolate specific obstacles, some MVAs may be lower than the nonradar Minimum En Route Altitudes (MEAs), Minimum Obstruction Clearance Altitudes (MOCAs) or other minimum altitudes depicted on charts for a given location. While being radar vectored, IFR altitude assignments by ATC will be at or above MVA.

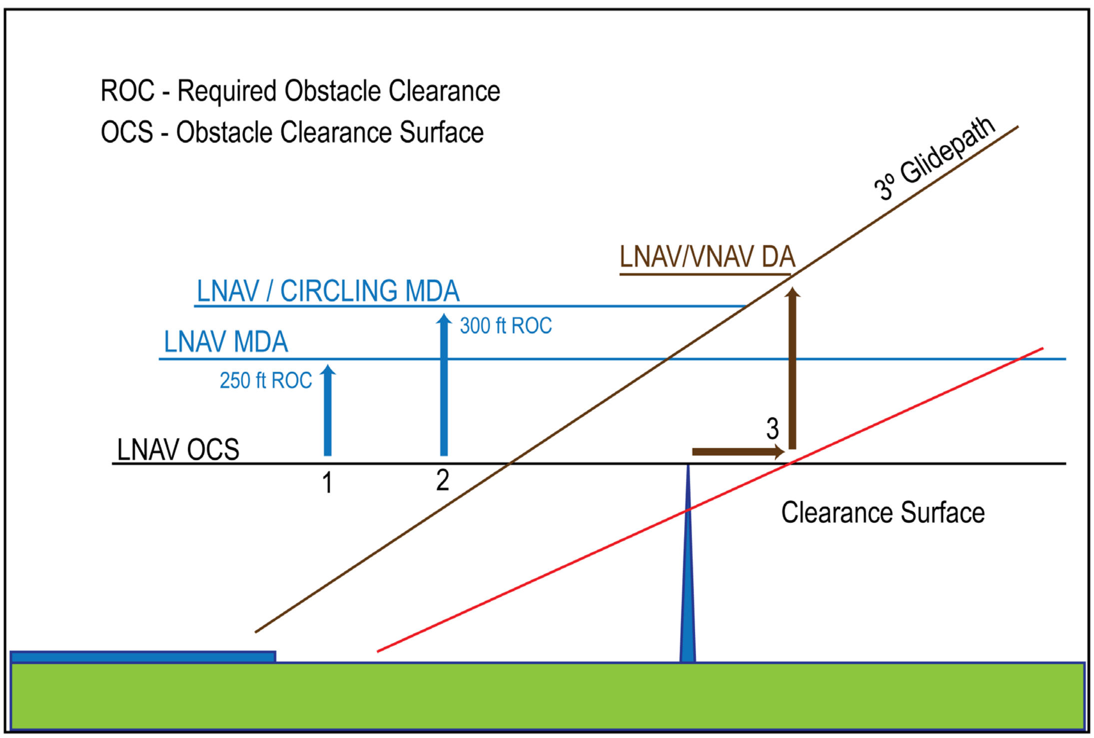
3. The MVA/MIA may be lower than the TAA minimum altitude. If ATC has assigned an altitude to an aircraft that is below the TAA minimum altitude, the aircraft will either be assigned an altitude to maintain until established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure, or climbed to the TAA altitude.

f. Circling. Circling minimums charted on an RNAV (GPS) approach chart may be lower than the LNAV/VNAV line of minima, but never lower than the LNAV line of minima (straight-in approach). Pilots may safely perform the circling maneuver at the circling published line of minima if the approach and circling maneuver is properly performed according to aircraft category and operational limitations.

FIG 5-4-12
Example of LNAV and Circling Minima Lower Than LNAV/VNAV DA. Harrisburgh International RNAV (GPS) RWY 13

CATEGORY	A	B	C	D
LPV DA	**558/24** 250 (300 – ½)			
LNAV/ VNAV DA	**1572 – 5** 1264 (1300 – 5)			
LNAV MDA	**1180 / 24** 872 (900 – ½)	**1180 / 40** 872 (900 – ¾)	**1180 / 2** 872 (900 – 2)	**1180 / 2 ¼** 872 (900 – 2 ¼)
CIRCLING	**1180 – 1** 870 (900 – 1)	**1180 – 1 ¼** 870 (900 – 1 ¼)	**1180 – 2 ½** 870 (900 – 2 ½)	**1180 – 2 ¾** 870 (900 – 2 ¾)

FIG 5-4-13
Explanation of LNAV and/or Circling Minima Lower than LNAV/VNAV DA



g. FIG 5-4-13 provides a visual representation of an obstacle evaluation and calculation of LNAV MDA, Circling MDA, LNAV/VNAV DA.

1. No vertical guidance (LNAV). A line is drawn horizontal at obstacle height and 250 feet added for Required Obstacle Clearance (ROC). The controlling obstacle used to determine LNAV MDA can be different than the controlling obstacle used in determining ROC for circling MDA. Other factors may force a number larger than 250 ft to be added to the LNAV OCS. The number is rounded up to the next higher 20 foot increment.

approach and missed approach, except that step down waypoints may not be included in some TSO−C129 receiver databases. Included in the database, in most receivers, is coding that informs the navigation system of which WPs are fly−over (FO) or fly−by (FB). The navigation system may provide guidance appropriately − including leading the turn prior to a fly−by WP; or causing overflight of a fly−over WP. Where the navigation system does not provide such guidance, the pilot must accomplish the turn lead or waypoint overflight manually. Chart symbology for the FB WP provides pilot awareness of expected actions. Refer to the legend of the U.S. Terminal Procedures books.

(e) TAAs are described in paragraph 5−4−5d, Terminal Arrival Area (TAA). When published, the RNAV chart depicts the TAA areas through the use of "icons" representing each TAA area associated with the RNAV procedure (See FIG 5−4−6). These icons are depicted in the plan view of the approach chart, generally arranged on the chart in accordance with their position relative to the aircraft's arrival from the en route structure. The WP, to which navigation is appropriate and expected within each specific TAA area, will be named and depicted on the associated TAA icon. Each depicted named WP is the IAF for arrivals from within that area. TAAs may not be used on all RNAV procedures because of airspace congestion or other reasons.

(f) Published Temperature Limitations. There are currently two temperature limitations that may be published in the notes box of the middle briefing strip on an instrument approach procedure (IAP). The two published temperature limitations are:

(1) A temperature range limitation associated with the use of baro−VNAV that may be published on a United States PBN IAP titled RNAV (GPS) or RNAV (RNP); and/or

(2) A Cold Temperature Airport (CTA) limitation designated by a snowflake ICON and temperature in Celsius (C) that is published on every IAP for the airfield.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Chapter 7, Section 3, Cold Temperature Barometric Altimeter Errors, Setting Procedures and Cold Temperature Airports (CTA).

(g) WAAS Channel Number/Approach ID. The WAAS Channel Number is an optional equipment capability that allows the use of a 5−digit number to select a specific final approach segment without using the menu method. The Approach ID is an airport unique 4−character combination for verifying the selection and extraction of the correct final approach segment information from the aircraft database. It is similar to the ILS ident, but displayed visually rather than aurally. The Approach ID consists of the letter W for WAAS, the runway number, and a letter other than L, C or R, which could be confused with Left, Center and Right, e.g., W35A. Approach IDs are assigned in the order that WAAS approaches are built to that runway number at that airport. The WAAS Channel Number and Approach ID are displayed in the upper left corner of the approach procedure pilot briefing.

(h) At locations where outages of WAAS vertical guidance may occur daily due to initial system limitations, a negative W symbol (W) will be placed on RNAV (GPS) approach charts. Many of these outages will be very short in duration, but may result in the disruption of the vertical portion of the approach. The W symbol indicates that NOTAMs or Air Traffic advisories are not provided for outages which occur in the WAAS LNAV/VNAV or LPV vertical service. Use LNAV or circling minima for flight planning at these locations, whether as a destination or alternate. For flight operations at these locations, when the WAAS avionics indicate that LNAV/VNAV or LPV service is available, then vertical guidance may be used to complete the approach using the displayed level of service. Should an outage occur during the procedure, reversion to LNAV minima may be required. As the WAAS coverage is expanded, the W will be removed.

NOTE−
Properly trained and approved, as required, TSO-C145() and TSO-C146() equipped users (WAAS users) with and using approved baro-VNAV equipment may plan for LNAV/VNAV DA at an alternate airport. Specifically authorized WAAS users with and using approved baro-VNAV equipment may also plan for RNP 0.3 DA at the alternate airport as long as the pilot has verified RNP availability through an approved prediction program.

5−4−6. Approach Clearance

a. An aircraft which has been cleared to a holding fix and subsequently "cleared . . . approach" has not received new routing. Even though clearance for the approach may have been issued prior to the aircraft reaching the holding fix, ATC would expect the pilot to proceed via the holding fix (his/her last assigned route), and the feeder route associated with that fix (if a feeder route is published on the approach chart) to the initial approach fix (IAF) to commence the approach. *WHEN CLEARED FOR THE APPROACH, THE PUBLISHED OFF AIRWAY (FEEDER) ROUTES THAT LEAD FROM THE EN ROUTE STRUCTURE TO THE IAF ARE PART OF THE APPROACH CLEARANCE.*

b. If a feeder route to an IAF begins at a fix located along the route of flight prior to reaching the holding fix, and clearance for an approach is issued, a pilot should commence the approach via the published feeder route; i.e., the aircraft would not be expected to overfly the feeder route and return to it. The pilot is expected to commence the approach in a similar manner at the IAF, if the IAF for the procedure is located along the route of flight to the holding fix.

c. If a route of flight directly to the initial approach fix is desired, it should be so stated by the controller with phraseology to include the words "direct . . . ," "proceed direct" or a similar phrase which the pilot can interpret without question. When uncertain of the clearance, immediately query ATC as to what route of flight is desired.

d. The name of an instrument approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, such as the glideslope on an Instrument Landing System, is inoperative or unreliable. The controller will use the name of the approach as published, but must advise the aircraft at the time an approach clearance is issued that the inoperative or unreliable approach aid component is unusable, except when the title of the published approach procedures otherwise allows; for example, ILS Rwy 05 or LOC Rwy 05.

e. The following applies to aircraft on radar vectors and/or cleared "direct to" in conjunction with an approach clearance:

1. Maintain the last altitude assigned by ATC until the aircraft is established on a published segment of a transition route, or approach procedure segment, or other published route, for which a lower altitude is published on the chart. If already on an established route, or approach or arrival segment, you may descend to whatever minimum altitude is listed for that route or segment.

2. Continue on the vector heading until intercepting the next published ground track applicable to the approach clearance.

3. Once reaching the final approach fix via the published segments, the pilot may continue on approach to a landing.

4. If proceeding to an IAF with a published course reversal (procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of PT pattern), except when cleared for a straight in approach by ATC, the pilot must execute the procedure turn/hold-in-lieu of PT, and complete the approach.

5. If cleared to an IAF/IF via a NoPT route, or no procedure turn/hold-in-lieu of PT is published, continue with the published approach.

6. In addition to the above, RNAV aircraft may be issued a clearance direct to the IAF/IF at intercept angles not greater than 90 degrees for both conventional and RNAV instrument approaches. Controllers may issue a heading or a course direct to a fix between the IF and FAF at intercept angles not greater than 30 degrees for both conventional and RNAV instrument approaches. In all cases, controllers will assign altitudes that ensure obstacle clearance and will permit a normal descent to the FAF. When clearing aircraft direct to the IF, ATC will radar monitor the aircraft until the IF and will advise the pilot to expect clearance direct to the IF at least 5 miles from the fix. ATC must issue a straight-in approach clearance when clearing an aircraft direct to an IAF/IF with a procedure turn or hold−in−lieu of a procedure turn, and ATC does not want the aircraft to execute the course reversal.

NOTE−
Refer to 14 CFR 91.175 (i).

7. RNAV aircraft may be issued a clearance direct to the FAF that is also charted as an IAF, in which case the pilot is expected to execute the depicted procedure turn or hold-in-lieu of procedure turn. ATC will not issue a straight-in approach clearance. If the pilot desires a straight-in approach, they must request vectors to the final approach course outside of the FAF or fly a published "NoPT" route. When visual approaches are in use, ATC may clear an aircraft direct to the FAF.

NOTE−
1. *In anticipation of a clearance by ATC to any fix published on an instrument approach procedure, pilots of RNAV aircraft are advised to select an appropriate IAF or*

feeder fix when loading an instrument approach procedure into the RNAV system.

2. *Selection of "Vectors-to-Final" or "Vectors" option for an instrument approach may prevent approach fixes located outside of the FAF from being loaded into an RNAV system. Therefore, the selection of these options is discouraged due to increased workload for pilots to reprogram the navigation system.*

8. Arrival Holding. Some approach charts have an arrival holding pattern depicted at an IAF or at a feeder fix located along an airway. The arrival hold is depicted using a "thin line" since it is not always a mandatory part of the instrument procedure.

(a) Arrival holding is charted where holding is frequently required prior to starting the approach procedure so that detailed holding instructions are not required. The arrival holding pattern is not authorized unless assigned by ATC. Holding at the same fix may also be depicted on the en route chart.

(b) Arrival holding is also charted where it is necessary to use a holding pattern to align the aircraft for procedure entry from an airway due to turn angle limitations imposed by procedure design standards. When the turn angle from an airway into the approach procedure exceeds the permissible limits, an arrival holding pattern may be published along with a note on the procedure specifying the fix, the airway, and arrival direction where use of the arrival hold is required for procedure entry. Unlike a hold−in−lieu of procedure turn, use of the arrival holding pattern is not authorized until assigned by ATC. If ATC does not assign the arrival hold before reaching the holding fix, the pilot should request the hold for procedure entry. Once established on the inbound holding course and an approach clearance has been received, the published procedure can commence. Alternatively, if using the holding pattern for procedure entry is not desired, the pilot may ask ATC for maneuvering airspace to align the aircraft with the feeder course.

EXAMPLE−
Planview Chart Note: "Proc NA via V343 northeast bound without holding at JOXIT. ATC CLNC REQD."

f. An RF leg is defined as a constant radius circular path around a defined turn center that starts and terminates at a fix. An RF leg may be published as part of a procedure. Since not all aircraft have the capability to fly these leg types, pilots are responsible for knowing if they can conduct an RNAV approach with an RF leg. Requirements for RF legs will be indicated on the approach chart in the notes section or at the applicable initial approach fix. Controllers will clear RNAV-equipped aircraft for instrument approach procedures containing RF legs:

1. Via published transitions, or

2. In accordance with paragraph e6 above, and

3. ATC will not clear aircraft direct to any waypoint beginning or within an RF leg, and will not assign fix/waypoint crossing speeds in excess of charted speed restrictions.

EXAMPLE−
Controllers will not clear aircraft direct to THIRD because that waypoint begins the RF leg, and aircraft cannot be vectored or cleared to TURNN or vectored to intercept the approach segment at any point between THIRD and FORTH because this is the RF leg. (See FIG 5−4−15.)

g. When necessary to cancel a previously issued approach clearance, the controller will advise the pilot "Cancel Approach Clearance" followed by any additional instructions when applicable.

5−4−7. Instrument Approach Procedures

a. Aircraft approach category means a grouping of aircraft based on a speed of V_{REF} at the maximum certified landing weight, if specified, or if V_{REF} is not specified, $1.3V_{SO}$ at the maximum certified landing weight. V_{REF}, V_{SO}, and the maximum certified landing weight are those values as established for the aircraft by the certification authority of the country of registry. A pilot must maneuver the aircraft within the circling approach protected area (see FIG 5−4−27) to achieve the obstacle and terrain clearances provided by procedure design criteria.

b. In addition to pilot techniques for maneuvering, one acceptable method to reduce the risk of flying out of the circling approach protected area is to use either the minima corresponding to the category determined during certification or minima associated with a higher category. Helicopters may use Category A minima. If it is necessary to operate at a speed in excess of the upper limit of the speed range for an aircraft's category, the minimums for the higher category should be used. This may occur with certain aircraft types operating in heavy/gusty wind, icing, or non−normal conditions. For example, an airplane which fits into Category B, but is circling to land at a speed of 145 knots, should use the approach Category D minimums. As an additional example, a Category A airplane (or helicopter) which is operating at 130 knots on a straight–in approach should use the approach Category C minimums.

c. A pilot who chooses an alternative method when it is necessary to maneuver at a speed that exceeds the category speed limit (for example, where higher category minimums are not published) should consider the following factors that can significantly affect the actual ground track flown:

1. Bank angle. For example, at 165 knots groundspeed, the radius of turn increases from 4,194 feet using 30 degrees of bank to 6,654 feet when using 20 degrees of bank. When using a shallower bank angle, it may be necessary to modify the flightpath or indicated airspeed to remain within the circling approach protected area. Pilots should be aware that excessive bank angle can lead to a loss of aircraft control.

2. Indicated airspeed. Procedure design criteria typically utilize the highest speed for a particular category. If a pilot chooses to operate at a higher speed, other factors should be modified to ensure that the aircraft remains within the circling approach protected area.

3. Wind speed and direction. For example, it is not uncommon to maneuver the aircraft to a downwind leg where the groundspeed will be considerably higher than the indicated airspeed. Pilots must carefully plan the initiation of all turns to ensure that the aircraft remains within the circling approach protected area.

4. Pilot technique. Pilots frequently have many options with regard to flightpath when conducting circling approaches. Sound planning and judgment are vital to proper execution. The lateral and vertical path to be flown should be carefully considered using current weather and terrain information to ensure that the aircraft remains within the circling approach protected area.

d. It is important to remember that 14 CFR Section 91.175(c) requires that "where a DA/DH or MDA is applicable, no pilot may operate an aircraft below the authorized MDA or continue an approach below the authorized DA/DH unless the aircraft is continuously in a position from which a descent to a landing on the intended runway can be made at a normal rate of descent using normal maneuvers, and for operations conducted under Part 121 or Part 135 unless that descent rate will allow touchdown to occur within the touchdown zone of the runway of intended landing."

e. See the following category limits:

1. Category A: Speed less than 91 knots.

2. Category B: Speed 91 knots or more but less than 121 knots.

3. Category C: Speed 121 knots or more but less than 141 knots.

4. Category D: Speed 141 knots or more but less than 166 knots.

5. Category E: Speed 166 knots or more.

NOTE–
V_{REF} in the above definition refers to the speed used in establishing the approved landing distance under the airworthiness regulations constituting the type certification basis of the airplane, regardless of whether that speed for a particular airplane is 1.3 V_{SO}, 1.23 V_{SR}, or some higher speed required for airplane controllability. This speed, at the maximum certificated landing weight, determines the lowest applicable approach category for all approaches regardless of actual landing weight.

f. When operating on an unpublished route or while being radar vectored, the pilot, when an approach clearance is received, must, in addition to complying with the minimum altitudes for IFR operations (14 CFR Section 91.177), maintain the last assigned altitude unless a different altitude is assigned by ATC, or until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or IAP. After the aircraft is so established, published altitudes apply to descent within each succeeding route or approach segment unless a different altitude is assigned by ATC. Notwithstanding this pilot responsibility, for aircraft operating on unpublished routes or while being radar vectored, ATC will, except when conducting a radar approach, issue an IFR approach clearance only after the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or IAP, or assign an altitude to maintain until the aircraft is established on a segment of a published route or instrument approach procedure. For this purpose, the procedure turn of a published IAP must not be considered a segment of that IAP until the aircraft reaches the initial fix or navigation facility upon which the procedure turn is predicated.

EXAMPLE–
Cross Redding VOR at or above five thousand, cleared VOR runway three four approach.
or

Five miles from outer marker, turn right heading three three zero, maintain two thousand until established on the localizer, cleared ILS runway three six approach.

NOTE–

1. *The altitude assigned will assure IFR obstruction clearance from the point at which the approach clearance is issued until established on a segment of a published route or IAP. If uncertain of the meaning of the clearance, immediately request clarification from ATC.*

2. *An aircraft is not established on an approach while below published approach altitudes. If the MVA/MIA allows, and ATC assigns an altitude below an IF or IAF altitude, the pilot will be issued an altitude to maintain until past a point that the aircraft is established on the approach.*

g. Several IAPs, using various navigation and approach aids may be authorized for an airport. ATC may advise that a particular approach procedure is being used, primarily to expedite traffic. If issued a clearance that specifies a particular approach procedure, notify ATC immediately if a different one is desired. In this event it may be necessary for ATC to withhold clearance for the different approach until such time as traffic conditions permit. However, a pilot involved in an emergency situation will be given priority. If the pilot is not familiar with the specific approach procedure, ATC should be advised and they will provide detailed information on the execution of the procedure.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Paragraph 5–4–4 , Advance Information on Instrument Approach.

h. The name of an instrument approach, as published, is used to identify the approach, even though a component of the approach aid, such as the glideslope on an Instrument Landing System, is inoperative or unreliable. The controller will use the name of the approach as published, but must advise the aircraft at the time an approach clearance is issued that the inoperative or unreliable approach aid component is unusable, except when the title of the published approach procedures otherwise allows, for example, ILS or LOC.

i. Except when being radar vectored to the final approach course, when cleared for a specifically prescribed IAP; i.e., "cleared ILS runway one niner approach" or when "cleared approach" i.e., execution of any procedure prescribed for the airport, pilots must execute the entire procedure commencing at an IAF or an associated feeder route as described on the IAP chart unless an appropriate new or revised ATC clearance is received, or the IFR flight plan is canceled.

j. Pilots planning flights to locations which are private airfields or which have instrument approach procedures based on private navigation aids should obtain approval from the owner. In addition, the pilot must be authorized by the FAA to fly special instrument approach procedures associated with private navigation aids (see paragraph 5–4–8). Owners of navigation aids that are not for public use may elect to turn off the signal for whatever reason they may have; for example, maintenance, energy conservation, etc. Air traffic controllers are not required to question pilots to determine if they have permission to land at a private airfield or to use procedures based on privately owned navigation aids, and they may not know the status of the navigation aid. Controllers presume a pilot has obtained approval from the owner and the FAA for use of special instrument approach procedures and is aware of any details of the procedure if an IFR flight plan was filed to that airport.

k. Pilots should not rely on radar to identify a fix unless the fix is indicated as "RADAR" on the IAP. Pilots may request radar identification of an OM, but the controller may not be able to provide the service due either to workload or not having the fix on the video map.

l. If a missed approach is required, advise ATC and include the reason (unless initiated by ATC). Comply with the missed approach instructions for the instrument approach procedure being executed, unless otherwise directed by ATC.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Paragraph 5–4–21 , Missed Approach.
AIM, Paragraph 5–5–5 , Missed Approach.

5–4–8. Special Instrument Approach Procedures

Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) charts reflect the criteria associated with the U.S. Standard for Terminal Instrument [Approach] Procedures (TERP), which prescribes standardized methods for use in developing IAPs. Standard IAPs are published in the Federal Register (FR) in accordance with Title 14 of the Code of Federal Regulations, Part 97, and are available for use by appropriately qualified pilots operating properly equipped and airworthy aircraft in accordance with operating rules and procedures acceptable to the FAA. Special IAPs are also developed using TERPS but are not given public notice in the FR. The FAA authorizes only certain individual pilots and/or pilots in individual organizations to use special IAPs, and may require additional crew training and/or aircraft equipment or performance, and may also require the use of landing aids, communications, or weather services not available for public use. Additionally, IAPs that service private use airports or heliports are generally special IAPs. FDC NOTAMs for Specials, FDC T-NOTAMs, may also be used to promulgate safety-of-flight information relating to Specials provided the location has a valid landing area identifier and is serviced by the United States NOTAM system. Pilots may access NOTAMs online or through an FAA Flight Service Station (FSS). FSS specialists will not automatically provide NOTAM information to pilots for special IAPs during telephone pre−flight briefings. Pilots who are authorized by the FAA to use special IAPs must specifically request FDC NOTAM information for the particular special IAP they plan to use.

5−4−9. Procedure Turn and Hold−in−lieu of Procedure Turn

a. A procedure turn is the maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish the aircraft inbound on an intermediate or final approach course. The procedure turn or hold−in−lieu−of−PT is a required maneuver when it is depicted on the approach chart, unless cleared by ATC for a straight−in approach. Additionally, the procedure turn or hold−in−lieu−of−PT is not permitted when the symbol "No PT" is depicted on the initial segment being used, when a RADAR VECTOR to the final approach course is provided, or when conducting a timed approach from a holding fix. The altitude prescribed for the procedure turn is a minimum altitude until the aircraft is established on the inbound course. The maneuver must be completed within the distance specified in the profile view. For a hold−in−lieu−of−PT, the holding pattern direction must be flown as depicted and the specified leg length/timing must not be exceeded.

NOTE−
The pilot may elect to use the procedure turn or hold−in−lieu−of−PT when it is not required by the procedure, but must first receive an amended clearance from ATC. If the pilot is uncertain whether the ATC clearance intends for a procedure turn to be conducted or to allow for a straight−in approach, the pilot must immediately request clarification from ATC (14 CFR Section 91.123).

1. On U.S. Government charts, a barbed arrow indicates the maneuvering side of the outbound course on which the procedure turn is made. Headings are provided for course reversal using the 45 degree type procedure turn. However, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn is left to the discretion of the pilot (limited by the charted remain within xx NM distance). Some of the options are the 45 degree procedure turn, the racetrack pattern, the teardrop procedure turn, or the 80 degree ↔ 260 degree course reversal. Racetrack entries should be conducted on the maneuvering side where the majority of protected airspace resides. If an entry places the pilot on the non−maneuvering side of the PT, correction to intercept the outbound course ensures remaining within protected airspace. Some procedure turns are specified by procedural track. These turns must be flown exactly as depicted.

2. Descent to the procedure turn (PT) completion altitude from the PT fix altitude (when one has been published or assigned by ATC) must not begin until crossing over the PT fix or abeam and proceeding outbound. Some procedures contain a note in the chart profile view that says "Maintain (altitude) or above until established outbound for procedure turn" (See FIG 5−4−16). Newer procedures will simply depict an "at or above" altitude at the PT fix without a chart note (See FIG 5−4−17). Both are there to ensure required obstacle clearance is provided in the procedure turn entry zone (See FIG 5−4−18). Absence of a chart note or specified minimum altitude adjacent to the PT fix is an indication that descent to the procedure turn altitude can commence immediately upon crossing over the PT fix, regardless of the direction of flight. This is because the minimum altitudes in the PT entry zone and the PT maneuvering zone are the same.

FIG 5-4-15

Example of an RNAV Approach with RF Leg

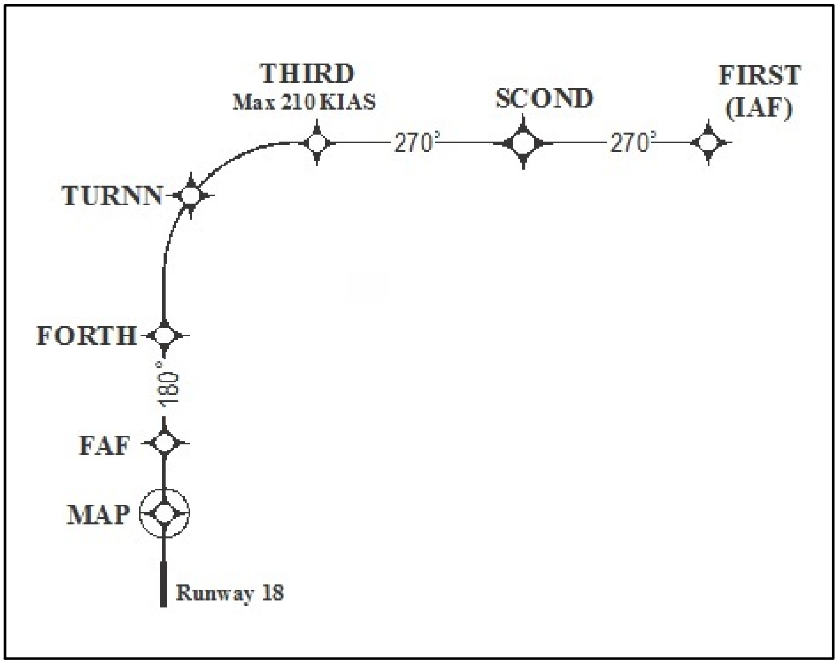


FIG 5-4-16

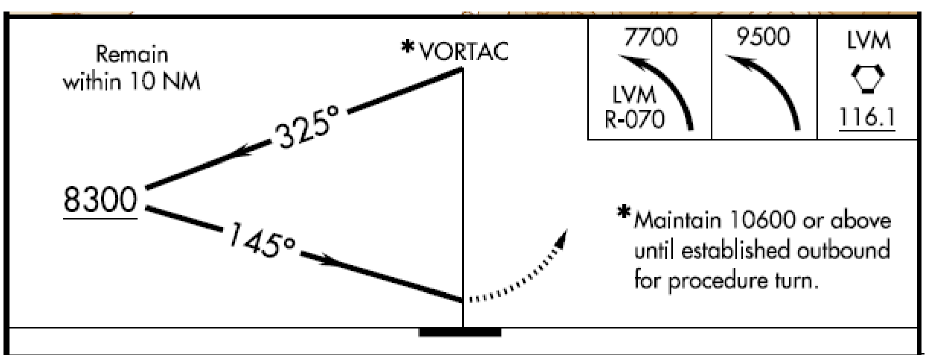


FIG 5-4-17

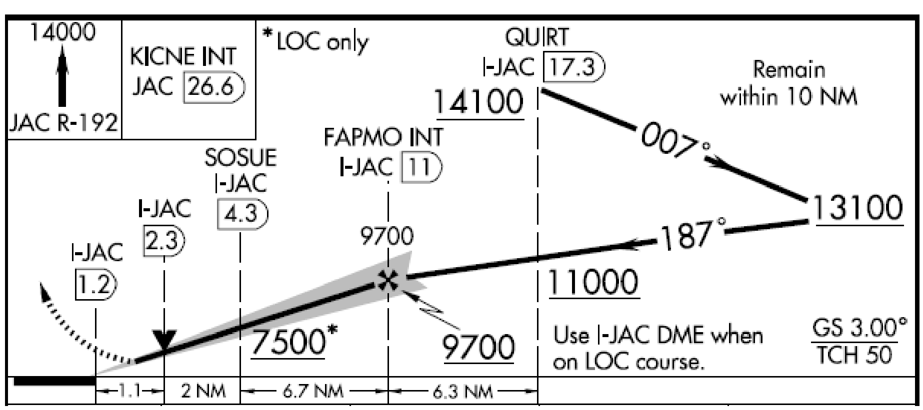
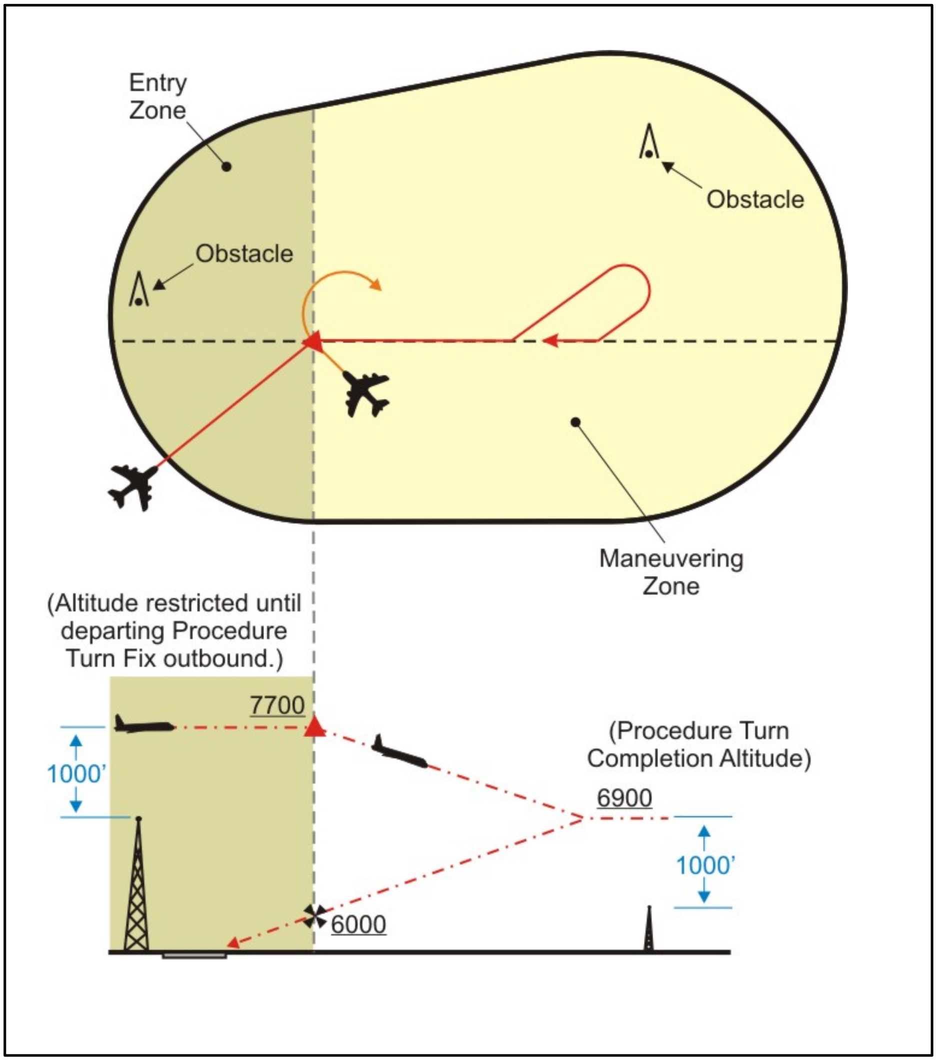


FIG 5-4-18



3. When the approach procedure involves a procedure turn, a maximum speed of not greater than 200 knots (IAS) should be observed from first overheading the course reversal IAF through the procedure turn maneuver to ensure containment within the obstruction clearance area. Pilots should begin the outbound turn immediately after passing the procedure turn fix. The procedure turn maneuver must be executed within the distance specified in the profile view. The normal procedure turn distance is 10 miles. This may be reduced to a minimum of 5 miles where only Category A or helicopter aircraft are to be operated or increased to as much as 15 miles to accommodate high performance aircraft.

4. A teardrop procedure or penetration turn may be specified in some procedures for a required course reversal. The teardrop procedure consists of departure from an initial approach fix on an outbound course followed by a turn toward and intercepting the inbound course at or prior to the intermediate fix or point. Its purpose is to permit an aircraft to reverse direction and lose considerable altitude within reasonably limited airspace. Where no fix is available to mark the beginning of the intermediate segment, it must be assumed to commence at a point 10 miles prior to the final approach fix. When the facility is located on the airport, an aircraft is considered to be on final approach upon completion of the penetration turn. However, the final approach segment begins on the final approach course 10 miles from the facility.

5. A holding pattern in lieu of procedure turn may be specified for course reversal in some procedures. In such cases, the holding pattern is established over an intermediate fix or a final approach fix. The holding pattern distance or time specified in the profile view must be observed. For a hold−in−lieu−of−PT, the holding pattern direction must be flown as depicted and the specified leg length/timing must not be exceeded. Maximum holding airspeed limitations as set forth for all holding patterns apply. The holding pattern maneuver is completed when the aircraft is established on the inbound course after executing the appropriate entry. If cleared for the approach prior to returning to the holding fix, and the aircraft is at the prescribed altitude, additional circuits of the holding pattern are not necessary nor expected by ATC. If pilots elect to make additional circuits to lose excessive altitude or to become better established on course, it is their responsibility to so advise ATC upon receipt of their approach clearance.

6. A procedure turn is not required when an approach can be made directly from a specified intermediate fix to the final approach fix. In such cases, the term "NoPT" is used with the appropriate course and altitude to denote that the procedure turn is not required. If a procedure turn is desired, and when cleared to do so by ATC, descent below the procedure turn altitude should not be made until the aircraft is established on the inbound course, since some NoPT altitudes may be lower than the procedure turn altitudes.

b. Limitations on Procedure Turns

1. In the case of a radar initial approach to a final approach fix or position, or a timed approach from a holding fix, or where the procedure specifies NoPT, no pilot may make a procedure turn unless, when final approach clearance is received, the pilot so advises ATC and a clearance is received to execute a procedure turn.

2. When a teardrop procedure turn is depicted and a course reversal is required, this type turn must be executed.

3. When a holding pattern replaces a procedure turn, the holding pattern must be followed, except when RADAR VECTORING is provided or when NoPT is shown on the approach course. The recommended entry procedures will ensure the aircraft remains within the holding pattern's protected airspace. As in the procedure turn, the descent from the minimum holding pattern altitude to the final approach fix altitude (when lower) may not commence until the aircraft is established on the inbound course. Where a holding pattern is established in−lieu−of a procedure turn, the maximum holding pattern airspeeds apply.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5−3−8 j2, Holding.

4. The absence of the procedure turn barb in the plan view indicates that a procedure turn is not authorized for that procedure.

5−4−10. Timed Approaches from a Holding Fix

a. TIMED APPROACHES may be conducted when the following conditions are met:

1. A control tower is in operation at the airport where the approaches are conducted.

2. Direct communications are maintained between the pilot and the center or approach controller until the pilot is instructed to contact the tower.

3. If more than one missed approach procedure is available, none require a course reversal.

4. If only one missed approach procedure is available, the following conditions are met:

(a) Course reversal is not required; and,

(b) Reported ceiling and visibility are equal to or greater than the highest prescribed circling minimums for the IAP.

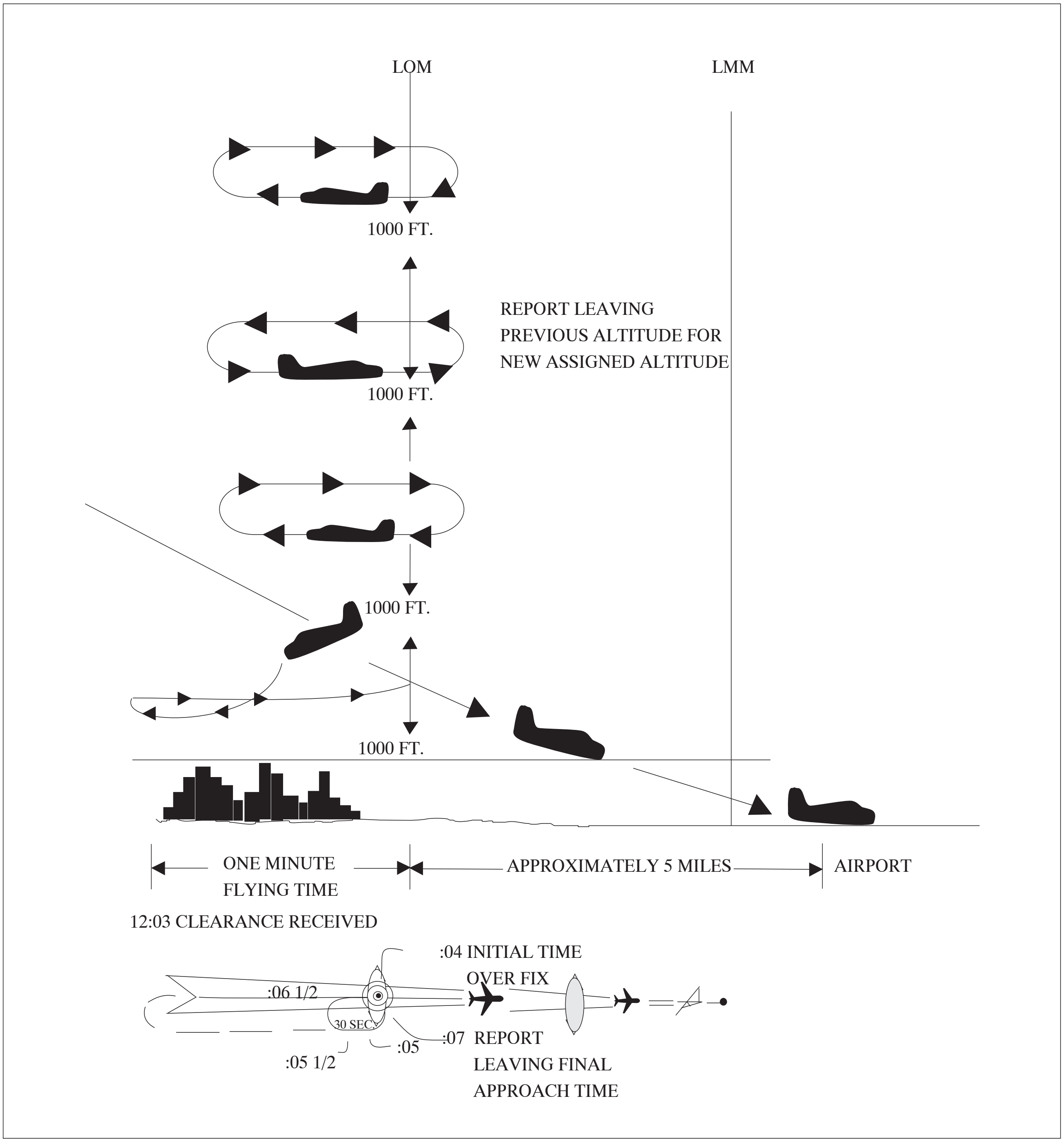
5. When cleared for the approach, pilots must not execute a procedure turn. (14 CFR Section 91.175.)

b. Although the controller will not specifically state that "timed approaches are in use," the assigning of a time to depart the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach) is indicative that timed approach procedures are being utilized, or in lieu of holding, the controller may use radar vectors to the Final Approach Course to establish a mileage interval between aircraft that will ensure the appropriate time sequence between the final approach fix/outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker and the airport.

c. Each pilot in an approach sequence will be given advance notice as to the time they should leave the holding point on approach to the airport. When a time to leave the holding point has been received, the pilot should adjust the flight path to leave the fix as closely as possible to the designated time. (See FIG 5−4−19.)

FIG 5−4−19

Timed Approaches from a Holding Fix



EXAMPLE−
At 12:03 local time, in the example shown, a pilot holding, receives instructions to leave the fix inbound at 12:07. These instructions are received just as the pilot has completed turn at the outbound end of the holding pattern and is proceeding inbound towards the fix. Arriving back over the fix, the pilot notes that the time is 12:04 and that there are 3 minutes to lose in order to leave the fix at the assigned time. Since the time remaining is more than two minutes, the pilot plans to fly a race

track pattern rather than a 360 degree turn, which would use up 2 minutes. The turns at the ends of the race track pattern will consume approximately 2 minutes. Three minutes to go, minus 2 minutes required for the turns, leaves 1 minute for level flight. Since two portions of level flight will be required to get back to the fix inbound, the pilot halves the 1 minute remaining and plans to fly level for 30 seconds outbound before starting the turn back to the fix on final approach. If the winds were negligible at flight altitude, this procedure would bring the pilot inbound across the fix precisely at the specified time of 12:07. However, if expecting headwind on final approach, the pilot should shorten the 30 second outbound course somewhat, knowing that the wind will carry the aircraft away from the fix faster while outbound and decrease the ground speed while returning to the fix. On the other hand, compensating for a tailwind on final approach, the pilot should lengthen the calculated 30 second outbound heading somewhat, knowing that the wind would tend to hold the aircraft closer to the fix while outbound and increase the ground speed while returning to the fix.

5−4−11. Radar Approaches

a. The only airborne radio equipment required for radar approaches is a functioning radio transmitter and receiver. The radar controller vectors the aircraft to align it with the runway centerline. The controller continues the vectors to keep the aircraft on course until the pilot can complete the approach and landing by visual reference to the surface. There are two types of radar approaches: Precision (PAR) and Surveillance (ASR).

b. A radar approach may be given to any aircraft upon request and may be offered to pilots of aircraft in distress or to expedite traffic, however, an ASR might not be approved unless there is an ATC operational requirement, or in an unusual or emergency situation. Acceptance of a PAR or ASR by a pilot does not waive the prescribed weather minimums for the airport or for the particular aircraft operator concerned. The decision to make a radar approach when the reported weather is below the established minimums rests with the pilot.

c. PAR and ASR minimums are published on separate pages in the FAA Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP).

1. Precision Approach (PAR). A PAR is one in which a controller provides highly accurate navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation to a pilot. Pilots are given headings to fly, to direct them to, and keep their aircraft aligned with the extended centerline of the landing runway. They are told to anticipate glidepath interception approximately 10 to 30 seconds before it occurs and when to start descent. The published Decision Height will be given only if the pilot requests it. If the aircraft is observed to deviate above or below the glidepath, the pilot is given the relative amount of deviation by use of terms "slightly" or "well" and is expected to adjust the aircraft's rate of descent/ascent to return to the glidepath. Trend information is also issued with respect to the elevation of the aircraft and may be modified by the terms "rapidly" and "slowly"; e.g., "well above glidepath, coming down rapidly." Range from touchdown is given at least once each mile. If an aircraft is observed by the controller to proceed outside of specified safety zone limits in azimuth and/or elevation and continue to operate outside these prescribed limits, the pilot will be directed to execute a missed approach or to fly a specified course unless the pilot has the runway environment (runway, approach lights, etc.) in sight. Navigational guidance in azimuth and elevation is provided the pilot until the aircraft reaches the published Decision Height (DH). Advisory course and glidepath information is furnished by the controller until the aircraft passes over the landing threshold, at which point the pilot is advised of any deviation from the runway centerline. Radar service is automatically terminated upon completion of the approach.

2. Surveillance Approach (ASR). An ASR is one in which a controller provides navigational guidance in azimuth only. The pilot is furnished headings to fly to align the aircraft with the extended centerline of the landing runway. Since the radar information used for a surveillance approach is considerably less precise than that used for a precision approach, the accuracy of the approach will not be as great and higher minimums will apply. Guidance in elevation is not possible but the pilot will be advised when to commence descent to the Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) or, if appropriate, to an intermediate step−down fix Minimum Crossing Altitude and subsequently to the prescribed MDA. In addition, the pilot will be advised of the location of the Missed Approach Point (MAP) prescribed for the procedure and the aircraft's position each mile on final from the runway, airport or heliport or MAP, as appropriate. If requested by the pilot, recommended altitudes will be issued at each mile, based on the descent gradient established for the procedure, down to the last mile that is at or above the MDA. Normally, navigational guidance will be provided until the aircraft reaches the MAP. Controllers will terminate guidance and instruct the pilot to execute a missed approach unless at the MAP the pilot has the runway, airport or heliport in sight or, for a helicopter point−in−space approach, the prescribed visual reference with the surface is established. Also, if, at any time during the approach the controller considers that safe guidance for the remainder of the approach cannot be provided, the controller will terminate guidance and instruct the pilot to execute a missed approach. Similarly, guidance termination and missed approach will be effected upon pilot request and, for civil aircraft only, controllers may terminate guidance when the pilot reports the runway, airport/heliport or visual surface route (point−in−space approach) in sight or otherwise indicates that continued guidance is not required. Radar service is automatically terminated at the completion of a radar approach.

NOTE−
1. *The published MDA for straight−in approaches will be issued to the pilot before beginning descent. When a surveillance approach will terminate in a circle−to−land maneuver, the pilot must furnish the aircraft approach category to the controller. The controller will then provide the pilot with the appropriate MDA.*

2. *ASR APPROACHES ARE NOT AVAILABLE WHEN AN ATC FACILITY IS USING CENRAP.*

3. NO−GYRO Approach. This approach is available to a pilot under radar control who experiences circumstances wherein the directional gyro or other stabilized compass is inoperative or inaccurate. When this occurs, the pilot should so advise ATC and request a No−Gyro vector or approach. Pilots of aircraft not equipped with a directional gyro or other stabilized compass who desire radar handling may also request a No−Gyro vector or approach. The pilot should make all turns at standard rate and should execute the turn immediately upon receipt of instructions. For example, “TURN RIGHT,” “STOP TURN.” When a surveillance or precision approach is made, the pilot will be advised after the aircraft has been turned onto final approach to make turns at half standard rate.

5−4−12. Radar Monitoring of Instrument Approaches

a. PAR facilities operated by the FAA and the military services at some joint−use (civil and military) and military installations monitor aircraft on instrument approaches and issue radar advisories to the pilot when weather is below VFR minimums (1,000 and 3), at night, or when requested by a pilot. This service is provided only when the PAR Final Approach Course coincides with the final approach of the navigational aid and only during the operational hours of the PAR. The radar advisories serve only as a secondary aid since the pilot has selected the navigational aid as the primary aid for the approach.

b. Prior to starting final approach, the pilot will be advised of the frequency on which the advisories will be transmitted. If, for any reason, radar advisories cannot be furnished, the pilot will be so advised.

c. Advisory information, derived from radar observations, includes information on:

1. Passing the final approach fix inbound (nonprecision approach) or passing the outer marker or fix used in lieu of the outer marker inbound (precision approach).

NOTE−
At this point, the pilot may be requested to report sighting the approach lights or the runway.

2. Trend advisories with respect to elevation and/or azimuth radar position and movement will be provided.

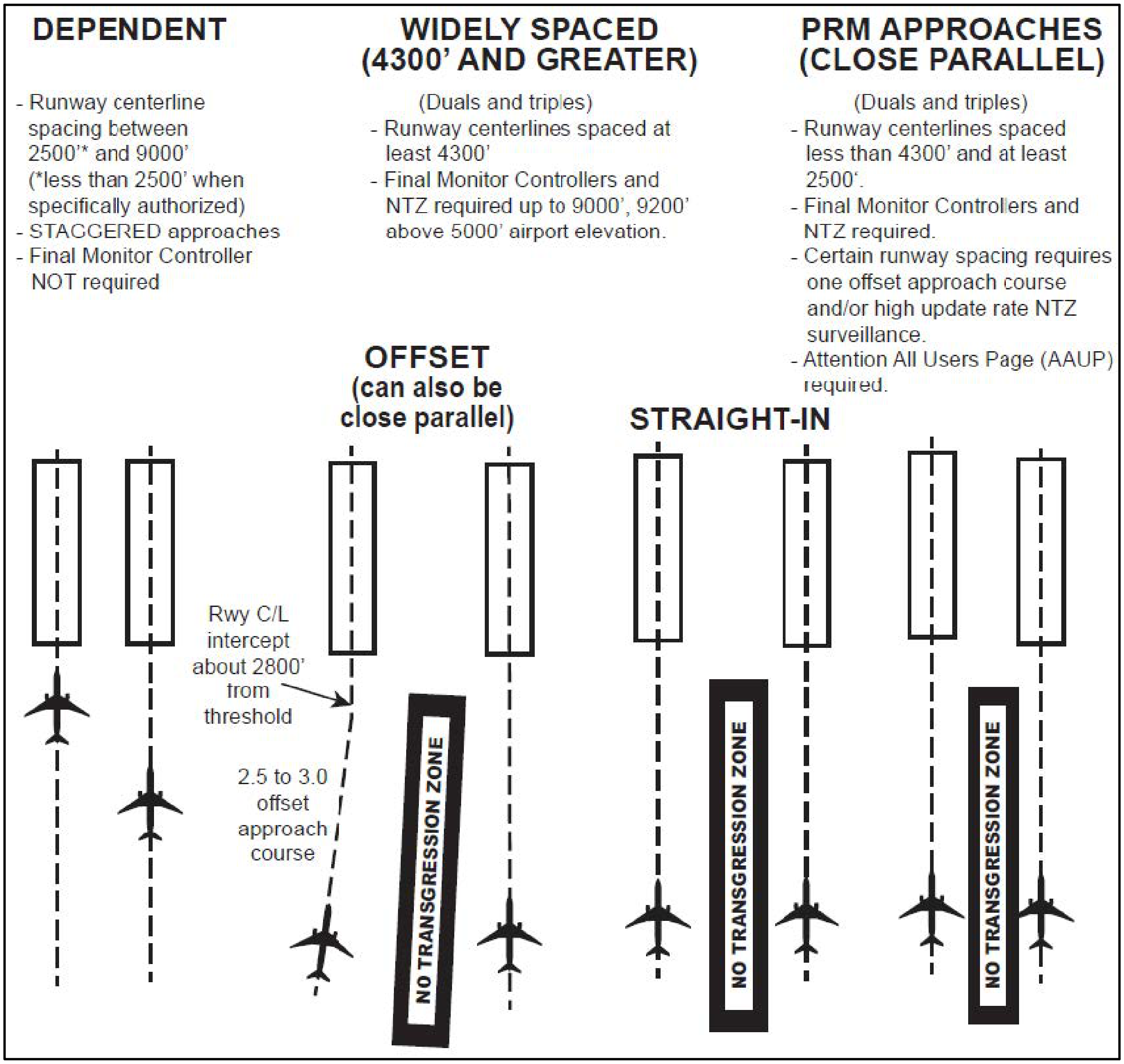
NOTE−
Whenever the aircraft nears the PAR safety limit, the pilot will be advised that the aircraft is well above or below the glidepath or well left or right of course. Glidepath information is given only to those aircraft executing a precision approach, such as ILS. Altitude information is not transmitted to aircraft executing other than precision approaches because the descent portions of these approaches generally do not coincide with the depicted PAR glidepath.

3. If, after repeated advisories, the aircraft proceeds outside the PAR safety limit or if a radical deviation is observed, the pilot will be advised to execute a missed approach unless the prescribed visual reference with the surface is established.

d. Radar service is automatically terminated upon completion of the approach.

5−4−13. Simultaneous Approaches to Parallel Runways

FIG 5−4−20
Simultaneous Approaches
(Approach Courses Parallel and Offset between 2.5 and 3.0 degrees)



a. ATC procedures permit ILS/RNAV/GLS instrument approach operations to dual or triple parallel runway configurations. ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to parallel runways are grouped into three classes: Simultaneous Dependent Approaches; Simultaneous Independent Approaches; and Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM Approaches. RNAV approach procedures that are approved for simultaneous operations require GPS as the sensor for position updating. VOR/DME, DME/DME and IRU RNAV updating is not authorized. The classification of a parallel runway approach procedure is dependent on adjacent parallel runway centerline separation, ATC procedures, and airport ATC final approach radar monitoring and communications capabilities. At some airports, one or more approach courses may be offset up to 3 degrees. ILS approaches with offset localizer configurations result in loss of Category II/III capabilities and an increase in decision altitude/height (50').

b. Depending on weather conditions, traffic volume, and the specific combination of runways being utilized for arrival operations, a runway may be used for different types of simultaneous operations, including closely spaced dependent or independent approaches. Pilots should ensure that they understand the type of operation that is being conducted, and ask ATC for clarification if necessary.

c. Parallel approach operations demand heightened pilot situational awareness. A thorough Approach Procedure Chart review should be conducted with, as a minimum, emphasis on the following approach chart information: name and number of the approach, localizer frequency, inbound localizer/azimuth course, glideslope/glidepath intercept altitude, glideslope crossing altitude at the final approach fix, decision height, missed approach instructions, special notes/procedures, and the assigned runway location/proximity to adjacent runways. Pilots are informed by ATC or through the ATIS that simultaneous approaches are in use.

d. The close proximity of adjacent aircraft conducting simultaneous independent approaches, especially simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches mandates strict pilot compliance with all ATC clearances. ATC assigned airspeeds, altitudes, and headings must be complied with in a timely manner. Autopilot coupled approaches require pilot knowledge of procedures necessary to comply with ATC instructions. Simultaneous independent approaches, particularly simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches necessitate precise approach course tracking to minimize final monitor controller intervention, and unwanted No Transgression Zone (NTZ) penetration. In the unlikely event of a breakout, ATC will not assign altitudes lower than the minimum vectoring altitude. Pilots should notify ATC immediately if there is a degradation of aircraft or navigation systems.

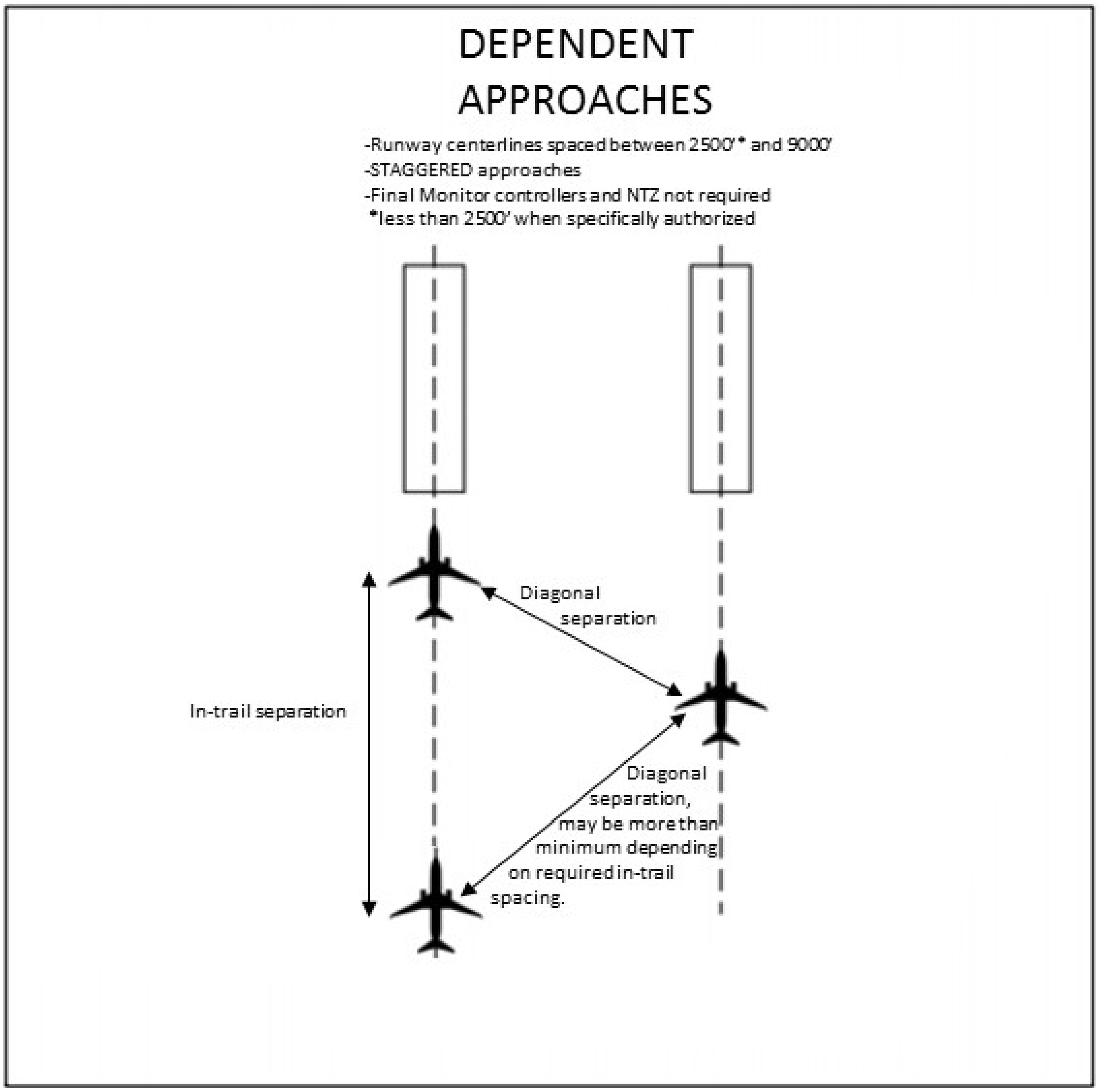
e. Strict radio discipline is mandatory during simultaneous independent and simultaneous close parallel PRM approach operations. This includes an alert listening watch and the avoidance of lengthy, unnecessary radio transmissions. Attention must be given to proper call sign usage to prevent the inadvertent execution of clearances intended for another aircraft. Use of abbreviated call signs must be avoided to preclude confusion of aircraft with similar sounding call signs. Pilots must be alert to unusually long periods of silence or any unusual background sounds in their radio receiver. A stuck microphone may block the issuance of ATC instructions on the tower frequency by the final monitor controller during simultaneous independent and simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches. In the case of PRM approaches, the use of a second frequency by the monitor controller mitigates the "stuck mike" or other blockage on the tower frequency.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Chapter 4, Section 2, Radio Communications Phraseology and Techniques, gives additional communications information.

f. Use of Traffic Collision Avoidance Systems (TCAS) provides an additional element of safety to parallel approach operations. Pilots should follow recommended TCAS operating procedures presented in approved flight manuals, original equipment manufacturer recommendations, professional newsletters, and FAA publications.

5−4−14. Simultaneous Dependent Approaches

FIG 5−4−21
Simultaneous Approaches
(Parallel Runways and Approach Courses)



a. Simultaneous dependent approaches are an ATC procedure permitting approaches to airports having parallel runway centerlines separated by at least 2,500 feet up to 9,000 feet. Integral parts of a total system are ILS or other system providing approach navigation, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and required airborne equipment. RNAV equipment in the aircraft or GLS equipment on the ground and in the aircraft may replace the required airborne and ground based ILS equipment. Although non−precision minimums may be published, pilots must only use those procedures specifically authorized by chart note. For example, the chart note "LNAV NA during simultaneous operations," requires vertical guidance. When given a choice, pilots should always fly a precision approach whenever possible.

b. A simultaneous dependent approach differs from a simultaneous independent approach in that, the minimum distance between parallel runway centerlines may be reduced; there is no requirement for radar monitoring or advisories; and a staggered separation of aircraft on the adjacent final course is required.

c. A minimum of 1.0 NM radar separation (diagonal) is required between successive aircraft on the adjacent final approach course when runway centerlines are at least 2,500 feet but no more than 3,600 feet apart. A minimum of 1.5 NM radar separation (diagonal) is required between successive aircraft on the adjacent final approach course when runway centerlines are more than 3,600 feet but no more than 8,300 feet apart. When runway centerlines are more than 8,300 feet but no more than 9,000 feet apart a minimum of 2 NM diagonal radar separation is provided. Aircraft on the same final approach course within 10 NM of the runway end are provided a minimum of 3 NM radar separation, reduced to 2.5 NM in certain circumstances. In addition, a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical or a minimum of three miles radar separation is provided between aircraft during turn on to the parallel final approach course.

d. Whenever parallel approaches are in use, pilots are informed by ATC or via the ATIS that approaches to both runways are in use. The charted IAP also notes which runways may be used simultaneously. In addition, the radar controller will have the interphone capability of communicating with the tower controller where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

NOTE−
ATC will not specifically identify these operations as being dependent when advertised on the ATIS.

EXAMPLE−
Simultaneous ILS Runway 19 right and ILS Runway 19 left in use.

e. At certain airports, simultaneous dependent approaches are permitted to runways spaced less than 2,500 feet apart. In this case, ATC will provide no less than the minimum authorized diagonal separation with the leader always arriving on the same runway. The trailing aircraft is permitted reduced diagonal separation, instead of the single runway separation normally utilized for runways spaced less than 2,500 feet apart. For wake turbulence mitigation reasons:

1. Reduced diagonal spacing is only permitted when certain aircraft wake category pairings exist; typically when the leader is either in the large or small wake turbulence category, and

2. All aircraft must descend on the glideslope from the altitude at which they were cleared for the approach during these operations.

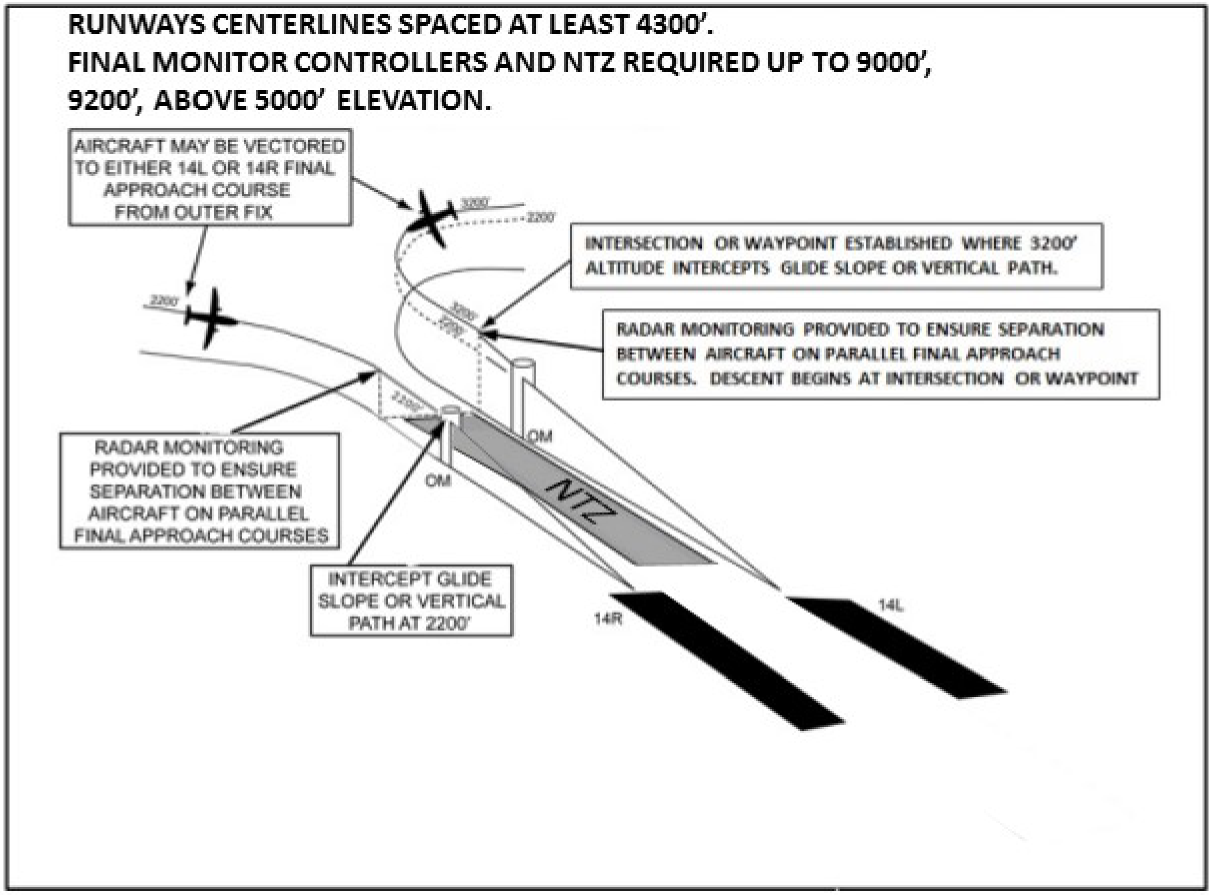
When reduced separation is authorized, the IAP briefing strip indicates that simultaneous operations require the use of vertical guidance and that the pilot should maintain last assigned altitude until intercepting the glideslope. No special pilot training is required to participate in these operations.

NOTE−
Either simultaneous dependent approaches with reduced separation or SOIA PRM approaches may be conducted to Runways 28R and 28L at KSFO spaced 750 feet apart, depending on weather conditions and traffic volume. Pilots should use caution so as not to confuse these operations. Plan for SOIA procedures only when ATC assigns a PRM approach or the ATIS advertises PRM approaches are in use. KSFO is the only airport where both procedures are presently conducted.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5−4−16, Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM Approaches and Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approaches (SOIA).

5−4−15. Simultaneous Independent ILS/RNAV/GLS Approaches

FIG 5−4−22
Simultaneous Independent ILS/RNAV/GLS Approaches



a. System. An approach system permitting simultaneous approaches to parallel runways with centerlines separated by at least 4,300 feet. Separation between 4,300 and 9,000 feet (9,200' for airports above 5,000') utilizing NTZ final monitor controllers. Simultaneous independent approaches require NTZ radar monitoring to ensure separation between aircraft on the adjacent parallel approach course. Aircraft position is tracked by final monitor controllers who will issue instructions to aircraft observed deviating from the assigned final approach course. Staggered radar separation procedures are not utilized. Integral parts of a total system are radar, communications, ATC procedures, and ILS or other required airborne equipment. A chart note identifies that the approach is authorized for simultaneous use.

When simultaneous operations are in use, it will be advertised on the ATIS. When advised that simultaneous approaches are in use, pilots must advise approach control immediately of malfunctioning or inoperative receivers, or if a simultaneous approach is not desired. Although non−precision minimums may be published, pilots must only use those procedures specifically authorized by chart note. For example, the chart note "LNAV NA during simultaneous operations," requires vertical guidance. When given a choice, pilots should always fly a precision approach whenever possible.

NOTE−
ATC does not use the word independent or parallel when advertising these operations on the ATIS.

EXAMPLE−
Simultaneous ILS Runway 24 left and ILS Runway 24 right approaches in use.

b. Radar Services. These services are provided for each simultaneous independent approach.

1. During turn on to parallel final approach, aircraft are normally provided 3 miles radar separation or a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical separation. The assigned altitude must be maintained until intercepting the glidepath, unless cleared otherwise by ATC. Aircraft will not be vectored to intercept the final approach course at an angle greater than thirty degrees.

NOTE−
Some simultaneous operations permit the aircraft to track an RNAV course beginning on downwind and continuing in a turn to intercept the final approach course. In this case, separation with the aircraft on the adjacent final approach course is provided by the monitor controller with reference to an NTZ.

2. The final monitor controller will have the capability of overriding the tower controller on the tower frequency.

3. Pilots will be instructed to contact the tower frequency prior to the point where NTZ monitoring begins.

4. Aircraft observed to overshoot the turn−on or to continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ will be instructed to return to the correct final approach course immediately. The final monitor controller may cancel the approach clearance, and issue missed approach or other instructions to the deviating aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"(Aircraft call sign) YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE,"

or

"(aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE."

5. If a deviating aircraft fails to respond to such instructions or is observed penetrating the NTZ, the aircraft on the adjacent final approach course (if threatened), will be issued a breakout instruction.

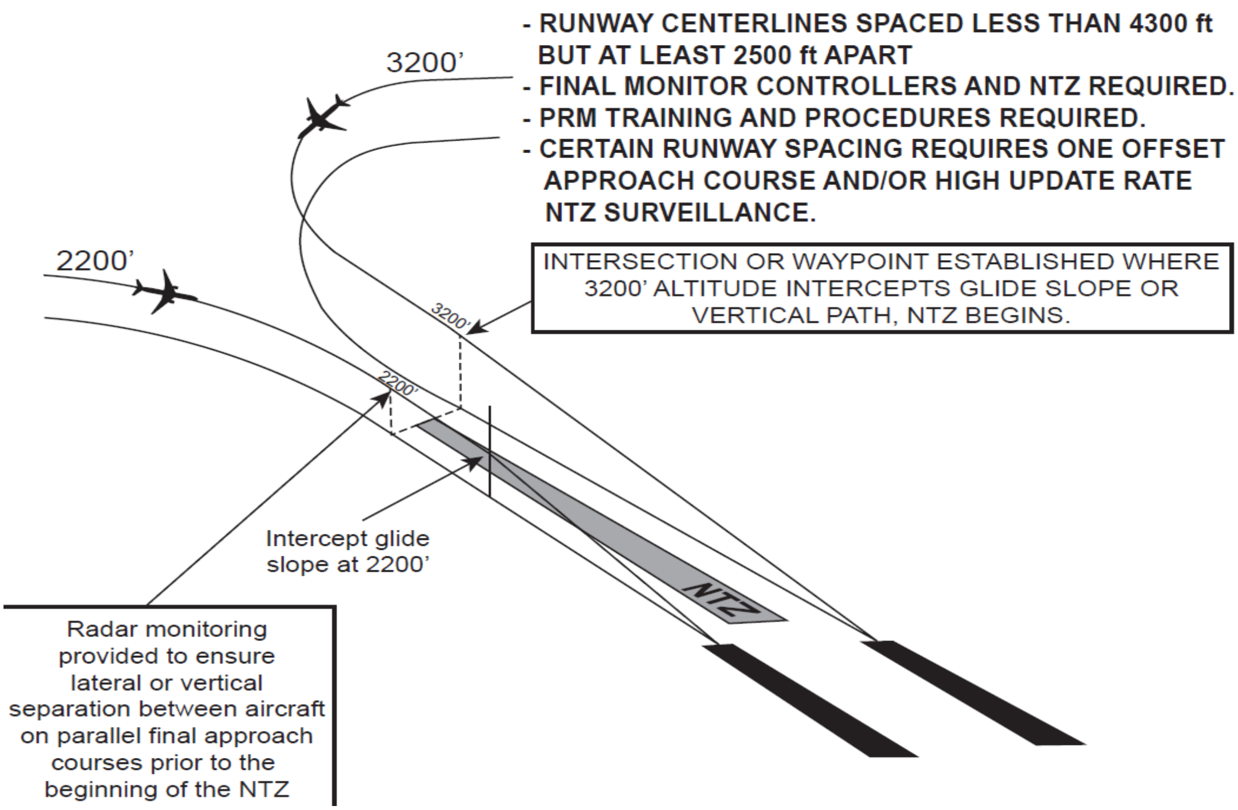
PHRASEOLOGY−
"TRAFFIC ALERT (aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), (climb/descend) AND MAINTAIN (altitude)."

6. Radar monitoring will automatically be terminated when visual separation is applied, the aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight, or the aircraft is 1 NM or less from the runway threshold. Final monitor controllers will not advise pilots when radar monitoring is terminated.

NOTE−
Simultaneous independent approaches conducted to runways spaced greater than 9,000 feet (or 9,200' at airports above 5,000') do not require an NTZ. However, from a pilot's perspective, the same alerts relative to deviating aircraft will be provided by ATC as are provided when an NTZ is being monitored. Pilots may not be aware as to whether or not an NTZ is being monitored.

5−4−16. Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM Approaches and Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approaches (SOIA)

FIG 5−4−23
PRM Approaches
Simultaneous Close Parallel



a. System.

1. PRM is an acronym for the high update rate Precision Runway Monitor surveillance system which is required to monitor the No Transgression Zone (NTZ) for specific parallel runway separations used to conduct simultaneous close parallel approaches. PRM is also published in the title as part of the approach name for IAPs used to conduct Simultaneous Close Parallel approaches. “PRM” alerts pilots that specific airborne equipment, training, and procedures are applicable.

Because Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM approaches are independent, the NTZ and normal operating zone (NOZ) airspace between the final approach courses is monitored by two monitor controllers, one for each approach course. The NTZ monitoring system (final monitor aid) consists of a high resolution ATC radar display with automated tracking software which provides monitor controllers with aircraft identification, position, speed, and a ten−second projected position, as well as visual and aural NTZ penetration alerts. A PRM high update rate surveillance sensor is a component of this system only for specific runway spacing. Additional procedures for simultaneous independent approaches are described in paragraph 5−4−15, Simultaneous Independent ILS/RNAV/GLS Approaches.

2. Simultaneous Close Parallel PRM approaches, whether conducted utilizing a high update rate PRM surveillance sensor or not, must meet all of the following requirements: pilot training,PRM in the approach title,NTZ monitoring utilizing a final monitor aid, radar display, publication of an AAUP, and use of a secondary PRM communications frequency. PRM approaches are depicted on a separate IAP titled (Procedure type) PRM Rwy XXX (Simultaneous Close Parallel or Close Parallel).

NOTE–
ATC does not use the word "independent" when advertising these operations on the ATIS.

EXAMPLE–
Simultaneous ILS PRM Runway 33 left and ILS PRM Runway 33 right approaches in use.

(a) The pilot may request to conduct a different type of PRM approach to the same runway other than the one that is presently being used; for example, RNAV instead of ILS. However, pilots must always obtain ATC approval to conduct a different type of approach. Also, in the event of the loss of ground–based NAVAIDS, the ATIS may advertise other types of PRM approaches to the affected runway or runways.

(b) The Attention All Users Page (AAUP) will address procedures for conducting PRM approaches.

b. Requirements and Procedures. Besides system requirements and pilot procedures as identified in subparagraph a1 above, all pilots must have completed special training before accepting a clearance to conduct a PRM approach.

1. Pilot Training Requirement. Pilots must complete special pilot training, as outlined below, before accepting a clearance for a simultaneous close parallel PRM approach.

(a) For operations under 14 CFR Parts 121, 129, and 135, pilots must comply with FAA–approved company training as identified in their Operations Specifications. Training includes the requirement for pilots to view the FAA training slide presentation, "Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) Pilot Procedures." Refer to https://www.faa.gov/training_testing/training/prm/ or search key words "FAA PRM" for additional information and to view or download the slide presentation.

(b) For operations under Part 91:

(1) Pilots operating transport category aircraft must be familiar with PRM operations as contained in this section of the AIM. In addition, pilots operating transport category aircraft must view the slide presentation, "Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) Pilot Procedures." Refer to https://www.faa.gov/training_testing/training/prm/ or search key words "FAA PRM" for additional information and to view or download the slide presentation.

(2) Pilots *not* operating transport category aircraft must be familiar with PRM and SOIA operations as contained in this section of the AIM. The FAA strongly recommends that pilots *not* involved in transport category aircraft operations view the FAA training slide presentation, "Precision Runway Monitor (PRM) Pilot Procedures." Refer to https://www.faa.gov/training_testing/training/prm/ or search key words "FAA PRM" for additional information and to view or download the slide presentation.

NOTE–
Depending on weather conditions, traffic volume, and the specific combination of runways being utilized for arrival operations, a runway may be used for different types of simultaneous operations, including closely spaced dependent or independent approaches. Use PRM procedures only when the ATIS advertises their use. For other types of simultaneous approaches, see paragraphs 5–4–14 and 5–4–15.

c. ATC Directed Breakout. An ATC directed "breakout" is defined as a vector off the final approach course of a threatened aircraft in response to another aircraft penetrating the NTZ.

d. Dual Communications. The aircraft flying the PRM approach must have the capability of enabling the pilot/s to listen to two communications frequencies simultaneously. To avoid blocked transmissions, each runway will have two frequencies, a primary and a PRM monitor frequency. The tower controller will transmit on both frequencies. The monitor controller's transmissions, if needed, will override both frequencies. Pilots will ONLY transmit on the tower controller's frequency, but will listen to both frequencies. Select the PRM monitor frequency audio only when instructed by ATC to contact the tower. The volume levels should be set about the same on both radios so that the pilots will be able to hear transmissions on the PRM frequency if the tower is blocked. Site–specific procedures take precedence over the general information presented in this paragraph. Refer to the AAUP for applicable procedures at specific airports.

e. Radar Services.

1. During turn on to parallel final approach, aircraft will be provided 3 miles radar separation or a minimum of 1,000 feet vertical separation. The assigned altitude must be maintained until intercepting the glideslope/glidepath, unless cleared otherwise by ATC. Aircraft will not be vectored to intercept the final approach course at an angle greater than thirty degrees.

2. The final monitor controller will have the capability of overriding the tower controller on the tower frequency as well as transmitting on the PRM frequency.

3. Pilots will be instructed to contact the tower frequency prior to the point where NTZ monitoring begins. Pilots will begin monitoring the secondary PRM frequency at that time (see Dual VHF Communications Required below).

4. To ensure separation is maintained, and in order to avoid an imminent situation during PRM approaches, pilots must immediately comply with monitor controller instructions.

5. Aircraft observed to overshoot the turn or to continue on a track which will penetrate the NTZ will be instructed to return to the correct final approach course immediately. The final monitor controller may cancel the approach clearance, and issue missed approach or other instructions to the deviating aircraft.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"(Aircraft call sign) YOU HAVE CROSSED THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE. TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE,"
or
"(Aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) AND RETURN TO THE FINAL APPROACH COURSE."

6. If a deviating aircraft fails to respond to such instructions or is observed penetrating the NTZ, the aircraft on the adjacent final approach course (if threatened) will be issued a breakout instruction.

PHRASEOLOGY−
"TRAFFIC ALERT (aircraft call sign) TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees), (climb/descend) AND MAINTAIN (altitude)."

7. Radar monitoring will automatically be terminated when visual separation is applied, or the aircraft reports the approach lights or runway in sight or within 1 NM of the runway threshold. Final monitor controllers will not advise pilots when radar monitoring is terminated.

f. Attention All Users Page (AAUP). At airports that conduct PRM operations, the AAUP informs pilots under the "General" section of information relative to all the PRM approaches published at a specific airport, and this section must be briefed in its entirety. Under the "Runway Specific" section, only items relative to the runway to be used for landing need be briefed. (See FIG 5−4−24.) A single AAUP is utilized for multiple PRM approach charts at the same airport, which are listed on the AAUP. The requirement for informing ATC if the pilot is unable to accept a PRM clearance is also presented. The "General" section of AAUP addresses the following:

1. Review of the procedure for executing a climbing or descending breakout;

2. Breakout phraseology beginning with the words, "Traffic Alert;"

3. Descending on the glideslope/glidepath meets all crossing restrictions;

4. Briefing the PRM approach also satisfies the non−PRM approach briefing of the same type of approach to the same runway; and

5. Description of the dual communications procedure.

The "Runway Specific" section of the AAUP addresses those issues which only apply to certain runway ends that utilize PRM approaches. There may be no Runway Specific procedures, a single item applicable to only one runway end, or multiple items for a single or multiple runway end/s. Examples of SOIA runway specific procedures are as follows:

FIG 5−4−24
PRM Attention All Users Page (AAUP)

15288
PRM APPROACH AAUP AL-166 (FAA) USA INTL (USA)
USA CITY

ATTENTION ALL USERS PAGE (AAUP)
(PRM CLOSE PARALLEL)

Pilots who are unable to participate will be afforded appropriate arrival services as operational conditions permit and must notify the controlling ATC facility as soon as practical, but at least 120 miles from destination.

ILS PRM or LOC PRM Rwys 10R, 10C, 28L, 28C
RNAV (GPS) PRM RWYS 10R, 10C, 28L, 28C

General

- Review procedure for executing a climbing and descending PRM breakout.
- Breakout phraseology: "TRAFFIC ALERT (call sign) TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY HEADING (degrees) CLIMB/DESCEND AND MAINTAIN (altitude)."
- All breakouts: Hand flown, initiate immediately.
- Descending on the glideslope/glidepath ensures compliance with any charted crossing restrictions.
- Dual VHF COMM: When assigned or planning a specific PRM approach, tune a second receiver to the PRM monitor frequency or, if silent, other active frequency (i.e., ATIS), set the volume, retune the PRM frequency if necessary, then deselect the audio. When directed by ATC, immediately switch to the tower frequency and select the secondary radio audio to ON.
- If later assigned the same runway, non-PRM approach, consider it briefed provided the same minimums are utilized. PRM related chart notes and frequency no longer apply.
- TCAS during breakout: Follow TCAS climb/descend if it differs from ATC, while executing the breakout turn.

Runway Specific

- Runway 10R: Exit at taxiway Tango whenever practical.

PRM APPROACH AAUP 41°59'N-87°54'W USA INTL (USA)
USA CITY

g. Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach (SOIA).

1. SOIA is a procedure used to conduct simultaneous approaches to runways spaced less than 3,000 feet, but at least 750 feet apart. The SOIA procedure utilizes a straight−in PRM approach to one runway, and a PRM offset approach with glideslope/glidepath to the adjacent runway. In SOIA operations, aircraft are paired, with the aircraft conducting the straight−in PRM approach always positioned slightly ahead of the aircraft conducting the offset PRM approach.

2. The straight−in PRM approach plates used in SOIA operations are identical to other straight−in PRM approach plates, with an additional note, which provides the separation between the two runways used for simultaneous SOIA approaches. The offset PRM approach plate displays the required notations for closely spaced approaches as well as depicts the visual segment of the approach.

3. Controllers monitor the SOIA PRM approaches in exactly the same manner as is done for other PRM approaches. The procedures and system requirements for SOIA PRM approaches are identical with those used for simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches until near the offset PRM approach missed approach point (MAP), where visual acquisition of the straight−in aircraft by the aircraft conducting the offset PRM approach occurs. Since SOIA PRM approaches are identical to other PRM approaches (except for the visual segment in the offset approach), an understanding of the procedures for conducting PRM approaches is essential before conducting a SOIA PRM operation.

4. In SOIA, the approach course separation (instead of the runway separation) meets established close parallel approach criteria. (See FIG 5−4−25 for the generic SOIA approach geometry.) A visual segment of the offset PRM approach is established between the offset MAP and the runway threshold. Aircraft transition in visual conditions from the offset course, beginning at the offset MAP, to align with the runway and can be stabilized by 500 feet above ground level (AGL) on the extended runway centerline. A cloud ceiling for the approach is established so that the aircraft conducting the offset approach has nominally at least 30 seconds or more to acquire the leading straight−in aircraft prior to reaching the offset MAP. If visual acquisition is not accomplished prior to crossing the offset MAP, a missed approach must be executed.

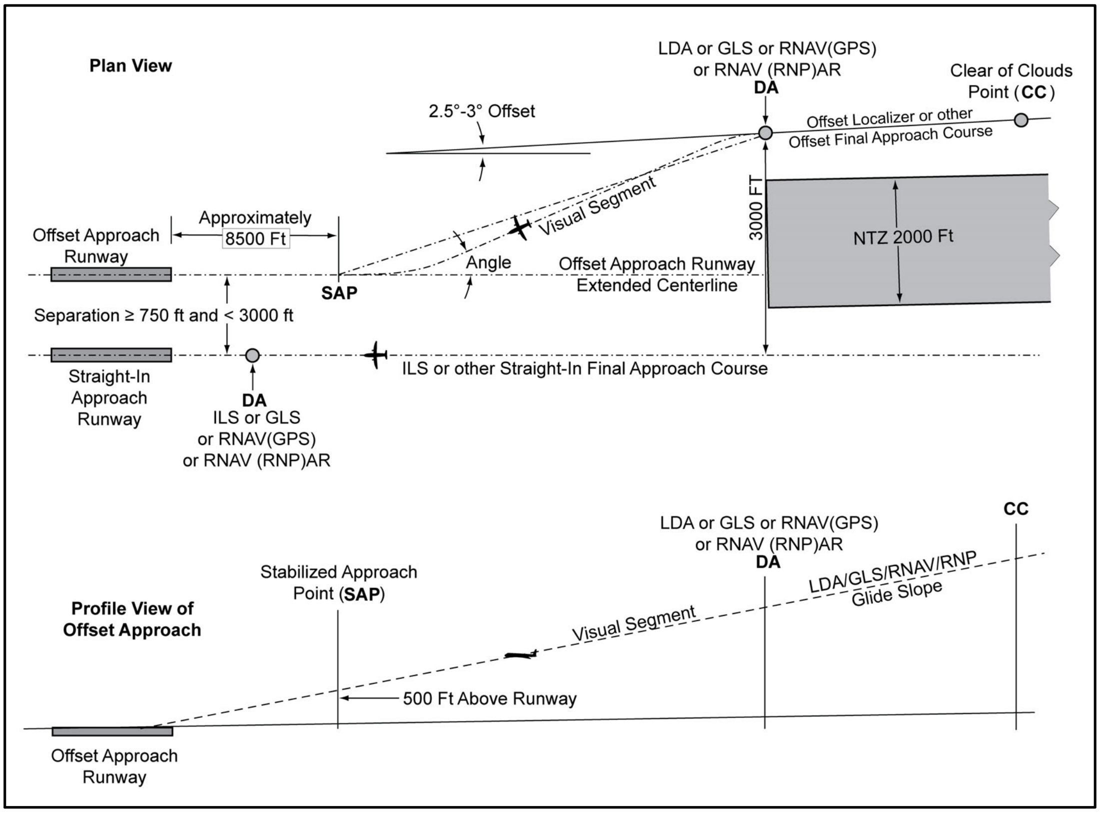
5. Flight Management System (FMS) coding of the offset RNAV PRM and GLS PRM approaches in a SOIA operation is different than other RNAV and GLS approach coding in that it does not match the initial missed approach procedure published on the charted IAP. In the SOIA design of the offset approach, lateral course guidance terminates at the fictitious threshold point (FTP), which is an extension of the final approach course beyond the offset MAP to a point near the runway threshold. The FTP is designated in the approach coding as the MAP so that vertical guidance is available to the pilot to the runway threshold, just as vertical guidance is provided by the offset LDA glideslope. No matter what type of offset approach is being conducted, reliance on lateral guidance is discontinued at the charted MAP and replaced by visual maneuvering to accomplish runway alignment.

(a) As a result of this approach coding, when executing a missed approach at and after passing the charted offset MAP, a heading must initially be flown (either hand−flown or using autopilot "heading mode") before engaging LNAV. If the pilot engages LNAV immediately, the aircraft may continue to track toward the FTP instead of commencing a turn toward the missed approach holding fix. Notes on the charted IAP and in the AAUP make specific reference to this procedure.

(b) Some FMSs do not code waypoints inside of the FAF as part of the approach. Therefore, the depicted MAP on the charted IAP may not be included in the offset approach coding. Pilots utilizing those FMSs may identify the location of the waypoint by noting its distance from the FTP as published on the charted IAP. In those same FMSs, the straight−in SOIA approach will not display a waypoint inside the PFAF. The same procedures may be utilized to identify an uncoded waypoint. In this case, the location is determined by noting its distance from the runway waypoint or using an authorized distance as published on the charted IAP.

(c) Because the FTP is coded as the MAP, the FMS map display will depict the initial missed approach course as beginning at the FTP. This depiction does not match the charted initial missed approach procedure on the IAP. Pilots are reminded that charted IAP guidance is to be followed, not the map display. Once the aircraft completes the initial turn when commencing a missed approach, the remainder of the procedure coding is standard and can be utilized as with any other IAP.

FIG 5-4-25
SOIA Approach Geometry



NOTE-

SAP	*The stabilized approach point is a design point along the extended centerline of the intended landing runway on the glide slope/glide path at 500 feet above the runway threshold elevation. It is used to verify a sufficient distance is provided for the visual maneuver after the offset course approach DA to permit the pilots to conform to approved, stabilized approach criteria. The SAP is not published on the IAP.*
Offset Course DA	*The point along the LDA, or other offset course, where the course separation with the adjacent ILS, or other straight-in course, reaches the minimum distance permitted to conduct closely spaced approaches. Typically that minimum distance will be 3,000 feet without the use of high update radar; with high update radar, course separation of less than 3,000 ft may be used when validated by a safety study. The altitude of the glide slope/glide path at that point determines the offset course approach decision altitude and is where the NTZ terminates. Maneuvering inside the DA is done in visual conditions.*
Visual Segment Angle	*Angle, as determined by the SOIA design tool, formed by the extension of the straight segment of the calculated flight track (between the offset course MAP/DA and the SAP) and the extended runway centerline. The size of the angle is dependent on the aircraft approach categories (Category D or only selected categories/speeds) that are authorized to use the offset course approach and the spacing between the runways.*
Visibility	*Distance from the offset course approach DA to runway threshold in statute mile.*

Procedure	*The aircraft on the offset course approach must see the runway-landing environment and, if ATC has advised that traffic on the straight-in approach is a factor, the offset course approach aircraft must visually acquire the straight-in approach aircraft and report it in sight to ATC prior to reaching the DA for the offset course approach.*
CC	*The Clear of Clouds point is the position on the offset final approach course where aircraft first operate in visual meteorological conditions below the ceiling, when the actual weather conditions are at, or near, the minimum ceiling for SOIA operations. Ceiling is defined by the Aeronautical Information Manual.*

6. SOIA PRM approaches utilize the same dual communications procedures as do other PRM approaches.

NOTE−
At KSFO, pilots conducting SOIA operations select the monitor frequency audio when communicating with the final radar controller, not the tower controller as is customary. In this special case, the monitor controller's transmissions, if required, override the final controller's frequency. This procedure is addressed on the AAUP.

(a) SOIA utilizes the same AAUP format as do other PRM approaches. The minimum weather conditions that are required are listed. Because of the more complex nature of instructions for conducting SOIA approaches, the "Runway Specific" items are more numerous and lengthy.

(b) Examples of SOIA offset runway specific notes:

(1) Aircraft must remain on the offset course until passing the offset MAP prior to maneuvering to align with the centerline of the offset approach runway.

(2) Pilots are authorized to continue past the offset MAP to align with runway centerline when:

[a] the straight−in approach traffic is in sight and is expected to remain in sight,

[b] ATC has been advised that "traffic is in sight." (ATC is not required to acknowledge this transmission),

[c] the runway environment is in sight. Otherwise, a missed approach must be executed. Between the offset MAP and the runway threshold, pilots conducting the offset PRM approach must not pass the straight−in aircraft and are responsible for separating themselves visually from traffic conducting the straight−in PRM approach to the adjacent runway, which means maneuvering the aircraft as necessary to avoid that traffic until landing, and providing wake turbulence avoidance, if applicable. Pilots maintaining visual separation should advise ATC, as soon as practical, if visual contact with the aircraft conducting the straight−in PRM approach is lost and execute a missed approach unless otherwise instructed by ATC.

(c) Examples of SOIA straight−in runway specific notes:

(1) To facilitate the offset aircraft in providing wake mitigation, pilots should descend on, not above, the glideslope/glidepath.

(2) Conducting the straight−in approach, pilots should be aware that the aircraft conducting the offset approach will be approaching from the right/left rear and will be operating in close proximity to the straight−in aircraft.

7. Recap.

The following are differences between widely spaced simultaneous approaches (at least 4,300 feet between the runway centerlines) and Simultaneous PRM close parallel approaches which are of importance to the pilot:

(a) Runway Spacing. Prior to PRM simultaneous close parallel approaches, most ATC−directed breakouts were the result of two aircraft in−trail on the same final approach course getting too close together. Two aircraft going in the same direction did not mandate quick reaction times. With PRM closely spaced approaches, two aircraft could be alongside each other, navigating on courses that are separated by less than 4,300 feet and as close as 3,000 feet. In the unlikely event that an aircraft "blunders" off its course and makes a worst case turn of 30 degrees toward the adjacent final approach course, closing speeds of 135 feet per second could occur that constitute the need for quick reaction. A blunder has to be recognized by the monitor controller, and breakout instructions issued to the endangered aircraft. The pilot will not have any warning that a breakout is imminent because the blundering aircraft will be on another frequency. It is important that, when a pilot receives breakout instructions, the assumption is made that a blundering aircraft is about to (or has penetrated the NTZ) and is heading toward his/her approach course. The pilot must initiate a breakout as soon as safety allows. While conducting PRM approaches, pilots must maintain an increased sense of awareness in order to immediately react to an ATC (breakout) instruction and maneuver (as instructed by ATC) away from a blundering aircraft.

(b) Communications. Dual VHF communications procedures should be carefully followed. One of the assumptions made that permits the safe conduct of PRM approaches is that there will be no blocked communications.

(c) Hand−flown Breakouts. The use of the autopilot is encouraged while flying a PRM approach, but the autopilot must be disengaged in the rare event that a breakout is issued. Simulation studies of breakouts have shown that a hand−flown breakout can be initiated consistently faster than a breakout performed using the autopilot.

(d) TCAS. The ATC breakout instruction is the primary means of conflict resolution. TCAS, if installed, provides another form of conflict resolution in the unlikely event other separation standards would fail. TCAS is not required to conduct a closely spaced approach.

The TCAS provides only vertical resolution of aircraft conflicts, while the ATC breakout instruction provides both vertical and horizontal guidance for conflict resolutions. Pilots should always immediately follow the TCAS Resolution Advisory (RA), whenever it is received. Should a TCAS RA be received before, during, or after an ATC breakout instruction is issued, the pilot should follow the RA, even if it conflicts with the climb/descent portion of the breakout maneuver. If following an RA requires deviating from an ATC clearance, the pilot must advise ATC as soon as practical. While following an RA, it is extremely important that the pilot also comply with the turn portion of the ATC breakout instruction unless the pilot determines safety to be factor. Adhering to these procedures assures the pilot that acceptable "breakout" separation margins will always be provided, even in the face of a normal procedural or system failure.

5−4−17. Simultaneous Converging Instrument Approaches

a. ATC may conduct instrument approaches simultaneously to converging runways; i.e., runways having an included angle from 15 to 100 degrees, at airports where a program has been specifically approved to do so.

b. The basic concept requires that dedicated, separate standard instrument approach procedures be developed for each converging runway included. These approaches can be identified by the letter "V" in the title; for example, "ILS V Rwy 17 (CONVERGING)". Missed Approach Points must be at least 3 miles apart and missed approach procedures ensure that missed approach protected airspace does not overlap.

c. Other requirements are: radar availability, nonintersecting final approach courses, precision approach capability for each runway and, if runways intersect, controllers must be able to apply visual separation as well as intersecting runway separation criteria. Intersecting runways also require minimums of at least 700 foot ceilings and 2 miles visibility. Straight in approaches and landings must be made.

d. Whenever simultaneous converging approaches are in use, aircraft will be informed by the controller as soon as feasible after initial contact or via ATIS. Additionally, the radar controller will have direct communications capability with the tower controller where separation responsibility has not been delegated to the tower.

5−4−18. RNP AR (Authorization Required) Instrument Procedures

a. RNP AR procedures require authorization analogous to the special authorization required for Category II or III ILS procedures. All operators require specific authorization from the FAA to fly any RNP AR approach or departure procedure. The FAA issues RNP AR authorization via operations specification (OpSpec), management specification (MSpec), or letter of authorization (LOA). There are no exceptions. Operators can find comprehensive information on RNP AR aircraft eligibility, operating procedures, and training requirements in AC 90−101, Approval Guidance for RNP Procedures with AR.

b. Unique characteristics of RNP AR Operations Approach title. The FAA titles all RNP AR instrument approach procedures (IAP) as "RNAV

(RNP) RWY XX." Internationally, operators may find RNP AR IAPs titled "RNP RWY XX (AR)." All RNP AR procedures will clearly state "Authorization Required" on the procedure chart.

c. RNP value. RNP AR procedures are characterized by use of a lateral Obstacle Evaluation Area (OEA) equal to two times the RNP value (2 x RNP) in nautical miles. No secondary lateral OEA or additional buffers are used. RNP AR procedures require a minimum lateral accuracy value of RNP 0.30. Each published line of minima in an RNP AR procedure has an associated RNP value that defines the procedure's lateral performance requirement in the Final Approach Segment. Each approved RNP AR operator's FAA−issued authorization will identify a minimum authorized RNP approach value. This value may vary depending on aircraft configuration or operational procedures (e.g., use of flight director or autopilot).

d. Radius−to−fix (RF) legs. Many RNP AR IFPs contain RF legs. Aircraft eligibility for RF legs is required in any authorization for RNP AR operations.

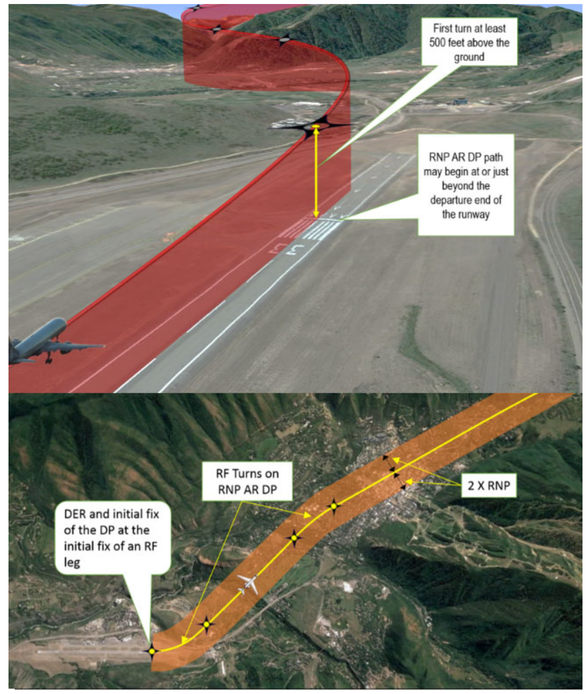
e. Missed Approach RNP value less than 1.00 NM. Some RNP AR IFPs require an RNP lateral accuracy value of less than 1.00 NM in the missed approach segment. The operator's FAA−issued RNP AR authorization will specify whether the operator may fly a missed approach procedure requiring a lateral accuracy value less than 1.00 NM. AC 90−101 identifies specific operating procedures and training requirements applicable to this aspect of RNP AR procedures.

f. Non−standard speeds or climb gradients. RNP AR approaches may require non−standard approach speeds and/or missed approach climb gradients. RNP AR approach charts will reflect any non−standard requirements and pilots must confirm they can meet those requirements before commencing the approach.

g. RNP AR Departure Procedures (RNP AR DP). RNP AR approach authorization is a mandatory prerequisite for an operator to be eligible to perform RNP AR DPs. RNP AR DPs can utilize a minimum RNP value of RNP 0.30, may include higher than standard climb gradients, and may include RF turns. Close in RF turns associated with RNP AR DPs may begin as soon as the departure end of the runway (DER). For specific eligibility guidance, operators should refer to AC 90−101.

FIG 5−4−26

Example of an RNP AR DP



5−4−19. Side−step Maneuver

a. ATC may authorize a standard instrument approach procedure which serves either one of parallel runways that are separated by 1,200 feet or less followed by a straight−in landing on the adjacent runway.

b. Aircraft that will execute a side−step maneuver will be cleared for a specified approach procedure and landing on the adjacent parallel runway. Example, "cleared ILS runway 7 left approach, side−step to runway 7 right." Pilots are expected to commence the side−step maneuver as soon as possible after the runway or runway environment is in sight. Compliance with minimum altitudes associated with stepdown fixes is expected even after the side−step maneuver is initiated.

NOTE−
Side−step minima are flown to a Minimum Descent Altitude (MDA) regardless of the approach authorized.

c. Landing minimums to the adjacent runway will be based on nonprecision criteria and therefore higher than the precision minimums to the primary runway, but will normally be lower than the published circling minimums.

5−4−20. Approach and Landing Minimums

a. Landing Minimums. The rules applicable to landing minimums are contained in 14 CFR Section 91.175. TBL 5−4−1 may be used to convert RVR to ground or flight visibility. For converting RVR values that fall between listed values, use the next higher RVR value; do not interpolate. For example, when converting 1800 RVR, use 2400 RVR with the resultant visibility of $^1/_2$ mile.

b. Obstacle Clearance. Final approach obstacle clearance is provided from the start of the final segment to the runway or missed approach point, whichever occurs last. Side−step obstacle protection is provided by increasing the width of the final approach obstacle clearance area.

TBL 5−4−1

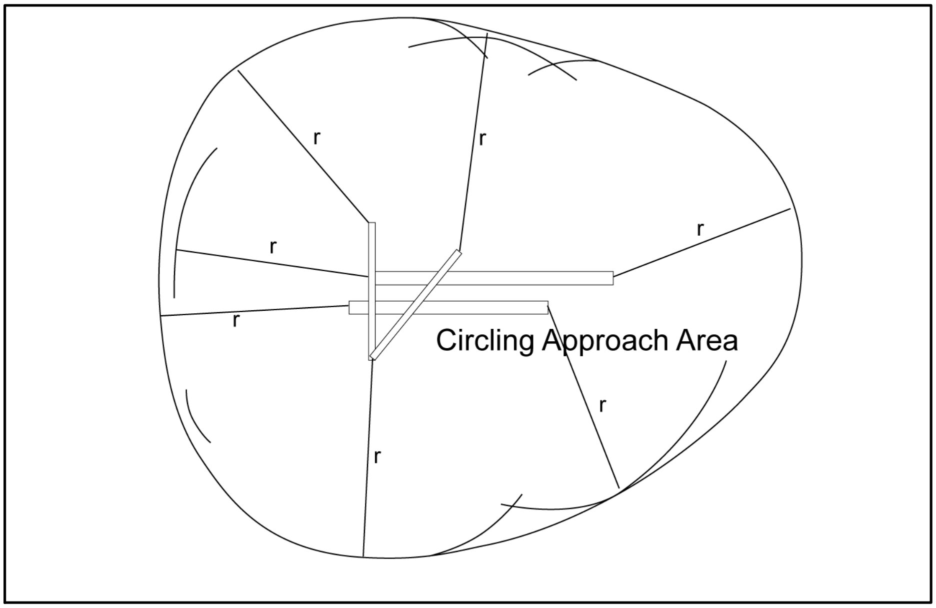
RVR Value Conversions

RVR	Visibility (statute miles)
1600	$^1/_4$
2400	$^1/_2$
3200	$^5/_8$
4000	$^3/_4$
4500	$^7/_8$
5000	1
6000	1 $^1/_4$

1. Circling approach protected areas are defined by the tangential connection of arcs drawn from each runway end (see FIG 5−4−27). Circling approach protected areas developed prior to late 2012 used fixed radius distances, dependent on aircraft approach category, as shown in the table on page B2 of the U.S. TPP. The approaches using standard circling approach areas can be identified by the absence of the "negative C" symbol on the circling line of minima. Circling approach protected areas developed after late 2012 use the radius distance shown in the table on page B2 of the U.S. TPP, dependent on aircraft approach category, and the altitude of the circling MDA, which accounts for true airspeed increase with altitude. The approaches using expanded circling approach areas can be identified by the presence of the "negative C" symbol on the circling line of minima (see FIG 5−4−28). Because of obstacles near the airport, a portion of the circling area may be restricted by a procedural note; for example, "Circling NA E of RWY 17−35." Obstacle clearance is provided at the published minimums (MDA) for the pilot who makes a straight−in approach, side−steps, or circles. Once below the MDA the pilot must see and avoid obstacles. Executing the missed approach after starting to maneuver usually places the aircraft beyond the MAP. The aircraft is clear of obstacles when at or above the MDA while inside the circling area, but simply joining the missed approach ground track from the circling maneuver may not provide vertical obstacle clearance once the aircraft exits the circling area. Additional climb inside the circling area may be required before joining the missed approach track. See paragraph 5−4−21, Missed Approach, for additional considerations when starting a missed approach at other than the MAP.

FIG 5−4−27

Final Approach Obstacle Clearance



NOTE−

Circling approach area radii vary according to approach category and MSL circling altitude due to TAS changes − see FIG 5−4−28.

FIG 5−4−28

Standard and Expanded Circling Approach Radii in the U.S. TPP

STANDARD CIRCLING APPROACH MANEUVERING RADIUS

Circling approach protected areas developed prior to late 2012 used the radius distances shown in the following table, expressed in nautical miles (NM), dependent on aircraft approach category. The approaches using standard circling approach areas can be identified by the absence of the C symbol on the circling line of minima.

Circling MDA in feet MSL	Approach Category and Circling Radius (NM)				
	CAT A	CAT B	CAT C	CAT D	CAT E
All Altitudes	1.3	1.5	1.7	2.3	4.5

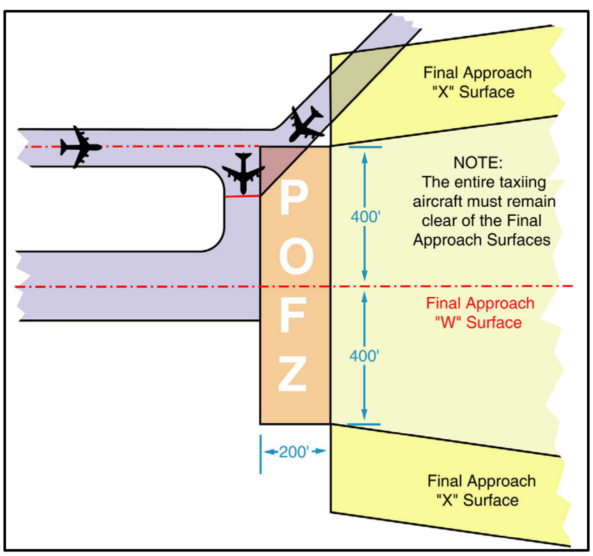
C EXPANDED CIRCLING APPROACH MANEUVERING AIRSPACE RADIUS

Circling approach protected areas developed after late 2012 use the radius distance shown in the following table, expressed in nautical miles (NM), dependent on aircraft approach category, and the altitude of the circling MDA, which accounts for true airspeed increase with altitude. The approaches using expanded circling approach areas can be identified by the presence of the C symbol on the circling line of minima.

Circling MDA in feet MSL	Approach Category and Circling Radius (NM)				
	CAT A	CAT B	CAT C	CAT D	CAT E
1000 or less	1.3	1.7	2.7	3.6	4.5
1001-3000	1.3	1.8	2.8	3.7	4.6
3001-5000	1.3	1.8	2.9	3.8	4.8
5001-7000	1.3	1.9	3.0	4.0	5.0
7001-9000	1.4	2.0	3.2	4.2	5.3
9001 and above	1.4	2.1	3.3	4.4	5.5

2. Precision Obstacle Free Zone (POFZ). A volume of airspace above an area beginning at the runway threshold, at the threshold elevation, and centered on the extended runway centerline. The POFZ is 200 feet (60m) long and 800 feet (240m) wide. The POFZ must be clear when an aircraft on a vertically guided final approach is within 2 nautical miles of the runway threshold and the official weather observation is a ceiling below 250 feet or visibility less than 3/4 statute mile (SM) (or runway visual range below 4,000 feet). If the POFZ is not clear, the MINIMUM authorized height above touchdown (HAT) and visibility is 250 feet and 3/4 SM. The POFZ is considered clear even if the wing of the aircraft holding on a taxiway waiting for runway clearance penetrates the POFZ; however, neither the fuselage nor the tail may infringe on the POFZ. The POFZ is applicable at all runway ends including displaced thresholds.

FIG 5−4−29
Precision Obstacle Free Zone (POFZ)



c. Straight−in Minimums are shown on the IAP when the final approach course is within 30 degrees of the runway alignment and a normal descent can be made from the IFR altitude shown on the IAP to the runway surface. When either the normal rate of descent or the runway alignment factor of 30 degrees is exceeded, a straight−in minimum is not published and a circling minimum applies. The fact that a straight−in minimum is not published does not preclude pilots from landing straight−in if they have the active runway in sight and have sufficient time to make a normal approach for landing. Under such conditions and when ATC has cleared them for landing on that runway, pilots are not expected to circle even though only circling minimums are published. If they desire to circle, they should advise ATC.

d. Side−Step Maneuver Minimums. Landing minimums for a side−step maneuver to the adjacent runway will normally be higher than the minimums to the primary runway.

e. Published Approach Minimums. Approach minimums are published for different aircraft categories and consist of a minimum altitude (DA, DH, MDA) and required visibility. These minimums are determined by applying the appropriate TERPS criteria. When a fix is incorporated in a nonprecision final segment, two sets of minimums may be published: one for the pilot that is able to identify the fix, and a second for the pilot that cannot. Two sets of minimums may also be published when a second altimeter source is used in the procedure. When a nonprecision procedure incorporates both a step-down fix in the final segment and a second altimeter source, two sets of minimums are published to account for the stepdown fix and a note addresses minimums for the second altimeter source.

f. Circling Minimums. In some busy terminal areas, ATC may not allow circling and circling minimums will not be published. Published circling minimums provide obstacle clearance when pilots remain within the appropriate area of protection. Pilots should remain at or above the circling altitude until the aircraft is continuously in a position from which a descent to a landing on the intended runway can be made at a normal rate of descent using normal maneuvers. Circling may require maneuvers at low altitude, at low airspeed, and in marginal weather conditions. Pilots must use sound judgment, have an indepth knowledge of their capabilities, and fully understand the aircraft performance to determine the exact circling maneuver since weather, unique airport design, and the aircraft position, altitude, and airspeed must all be considered. The following basic rules apply:

1. Maneuver the shortest path to the base or downwind leg, as appropriate, considering existing weather conditions. There is no restriction from passing over the airport or other runways.

2. It should be recognized that circling maneuvers may be made while VFR or other flying is in progress at the airport. Standard left turns or specific instruction from the controller for maneuvering must be considered when circling to land.

3. At airports without a control tower, it may be desirable to fly over the airport to observe wind and turn indicators and other traffic which may be on the runway or flying in the vicinity of the airport.

REFERENCE−
AC 90−66A, Recommended Standards Traffic patterns for Aeronautical Operations at Airports without Operating Control Towers.

4. The missed approach point (MAP) varies depending upon the approach flown. For vertically guided approaches, the MAP is at the decision altitude/decision height. Non−vertically guided and circling procedures share the same MAP and the pilot determines this MAP by timing from the final approach fix, by a fix, a NAVAID, or a waypoint. Circling from a GLS, an ILS without a localizer line of minima or an RNAV (GPS) approach without an LNAV line of minima is prohibited.

g. Instrument Approach at a Military Field. When instrument approaches are conducted by civil aircraft at military airports, they must be conducted in accordance with the procedures and minimums approved by the military agency having jurisdiction over the airport.

5−4−21. Missed Approach

a. When a landing cannot be accomplished, advise ATC and, upon reaching the missed approach point defined on the approach procedure chart, the pilot must comply with the missed approach instructions for the procedure being used or with an alternate missed approach procedure specified by ATC.

b. Obstacle protection for missed approach is predicated on the missed approach being initiated at the decision altitude/decision height (DA/DH) or at the missed approach point and not lower than minimum descent altitude (MDA). A climb gradient of at least 200 feet per nautical mile is required, (except for Copter approaches, where a climb of at least 400 feet per nautical mile is required), unless a higher climb gradient is published in the notes section of the approach procedure chart. When higher than standard climb gradients are specified, the end point of the non−standard climb will be specified at either an altitude or a fix. Pilots must preplan to ensure that the aircraft can meet the climb gradient (expressed in feet per nautical mile) required by the procedure in the event of a missed approach, and be aware that flying at a higher than anticipated ground speed increases the climb rate requirement (feet per minute). Tables for the conversion of climb gradients (feet per nautical mile) to climb rate (feet per minute), based on ground speed, are included on page D1 of the U.S. Terminal Procedures booklets. Reasonable buffers are provided for normal maneuvers. However, no consideration is given to an abnormally early turn. Therefore, when an early missed approach is executed, pilots should, unless otherwise cleared by ATC, fly the IAP as specified on the approach plate to the missed approach point at or above the MDA or DH before executing a turning maneuver.

c. If visual reference is lost while circling−to−land from an instrument approach, the missed approach specified for that particular procedure must be followed (unless an alternate missed approach procedure is specified by ATC). To become established on the prescribed missed approach course, the pilot should make an initial climbing turn toward the landing runway and continue the turn until established on the missed approach course. Inasmuch as the circling maneuver may be accomplished in more than one direction, different patterns will be required to become established on the prescribed missed approach course, depending on the aircraft position at the time visual reference is lost. Adherence to the procedure will help assure that an aircraft will remain laterally within the circling and missed approach obstruction clearance areas. Refer to paragraph h concerning vertical obstruction clearance when starting a missed approach at other than the MAP. (See FIG 5−4−30.)

d. At locations where ATC radar service is provided, the pilot should conform to radar vectors when provided by ATC in lieu of the published missed approach procedure. (See FIG 5−4−31.)

e. Some locations may have a preplanned alternate missed approach procedure for use in the event the primary NAVAID used for the missed approach procedure is unavailable. To avoid confusion, the alternate missed approach instructions are not published on the chart. However, the alternate missed approach holding pattern will be depicted on the instrument approach chart for pilot situational awareness and to assist ATC by not having to issue detailed holding instructions. The alternate missed approach may be based on NAVAIDs not used in the approach procedure or the primary missed approach. When the alternate missed approach procedure is implemented by NOTAM, it becomes a mandatory part of the procedure. The NOTAM will specify both the textual instructions and any additional equipment requirements necessary to complete the procedure. Air traffic may also issue instructions for the alternate missed approach when necessary, such as when the primary missed approach NAVAID fails during the approach. Pilots may reject an ATC clearance for an alternate missed approach that requires equipment not necessary for the published approach procedure when the alternate missed approach is issued after beginning the approach. However, when the alternate missed approach is issued prior to beginning the approach the pilot must either accept the entire procedure (including the alternate missed approach), request a different approach procedure, or coordinate with ATC for alternative action to be taken, i.e., proceed to an alternate airport, etc.

f. When approach has been missed, request clearance for specific action; i.e., to alternative airport, another approach, etc.

g. Pilots must ensure that they have climbed to a safe altitude prior to proceeding off the published missed approach, especially in nonradar environments. Abandoning the missed approach prior to reaching the published altitude may not provide adequate terrain clearance. Additional climb may be required after reaching the holding pattern before proceeding back to the IAF or to an alternate.

h. A clearance for an instrument approach procedure includes a clearance to fly the published missed approach procedure, unless otherwise instructed by ATC. The published missed approach procedure provides obstacle clearance only when the missed approach is conducted on the missed approach segment from or above the missed approach point, and assumes a climb rate of 200 feet/NM or higher, as published. If the aircraft initiates a missed approach at a point other than the missed approach point (see paragraph 5−4−5b), from below MDA or DA (H), or on a circling approach, obstacle clearance is not necessarily provided by following the published missed approach procedure, nor is separation assured from other air traffic in the vicinity.

FIG 5−4−30
Circling and Missed Approach Obstruction Clearance Areas

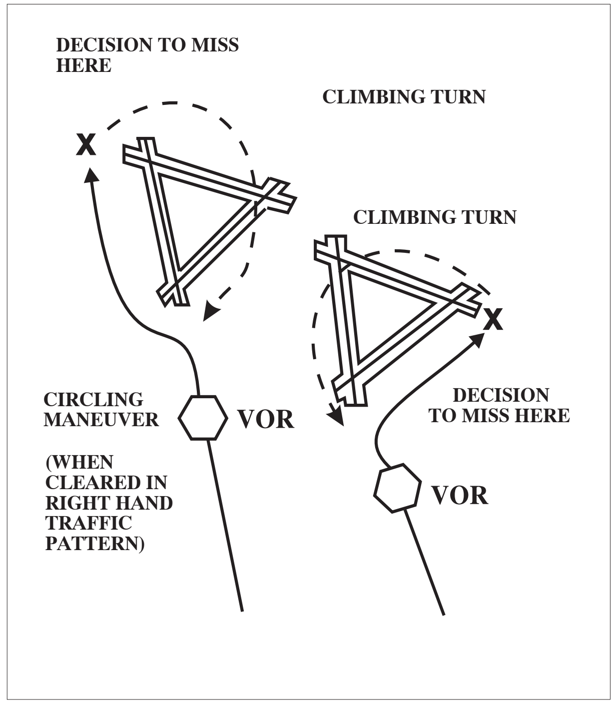
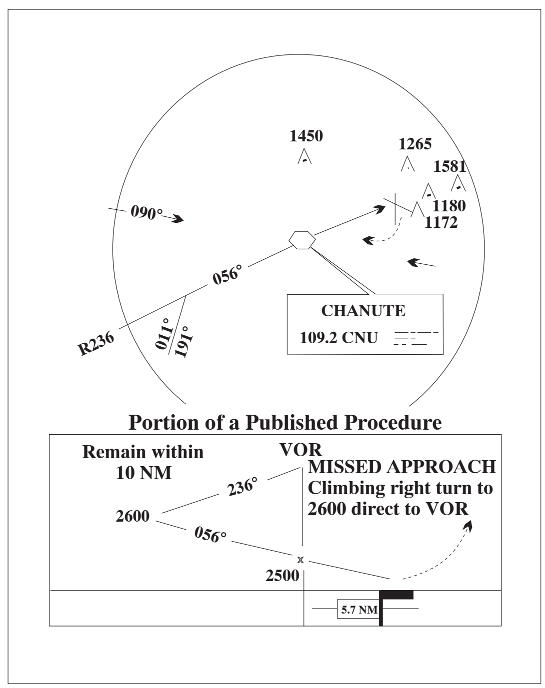


FIG 5−4−31
Missed Approach



In the event a balked (rejected) landing occurs at a position other than the published missed approach point, the pilot should contact ATC as soon as possible to obtain an amended clearance. If unable to contact ATC for any reason, the pilot should attempt to re−intercept a published segment of the missed approach and comply with route and altitude instructions. If unable to contact ATC, and in the pilot's judgment it is no longer appropriate to fly the published missed approach procedure, then consider either maintaining visual conditions if practicable and reattempt a landing, or a circle−climb over the airport. Should a missed approach become necessary when operating to an airport that is not served by an operating control tower, continuous contact with an air traffic facility may not be possible. In this case, the pilot should execute the appropriate go−around/ missed approach procedure without delay and contact ATC when able to do so.

Prior to initiating an instrument approach procedure, the pilot should assess the actions to be taken in the event of a balked (rejected) landing beyond the missed approach point or below the MDA or DA (H) considering the anticipated weather conditions and available aircraft performance. 14 CFR 91.175(e) authorizes the pilot to fly an appropriate missed approach procedure that ensures obstruction clearance, but it does not necessarily consider separation from other air traffic. The pilot must consider other factors such as the aircraft's geographical location with respect to the prescribed missed approach point, direction of flight, and/or minimum turning altitudes in the prescribed missed approach procedure. The pilot must also consider aircraft performance, visual climb restrictions, charted obstacles, published obstacle departure procedure, takeoff visual climb requirements as expressed by nonstandard takeoff minima, other traffic expected to be in the vicinity, or other factors not specifically expressed by the approach procedures.

5−4−22. Use of Enhanced Flight Vision Systems (EFVS) on Instrument Approaches

a. Introduction. During an instrument approach, an EFVS can enable a pilot to see the approach lights, visual references associated with the runway environment, and other objects or features that might not be visible using natural vision alone. An EFVS uses a head−up display (HUD), or an equivalent display that is a head−up presentation, to combine flight information, flight symbology, navigation guidance, and a real−time image of the external scene to the pilot. Combining the flight information, navigation guidance, and sensor imagery on a HUD (or equivalent display) allows the pilot to continue looking forward along the flightpath throughout the entire approach, landing, and rollout.

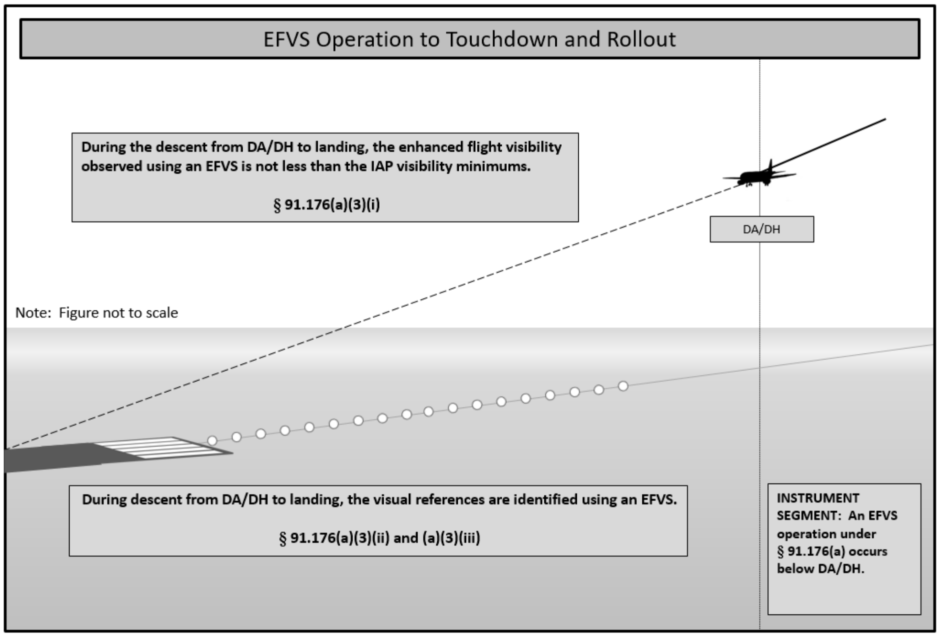
An EFVS operation is an operation in which visibility conditions require an EFVS to be used in lieu of natural vision to perform an approach or landing, determine enhanced flight visibility, identify required visual references, or conduct a rollout. There are two types of EFVS operations:

1. EFVS operations to touchdown and rollout.

2. EFVS operations to 100 feet above the touchdown zone elevation (TDZE).

b. EFVS Operations to Touchdown and Rollout. An EFVS operation to touchdown and rollout is an operation in which the pilot uses the enhanced vision imagery provided by an EFVS in lieu of natural vision to descend below DA or DH to touchdown and rollout. (See FIG 5−4−32.) These operations may be conducted only on Standard Instrument Approach Procedures (SIAP) or special IAPs that have a DA or DH (for example, precision or APV approach). An EFVS operation to touchdown and rollout may not be conducted on an approach that has circling minimums. The regulations for EFVS operations to touchdown and rollout can be found in 14 CFR § 91.176(a).

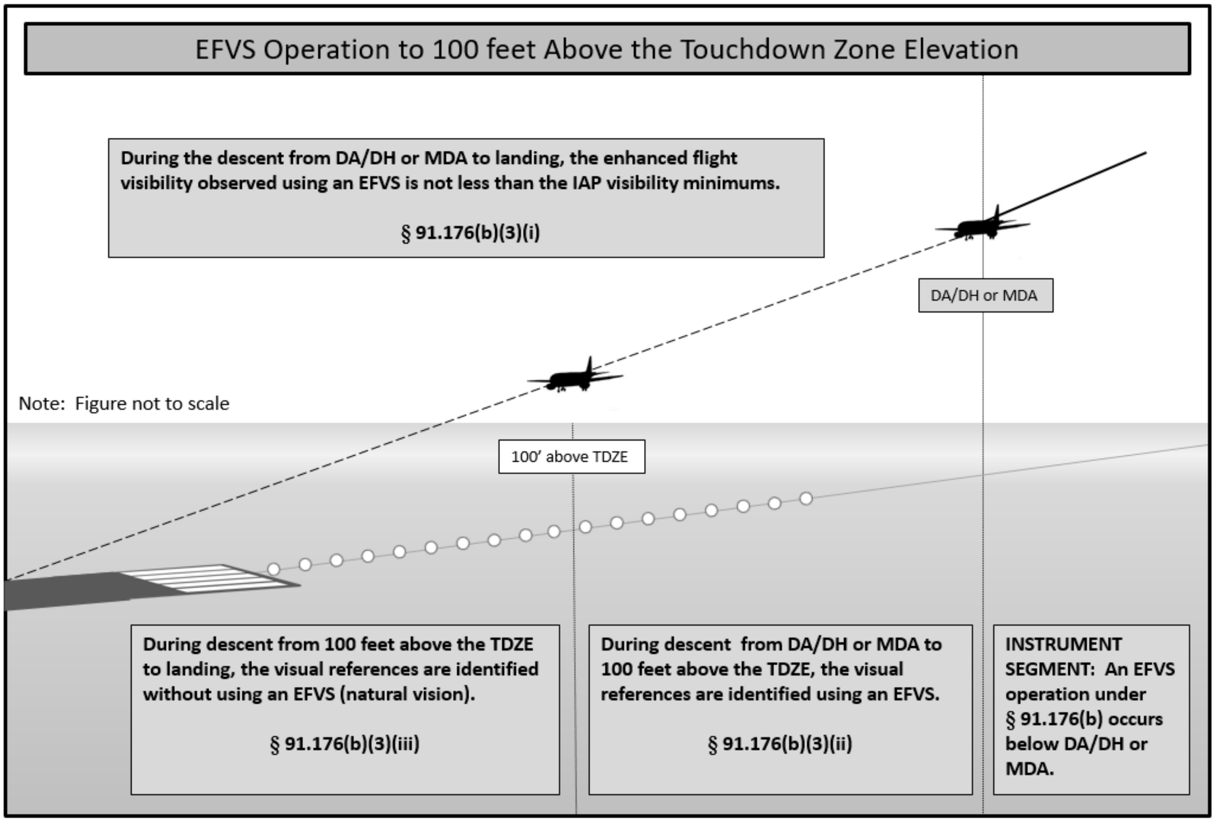
FIG 5−4−32
EFVS Operation to Touchdown and Rollout



c. EFVS Operations to 100 Feet Above the TDZE. An EFVS operation to 100 feet above the TDZE is an operation in which the pilot uses the enhanced vision imagery provided by an EFVS in lieu of natural vision to descend below DA/DH or MDA down to 100 feet above the TDZE. (See FIG 5−4−33.) To continue the approach below 100 feet above the TDZE, a pilot must have sufficient flight visibility to identify the required visual references using natural vision and must continue to use the EFVS to ensure the enhanced flight visibility meets the visibility requirements of the IAP being flown. These operations may be conducted on SIAPs or special IAPs that have a DA/DH or MDA. An EFVS operation to 100 feet above the TDZE may not be conducted on an approach that has circling minimums. The regulations for EFVS operations to 100 feet above the TDZE can be found in 14 CFR § 91.176(b).

FIG 5−4−33

EFVS Operation to 100 ft Above the TDZE



d. EFVS Equipment Requirements. An EFVS that is installed on a U.S.−registered aircraft and is used to conduct EFVS operations must conform to an FAA−type design approval (i.e., a type certificate (TC), amended TC, or supplemental type certificate (STC)). A foreign−registered aircraft used to conduct EFVS operations that does not have an FAA−type design approval must be equipped with an EFVS that has been approved by either the State of the Operator or the State of Registry to meet the requirements of ICAO Annex 6. Equipment requirements for an EFVS operation to touchdown and rollout can be found in 14 CFR § 91.176(a)(1), and the equipment requirements for an EFVS operation to 100 feet above the TDZE can be found in 14 CFR § 91.176(b)(1). An operator can determine the eligibility of their aircraft to conduct EFVS operations by referring to the Airplane Flight Manual, Airplane Flight Manual Supplement, Rotorcraft Flight Manual, or Rotorcraft Flight Manual Supplement as applicable.

e. Operating Requirements. Any operator who conducts EFVS operations to touchdown and rollout (14 CFR § 91.176(a)) must have an OpSpec, MSpec, or LOA that specifically authorizes those operations. Parts 91K, 121, 125, 129, and 135 operators who conduct EFVS operations to 100 feet above the TDZE (14 CFR § 91.176(b))must have an OpSpec, MSpec, or LOA that specifically authorizes the operation. Part 91 operators (other than 91K operators) are not required to have an LOA to conduct EFVS operations to 100 feet above the TDZE in the United States. However, an optional LOA is available to facilitate operational approval from foreign Civil Aviation Authorities (CAA). To conduct an EFVS operation to touchdown and rollout during an authorized Category II or III operation, the operator must have:

1. An OpSpec, MSpec, or LOA authorizing EFVS operations to touchdown and rollout (14 CFR § 91.176(a)); and

2. An OpSpec, MSpec, or LOA authorizing Category II or Category III operations.

f. EFVS Operations in Rotorcraft. Currently, EFVS operations in rotorcraft can only be conducted on IAPs that are flown to a runway. Instrument approach criteria, procedures, and appropriate visual references have not yet been developed for straight−in landing operations below DA/DH or MDA under IFR to heliports or platforms. An EFVS cannot be used in lieu of natural vision to descend below published minimums on copter approaches to a point in space (PinS) followed by a "proceed visual flight rules (VFR)" visual segment, or on approaches designed to a specific landing site using a "proceed visually" visual segment.

g. EFVS Pilot Requirements. A pilot who conducts EFVS operations must receive ground and flight training specific to the EFVS operation to be conducted. The training must be obtained from an authorized training provider under a training program approved by the FAA. Additionally, recent flight experience and proficiency or competency check requirements apply to EFVS operations. These requirements are addressed in 14 CFR §§ 61.66, 91.1065, 121.441, Appendix F to Part 121, 125.287, and 135.293.

h. Enhanced Flight Visibility and Visual Reference Requirements. To descend below DA/DH or MDA during EFVS operations under 14 CFR § 91.176(a) or (b), a pilot must make a determination that the enhanced flight visibility observed by using an EFVS is not less than what is prescribed by the IAP being flown. In addition, the visual references required in 14 CFR § 91.176(a) or (b) must be distinctly visible and identifiable to the pilot using the EFVS. The determination of enhanced flight visibility is a separate action from that of identifying required visual references, and is different from ground−reported visibility. Even though the reported visibility or the visibility observed using natural vision may be less, as long as the EFVS provides the required enhanced flight visibility and a pilot meets all of the other requirements, the pilot can continue descending below DA/DH or MDA using the EFVS. Suitable enhanced flight visibility is necessary to ensure the aircraft is in a position to continue the approach and land. It is important to understand that using an EFVS does not result in obtaining lower minima with respect to the visibility or the DA/DH or MDA specified in the IAP. An EFVS simply provides another means of operating in the visual segment of an IAP. The DA/DH or MDA and the visibility value specified in the IAP to be flown do not change.

i. Flight Planning and Beginning or Continuing an Approach Under IFR. A Part 121, 125, or 135 operator's OpSpec or LOA for EFVS operations may authorize an EFVS operational credit dispatching or releasing a flight and for beginning or continuing an instrument approach procedure. When a pilot reaches DA/DH or MDA, the pilot conducts the EFVS operation in accordance with 14 CFR § 91.176(a) or (b) and their authorization to conduct EFVS operations.

j. Missed Approach Considerations. In order to conduct an EFVS operation, the EFVS must be operable. In the event of a failure of any required component of an EFVS at any point in the approach to touchdown, a missed approach is required. However, this provision does not preclude a pilot's authority to continue an approach if continuation of an approach is considered by the pilot to be a safer course of action.

k. Light Emitting Diode (LED) Airport Lighting Impact on EFVS Operations. Incandescent lamps are being replaced with LEDs at some airports in threshold lights, taxiway edge lights, taxiway centerline lights, low intensity runway edge lights, windcone lights, beacons, and some obstruction lighting. Additionally, there are plans to replace incandescent lamps with LEDs in approach lighting systems. Pilots should be aware that LED lights cannot be sensed by infrared−based EFVSs. Further, the FAA does not currently collect or disseminate information about where LED lighting is installed.

l. Other Vision Systems. Unlike an EFVS that meets the equipment requirements of 14 CFR § 91.176, a Synthetic Vision System (SVS) or Synthetic Vision Guidance System (SVGS) does not provide a real−time sensor image of the outside scene and also does not meet the equipment requirements for EFVS operations. A pilot cannot use a synthetic vision image on a head−up or a head−down display in lieu of natural vision to descend below DA/DH or MDA. An EFVS can, however, be integrated with an SVS, also known as a Combined Vision System (CVS). A CVS can be used to conduct EFVS operations if all of the requirements for an EFVS are satisfied and the SVS image does not interfere with the pilot's ability to see the external scene, to identify the required visual references, or to see the sensor image.

m. Additional Information. Operational criteria for EFVS can be found in Advisory Circular (AC) 90−106, Enhanced Flight Vision System Operations, and airworthiness criteria for EFVS can be found in AC 20−167, Airworthiness Approval of Enhanced Vision System, Synthetic Vision System, Combined Vision System, and Enhanced Flight Vision System Equipment.

5−4−23. Visual Approach

a. A visual approach is conducted on an IFR flight plan and authorizes a pilot to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport. The pilot must have either the airport or the preceding identified aircraft in sight. This approach must be authorized and controlled by the appropriate air traffic control facility. Reported weather at the airport must have a ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility 3 miles or greater. ATC may authorize this type of approach when it will be operationally beneficial. Visual approaches are an IFR procedure conducted under IFR in visual meteorological conditions. Cloud clearance requirements of 14 CFR Section 91.155 are not applicable, unless required by operation specifications. When conducting visual approaches, pilots are encouraged to use other available navigational aids to assist in positive lateral and vertical alignment with the runway.

b. Operating to an Airport Without Weather Reporting Service. ATC will advise the pilot when weather is not available at the destination airport. ATC may initiate a visual approach provided there is a reasonable assurance that weather at the airport is a ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility 3 miles or greater (e.g., area weather reports, PIREPs, etc.).

c. Operating to an Airport With an Operating Control Tower. Aircraft may be authorized to conduct a visual approach to one runway while other aircraft are conducting IFR or VFR approaches to another parallel, intersecting, or converging runway. ATC may authorize a visual approach after advising all aircraft involved that other aircraft are conducting operations to the other runway. This may be accomplished through use of the ATIS.

1. When operating to parallel runways separated by less than 2,500 feet, ATC will ensure approved separation is provided unless the succeeding aircraft reports sighting the preceding aircraft to the adjacent parallel and visual separation is applied.

2. When operating to parallel runways separated by at least 2,500 feet but less than 4,300 feet, ATC will ensure approved separation is provided until the aircraft are issued an approach clearance and one pilot has acknowledged receipt of a visual approach clearance, and the other pilot has acknowledged receipt of a visual or instrument approach clearance, and aircraft are established on a heading or established on a direct course to a fix or cleared on an RNAV/instrument approach procedure which will intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees.

3. When operating to parallel runways separated by 4,300 feet or more, ATC will ensure approved separation is provided until one of the aircraft has been issued and the pilot has acknowledged receipt of the visual approach clearance, and each aircraft is assigned a heading, or established on a direct course to a fix, or cleared on an RNAV/instrument approach procedure which will allow the aircraft to intercept the extended centerline of the runway at an angle not greater than 30 degrees.

NOTE−
The intent of the 30 degree intercept angle is to reduce the potential for overshoots of the final and to preclude side−by−side operations with one or both aircraft in a belly−up configuration during the turn−on.

d. Separation Responsibilities. If the pilot has the airport in sight but cannot see the aircraft to be followed, ATC may clear the aircraft for a visual approach; however, ATC retains both separation and wake vortex separation responsibility. When visually following a preceding aircraft, acceptance of the visual approach clearance constitutes acceptance of pilot responsibility for maintaining a safe approach interval and adequate wake turbulence separation.

e. A visual approach is not an IAP and therefore has no missed approach segment. If a go around is necessary for any reason, aircraft operating at controlled airports will be issued an appropriate advisory/clearance/instruction by the tower. At uncontrolled airports, aircraft are expected to remain clear of clouds and complete a landing as soon as possible. If a landing cannot be accomplished, the aircraft is expected to remain clear of clouds and contact ATC as soon as possible for further clearance. Separation from other IFR aircraft will be maintained under these circumstances.

f. Visual approaches reduce pilot/controller workload and expedite traffic by shortening flight paths to the airport. It is the pilot's responsibility to advise ATC as soon as possible if a visual approach is not desired.

g. Authorization to conduct a visual approach is an IFR authorization and does not alter IFR flight plan cancellation responsibility.

REFERENCE−
AIM Paragraph 5−1−15, Canceling IFR Flight Plan.

h. Radar service is automatically terminated, without advising the pilot, when the aircraft is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

5−4−24. Charted Visual Flight Procedure (CVFP)

a. CVFPs are charted visual approaches established for environmental/noise considerations, and/or when necessary for the safety and efficiency of air traffic operations. The approach charts depict prominent landmarks, courses, and recommended altitudes to specific runways. CVFPs are designed to be used primarily for turbojet aircraft.

b. These procedures will be used only at airports with an operating control tower.

c. Most approach charts will depict some NAVAID information which is for supplemental navigational guidance only.

d. Unless indicating a Class B airspace floor, all depicted altitudes are for noise abatement purposes and are recommended only. Pilots are not prohibited from flying other than recommended altitudes if operational requirements dictate.

e. When landmarks used for navigation are not visible at night, the approach will be annotated "*PROCEDURE NOT AUTHORIZED AT NIGHT.*"

f. CVFPs usually begin within 20 flying miles from the airport.

g. Published weather minimums for CVFPs are based on minimum vectoring altitudes rather than the recommended altitudes depicted on charts.

h. CVFPs are not instrument approaches and do not have missed approach segments.

i. ATC will not issue clearances for CVFPs when the weather is less than the published minimum.

j. ATC will clear aircraft for a CVFP after the pilot reports siting a charted landmark or a preceding aircraft. If instructed to follow a preceding aircraft, pilots are responsible for maintaining a safe approach interval and wake turbulence separation.

k. Pilots should advise ATC if at any point they are unable to continue an approach or lose sight of a preceding aircraft. Missed approaches will be handled as a go−around.

l. When conducting visual approaches, pilots are encouraged to use other available navigational aids to assist in positive lateral and vertical alignment with the assigned runway.

5−4−25. Contact Approach

a. Pilots operating in accordance with an IFR flight plan, provided they are clear of clouds and have at least 1 mile flight visibility and can reasonably expect to continue to the destination airport in those conditions, may request ATC authorization for a contact approach.

b. Controllers may authorize a contact approach provided:

1. The contact approach is specifically requested by the pilot. ATC cannot initiate this approach.

EXAMPLE−
Request contact approach.

2. The reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.

3. The contact approach will be made to an airport having a standard or special instrument approach procedure.

4. Approved separation is applied between aircraft so cleared and between these aircraft and other IFR or special VFR aircraft.

EXAMPLE−
Cleared contact approach (and, if required) at or below (altitude) (routing) if not possible (alternative procedures) and advise.

c. A contact approach is an approach procedure that may be used by a pilot (with prior authorization from ATC) in lieu of conducting a standard or special IAP to an airport. It is not intended for use by a pilot on an IFR flight clearance to operate to an airport not having a published and functioning IAP. Nor is it intended for an aircraft to conduct an instrument approach to one airport and then, when "in the clear," discontinue that approach and proceed to another airport. In the execution of a contact approach, the pilot assumes the responsibility for obstruction clearance. If radar service is being received, it will automatically terminate when the pilot is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

5−4−26. Landing Priority

A clearance for a specific type of approach (ILS, RNAV, GLS, ADF, VOR or Visual Approach) to an aircraft operating on an IFR flight plan does not mean that landing priority will be given over other traffic. ATCTs handle all aircraft, regardless of the type of flight plan, on a "first−come, first−served" basis. Therefore, because of local traffic or runway in use, it may be necessary for the controller in the interest of safety, to provide a different landing sequence. In any case, a landing sequence will be issued to each aircraft as soon as possible to enable the pilot to properly adjust the aircraft's flight path.

5−4−27. Overhead Approach Maneuver

a. Pilots operating in accordance with an IFR flight plan in Visual Meteorological Conditions (VMC) may request ATC authorization for an overhead maneuver. An overhead maneuver is not an instrument approach procedure. Overhead maneuver patterns are developed at airports where aircraft have an operational need to conduct the maneuver. An aircraft conducting an overhead maneuver is considered to be VFR and the IFR flight plan is canceled when the aircraft reaches the initial point on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. (See FIG 5−4−34.) The existence of a standard overhead maneuver pattern does not eliminate the possible requirement for an aircraft to conform to conventional rectangular patterns if an overhead maneuver cannot be approved. Aircraft operating to an airport without a functioning control tower must initiate cancellation of an IFR flight plan prior to executing the overhead maneuver. Cancellation of the IFR flight plan must be accomplished after crossing the landing threshold on the initial portion of the maneuver or after landing. Controllers may authorize an overhead maneuver and issue the following to arriving aircraft:

1. Pattern altitude and direction of traffic. This information may be omitted if either is standard.

PHRASEOLOGY−
PATTERN ALTITUDE (altitude). RIGHT TURNS.

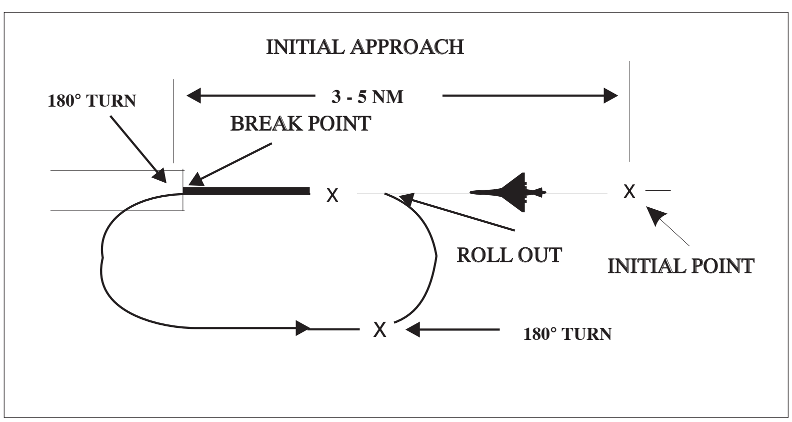
2. Request for a report on initial approach.

PHRASEOLOGY−
REPORT INITIAL.

3. "Break" information and a request for the pilot to report. The "Break Point" will be specified if nonstandard. Pilots may be requested to report "break" if required for traffic or other reasons.

PHRASEOLOGY−
BREAK AT (specified point).
REPORT BREAK.

FIG 5−4−34
Overhead Maneuver



Section 5. Pilot/Controller Roles and Responsibilities

5−5−1. General

a. The roles and responsibilities of the pilot and controller for effective participation in the ATC system are contained in several documents. Pilot responsibilities are in the CFRs and the air traffic controllers' are in the FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, and supplemental FAA directives. Additional and supplemental information for pilots can be found in the current Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM), Notices to Air Missions, Advisory Circulars and aeronautical charts. Since there are many other excellent publications produced by nongovernment organizations, as well as other government organizations, with various updating cycles, questions concerning the latest or most current material can be resolved by cross-checking with the above mentioned documents.

b. The pilot−in−command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to the safe operation of that aircraft. In an emergency requiring immediate action, the pilot−in−command may deviate from any rule in the General Subpart A and Flight Rules Subpart B in accordance with 14 CFR Section 91.3.

c. The air traffic controller is responsible to give first priority to the separation of aircraft and to the issuance of radar safety alerts, second priority to other services that are required, but do not involve separation of aircraft and third priority to additional services to the extent possible.

d. In order to maintain a safe and efficient air traffic system, it is necessary that each party fulfill their responsibilities to the fullest.

e. The responsibilities of the pilot and the controller intentionally overlap in many areas providing a degree of redundancy. Should one or the other fail in any manner, this overlapping responsibility is expected to compensate, in many cases, for failures that may affect safety.

f. The following, while not intended to be all inclusive, is a brief listing of pilot and controller responsibilities for some commonly used procedures or phases of flight. More detailed explanations are contained in other portions of this publication, the appropriate CFRs, ACs and similar publications. The information provided is an overview of the principles involved and is not meant as an interpretation of the rules nor is it intended to extend or diminish responsibilities.

5−5−2. Air Traffic Clearance

a. Pilot.

1. Acknowledges receipt and understanding of an ATC clearance.

2. Reads back any hold short of runway instructions issued by ATC.

3. Requests clarification or amendment, as appropriate, any time a clearance is not fully understood or considered unacceptable from a safety standpoint.

4. Promptly complies with an air traffic clearance upon receipt except as necessary to cope with an emergency. Advises ATC as soon as possible and obtains an amended clearance, if deviation is necessary.

NOTE−
A clearance to land means that appropriate separation on the landing runway will be ensured. A landing clearance does not relieve the pilot from compliance with any previously issued altitude crossing restriction.

b. Controller.

1. Issues appropriate clearances for the operation to be conducted, or being conducted, in accordance with established criteria.

2. Assigns altitudes in IFR clearances that are at or above the minimum IFR altitudes in controlled airspace.

3. Ensures acknowledgement by the pilot for issued information, clearances, or instructions.

4. Ensures that readbacks by the pilot of altitude, heading, or other items are correct. If incorrect, distorted, or incomplete, makes corrections as appropriate.

5−5−3. Contact Approach

a. Pilot.

1. Must request a contact approach and makes it in lieu of a standard or special instrument approach.

2. By requesting the contact approach, indicates that the flight is operating clear of clouds, has at least one mile flight visibility, and reasonably expects to continue to the destination airport in those conditions.

3. Assumes responsibility for obstruction clearance while conducting a contact approach.

4. Advises ATC immediately if unable to continue the contact approach or if encounters less than 1 mile flight visibility.

5. Is aware that if radar service is being received, it may be automatically terminated when told to contact the tower.

REFERENCE−
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term− Radar Service Terminated.

b. Controller.

1. Issues clearance for a contact approach only when requested by the pilot. Does not solicit the use of this procedure.

2. Before issuing the clearance, ascertains that reported ground visibility at destination airport is at least 1 mile.

3. Provides approved separation between the aircraft cleared for a contact approach and other IFR or special VFR aircraft. When using vertical separation, does not assign a fixed altitude, but clears the aircraft at or below an altitude which is at least 1,000 feet below any IFR traffic but not below Minimum Safe Altitudes prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.119.

4. Issues alternative instructions if, in their judgment, weather conditions may make completion of the approach impracticable.

5−5−4. Instrument Approach

a. Pilot.

1. Be aware that the controller issues clearance for approach based only on known traffic.

2. Follows the procedure as shown on the IAP, including all restrictive notations, such as:

(a) Procedure not authorized at night;

(b) Approach not authorized when local area altimeter not available;

(c) Procedure not authorized when control tower not in operation;

(d) Procedure not authorized when glide slope not used;

(e) Straight-in minimums not authorized at night; etc.

(f) Radar required; or

(g) The circling minimums published on the instrument approach chart provide adequate obstruction clearance and pilots should not descend below the circling altitude until the aircraft is in a position to make final descent for landing. Sound judgment and knowledge of the pilot's and the aircraft's capabilities are the criteria for determining the exact maneuver in each instance since airport design and the aircraft position, altitude and airspeed must all be considered.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5−4−20, Approach and Landing Minimums.

3. Upon receipt of an approach clearance while on an unpublished route or being radar vectored:

(a) Complies with the minimum altitude for IFR; and

(b) Maintains the last assigned altitude until established on a segment of a published route or IAP, at which time published altitudes apply.

4. There are currently two temperature limitations that may be published in the notes box of the middle briefing strip on an instrument approach procedure (IAP). The two published temperature limitations are:

(a) A temperature range limitation associated with the use of baro−VNAV that may be published on a United States PBN IAP titled RNAV (GPS) or RNAV (RNP); and/or

(b) A Cold Temperature Airport (CTA) limitation designated by a snowflake ICON and temperature in Celsius (C) that is published on every IAP for the airfield.

5. Any planned altitude correction for the intermediate and/or missed approach holding segments must be coordinated with ATC. Pilots do not have to advise ATC of a correction in the final segment.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Chapter 7, Section 3, Cold Temperature Barometric Altimeter Errors, Setting Procedures, and Cold Temperature Airports (CTA).

b. Controller.

1. Issues an approach clearance based on known traffic.

2. Issues an IFR approach clearance only after the aircraft is established on a segment of published route or IAP, or assigns an appropriate altitude for the aircraft to maintain until so established.

5–5–5. Missed Approach

a. Pilot.

1. Executes a missed approach when one of the following conditions exist:

(a) Arrival at the Missed Approach Point (MAP) or the Decision Height (DH) and visual reference to the runway environment is insufficient to complete the landing.

(b) Determines that a safe approach or landing is not possible (see subparagraph 5–4–21h).

(c) Instructed to do so by ATC.

2. Advises ATC that a missed approach will be made. Include the reason for the missed approach unless the missed approach is initiated by ATC.

3. Complies with the missed approach instructions for the IAP being executed from the MAP, unless other missed approach instructions are specified by ATC.

4. If executing a missed approach prior to reaching the MAP, fly the lateral navigation path of the instrument procedure to the MAP. Climb to the altitude specified in the missed approach procedure, except when a maximum altitude is specified between the final approach fix (FAF) and the MAP. In that case, comply with the maximum altitude restriction. Note, this may require a continued descent on the final approach.

5. Cold Temperature Airports (CTA) are designated by a snowflake ICON and temperature in Celsius (C) that are published in the notes box of the middle briefing strip on an instrument approach procedure (IAP). Pilots should apply a cold temperature correction to the missed approach final holding altitude when the reported temperature is at or below the CTA temperature limitation. Pilots must inform ATC of the correction.

REFERENCE–
AIM, Chapter 7, Section 3, Cold Temperature Barometric Altimeter Errors, Setting Procedures, and Cold Temperature Airports (CTA).

6. Following a missed approach, requests clearance for specific action; i.e., another approach, hold for improved conditions, proceed to an alternate airport, etc.

b. Controller.

1. Issues an approved alternate missed approach procedure if it is desired that the pilot execute a procedure other than as depicted on the instrument approach chart.

2. May vector a radar identified aircraft executing a missed approach when operationally advantageous to the pilot or the controller.

3. In response to the pilot's stated intentions, issues a clearance to an alternate airport, to a holding fix, or for reentry into the approach sequence, as traffic conditions permit.

5–5–6. Vectors

a. Pilot.

1. Promptly complies with headings and altitudes assigned to you by the controller.

2. Questions any assigned heading or altitude believed to be incorrect.

3. If operating VFR and compliance with any radar vector or altitude would cause a violation of any CFR, advises ATC and obtains a revised clearance or instructions.

b. Controller.

1. Vectors aircraft in Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E airspace:

(a) For separation.

(b) For noise abatement.

(c) To obtain an operational advantage for the pilot or controller.

2. Vectors aircraft in Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, Class E, and Class G airspace when requested by the pilot.

3. Except where authorized for radar approaches, radar departures, special VFR, or when operating in accordance with vectors below minimum altitude procedures, vector IFR aircraft at or above minimum vectoring altitudes.

4. May vector aircraft off assigned procedures. When published altitude or speed restrictions are included, controllers must assign an altitude, or if necessary, a speed.

5. May vector VFR aircraft, not at an ATC assigned altitude, at any altitude. In these cases, terrain separation is the pilot's responsibility.

5-5-7. Safety Alert

a. Pilot.

1. Initiates appropriate action if a safety alert is received from ATC.

2. Be aware that this service is not always available and that many factors affect the ability of the controller to be aware of a situation in which unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or another aircraft may be developing.

b. Controller.

1. Issues a safety alert if aware an aircraft under their control is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions or another aircraft. Types of safety alerts are:

(a) Terrain or Obstruction Alert. Immediately issued to an aircraft under their control if aware the aircraft is at an altitude believed to place the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain or obstructions.

(b) Aircraft Conflict Alert. Immediately issued to an aircraft under their control if aware of an aircraft not under their control at an altitude believed to place the aircraft in unsafe proximity to each other. With the alert, they offer the pilot an alternative, if feasible.

2. Discontinue further alerts if informed by the pilot action is being taken to correct the situation or that the other aircraft is in sight.

5-5-8. See and Avoid

a. Pilot. When meteorological conditions permit, regardless of type of flight plan or whether or not under control of a radar facility, the pilot is responsible to see and avoid other traffic, terrain, or obstacles.

b. Controller.

1. Provides radar traffic information to radar identified aircraft operating outside positive control airspace on a workload permitting basis.

2. Issues safety alerts to aircraft under their control if aware the aircraft is at an altitude believed to place the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft.

5-5-9. Speed Adjustments

a. Pilot.

1. Advises ATC any time cruising airspeed varies plus or minus 5 percent or 10 knots, whichever is greater, from that given in the flight plan.

2. Complies with speed adjustments from ATC unless:

(a) The minimum or maximum safe airspeed for any particular operation is greater or less than the requested airspeed. In such cases, advises ATC.

NOTE-
It is the pilot's responsibility and prerogative to refuse speed adjustments considered excessive or contrary to the aircraft's operating specifications.

(b) Operating at or above 10,000 feet MSL on an ATC assigned SPEED ADJUSTMENT of more than 250 knots IAS and subsequent clearance is received for descent below 10,000 feet MSL. In such cases, pilots are expected to comply with 14 CFR Section 91.117(a).

3. When complying with speed adjustment assignments, maintains an indicated airspeed within plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed.

b. Controller.

1. Assigns speed adjustments to aircraft when necessary but not as a substitute for good vectoring technique.

2. Adheres to the restrictions published in FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, as to when speed adjustment procedures may be applied.

3. Avoids speed adjustments requiring alternate decreases and increases.

4. Assigns speed adjustments to a specified IAS (KNOTS)/Mach number or to increase or decrease speed using increments of 5 knots or multiples thereof.

5. Terminates ATC-assigned speed adjustments when no longer required by issuing further instructions to pilots in the following manner:

(a) Advises pilots to "resume normal speed" when the aircraft is on a heading, random routing, charted procedure, or route without published speed restrictions.

(b) Instructs pilots to "comply with speed restrictions" when the aircraft is joining or resuming a charted procedure or route with published speed restrictions.

CAUTION–
The phraseology "Climb via SID" requires compliance with all altitude and/or speed restrictions depicted on the procedure.

(c) Instructs pilots to "resume published speed" when aircraft are cleared via a charted instrument flight procedure that contains published speed restrictions.

(d) Advises aircraft to "delete speed restrictions" when ATC assigned or published speed restrictions on a charted procedure are no longer required.

(e) Clears pilots for approach without restating previously issued speed adjustments.

REFERENCE–
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term − Resume Normal Speed.
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term − Resume Published Speed.

6. Gives due consideration to aircraft capabilities to reduce speed while descending.

7. Does not assign speed adjustments to aircraft at or above FL 390 without pilot consent.

5−5−10. Traffic Advisories (Traffic Information)

a. Pilot.

1. Acknowledges receipt of traffic advisories.

2. Informs controller if traffic in sight.

3. Advises ATC if a vector to avoid traffic is desired.

4. Does not expect to receive radar traffic advisories on all traffic. Some aircraft may not appear on the radar display. Be aware that the controller may be occupied with higher priority duties and unable to issue traffic information for a variety of reasons.

5. Advises controller if service is not desired.

b. Controller.

1. Issues radar traffic to the maximum extent consistent with higher priority duties except in Class A airspace.

2. Provides vectors to assist aircraft to avoid observed traffic when requested by the pilot.

3. Issues traffic information to aircraft in the Class B, Class C, and Class D surface areas for sequencing purposes.

4. Controllers are required to issue traffic advisories to each aircraft operating on intersecting or nonintersecting converging runways where projected flight paths will cross.

5−5−11. Visual Approach

a. Pilot.

1. If a visual approach is not desired, advises ATC.

2. Complies with controller's instructions for vectors toward the airport of intended landing or to a visual position behind a preceding aircraft.

3. The pilot must, at all times, have either the airport or the preceding aircraft in sight. After being cleared for a visual approach, proceed to the airport in a normal manner or follow the preceding aircraft. Remain clear of clouds while conducting a visual approach.

4. If the pilot accepts a visual approach clearance to visually follow a preceding aircraft, you are required to establish a safe landing interval behind the aircraft you were instructed to follow. You are responsible for wake turbulence separation.

5. Advise ATC immediately if the pilot is unable to continue following the preceding aircraft, cannot remain clear of clouds, needs to climb, or loses sight of the airport.

6. Be aware that radar service is automatically terminated, without being advised by ATC, when the pilot is instructed to change to advisory frequency.

7. Be aware that there may be other traffic in the traffic pattern and the landing sequence may differ from the traffic sequence assigned by approach control or ARTCC.

b. Controller.

1. Do not clear an aircraft for a visual approach unless reported weather at the airport is ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility is 3 miles or greater. When weather is not available for the destination airport, inform the pilot and do not initiate a visual approach to that airport unless there is reasonable assurance that descent and flight to the airport can be made visually.

2. Issue visual approach clearance when the pilot reports sighting either the airport or a preceding aircraft which is to be followed.

3. Provide separation except when visual separation is being applied by the pilot.

4. Continue flight following and traffic information until the aircraft has landed or has been instructed to change to advisory frequency.

5. For all aircraft, inform the pilot when the preceding aircraft is a heavy. Inform the pilot of a small aircraft when the preceding aircraft is a B757. Visual separation is prohibited behind super aircraft.

6. When weather is available for the destination airport, do not initiate a vector for a visual approach unless the reported ceiling at the airport is 500 feet or more above the MVA and visibility is 3 miles or more. If vectoring weather minima are not available but weather at the airport is ceiling at or above 1,000 feet and visibility of 3 miles or greater, visual approaches may still be conducted.

5−5−12. Visual Separation

a. Pilot.

1. Acceptance of instructions to follow another aircraft or to provide visual separation from it is an acknowledgment that the pilot will maneuver the aircraft as necessary to avoid the other aircraft or to maintain in-trail separation. Pilots are responsible to maintain visual separation until flight paths (altitudes and/or courses) diverge.

2. If instructed by ATC to follow another aircraft or to provide visual separation from it, promptly notify the controller if you lose sight of that aircraft, are unable to maintain continued visual contact with it, or cannot accept the responsibility for your own separation for any reason.

3. The pilot also accepts responsibility for wake turbulence separation under these conditions.

b. Controller. Applies visual separation only:

1. Within the terminal area when a controller has both aircraft in sight or by instructing a pilot who sees the other aircraft to maintain visual separation from it.

2. Pilots are responsible to maintain visual separation until flight paths (altitudes and/or courses) diverge.

3. Within en route airspace when aircraft are on opposite courses and one pilot reports having seen the other aircraft and that the aircraft have passed each other.

5−5−13. VFR-on-top

a. Pilot.

1. This clearance must be requested by the pilot on an IFR flight plan, and if approved, allows the pilot the choice (subject to any ATC restrictions) to select an altitude or flight level in lieu of an assigned altitude.

NOTE−
VFR−on−top is not permitted in certain airspace areas, such as Class A airspace, certain restricted areas, etc. Consequently, IFR flights operating VFR−on−top will avoid such airspace.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 4−4−8 , IFR Clearance VFR−on−top.
AIM, Paragraph 4−4−11 , IFR Separation Standards.
AIM, Paragraph 5−3−2 , Position Reporting.
AIM, Paragraph 5−3−3 , Additional Reports.

2. By requesting a VFR-on-top clearance, the pilot assumes the sole responsibility to be vigilant so as to see and avoid other aircraft and to:

(a) Fly at the appropriate VFR altitude as prescribed in 14 CFR Section 91.159.

(b) Comply with the VFR visibility and distance from clouds criteria in 14 CFR Section 91.155, *Basic VFR Weather Minimums*.

(c) Comply with instrument flight rules that are applicable to this flight; i.e., minimum IFR altitudes, position reporting, radio communications, course to be flown, adherence to ATC clearance, etc.

3. Should advise ATC prior to any altitude change to ensure the exchange of accurate traffic information.

b. Controller.

1. May clear an aircraft to maintain VFR-on-top if the pilot of an aircraft on an IFR flight plan requests the clearance.

2. Informs the pilot of an aircraft cleared to climb to VFR-on-top the reported height of the tops or that no top report is available; issues an alternate clearance if necessary; and once the aircraft reports reaching VFR-on-top, reclears the aircraft to maintain VFR-on-top.

3. Before issuing clearance, ascertain that the aircraft is not in or will not enter Class A airspace.

5-5-14. Instrument Departures

a. Pilot.

1. Prior to departure considers the type of terrain and other obstructions on or in the vicinity of the departure airport.

2. Determines if obstruction avoidance can be maintained visually or that the departure procedure should be followed.

3. Determines whether an obstacle departure procedure (ODP) and/or DP is available for obstruction avoidance. One option may be a Visual Climb Over Airport (VCOA). Pilots must advise ATC as early as possible of the intent to fly the VCOA prior to departure.

4. At airports where IAPs have not been published, hence no published departure procedure, determines what action will be necessary and takes such action that will assure a safe departure.

b. Controller.

1. At locations with airport traffic control service, when necessary, specifies direction of takeoff, turn, or initial heading to be flown after takeoff, consistent with published departure procedures (DP) or diverse vector areas (DVA), where applicable.

2. At locations without airport traffic control service but within Class E surface area when necessary to specify direction of takeoff, turn, or initial heading to be flown, obtains pilot's concurrence that the procedure will allow the pilot to comply with local traffic patterns, terrain, and obstruction avoidance.

3. When the initial heading will take the aircraft off an assigned procedure (for example, an RNAV SID with a published lateral path to a waypoint and crossing restrictions from the departure end of runway), the controller will assign an altitude to maintain with the initial heading.

4. Includes established departure procedures as part of the ATC clearance when pilot compliance is necessary to ensure separation.

5. At locations with both SIDs and DVAs, ATC will provide an amended departure clearance to cancel a previously assigned SID and subsequently utilize a DVA or vice versa. The amended clearance will be provided to the pilot in a timely manner so that the pilot may confirm adequate climb performance exists to determine if the amended clearance is acceptable, and brief the changes in advance of entering the runway.

6. At locations with a DVA, ATC is not permitted to utilize a SID and DVA concurrently.

5-5-15. Minimum Fuel Advisory

a. Pilot.

1. Advise ATC of your minimum fuel status when your fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching destination, you cannot accept any undue delay.

2. Be aware this is not an emergency situation, but merely an advisory that indicates an emergency situation is possible should any undue delay occur.

3. On initial contact the term "minimum fuel" should be used after stating call sign.

EXAMPLE-
Salt Lake Approach, United 621, "minimum fuel."

4. Be aware a minimum fuel advisory does not imply a need for traffic priority.

5. If the remaining usable fuel supply suggests the need for traffic priority to ensure a safe landing, you should declare an emergency due to low fuel and report fuel remaining in minutes.

REFERENCE-
Pilot/Controller Glossary Term- Fuel Remaining.

b. Controller.

1. When an aircraft declares a state of minimum fuel, relay this information to the facility to whom control jurisdiction is transferred.

2. Be alert for any occurrence which might delay the aircraft.

5−5−16. RNAV and RNP Operations

a. Pilot.

1. If unable to comply with the requirements of an RNAV or RNP procedure, pilots must advise air traffic control as soon as possible. For example, "N1234, failure of GPS system, unable RNAV, request amended clearance."

2. Pilots are not authorized to fly a published RNAV or RNP procedure (instrument approach, departure, or arrival procedure) unless it is retrievable by the procedure name from the current aircraft navigation database and conforms to the charted procedure. The system must be able to retrieve the procedure by name from the aircraft navigation database, not just as a manually entered series of waypoints.

3. Whenever possible, RNAV routes (Q− or T−route) should be extracted from the database in their entirety, rather than loading RNAV route waypoints from the database into the flight plan individually. However, selecting and inserting individual, named fixes from the database is permitted, provided all fixes along the published route to be flown are inserted.

4. Pilots must not change any database waypoint type from a fly−by to fly−over, or vice versa. No other modification of database waypoints or the creation of user−defined waypoints on published RNAV or RNP procedures is permitted, except to:

(a) Change altitude and/or airspeed waypoint constraints to comply with an ATC clearance/instruction.

(b) Insert a waypoint along the published route to assist in complying with ATC instruction, example, "Descend via the WILMS arrival except cross 30 north of BRUCE at/or below FL 210." This is limited only to systems that allow along−track waypoint construction.

5. Pilots of FMS−equipped aircraft, who are assigned an RNAV DP or STAR procedure and subsequently receive a change of runway, transition or procedure, must verify that the appropriate changes are loaded and available for navigation.

6. For RNAV 1 DPs and STARs, pilots must use a CDI, flight director and/or autopilot, in lateral navigation mode. Other methods providing an equivalent level of performance may also be acceptable.

7. For RNAV 1 DPs and STARs, pilots of aircraft without GPS, using DME/DME/IRU, must ensure the aircraft navigation system position is confirmed, within 1,000 feet, at the start point of take−off roll. The use of an automatic or manual runway update is an acceptable means of compliance with this requirement. Other methods providing an equivalent level of performance may also be acceptable.

8. For procedures or routes requiring the use of GPS, if the navigation system does not automatically alert the flight crew of a loss of GPS, the operator must develop procedures to verify correct GPS operation.

9. RNAV terminal procedures (DP and STAR) may be amended by ATC issuing radar vectors and/or clearances direct to a waypoint. Pilots should avoid premature manual deletion of waypoints from their active "legs" page to allow for rejoining procedures.

10. RAIM Prediction: If TSO−C129 equipment is used to solely satisfy the RNAV and RNP requirement, GPS RAIM availability must be confirmed for the intended route of flight (route and time). If RAIM is not available, pilots need an approved alternate means of navigation.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 5−1−16, RNAV and RNP Operations.

11. Definition of "established" for RNAV and RNP operations. An aircraft is considered to be established on-course during RNAV and RNP operations anytime it is within 1 times the required accuracy for the segment being flown. For example, while operating on a Q-Route (RNAV 2), the aircraft is considered to be established on-course when it is within 2 NM of the course centerline.

NOTE−
1. *Pilots must be aware of how their navigation system operates, along with any AFM limitations, and confirm that the aircraft's lateral deviation display (or map display if being used as an allowed alternate means) is suitable for the accuracy of the segment being flown. Automatic scaling and alerting changes are appropriate for some operations. For example, TSO-C129 systems change within 30 miles of destination and within 2 miles of FAF to support approach*

operations. For some navigation systems and operations, manual selection of scaling will be necessary.

2. *Pilots flying FMS equipped aircraft with barometric vertical navigation (Baro-VNAV) may descend when the aircraft is established on-course following FMS leg transition to the next segment. Leg transition normally occurs at the turn bisector for a fly-by waypoint (reference paragraph 1-2-1 for more on waypoints). When using full automation, pilots should monitor the aircraft to ensure the aircraft is turning at appropriate lead times and descending once established on-course.*

3. *Pilots flying TSO-C129 navigation system equipped aircraft without full automation should use normal lead points to begin the turn. Pilots may descend when established on-course on the next segment of the approach.*

(c) Only crewmembers are permitted onboard the aircraft; and

(d) "Maintenance Flight" is included in the remarks section of the flight plan.

5−6−7. Civil Aircraft Operations Transiting U.S. Territorial Airspace

a. Civil aircraft (except those operating in accordance with subparagraphs 5−6−7b, 5−6−7c, 5−6−7d, and 5−6−7e) are authorized to transit U.S. territorial airspace if in compliance with all of the following conditions:

1. File and are on an active flight plan (IFR, VFR, or DVFR);

2. Equipped with an operational transponder with altitude reporting capability and continuously squawk an ATC assigned transponder code;

3. Equipped with an operational ADS−B Out when operating in airspace specified in 14 CFR 91.225;

4. Maintain two−way radio communications with ATC;

5. Comply with all other applicable ADIZ requirements described in paragraph 5−6−4 and any other national security requirements in paragraph 5−6−2;

6. Are operating under an approved TSA aviation security program (see paragraph 5−6−10 for TSA aviation security program information) or are operating with and in accordance with an FAA/TSA airspace waiver (see paragraph 5−6−9 for FAA/TSA airspace waiver information), if:

(a) The aircraft is not registered in the U.S.; or

(b) The aircraft is registered in the U.S. and its maximum takeoff gross weight is greater than 100,309 pounds (45,500 kgs);

7. Are in receipt of, and are operating in accordance with, an FAA routing authorization if the aircraft is registered in a U.S. State Department−designated special interest country or is operating with the ICAO 3LD of a company in a country listed as a U.S. State Department−designated special interest country, unless the operator holds valid FAA Part 129 operations specifications. VFR and DVFR flight operations are prohibited for any aircraft requiring an FAA routing authorization. (See paragraph 5−6−11 for FAA routing authorization information.)

b. Civil aircraft registered in Canada or Mexico, and engaged in operations for the purposes of air ambulance, firefighting, law enforcement, search and rescue, or emergency evacuation are authorized to transit U.S. territorial airspace within 50 NM of their respective borders with the U.S., with or without an active flight plan, provided they have received and continuously transmit an ATC−assigned transponder code.

c. Civil aircraft registered in Canada, Mexico, Bahamas, Bermuda, Cayman Islands, or the British Virgin Islands with a maximum certificated takeoff gross weight of 100,309 pounds (45,500 kgs) or less are authorized to transit U.S. territorial airspace if in compliance with all of the following conditions:

1. File and are on an active flight plan (IFR, VFR, or DVFR) that enters U.S. territorial airspace directly from any of the countries listed in this subparagraph 5−6−7c. Flights that include a stop in a non−listed country prior to entering U.S. territorial airspace must comply with the requirements prescribed by subparagraph 5−6−7a above, including operating under an approved TSA aviation security program (see paragraph 5−6−10 for TSA aviation program information) or operating with, and in accordance with, an FAA/TSA airspace waiver (see paragraph 5−6−9 for FAA/TSA airspace waiver information).

2. Equipped with an operational transponder with altitude reporting capability and continuously squawk an ATC assigned transponder code;

3. Equipped with an operational ADS−B Out when operating in airspace specified in 14 CFR 91.225;

4. Maintain two−way radio communications with ATC; and

5. Comply with all other applicable ADIZ requirements described in paragraph 5−6−4 and any other national security requirements in paragraph 5−6−2.

d. Civil aircraft registered in Canada, Mexico, Bahamas, Bermuda, Cayman Islands, or the British Virgin Islands with a maximum certificated takeoff gross weight greater than 100,309 pounds (45,500 kgs) must comply with the requirements subparagraph 5−6−7a, including operating under an approved TSA aviation security program (see paragraph 5−6−10 for TSA aviation program information) or operating with, and in accordance with, an FAA/TSA airspace waiver (see paragraph 5−6−9 for FAA/TSA airspace waiver information).

e. Civil aircraft registered in the U.S., Canada, or Mexico with a maximum certificated takeoff gross weight of 100,309 pounds (45,500 kgs) or less that are operating without an operational transponder and/or the ability to maintain two−way radio communications with ATC, are authorized to transit U.S. territorial airspace over Alaska if in compliance with all of the following conditions:

1. Enter and exit U.S. territorial airspace over Alaska north of the fifty−fourth parallel;

2. File and are on an active flight plan;

3. Squawk 1200 if VFR and equipped with a transponder.

4. Comply with all other applicable ADIZ requirements described in paragraph 5−6−4 and any other national security requirements in paragraph 5−6−2.

5−6−8. Foreign State Aircraft Operations

a. Foreign state aircraft are authorized to operate in U.S. territorial airspace if in compliance with all of the following conditions:

1. File and are on an active IFR flight plan;

2. Equipped with an operational transponder with altitude reporting capability and continuously squawk an ATC assigned transponder code;

3. Equipped with an operational ADS−B Out when operating in airspace specified in 14 CFR 91.225;

4. Maintain two−way radio communications with ATC; and

5. Comply with all other applicable ADIZ requirements described in paragraph 5−6−4 and any other national security requirements in paragraph 5−6−2.

b. Diplomatic Clearances. Foreign state aircraft may operate to or from, within, or in transit of U.S. territorial airspace only when authorized by the U.S. State Department by means of a diplomatic clearance, except as described in subparagraph 5−6−8i below.

1. Information about diplomatic clearances is available at the U.S. State Department website https://www.state.gov/diplomatic−aircraft−clearance−procedures−for−foreign−state−aircraft−to−operate−in−united−states−national−airspace/ (lower case only).

2. A diplomatic clearance may be initiated by contacting the U.S. State Department via email at DCAS@state.gov or via phone at (202) 453−8390.

NOTE−
A diplomatic clearance is not required for foreign state aircraft operations that transit U.S. controlled oceanic airspace but do not enter U.S. territorial airspace. (See subparagraph 5−6−8d for flight plan information.)

c. An FAA routing authorization for state aircraft operations of special interest countries listed in subparagraph 5−6−11b. is required before the U.S. State Department will issue a diplomatic clearance for such operations. (See subparagraph 5−6−11 for FAA routing authorizations information).

d. Foreign state aircraft operating with a diplomatic clearance must navigate U.S. territorial airspace on an active IFR flight plan, unless specifically approved for VFR flight operations by the U.S. State Department in the diplomatic clearance.

NOTE−
Foreign state aircraft operations to or from, within, or transiting U.S. territorial airspace; or transiting any U.S. controlled oceanic airspace, should enter ICAO code M in Item 8 of the flight plan to assist in identification of the aircraft as a state aircraft.

e. A foreign aircraft that operates to or from, within, or in transit of U.S. territorial airspace while conducting a state aircraft operation is not authorized to change its status as a state aircraft during any portion of the approved, diplomatically cleared itinerary.

f. A foreign aircraft described in subparagraph 5−6−8e above may operate from or within U.S. territorial airspace as a civil aircraft operation, once it has completed its approved, diplomatically cleared itinerary, if the aircraft operator is:

1. A foreign air carrier that holds valid FAA Part 129 operations specifications; and

2. Is in compliance with all other requirements applied to foreign civil aircraft operations from or within U.S. territorial airspace. (See paragraphs 5−6−5 and 5−6−6.)

g. Foreign state aircraft operations are not authorized to or from Ronald Reagan Washington National Airport (KDCA).

h. Foreign state aircraft operating with a U.S. Department of State issued Diplomatic Clearance Number in the performance of official missions are authorized to deviate from the Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast (ADS−B) Out requirements contained in 14 CFR §§ 91.225 and 91.227. All foreign state aircraft and/or operators associated with Department of Defense missions should contact their respective offices for further information on handling. Foreign state aircraft not associated with Department of Defense should coordinate with U.S. Department of State through the normal diplomatic clearance process.

i. Diplomatic Clearance Exceptions. State aircraft operations on behalf of the governments of Canada and Mexico conducted for the purposes of air ambulance, firefighting, law enforcement, search and rescue, or emergency evacuation are authorized to transit U.S. territorial airspace within 50 NM of their respective borders with the U.S., with or without an active flight plan, provided they have received and continuously transmit an ATC assigned transponder code. State aircraft operations on behalf of the governments of Canada and Mexico conducted under this subparagraph 5−6−8h are not required to obtain a diplomatic clearance from the U.S. State Department.

5−6−9. FAA/TSA Airspace Waivers

a. Operators may submit requests for FAA/TSA airspace waivers at https://waivers.faa.gov by selecting "international" as the waiver type.

b. Information regarding FAA/TSA airspace waivers can be found at: http://www.tsa.gov/for−industry/general−aviation or can be obtained by contacting TSA at (571) 227−2071.

c. All existing FAA/TSA waivers issued under previous FDC NOTAMS remain valid until the expiration date specified in the waiver, unless sooner superseded or rescinded.

5−6−10. TSA Aviation Security Programs

a. Applicants for U.S. air operator certificates will be provided contact information for TSA aviation security programs by the U.S. Department of Transportation during the certification process.

b. For information about applicable TSA security programs:

1. U.S. air carriers and commercial operators must contact their TSA Principal Security Specialist (PSS); and

2. Foreign air carriers must contact their International Industry Representative (IIR).

5−6−11. FAA Flight Routing Authorizations

a. Information about FAA routing authorizations for U.S. State Department−designated special interest country flight operations to or from, within, or transiting U.S. territorial airspace is available by country at:

1. FAA website http://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/publications/us_restrictions/; or

2. Phone by contacting the FAA System Operations Support Center (SOSC) at (202) 267−8115.

b. Special Interest Countries. The U.S. State Department−designated special interest countries are Cuba, Iran, The Democratic People's Republic of Korea (North Korea), The People's Republic of China, The Russian Federation, Sudan, and Syria.

NOTE−
FAA flight routing authorizations are not required for aircraft registered in Hong Kong, Taiwan, or Macau.

c. Aircraft operating with the ICAO 3LD assigned to a company or entity from a country listed as a State Department−designated special interest country and holding valid FAA Part 129 operations specifications do not require FAA flight routing authorization.

d. FAA routing authorizations will only be granted for IFR operations. VFR and DVFR flight operations are prohibited for any aircraft requiring an FAA routing authorization.

5−6−12. Emergency Security Control of Air Traffic (ESCAT)

a. During defense emergency or air defense emergency conditions, additional special security instructions may be issued in accordance with 32 CFR Part 245, *Plan for the Emergency Security Control of Air Traffic (ESCAT)*.

b. Under the provisions of 32 CFR Part 245, the military will direct the action to be taken in regard to landing, grounding, diversion, or dispersal of aircraft in the defense of the U.S. during emergency conditions.

c. At the time a portion or all of ESCAT is implemented, ATC facilities will broadcast appropriate instructions received from the Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC) over available ATC frequencies. Depending on instructions received from the ATCSCC, VFR flights may be directed to land at the nearest available airport, and IFR flights will be expected to proceed as directed by ATC.

d. Pilots on the ground may be required to file a flight plan and obtain an approval (through FAA) prior to conducting flight operation.

5−6−13. Interception Procedures

a. General.

1. In conjunction with the FAA, Air Defense Sectors monitor air traffic and could order an intercept in the interest of national security or defense. Intercepts during peacetime operations are vastly different than those conducted under increased states of readiness. The interceptors may be fighters or rotary wing aircraft. The reasons for aircraft intercept include, but are not limited to:

(a) Identify an aircraft;

(b) Track an aircraft;

(c) Inspect an aircraft;

(d) Divert an aircraft;

(e) Establish communications with an aircraft.

2. When specific information is required (i.e., markings, serial numbers, etc.) the interceptor pilot(s) will respond only if, in their judgment, the request can be conducted in a safe manner. Intercept procedures are described in some detail in the paragraphs below. In all situations, the interceptor pilot will consider safety of flight for all concerned throughout the intercept procedure. The interceptor pilot(s) will use caution to avoid startling the intercepted crew or passengers and understand that maneuvers considered normal for interceptor aircraft may be considered hazardous to other aircraft.

3. All aircraft operating in US national airspace are highly encouraged to maintain a listening watch on VHF/UHF guard frequencies (121.5 or 243.0 MHz). If subjected to a military intercept, it is incumbent on civilian aviators to understand their responsibilities and to comply with ICAO standard signals relayed from the intercepting aircraft. Specifically, aviators are expected to contact air traffic control without delay (if able) on the local operating frequency or on VHF/UHF guard. Noncompliance may result in the use of force.

b. Fighter intercept phases (see FIG 5−6−1).

1. Approach Phase.
As standard procedure, intercepted aircraft are approached from behind. Typically, interceptor aircraft will be employed in pairs, however, it is not uncommon for a single aircraft to perform the intercept operation. Safe separation between interceptors and intercepted aircraft is the responsibility of the intercepting aircraft and will be maintained at all times.

2. Identification Phase.
Interceptor aircraft will initiate a controlled closure toward the aircraft of interest, holding at a distance no closer than deemed necessary to establish positive identification and to gather the necessary information. The interceptor may also fly past the intercepted aircraft while gathering data at a distance considered safe based on aircraft performance characteristics.

3. Post Intercept Phase.
An interceptor may attempt to establish communications via standard ICAO signals. In time-critical situations where the interceptor is seeking an immediate response from the intercepted aircraft or if the intercepted aircraft remains non-compliant to instruction, the interceptor pilot may initiate a divert maneuver. In this maneuver, the interceptor flies across the intercepted aircraft's flight path (minimum 500 feet separation and commencing from slightly below the intercepted aircraft altitude) in the general direction the intercepted aircraft is expected to turn. The interceptor will rock its wings (daytime) or flash external lights/select afterburners (night) while crossing the intercepted aircraft's flight path. The interceptor will roll out in the direction the

intercepted aircraft is expected to turn before returning to verify the aircraft of interest is complying. The intercepted aircraft is expected to execute an immediate turn to the direction of the intercepting aircraft. If the aircraft of interest does not comply, the interceptor may conduct a second climbing turn across the intercepted aircraft's flight path (minimum 500 feet separation and commencing from slightly below the intercepted aircraft altitude) while expending flares as a warning signal to the intercepted aircraft to comply immediately and to turn in the direction indicated and to leave the area. The interceptor is responsible to maintain safe separation during these and all intercept maneuvers. Flight safety is paramount.

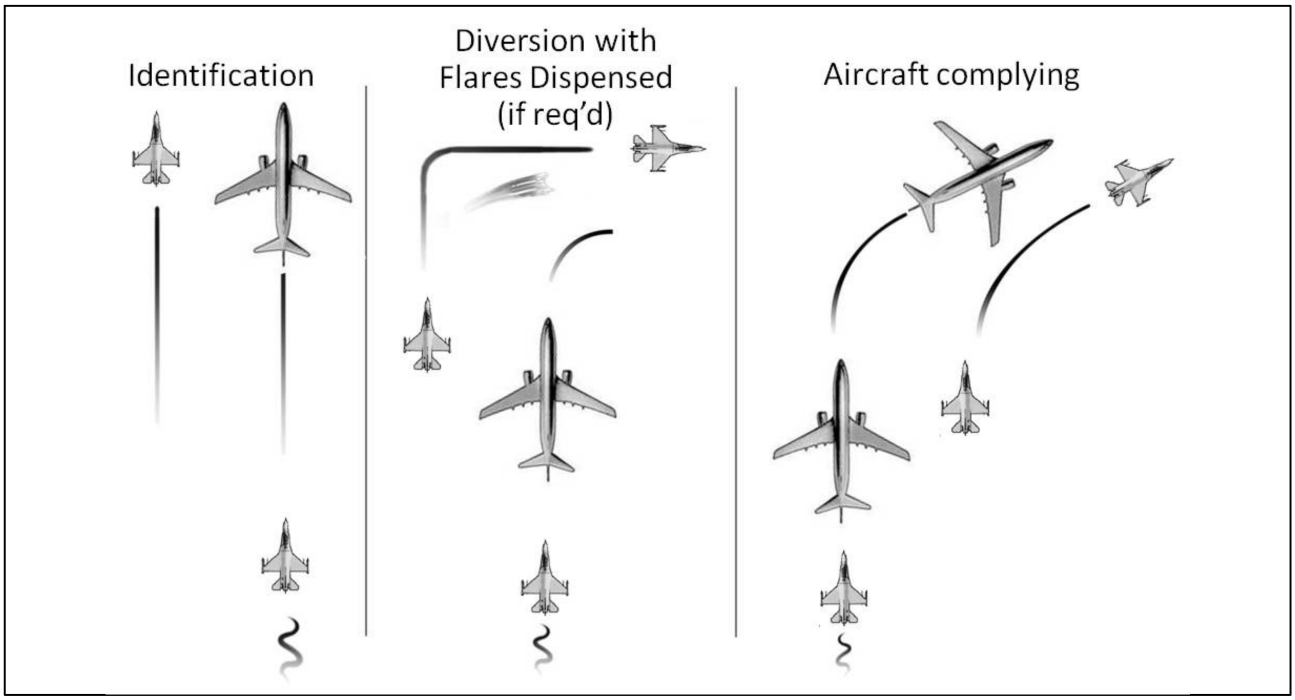
NOTE−

1. *NORAD interceptors will take every precaution to preclude the possibility of the intercepted aircraft experiencing jet wash/wake turbulence; however, there is a potential that this condition could be encountered.*

2. *During Night/IMC, the intercept will be from below flight path.*

FIG 5−6−1

Intercept Procedures



c. Helicopter Intercept phases (see FIG 5−6−2).

1. Approach Phase.

Aircraft intercepted by helicopter may be approached from any direction, although the helicopter should close for identification and signaling from behind. Generally, the helicopter will approach off the left side of the intercepted aircraft. Safe separation between the helicopter and the unidentified aircraft will be maintained at all times.

2. Identification Phase.

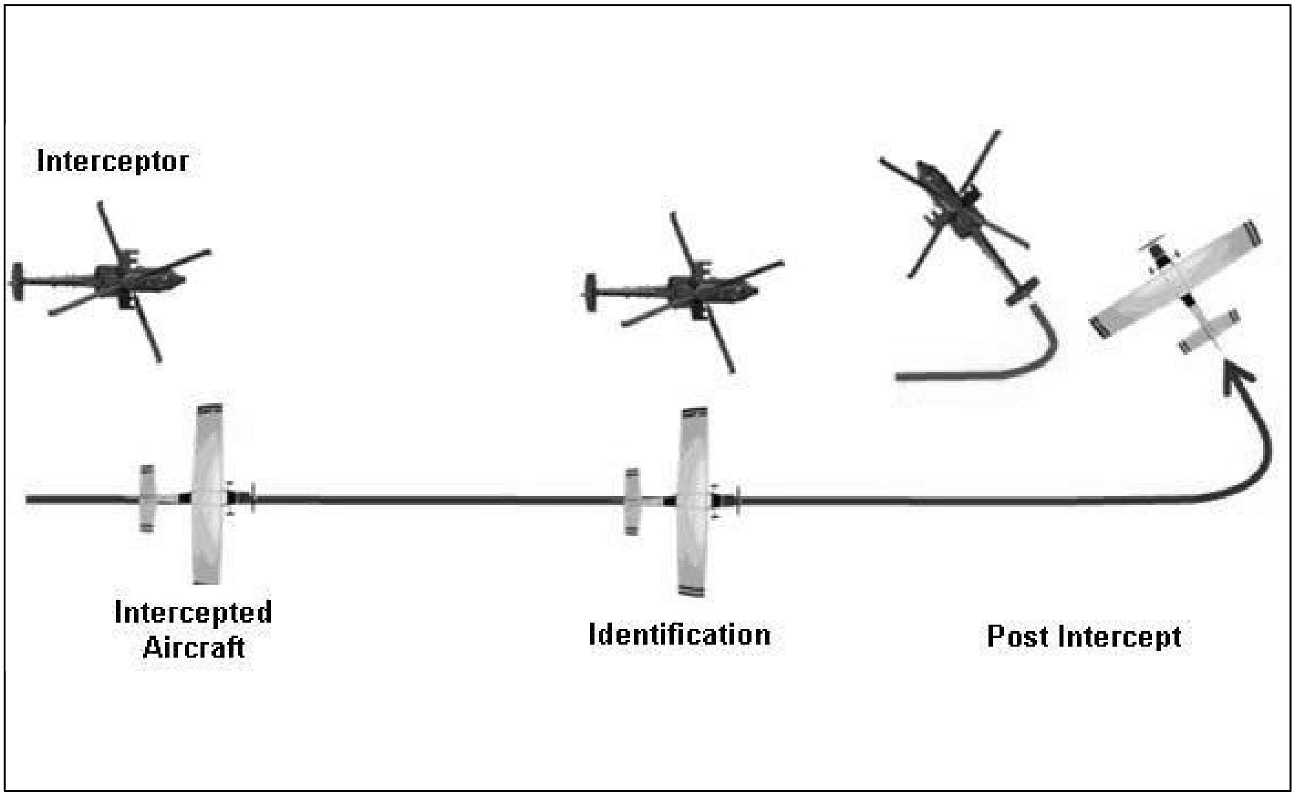
The helicopter will initiate a controlled closure toward the aircraft of interest, holding at a distance no closer than deemed necessary to establish positive identification and gather the necessary information. The intercepted pilot should expect the interceptor helicopter to take a position off his left wing slightly forward of abeam.

3. Post Intercept Phase.

Visual signaling devices may be used in an attempt to communicate with the intercepted aircraft. Visual signaling devices may include, but are not limited to, LED scrolling signboards or blue flashing lights. If compliance is not attained through the use of radios or signaling devices, standard ICAO intercept signals (TBL 5−6−1) may be employed. In order to maintain safe aircraft separation, it is incumbent upon the pilot of the intercepted aircraft not to fall into a trail position (directly behind the helicopter) if instructed to follow the helicopter. This is because the helicopter pilot may lose visual contact with the intercepted aircraft.

NOTE–
Intercepted aircraft must not follow directly behind the helicopter thereby allowing the helicopter pilot to maintain visual contact with the intercepted aircraft and ensuring safe separation is maintained.

FIG 5–6–2
Helicopter Intercept Procedures



d. Summary of Intercepted Aircraft Actions. An intercepted aircraft must, without delay:

1. Adhere to instructions relayed through the use of visual devices, visual signals, and radio communications from the intercepting aircraft.

2. Attempt to establish radio communications with the intercepting aircraft or with the appropriate air traffic control facility by making a general call on guard frequencies (121.5 or 243.0 MHz), giving the identity, position, and nature of the flight.

3. If transponder equipped, select Mode 3/A Code 7700 unless otherwise instructed by air traffic control.

NOTE–
If instruction received from any agency conflicts with that given by the intercepting aircraft through visual or radio communications, the intercepted aircraft must seek immediate clarification.

4. The crew of the intercepted aircraft must continue to comply with interceptor aircraft signals and instructions until positively released.

5–6–14. Law Enforcement Operations by Civil and Military Organizations

a. Special law enforcement operations.

1. Special law enforcement operations include in-flight identification, surveillance, interdiction, and pursuit activities performed in accordance with official civil and/or military mission responsibilities.

2. To facilitate accomplishment of these special missions, exemptions from specified sections of the CFRs have been granted to designated departments and agencies. However, it is each organization's responsibility to apprise ATC of their intent to operate under an authorized exemption before initiating actual operations.

3. Additionally, some departments and agencies that perform special missions have been assigned coded identifiers to permit them to apprise ATC of ongoing mission activities and solicit special air traffic assistance.

5−6−15. Interception Signals

TBL 5−6−1 and TBL 5−6−2.

TBL 5−6−1

Intercepting Signals

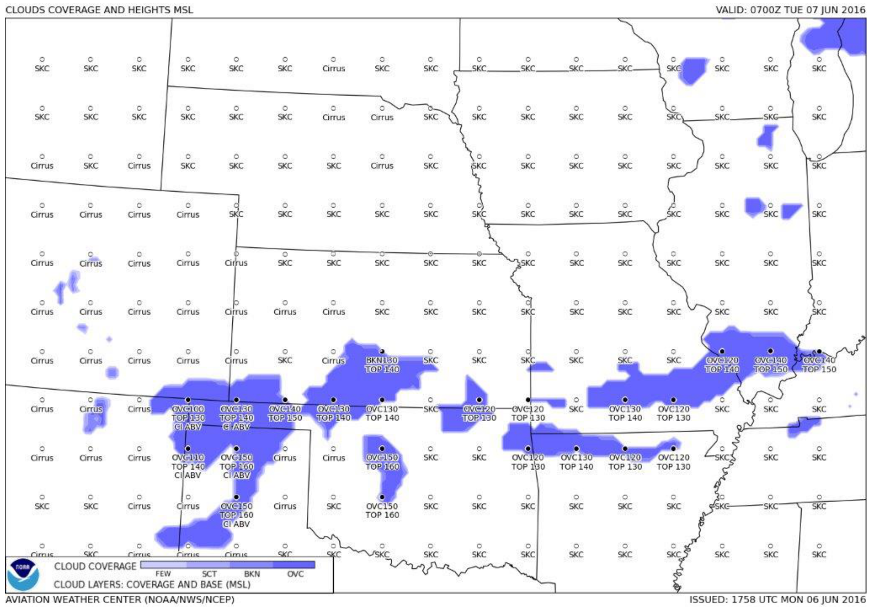
INTERCEPTING SIGNALS Signals initiated by intercepting aircraft and responses by intercepted aircraft (as set forth in ICAO Annex 2-Appendix 1, 2.1)				
Series	**INTERCEPTING Aircraft Signals**	**Meaning**	**INTERCEPTED Aircraft Responds**	**Meaning**
1	DAY−Rocking wings from a position slightly above and ahead of, and normally to the left of, the intercepted aircraft and, after acknowledgement, a slow level turn, normally to the left, on to the desired heading. NIGHT-Same and, in addition, flashing navigational lights at irregular intervals. *NOTE 1−Meteorological conditions or terrain may require the intercepting aircraft to take up a position slightly above and ahead of, and to the right of, the intercepted aircraft and to make the subsequent turn to the right.* *NOTE 2−If the intercepted aircraft is not able to keep pace with the intercepting aircraft, the latter is expected to fly a series of race−track patterns and to rock its wings each time it passes the intercepted aircraft.*	You have been intercepted. Follow me.	AEROPLANES: DAY−Rocking wings and following. NIGHT−Same and, in addition, flashing navigational lights at irregular intervals. HELICOPTERS: DAY or NIGHT−Rocking aircraft, flashing navigational lights at irregular intervals and following.	Understood, will comply.
2	DAY or NIGHT−An abrupt break−away maneuver from the intercepted aircraft consisting of a climbing turn of 90 degrees or more without crossing the line of flight of the intercepted aircraft.	You may proceed.	AEROPLANES: DAY or NIGHT-Rocking wings. HELICOPTERS: DAY or NIGHT−Rocking aircraft.	Understood, will comply.
3	DAY−Circling aerodrome, lowering landing gear and overflying runway in direction of landing or, if the intercepted aircraft is a helicopter, overflying the helicopter landing area. NIGHT−Same and, in addition, showing steady landing lights.	Land at this aerodrome.	AEROPLANES: DAY−Lowering landing gear, following the intercepting aircraft and, if after overflying the runway landing is considered safe, proceeding to land. NIGHT−Same and, in addition, showing steady landing lights (if carried). HELICOPTERS: DAY or NIGHT-Following the intercepting aircraft and proceeding to land, showing a steady landing light (if carried).	Understood, will comply.

TBL 5−6−2

Intercepting Signals

INTERCEPTING SIGNALS Signals and Responses During Aircraft Intercept Signals initiated by intercepted aircraft and responses by intercepting aircraft (as set forth in ICAO Annex 2-Appendix 1, 2.2)				
Series	**INTERCEPTED Aircraft Signals**	**Meaning**	**INTERCEPTING Aircraft Responds**	**Meaning**
4	DAY or NIGHT−Raising landing gear (if fitted) and flashing landing lights while passing over runway in use or helicopter landing area at a height exceeding 300m (1,000 ft) but not exceeding 600m (2,000 ft) (in the case of a helicopter, at a height exceeding 50m (170 ft) but not exceeding 100m (330 ft) above the aerodrome level, and continuing to circle runway in use or helicopter landing area. If unable to flash landing lights, flash any other lights available.	Aerodrome you have designated is inadequate.	DAY or NIGHT−If it is desired that the intercepted aircraft follow the intercepting aircraft to an alternate aerodrome, the intercepting aircraft raises its landing gear (if fitted) and uses the Series 1 signals prescribed for intercepting aircraft. If it is decided to release the intercepted aircraft, the intercepting aircraft uses the Series 2 signals prescribed for intercepting aircraft.	Understood, follow me. Understood, you may proceed.
5	DAY or NIGHT−Regular switching on and off of all available lights but in such a manner as to be distinct from flashing lights.	Cannot comply.	DAY or NIGHT-Use Series 2 signals prescribed for intercepting aircraft.	Understood.
6	DAY or NIGHT−Irregular flashing of all available lights.	In distress.	DAY or NIGHT-Use Series 2 signals prescribed for intercepting aircraft.	Understood.

FIG 7−1−3
Aviation Cloud Forecast



7−1−5. Preflight Briefing

a. Flight Service is one of the primary sources for obtaining preflight briefings and to file flight plans by phone or the Internet. Flight Service Specialists are qualified and certificated as Pilot Weather Briefers by the FAA. They are not authorized to make original forecasts, but are authorized to translate and interpret available forecasts and reports directly into terms describing the weather conditions which you can expect along your flight route and at your destination. Prior to every flight, pilots should gather all information vital to the nature of the flight. Pilots can receive a regulatory compliant briefing without contacting Flight Service. Pilots are encouraged to use automated resources and review AC 91−92, Pilot's Guide to a Preflight Briefing, for more information. Pilots who prefer to contact Flight Service are encouraged to conduct a self−brief prior to calling. Conducting a self−brief before contacting Flight Service provides familiarity of meteorological and aeronautical conditions applicable to the route of flight and promotes a better understanding of weather information. Three basic types of preflight briefings (Standard, Abbreviated, and Outlook) are available to serve the pilot's specific needs. Pilots should specify to the briefer the type of briefing they want, along with their appropriate background information. This will enable the briefer to tailor the information to the pilot's intended flight. The following paragraphs describe the types of briefings available and the information provided in each briefing.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Para 5−1−1, Preflight Preparation, for items that are required.

b. Standard Briefing. You should request a Standard Briefing any time you are planning a flight and you have not received a previous briefing or have not received preliminary information through online resources. International data may be inaccurate or incomplete. If you are planning a flight outside of U.S. controlled airspace, the briefer will advise you to check data as soon as practical after entering foreign airspace, unless you advise that you have the international cautionary advisory. The briefer will automatically provide the following information in the sequence listed, except as noted, when it is applicable to your proposed flight.

1. Adverse Conditions. Significant meteorological and/or aeronautical information that might influence the pilot to alter or cancel the proposed flight; for example, hazardous weather conditions, airport closures, air traffic delays, etc. Pilots should be especially alert for current or forecast weather that could reduce flight minimums below VFR or IFR conditions. Pilots should also be alert for any reported or forecast icing if the aircraft is not certified for operating in icing conditions. Flying into areas of icing or weather below minimums could have disastrous results.

2. VFR Flight Not Recommended. When VFR flight is proposed and sky conditions or visibilities are present or forecast, surface or aloft, that, in the briefer's judgment, would make flight under VFR doubtful, the briefer will describe the conditions, describe the affected locations, and use the phrase *"VFR flight not recommended."* This recommendation is advisory in nature. The final decision as to whether the flight can be conducted safely rests solely with the pilot. Upon receiving a "*VFR flight not recommended*" statement, the non−IFR rated pilot will need to make a "go or no go" decision. This decision should be based on weighing the current and forecast weather conditions against the pilot's experience and ratings. The aircraft's equipment, capabilities and limitations should also be considered.

NOTE−
Pilots flying into areas of minimal VFR weather could encounter unforecasted lowering conditions that place the aircraft outside the pilot's ratings and experience level. This could result in spatial disorientation and/or loss of control of the aircraft.

3. Synopsis. A brief statement describing the type, location and movement of weather systems and/or air masses which might affect the proposed flight.

NOTE−
These first 3 elements of a briefing may be combined in any order when the briefer believes it will help to more clearly describe conditions.

4. Current Conditions. Reported weather conditions applicable to the flight will be summarized from all available sources; e.g., METARs/ SPECIs, PIREPs, RAREPs. This element will be omitted if the proposed time of departure is beyond 2 hours, unless the information is specifically requested by the pilot.

5. En Route Forecast. Forecast en route conditions for the proposed route are summarized in logical order; i.e., departure/climbout, en route, and descent. (Heights are MSL, unless the contractions "AGL" or "CIG" are denoted indicating that heights are above ground.)

6. Destination Forecast. The destination forecast for the planned ETA. Any significant changes within 1 hour before and after the planned arrival are included.

7. Winds Aloft. Forecast winds aloft will be provided using degrees of the compass. The briefer will interpolate wind directions and speeds between levels and stations as necessary to provide expected conditions at planned altitudes. (Heights are MSL.) Temperature information will be provided on request.

8. Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs).

(a) Available NOTAM (D) information pertinent to the proposed flight, including special use airspace (SUA) NOTAMs for restricted areas, aerial refueling, and night vision goggles (NVG).

NOTE−
Other SUA NOTAMs (D), such as military operations area (MOA), military training route (MTR), and warning area NOTAMs, are considered "upon request" briefing items as indicated in paragraph 7−1−4b10(a).

(b) Prohibited Areas P−40, P−49, P−56, and the special flight rules area (SFRA) for Washington, DC.

(c) FSS briefers do not provide FDC NOTAM information for special instrument approach procedures unless specifically asked. Pilots authorized by the FAA to use special instrument approach procedures must specifically request FDC NOTAM information for these procedures.

NOTE−
1. *NOTAM information may be combined with current conditions when the briefer believes it is logical to do so.*

2. *Airway NOTAMs, procedural NOTAMs, and NOTAMs that are general in nature and not tied to a specific airport/facility (for example, flight advisories and restrictions, open duration special security instructions, and special flight rules areas) are briefed solely by pilot request. For complete flight information, pilots are urged to review the Domestic Notices and International Notices found in the External Links section of the Federal NOTAM System (FNS) NOTAM Search System and the Chart Supplement U.S. In addition to obtaining a briefing.*

9. ATC Delays. Any known ATC delays and flow control advisories which might affect the proposed flight.

10. Pilots may obtain the following from flight service station briefers upon request:

(a) Information on SUA and SUA−related airspace, except those listed in paragraph 7−1−4b8.

(b) When an Inflight Advisory has not been issued but observed or expected weather conditions meet SIGMET/AIRMET criteria based on current pilot reports and reinforced by other sources of information about existing meteorological conditions.

(c) When observed or developing weather conditions do not meet SIGMET, Convective SIGMET, or AIRMET criteria; e.g., in terms of intensity or area coverage, but current pilot reports or other weather information sources indicate that existing or anticipated meteorological phenomena will adversely affect the safe flow of air traffic within the ARTCC area of responsibility.

2. The following example is a CWA issued from the Kansas City, Missouri, ARTCC. The "3" after ZKC in the first line denotes this CWA has been issued for the third weather phenomena to occur for the day. The "301" in the second line denotes the phenomena number again (3) and the issuance number (01) for this phenomena. The CWA was issued at 2140Z and is valid until 2340Z.

EXAMPLE–
ZKC3 CWA 032140
ZKC CWA 301 VALID UNTIL 032340
ISOLD SVR TSTM over KCOU MOVG SWWD 10 KTS ETC.

7–1–7. Categorical Outlooks

a. Categorical outlook terms, describing general ceiling and visibility conditions for advanced planning purposes are used only in area forecasts and are defined as follows:

1. LIFR (Low IFR). Ceiling less than 500 feet and/or visibility less than 1 mile.

2. IFR. Ceiling 500 to less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility 1 to less than 3 miles.

3. MVFR (Marginal VFR). Ceiling 1,000 to 3,000 feet and/or visibility 3 to 5 miles inclusive.

4. VFR. Ceiling greater than 3,000 feet and visibility greater than 5 miles; includes sky clear.

b. The cause of LIFR, IFR, or MVFR is indicated by either ceiling or visibility restrictions or both. The contraction "CIG" and/or weather and obstruction to vision symbols are used. If winds or gusts of 25 knots or greater are forecast for the outlook period, the word "WIND" is also included for all categories including VFR.

EXAMPLE–
1. *LIFR CIG–low IFR due to low ceiling.*

2. *IFR FG–IFR due to visibility restricted by fog.*

3. *MVFR CIG HZ FU–marginal VFR due to both ceiling and visibility restricted by haze and smoke.*

4. *IFR CIG RA WIND–IFR due to both low ceiling and visibility restricted by rain; wind expected to be 25 knots or greater.*

7–1–8. Inflight Weather Advisory Broadcasts

a. ARTCCs broadcast a Convective SIGMET, SIGMET, AIRMET, Urgent Pilot Report, or CWA alert once on all frequencies, except emergency frequencies, when any part of the area described is within 150 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction. These broadcasts advise pilots of the availability of hazardous weather advisories and to contact the nearest Flight Service facility for additional details.

EXAMPLE–
1. *Attention all aircraft, SIGMET Delta Three, from Myton to Tuba City to Milford, severe turbulence and severe clear icing below one zero thousand feet. Expected to continue beyond zero three zero zero zulu.*

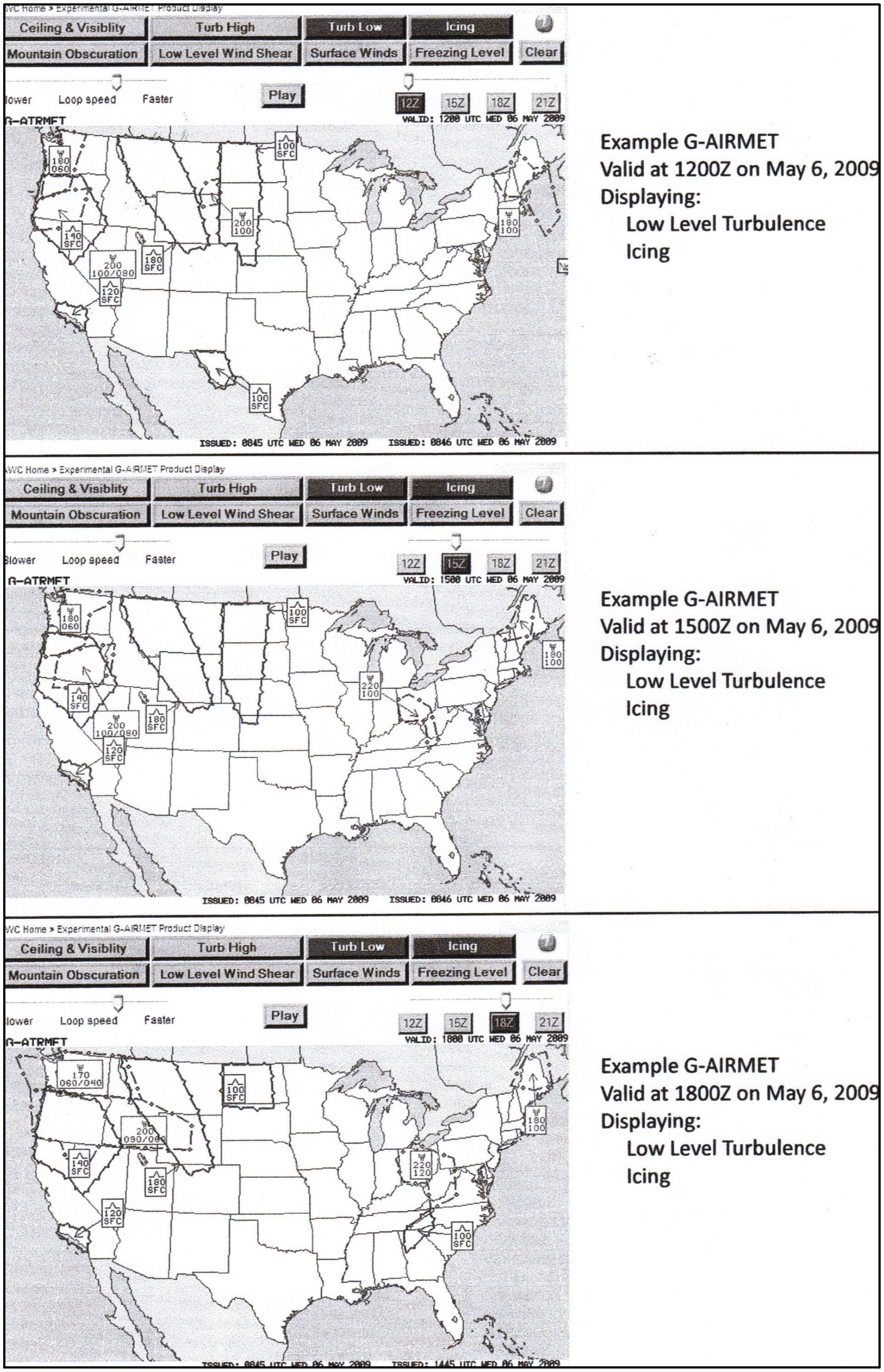
2. *Attention all aircraft, convective SIGMET Two Seven Eastern. From the vicinity of Elmira to Phillipsburg. Scattered embedded thunderstorms moving east at one zero knots. A few intense level five cells, maximum tops four five zero.*

3. *Attention all aircraft, Kansas City Center weather advisory one zero three. Numerous reports of moderate to severe icing from eight to niner thousand feet in a three zero mile radius of St. Louis. Light or negative icing reported from four thousand to one two thousand feet remainder of Kansas City Center area.*

NOTE–
Terminal control facilities have the option to limit hazardous weather information broadcast as follows: Tower cab and approach control positions may opt to broadcast hazardous weather information alerts only when any part of the area described is within 50 miles of the airspace under their jurisdiction.

REFERENCE–
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 2–6–6, Hazardous Inflight Weather Advisory.

FIG 7−1−6
G−AIRMET Graphical Product



7−1−9. Flight Information Services (FIS)

FIS is a method of disseminating meteorological (MET) and aeronautical information (AI) to displays in the cockpit in order to enhance pilot situational awareness, provide decision support tools, and improve safety. FIS augments traditional pilot voice communication with Flight Service Stations (FSSs), ATC facilities, or Airline Operations Control Centers (AOCCs). FIS is not intended to replace traditional pilot and controller/flight service specialist/aircraft dispatcher preflight briefings or inflight voice communications. FIS, however, can provide textual and graphical information that can help abbreviate and improve the usefulness of such communications. FIS enhances pilot situational awareness and improves safety.

a. Data link Service Providers (DSPs). DSPs deploy and maintain airborne, ground−based, and, in some cases, space−based infrastructure that supports the transmission of AI/MET information over one or more physical links. A DSP may provide a free of charge or a for−fee service that permits end users to uplink and downlink AI/MET and other information. The following are examples of DSPs:

1. FAA FIS-B. A ground-based broadcast service provided through the ADS-B Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) network. The service provides users with a 978 MHz data link capability when operating within range and line-of-sight of a transmitting ground station. FIS-B enables users of properly equipped aircraft to receive and display a suite of broadcast weather and aeronautical information products.

2. Non-FAA FIS Systems. Several commercial vendors provide customers with FIS data over both the aeronautical spectrum and on other frequencies using a variety of data link protocols. Services available from these providers vary greatly and may include tier based subscriptions. Advancements in bandwidth technology permits preflight as well as inflight access to the same MET and AI information available on the ground. Pilots and operators using non-FAA FIS for MET and AI information should be knowledgeable regarding the weather services being provided as some commercial vendors may be repackaging NWS sourced weather, while other commercial vendors may alter the weather information to produce vendor−tailored or vendor−specific weather reports and forecasts.

b. Three Data Link Modes. There are three data link modes that may be used for transmitting AI and MET information to aircraft. The intended use of the AI and/or MET information will determine the most appropriate data link service.

1. Broadcast Mode: A one-way interaction in which AI and/or MET updates or changes applicable to a designated geographic area are continuously transmitted (or transmitted at repeated periodic intervals) to all aircraft capable of receiving the broadcast within the service volume defined by the system network architecture.

2. Contract/Demand Mode: A two-way interaction in which AI and/or MET information is transmitted to an aircraft in response to a specific request.

3. Contract/Update Mode: A two-way interaction that is an extension of the Demand Mode. Initial AI and/or MET report(s) are sent to an aircraft and subsequent updates or changes to the AI and/or MET information that meet the contract criteria are automatically or manually sent to an aircraft.

c. To ensure airman compliance with Federal Aviation Regulations, manufacturer's operating manuals should remind airmen to contact ATC controllers, FSS specialists, operator dispatchers, or airline operations control centers for general and mission critical aviation weather information and/or NAS status conditions (such as NOTAMs, Special Use Airspace status, and other government flight information). If FIS products are systemically modified (for example, are displayed as abbreviated plain text and/or graphical depictions), the modification process and limitations of the resultant product should be clearly described in the vendor's user guidance.

d. Operational Use of FIS. Regardless of the type of FIS system being used, several factors must be considered when using FIS:

1. Before using FIS for inflight operations, pilots and other flight crewmembers should become familiar with the operation of the FIS system to be used, the airborne equipment to be used, including its system architecture, airborne system components, coverage service volume and other limitations of the particular system, modes of operation and indications of various system failures. Users should also be familiar with the specific content and format of the services available from the FIS provider(s). Sources of information that may provide this specific guidance include manufacturer's manuals, training programs, and reference guides.

2. FIS should not serve as the sole source of aviation weather and other operational information. ATC, FSSs, and, if applicable, AOCC VHF/HF voice remain as a redundant method of communicating aviation weather, NOTAMs, and other operational information to aircraft in flight. FIS augments these traditional ATC/FSS/AOCC services and, for some products, offers the advantage of being displayed as graphical information. By using FIS for orientation, the usefulness of information received from conventional means may be enhanced. For example, FIS may alert the pilot to specific areas of concern that will more accurately focus requests made to FSS or AOCC for inflight updates or similar queries made to ATC.

3. The airspace and aeronautical environment is constantly changing. These changes occur quickly and without warning. Critical operational decisions should be based on use of the most current and appropriate data available. When differences exist between FIS and information obtained by voice communication with ATC, FSS, and/or AOCC (if applicable), pilots are cautioned to use the most recent data from the most authoritative source.

4. FIS aviation weather products (for example, graphical ground−based radar precipitation depictions) are not appropriate for tactical (typical timeframe of less than 3 minutes) avoidance of severe weather such as negotiating a path through a weather hazard area. FIS supports strategic (typical timeframe of 20 minutes or more) weather decision−making such as route selection to avoid a weather hazard area in its entirety. The misuse of information beyond its applicability may place the pilot and aircraft in jeopardy. In addition, FIS should never be used in lieu of an individual preflight weather and flight planning briefing.

5. DSPs offer numerous MET and AI products with information that can be layered on top of each other. Pilots need to be aware that too much information can have a negative effect on their cognitive work load. Pilots need to manage the amount of information to a level that offers the most pertinent information to that specific flight without creating a cockpit distraction. Pilots may need to adjust the amount of information based on numerous factors including, but not limited to, the phase of flight, single pilot operation, autopilot availability, class of airspace, and the weather conditions encountered.

6. FIS NOTAM products, including Temporary Flight Restriction (TFR) information, are advisory−use information and are intended for situational awareness purposes only. Cockpit displays of this information are not appropriate for tactical navigation − pilots should stay clear of any geographic area displayed as a TFR NOTAM. Pilots should contact FSSs and/or ATC while en route to obtain updated information and to verify the cockpit display of NOTAM information.

7. FIS supports better pilot decision−making by increasing situational awareness. Better decision−making is based on using information from a variety of sources. In addition to FIS, pilots should take advantage of other weather/NAS status sources, including, briefings from Flight Service Stations, data from other air traffic control facilities, airline operation control centers, pilot reports, as well as their own observations.

e. FAA's Flight Information Service−Broadcast (FIS−B).

1. FIS−B is a ground−based broadcast service provided through the FAA's Automatic Dependent Surveillance–Broadcast (ADS−B) Services Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) network. The service provides users with a 978 MHz data link capability when operating within range and line−of−sight of a transmitting ground station. FIS−B enables users of properly−equipped aircraft to receive and display a suite of broadcast weather and aeronautical information products.

2. TBL 7−1−1 lists the text and graphical products available through FIS−B and provided free−of−charge. Detailed information concerning FIS−B meteorological products can be found in Advisory Circular 00−45, Aviation Weather Services, and AC 00-63, Use of Cockpit Displays of Digital Weather and Aeronautical Information. Information on Special Use Airspace (SUA), Temporary Flight Restriction (TFR), and Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) products can be found in Chapters 3, 4 and 5 of this manual.

3. Users of FIS−B should familiarize themselves with the operational characteristics and limitations of the system, including: system architectechnology. The New Generation RVRs were deployed in November 1994 and use forward scatter technology. The New Generation RVRs are currently being deployed in the NAS to replace the existing Taskers.

a. RVR values are measured by transmissometers mounted on 14−foot towers along the runway. A full RVR system consists of:

1. Transmissometer projector and related items.

2. Transmissometer receiver (detector) and related items.

3. Analog recorder.

4. Signal data converter and related items.

5. Remote digital or remote display programmer.

b. The transmissometer projector and receiver are mounted on towers 250 feet apart. A known intensity of light is emitted from the projector and is measured by the receiver. Any obscuring matter such as rain, snow, dust, fog, haze or smoke reduces the light intensity arriving at the receiver. The resultant intensity measurement is then converted to an RVR value by the signal data converter. These values are displayed by readout equipment in the associated air traffic facility and updated approximately once every minute for controller issuance to pilots.

c. The signal data converter receives information on the high intensity runway edge light setting in use (step 3, 4, or 5); transmission values from the transmissometer and the sensing of day or night conditions. From the three data sources, the system will compute appropriate RVR values.

d. An RVR transmissometer established on a 250 foot baseline provides digital readouts to a minimum of 600 feet, which are displayed in 200 foot increments to 3,000 feet and in 500 foot increments from 3,000 feet to a maximum value of 6,000 feet.

e. RVR values for Category IIIa operations extend down to 700 feet RVR; however, only 600 and 800 feet are reportable RVR increments. The 800 RVR reportable value covers a range of 701 feet to 900 feet and is therefore a valid minimum indication of Category IIIa operations.

f. Approach categories with the corresponding minimum RVR values. (See TBL 7−1−5.)

TBL 7−1−5
Approach Category/Minimum RVR Table

Category	Visibility (RVR)
Nonprecision	2,400 feet
Category I	1,800 feet*
Category II	1,000 feet
Category IIIa	700 feet
Category IIIb	150 feet
Category IIIc	0 feet

* 1,400 feet with special equipment and authorization

g. Ten minute maximum and minimum RVR values for the designated RVR runway are reported in the body of the aviation weather report when the prevailing visibility is less than one mile and/or the RVR is 6,000 feet or less. ATCTs report RVR when the prevailing visibility is 1 mile or less and/or the RVR is 6,000 feet or less.

h. Details on the requirements for the operational use of RVR are contained in FAA AC 97−1, Runway Visual Range (RVR). Pilots are responsible for compliance with minimums prescribed for their class of operations in the appropriate CFRs and/or operations specifications.

i. RVR values are also measured by forward scatter meters mounted on 14−foot frangible fiberglass poles. A full RVR system consists of:

1. Forward scatter meter with a transmitter, receiver and associated items.

2. A runway light intensity monitor (RLIM).

3. An ambient light sensor (ALS).

4. A data processor unit (DPU).

5. Controller display (CD).

j. The forward scatter meter is mounted on a 14−foot frangible pole. Infrared light is emitted from the transmitter and received by the receiver. Any obscuring matter such as rain, snow, dust, fog, haze or smoke increases the amount of scattered light reaching the receiver. The resulting measurement along with inputs from the runway light intensity monitor and the ambient light sensor are forwarded to the DPU which calculates the proper RVR value. The RVR values are displayed locally and remotely on controller displays.

k. The runway light intensity monitors both the runway edge and centerline light step settings (steps 1 through 5). Centerline light step settings are used for CAT IIIb operations. Edge Light step settings are used for CAT I, II, and IIIa operations.

l. New Generation RVRs can measure and display RVR values down to the lowest limits of Category IIIb operations (150 feet RVR). RVR values are displayed in 100 feet increments and are reported as follows:

1. 100−feet increments for products below 800 feet.

2. 200−feet increments for products between 800 feet and 3,000 feet.

3. 500−feet increments for products between 3,000 feet and 6,500 feet.

4. 25−meter increments for products below 150 meters.

5. 50−meter increments for products between 150 meters and 800 meters.

6. 100−meter increments for products between 800 meters and 1,200 meters.

7. 200−meter increments for products between 1,200 meters and 2,000 meters.

7−1−14. Reporting of Cloud Heights

a. Ceiling, by definition in the CFRs and as used in aviation weather reports and forecasts, is the height above ground (or water) level of the lowest layer of clouds or obscuring phenomenon that is reported as "broken," "overcast," or "obscuration," e.g., an aerodrome forecast (TAF) which reads "BKN030" refers to height above ground level. An area forecast which reads "BKN030" indicates that the height is above mean sea level.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 7−1−28, Key to Aerodrome Forecast (TAF) and Aviation Routine Weather Report (METAR), defines "broken," "overcast," and "obscuration."

b. Pilots usually report height values above MSL, since they determine heights by the altimeter. This is taken in account when disseminating and otherwise applying information received from pilots. ("Ceiling" heights are always above ground level.) In reports disseminated as PIREPs, height references are given the same as received from pilots, that is, above MSL.

c. In area forecasts or inflight advisories, ceilings are denoted by the contraction "CIG" when used with sky cover symbols as in "LWRG TO CIG OVC005," or the contraction "AGL" after, the forecast cloud height value. When the cloud base is given in height above MSL, it is so indicated by the contraction "MSL" or "ASL" following the height value. The heights of clouds tops, freezing level, icing, and turbulence are always given in heights above ASL or MSL.

7−1−15. Reporting Prevailing Visibility

a. Surface (horizontal) visibility is reported in METAR reports in terms of statute miles and increments thereof; e.g., $^1/_{16}$, $^1/_8$, $^3/_{16}$, $^1/_4$, $^5/_{16}$, $^3/_8$, $^1/_2$, $^5/_8$, $^3/_4$, $^7/_8$, 1, 1 $^1/_8$, etc. (Visibility reported by an unaugmented automated site is reported differently than in a manual report, i.e., ASOS/AWOS: 0, $^1/_{16}$, $^1/_8$, $^1/_4$, $^1/_2$, $^3/_4$, 1, 1 $^1/_4$, 1 $^1/_2$, 1 $^3/_4$, 2, 2 $^1/_2$, 3, 4, 5, etc., AWOS: M$^1/_4$, $^1/_4$, $^1/_2$, $^3/_4$, 1, 1 $^1/_4$, 1 $^1/_2$, 1 $^3/_4$, 2, 2 $^1/_2$, 3, 4, 5, etc.) Visibility is determined through the ability to see and identify preselected and prominent objects at a known distance from the usual point of observation. Visibilities which are determined to be less than 7 miles, identify the obscuring atmospheric condition; e.g., fog, haze, smoke, etc., or combinations thereof.

b. Prevailing visibility is the greatest visibility equaled or exceeded throughout at least one half of the horizon circle, not necessarily contiguous. Segments of the horizon circle which may have a significantly different visibility may be reported in the remarks section of the weather report; i.e., the southeastern quadrant of the horizon circle may be determined to be 2 miles in mist while the remaining quadrants are determined to be 3 miles in mist.

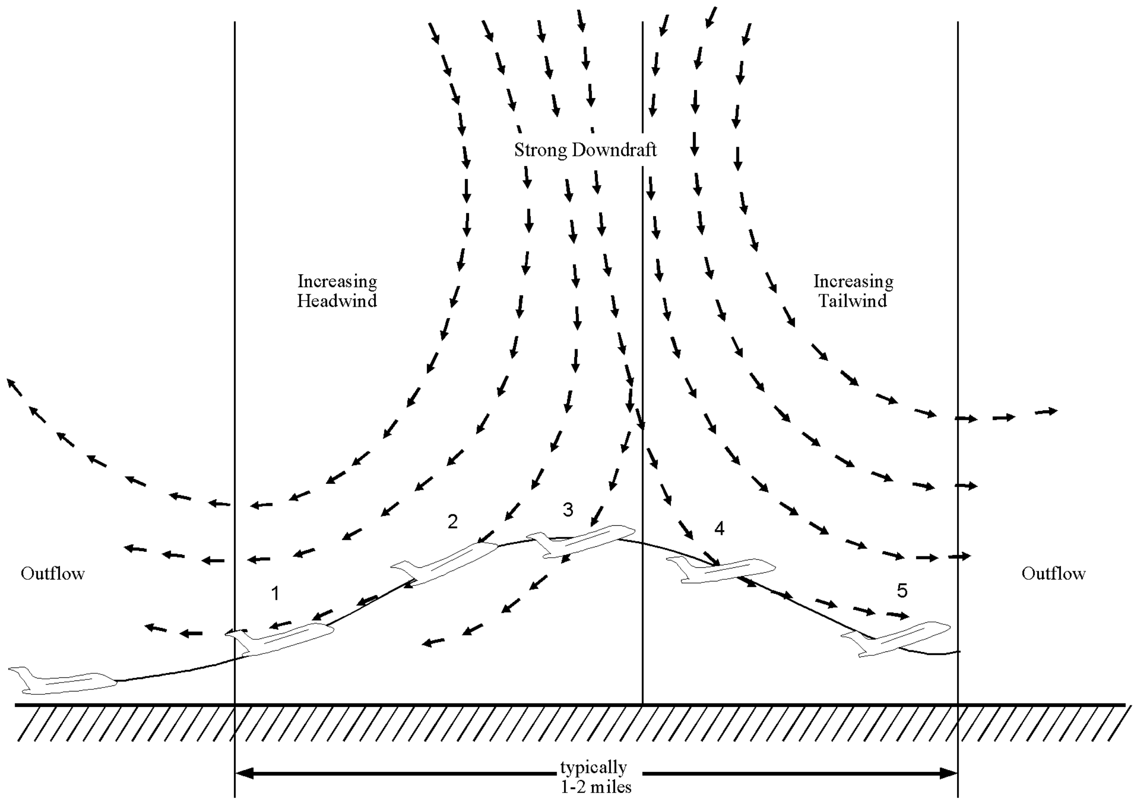
c. When the prevailing visibility at the usual point of observation, or at the tower level, is less than 4 miles, certificated tower personnel will take visibility observations in addition to those taken at the usual point of observation. The lower of these two values will be used as the prevailing visibility for aircraft operations.

7−1−16. Estimating Intensity of Rain and Ice Pellets

a. Rain

1. Light. From scattered drops that, regardless of duration, do not completely wet an exposed surface

FIG 7-1-13
Microburst Encounter During Takeoff

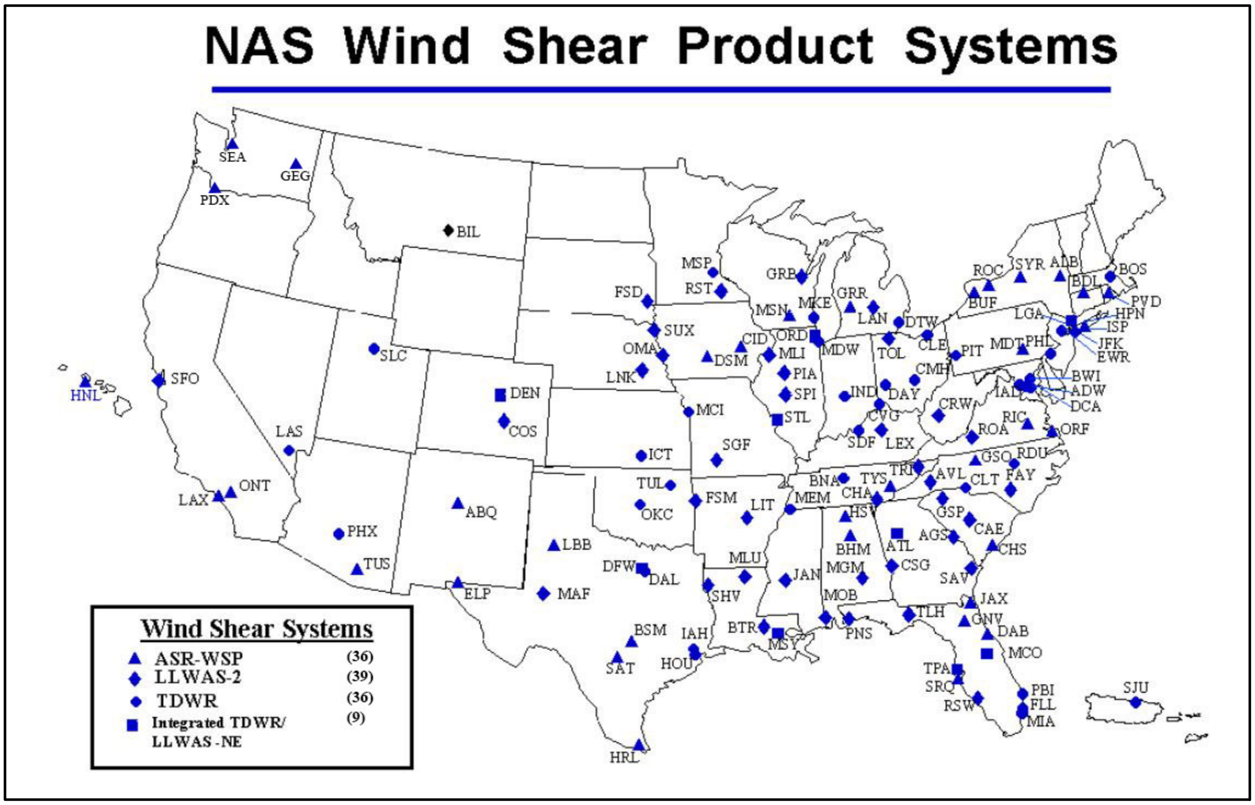


A microburst encounter during takeoff. The airplane first encounters a headwind and experiences increasing performance (1), this is followed in short succession by a decreasing headwind component (2), a downdraft (3), and finally a strong tailwind (4), where 2 through 5 all result in decreasing performance of the airplane. Position (5) represents an extreme situation just prior to impact. Figure courtesy of Walter Frost, FWG Associates, Inc., Tullahoma, Tennessee.

e. Microburst wind shear may create a severe hazard for aircraft within 1,000 feet of the ground, particularly during the approach to landing and landing and take-off phases. The impact of a microburst on aircraft which have the unfortunate experience of penetrating one is characterized in FIG 7-1-13. The aircraft may encounter a headwind (performance increasing) followed by a downdraft and tailwind (both performance decreasing), possibly resulting in terrain impact.

FIG 7−1−14

NAS Wind Shear Product Systems



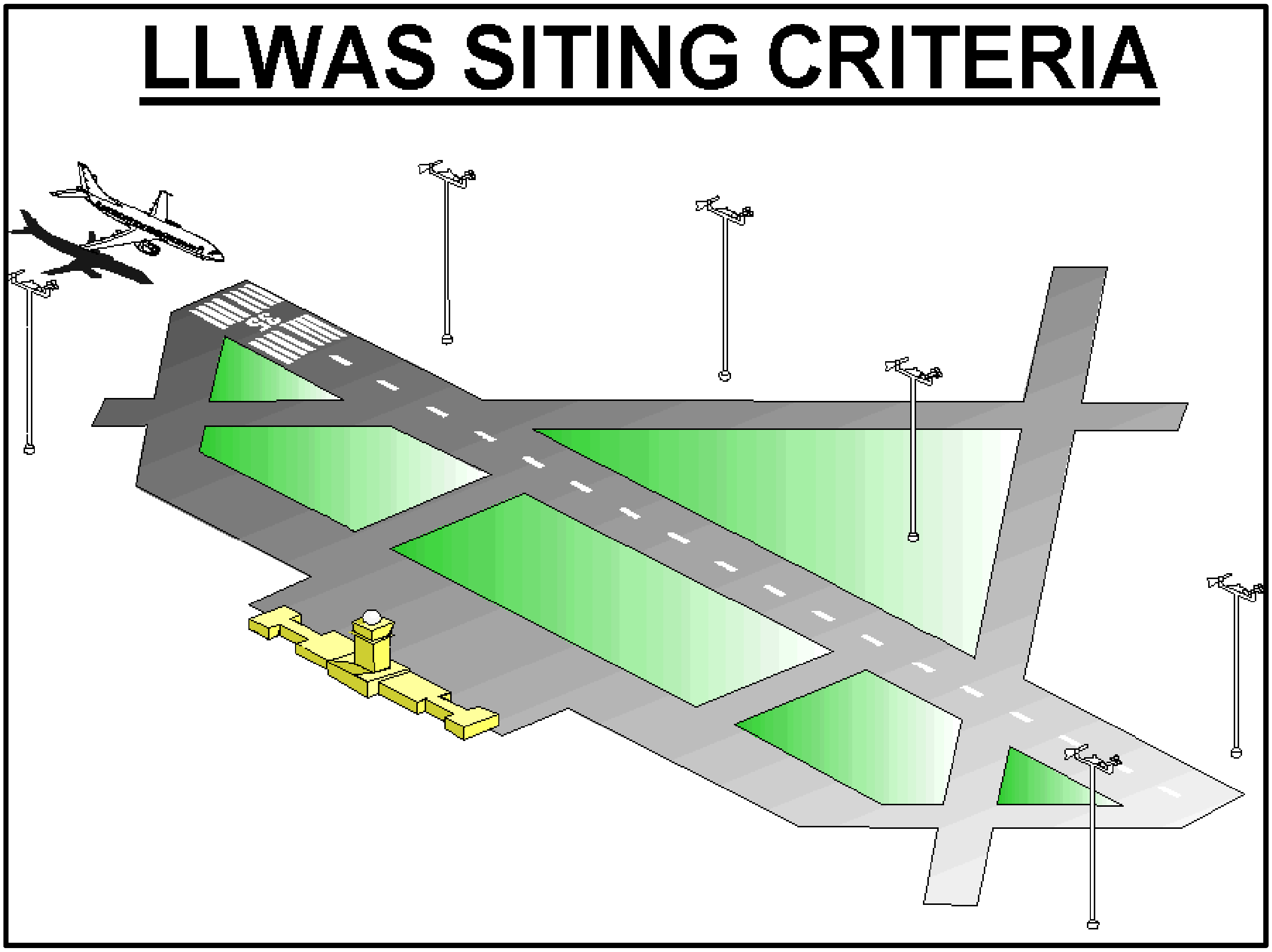
f. Detection of Microbursts, Wind Shear and Gust Fronts.

1. FAA's Integrated Wind Shear Detection Plan.

(a) The FAA currently employs an integrated plan for wind shear detection that will significantly improve both the safety and capacity of the majority of the airports currently served by the air carriers. This plan integrates several programs, such as the Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS), Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR), Weather Systems Processor (WSP), and Low Level Wind Shear Alert Systems (LLWAS) into a single strategic concept that significantly improves the aviation weather information in the terminal area. (See FIG 7−1−14.)

(b) The wind shear/microburst information and warnings are displayed on the ribbon display terminals (RBDT) located in the tower cabs. They are identical (and standardized) in the LLWAS, TDWR and WSP systems, and so designed that the controller does not need to interpret the data, but simply read the displayed information to the pilot. The RBDTs are constantly monitored by the controller to ensure the rapid and timely dissemination of any hazardous event(s) to the pilot.

FIG 7-1-15
LLWAS Siting Criteria

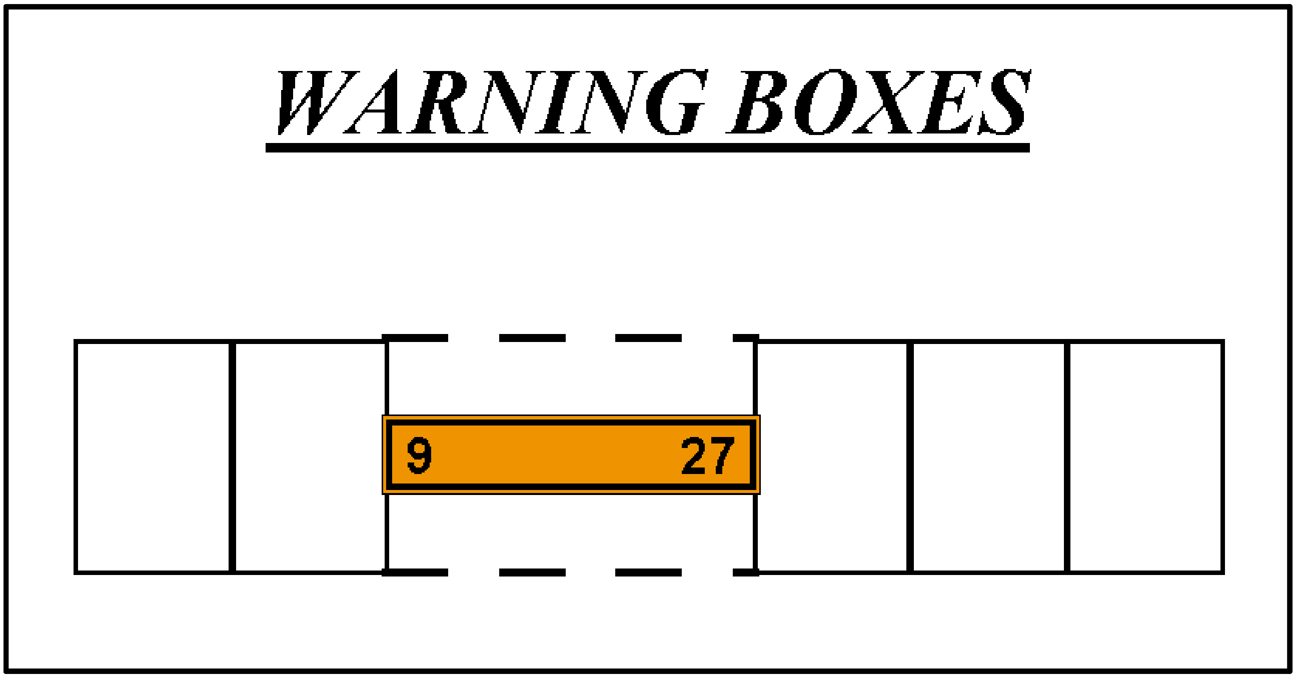


(c) The early detection of a wind shear/micro-burst event, and the subsequent warning(s) issued to an aircraft on approach or departure, will alert the pilot/crew to the potential of, and to be prepared for, a situation that could become very dangerous! Without these warnings, the aircraft may NOT be able to climb out of, or safely transition, the event, resulting in a catastrophe. The air carriers, working with the FAA, have developed specialized training programs using their simulators to train and prepare their pilots on the demanding aircraft procedures required to escape these very dangerous wind shear and/or microburst encounters.

2. Low Level Wind Shear Alert System (LLWAS).

(a) The LLWAS provides wind data and software processes to detect the presence of hazardous wind shear and microbursts in the vicinity of an airport. Wind sensors, mounted on poles sometimes as high as 150 feet, are (ideally) located 2,000 − 3,500 feet, but not more than 5,000 feet, from the centerline of the runway. (See FIG 7-1-15.)

FIG 7-1-16
Warning Boxes



(b) LLWAS was fielded in 1988 at 110 airports across the nation. Many of these systems have been replaced by new TDWR and WSP technology. While all legacy LLWAS systems will eventually be phased out, 39 airports will be upgraded to LLWAS-NE (Network Expansion) system. The new LLWAS-NE systems not only provide the controller with wind shear warnings and alerts, including wind shear/microburst detection at the airport wind sensor location, but also provide the location of the hazards relative to the airport runway(s). It also has the flexibility and capability to grow with the airport as new runways are built. As many as 32 sensors, strategically located around the airport and in relationship to its runway configuration, can be accommodated by the LLWAS-NE network.

3. Terminal Doppler Weather Radar (TDWR).

(a) TDWRs have been deployed at 45 locations across the U.S. Optimum locations for TDWRs are 8 to 12 miles off of the airport proper, and designed to look at the airspace around and over the airport to detect microbursts, gust fronts, wind shifts, and precipitation intensities. TDWR products advise the controller of wind shear and microburst events impacting all runways and the areas $^1/_2$ mile on either side of the extended centerline of the runways out to 3 miles on final approach and 2 miles out on departure. (FIG 7-1-16 is a theoretical view of the warning boxes, including the runway, that the software uses in determining the location(s) of wind shear or microbursts). These warnings are displayed (as depicted in the examples in subparagraph 5) on the RBDT.

(b) It is very important to understand what TDWR does NOT DO:

(1) It **DOES NOT** warn of wind shear outside of the alert boxes (on the arrival and departure ends of the runways);

(2) It **DOES NOT** detect wind shear that is NOT a microburst or a gust front;

(3) It **DOES NOT** detect gusty or cross wind conditions; and

(4) It **DOES NOT** detect turbulence.

However, research and development is continuing on these systems. Future improvements may include such areas as storm motion (movement), improved gust front detection, storm growth and decay, microburst prediction, and turbulence detection.

(c) TDWR also provides a geographical situation display (GSD) for supervisors and traffic management specialists for planning purposes. The GSD displays (in color) 6 levels of weather (precipitation), gust fronts and predicted storm movement(s). This data is used by the tower supervisor(s), traffic management specialists and controllers to plan for runway changes and arrival/departure route changes in order to both reduce aircraft delays and increase airport capacity.

4. Weather Systems Processor (WSP).

(a) The WSP provides the controller, supervisor, traffic management specialist, and ultimately the pilot, with the same products as the terminal doppler weather radar (TDWR) at a fraction of the cost of a TDWR. This is accomplished by utilizing new technologies to access the weather channel capabilities of the existing ASR−9 radar located on or near the airport, thus eliminating the requirements for a separate radar location, land acquisition, support facilities and the associated communication landlines and expenses.

(b) The WSP utilizes the same RBDT display as the TDWR and LLWAS, and, just like TDWR, also has a GSD for planning purposes by supervisors, traffic management specialists and controllers. The WSP GSD emulates the TDWR display, i.e., it also depicts 6 levels of precipitation, gust fronts and predicted storm movement, and like the TDWR GSD, is used to plan for runway changes and arrival/departure route changes in order to reduce aircraft delays and to increase airport capacity.

(c) This system is installed at 34 airports across the nation, substantially increasing the safety of flying.

5. Operational aspects of LLWAS, TDWR and WSP.

To demonstrate how this data is used by both the controller and the pilot, 3 ribbon display examples and their explanations are presented:

(a) MICROBURST ALERTS

EXAMPLE−
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A MBA 35K− 2MF 250 20

NOTE−
(See FIG 7−1−17 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the microburst location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

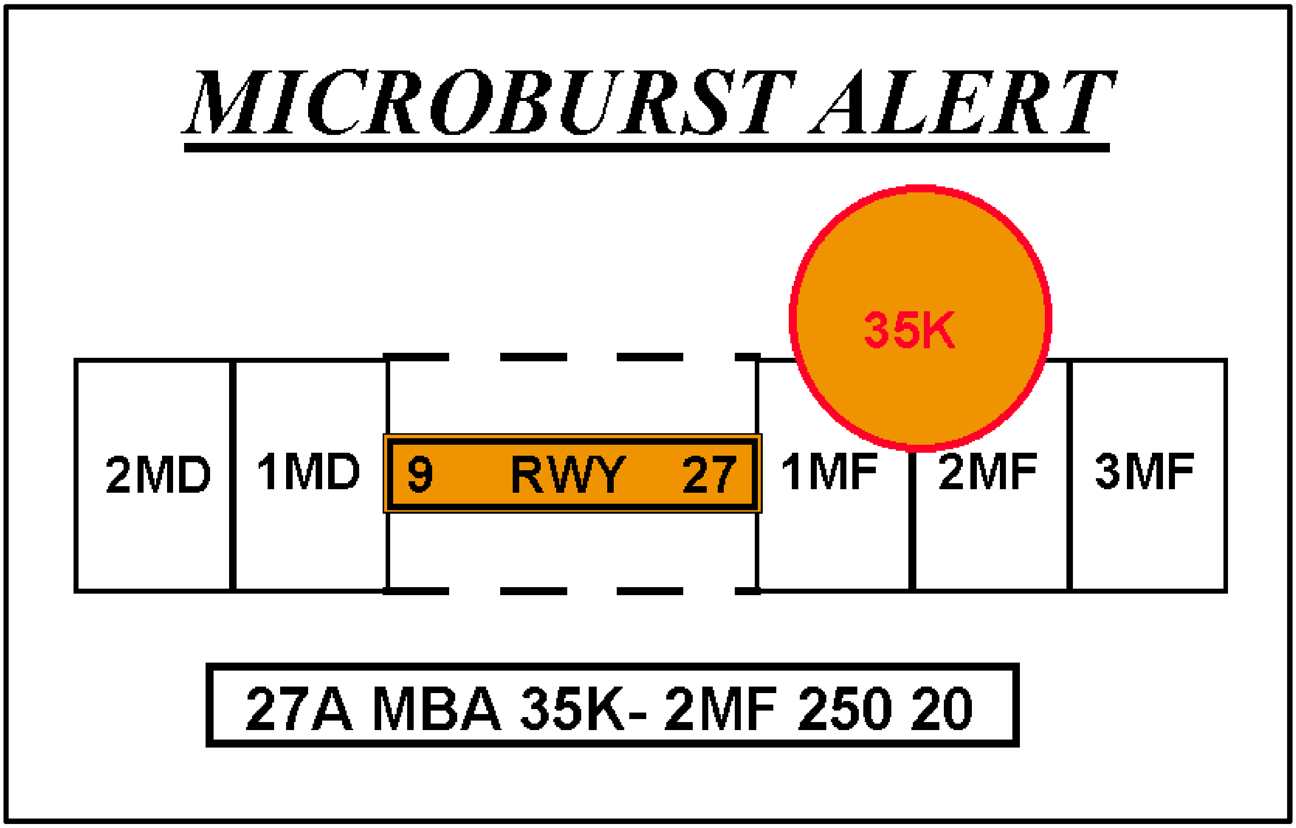
PHRASEOLOGY−
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, MICROBURST ALERT, 35 KT LOSS 2 MILE FINAL, THRESHOLD WIND 250 AT 20.

In plain language, the controller is telling the pilot that on approach to runway 27, there is a microburst alert on the approach lane to the runway, and to anticipate or expect a 35 knot loss of airspeed at approximately 2 miles out on final approach (where it will first encounter the phenomena). With that information, the aircrew is forewarned, and should be prepared to apply wind shear/microburst escape procedures should they decide to continue the approach. Additionally, the surface winds at the airport for landing runway 27 are reported as 250 degrees at 20 knots.

NOTE−
Threshold wind is at pilot's request or as deemed appropriate by the controller.

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−8b2(a), Air Traffic Control, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories.

FIG 7-1-17
Microburst Alert



(b) **WIND SHEAR ALERTS**

EXAMPLE–
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A WSA 20K– 3MF 200 15

NOTE–
(See FIG 7-1-18 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the wind shear location).

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY–
RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT LOSS 3 MILE FINAL, THRESHOLD WIND 200 AT 15.

In plain language, the controller is advising the aircraft arriving on runway 27 that at about 3 miles out they can expect to encounter a wind shear condition that will decrease their airspeed by 20 knots and possibly encounter turbulence. Additionally, the airport surface winds for landing runway 27 are reported as 200 degrees at 15 knots.

NOTE–
Threshold wind is at pilot's request or as deemed appropriate by the controller.

REFERENCE–
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories, Paragraph 3-1-8b2(a).

FIG 7-1-18
Weak Microburst Alert

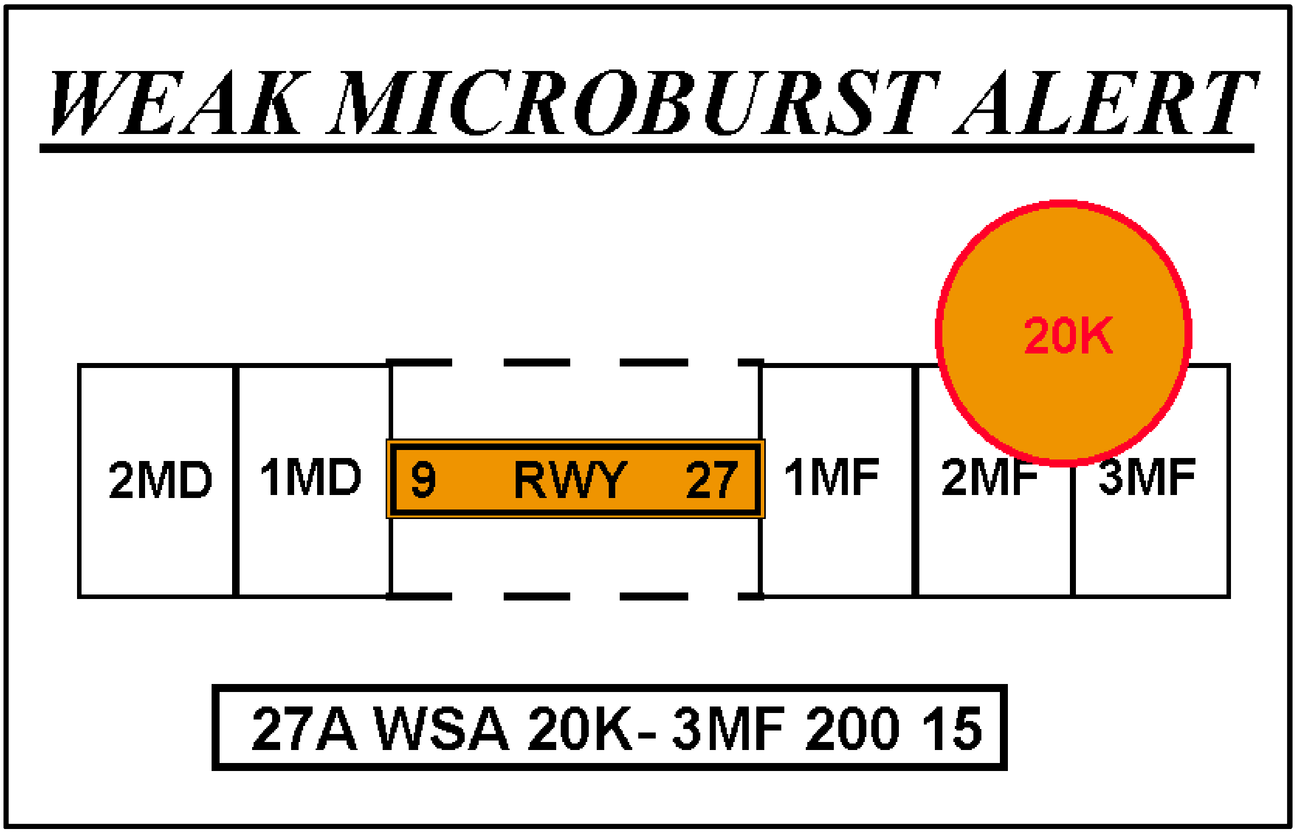
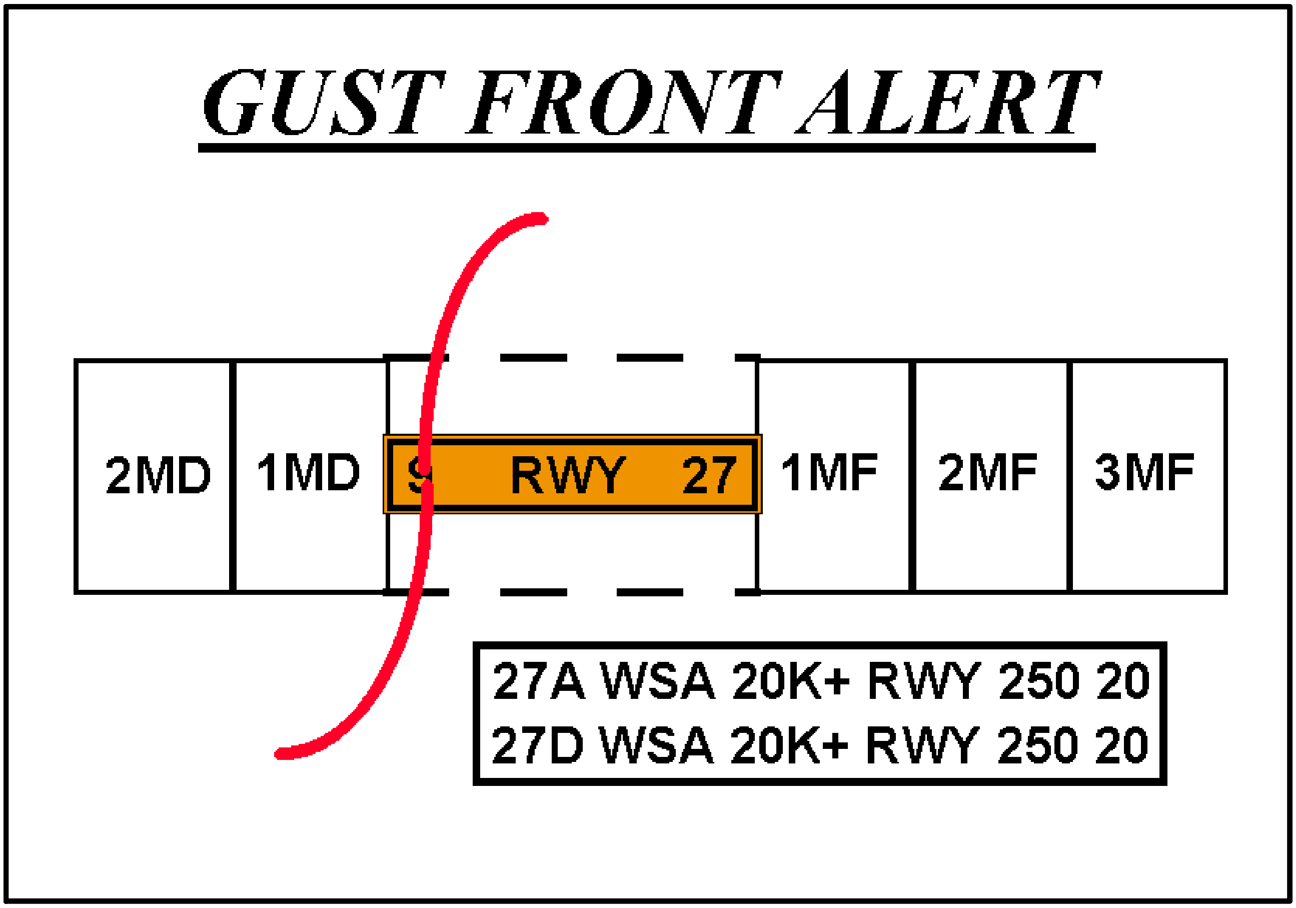


FIG 7−1−19

Gust Front Alert



(c) **MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR ALERTS**

EXAMPLE−
This is what the controller sees on his/her ribbon display in the tower cab.

27A WSA 20K+ RWY 250 20
27D WSA 20K+ RWY 250 20

NOTE−
(See FIG 7−1−19 to see how the TDWR/WSP determines the gust front/wind shear location.)

This is what the controller will say when issuing the alert.

PHRASEOLOGY−
MULTIPLE WIND SHEAR ALERTS. RUNWAY 27 ARRIVAL, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT GAIN ON RUNWAY; RUNWAY 27 DEPARTURE, WIND SHEAR ALERT, 20 KT GAIN ON RUNWAY, WIND 250 AT 20.

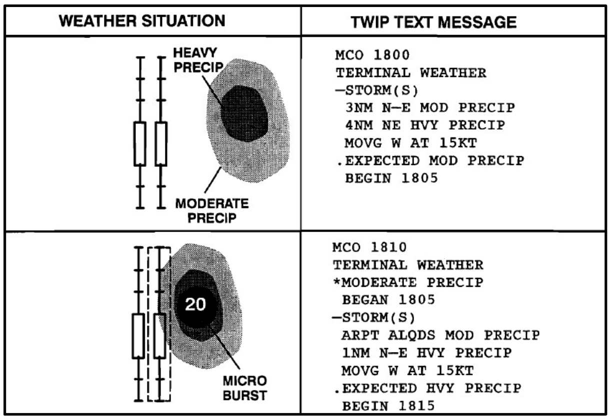
EXAMPLE−
In this example, the controller is advising arriving and departing aircraft that they could encounter a wind shear condition right on the runway due to a gust front (significant change of wind direction) with the possibility of a 20 knot gain in airspeed associated with the gust front. Additionally, the airport surface winds (for the runway in use) are reported as 250 degrees at 20 knots.

REFERENCE−
FAA Order 7110.65, Air Traffic Control, Low Level Wind Shear/Microburst Advisories, Paragraph 3−1−8b2(d).

6. The Terminal Weather Information for Pilots System (TWIP).

(a) With the increase in the quantity and quality of terminal weather information available through TDWR, the next step is to provide this information directly to pilots rather than relying on voice communications from ATC. The National Airspace System has long been in need of a means of delivering terminal weather information to the cockpit more efficiently in terms of both speed and accuracy to enhance pilot awareness of weather hazards and reduce air traffic controller workload. With the TWIP capability, terminal weather information, both alphanumerically and graphically, is now available directly to the cockpit at 43 airports in the U.S. NAS. (See FIG 7−1−20.)

FIG 7−1−20
TWIP Image of Convective Weather at MCO International



(b) TWIP products are generated using weather data from the TDWR or the Integrated Terminal Weather System (ITWS). These products can then be accessed by pilots using the Aircraft Communications Addressing and Reporting System (ACARS) data link services. Airline dispatchers can also access this database and send messages to specific aircraft whenever wind shear activity begins or ends at an airport.

(c) TWIP products include descriptions and character graphics of microburst alerts, wind shear alerts, significant precipitation, convective activity within 30 NM surrounding the terminal area, and expected weather that will impact airport operations. During inclement weather, i.e., whenever a predetermined level of precipitation or wind shear is detected within 15 miles of the terminal area, TWIP products are updated once each minute for text messages and once every five minutes for character graphic messages. During good weather (below the predetermined precipitation or wind shear parameters) each message is updated every 10 minutes. These products are intended to improve the situational awareness of the pilot/flight crew, and to aid in flight planning prior to arriving or departing the terminal area. It is important to understand that, in the context of TWIP, the predetermined levels for inclement versus good weather has nothing to do with the criteria for VFR/MVFR/IFR/LIFR; it only deals with precipitation, wind shears and microbursts.

TBL 7−1−10
TWIP−Equipped Airports

Airport	**Identifier**
Andrews AFB, MD	KADW
Hartsfield−Jackson Atlanta Intl Airport	KATL
Nashville Intl Airport	KBNA
Logan Intl Airport	KBOS
Baltimore/Washington Intl Airport	KBWI
Hopkins Intl Airport	KCLE
Charlotte/Douglas Intl Airport	KCLT
Port Columbus Intl Airport	KCMH
Cincinnati/Northern Kentucky Intl Airport	KCVG
Dallas Love Field Airport	KDAL
James M. Cox Intl Airport	KDAY
Ronald Reagan Washington National Airport	KDCA
Denver Intl Airport	KDEN
Dallas−Fort Worth Intl Airport	KDFW
Detroit Metro Wayne County Airport	KDTW
Newark Liberty Intl Airport	KEWR
Fort Lauderdale−Hollywood Intl Airport	KFLL
William P. Hobby Airport	KHOU
Washington Dulles Intl Airport	KIAD
George Bush Intercontinental Airport	KIAH
Wichita Mid−Continent Airport	KICT
Indianapolis Intl Airport	KIND
John F. Kennedy Intl Airport	KJFK
LaGuardia Airport	KLGA
Kansas City Intl Airport	KMCI
Orlando Intl Airport	KMCO
Midway Intl Airport	KMDW
Memphis Intl Airport	KMEM
Miami Intl Airport	KMIA
General Mitchell Intl Airport	KMKE
Minneapolis St. Paul Intl Airport	KMSP
Louis Armstrong New Orleans Intl Airport	KMSY
Will Rogers World Airport	KOKC
O'Hare Intl Airport	KORD
Palm Beach Intl Airport	KPBI

Airport	Identifier
Philadelphia Intl Airport	KPHL
Pittsburgh Intl Airport	KPIT
Raleigh−Durham Intl Airport	KRDU
Louisville Intl Airport	KSDF
Salt Lake City Intl Airport	KSLC
Lambert−St. Louis Intl Airport	KSTL
Tampa Intl Airport	KTPA
Tulsa Intl Airport	KTUL

7−1−25. PIREPs Relating to Volcanic Ash Activity

a. Volcanic eruptions which send ash into the upper atmosphere occur somewhere around the world several times each year. Flying into a volcanic ash cloud can be extremely dangerous. At least two B747s have lost all power in all four engines after such an encounter. Regardless of the type aircraft, some damage is almost certain to ensue after an encounter with a volcanic ash cloud. Additionally, studies have shown that volcanic eruptions are the only significant source of large quantities of sulphur dioxide (SO_2) gas at jet-cruising altitudes. Therefore, the detection and subsequent reporting of SO_2 is of significant importance. Although SO_2 is colorless, its presence in the atmosphere should be suspected when a sulphur-like or rotten egg odor is present throughout the cabin.

b. While some volcanoes in the U.S. are monitored, many in remote areas are not. These unmonitored volcanoes may erupt without prior warning to the aviation community. A pilot observing a volcanic eruption who has not had previous notification of it may be the only witness to the eruption. Pilots are strongly encouraged to transmit a PIREP regarding volcanic eruptions and any observed volcanic ash clouds or detection of sulphur dioxide (SO_2) gas associated with volcanic activity.

c. Pilots should submit PIREPs regarding volcanic activity using the Volcanic Activity Reporting (VAR) form as illustrated in Appendix 2. If a VAR form is not immediately available, relay enough information to identify the position and type of volcanic activity.

d. Pilots should verbally transmit the data required in items 1 through 8 of the VAR as soon as possible. The data required in items 9 through 16 of the VAR should be relayed after landing if possible.

7−1−26. Thunderstorms

a. Turbulence, hail, rain, snow, lightning, sustained updrafts and downdrafts, icing conditions−all are present in thunderstorms. While there is some evidence that maximum turbulence exists at the middle level of a thunderstorm, recent studies show little variation of turbulence intensity with altitude.

b. There is no useful correlation between the external visual appearance of thunderstorms and the severity or amount of turbulence or hail within them. The visible thunderstorm cloud is only a portion of a turbulent system whose updrafts and downdrafts often extend far beyond the visible storm cloud. Severe turbulence can be expected up to 20 miles from severe thunderstorms. This distance decreases to about 10 miles in less severe storms.

c. Weather radar, airborne or ground based, will normally reflect the areas of moderate to heavy precipitation (radar does not detect turbulence). The frequency and severity of turbulence generally increases with the radar reflectivity which is closely associated with the areas of highest liquid water content of the storm. NO FLIGHT PATH THROUGH AN AREA OF STRONG OR VERY STRONG RADAR ECHOES SEPARATED BY 20−30 MILES OR LESS MAY BE CONSIDERED FREE OF SEVERE TURBULENCE.

d. Turbulence beneath a thunderstorm should not be minimized. This is especially true when the relative humidity is low in any layer between the surface and 15,000 feet. Then the lower altitudes may be characterized by strong out flowing winds and severe turbulence.

e. The probability of lightning strikes occurring to aircraft is greatest when operating at altitudes where temperatures are between minus 5 degrees Celsius and plus 5 degrees Celsius. Lightning can strike aircraft flying in the clear in the vicinity of a thunderstorm.

f. METAR reports do not include a descriptor for severe thunderstorms. However, by understanding severe thunderstorm criteria, i.e., 50 knot winds or $^3/_4$ inch hail, the information is available in the report to know that one is occurring.

g. Current weather radar systems are able to objectively determine precipitation intensity. These precipitation intensity areas are described as "light," "moderate," "heavy," and "extreme."

REFERENCE−
Pilot/Controller Glossary− Precipitation Radar Weather Descriptions

EXAMPLE−
1. *Alert provided by an ATC facility to an aircraft:*
(aircraft identification) EXTREME precipitation between ten o'clock and two o'clock, one five miles. Precipitation area is two five miles in diameter.

2. *Alert provided by an FSS:*
(aircraft identification) EXTREME precipitation two zero miles west of Atlanta V−O−R, two five miles wide, moving east at two zero knots, tops flight level three niner zero.

7−1−27. Thunderstorm Flying

a. Thunderstorm Avoidance. Never regard any thunderstorm lightly, even when radar echoes are of light intensity. Avoiding thunderstorms is the best policy. Following are some Do's and Don'ts of thunderstorm avoidance:

1. Don't land or takeoff in the face of an approaching thunderstorm. A sudden gust front of low level turbulence could cause loss of control.

2. Don't attempt to fly under a thunderstorm even if you can see through to the other side. Turbulence and wind shear under the storm could be hazardous.

3. Don't attempt to fly under the anvil of a thunderstorm. There is a potential for severe and extreme clear air turbulence.

4. Don't fly without airborne radar into a cloud mass containing scattered embedded thunderstorms. Scattered thunderstorms not embedded usually can be visually circumnavigated.

5. Don't trust the visual appearance to be a reliable indicator of the turbulence inside a thunderstorm.

6. Don't assume that ATC will offer radar navigation guidance or deviations around thunderstorms.

7. Don't use data-linked weather next generation weather radar (NEXRAD) mosaic imagery as the sole means for negotiating a path through a thunderstorm area (tactical maneuvering).

8. Do remember that the data−linked NEXRAD mosaic imagery shows where the weather was, not where the weather is. The weather conditions depicted may be 15 to 20 minutes older than indicated on the display.

9. Do listen to chatter on the ATC frequency for Pilot Weather Reports (PIREP) and other aircraft requesting to deviate or divert.

10. Do ask ATC for radar navigation guidance or to approve deviations around thunderstorms, if needed.

11. Do use data-linked weather NEXRAD mosaic imagery (for example, Flight Information Service-Broadcast (FIS-B)) for route selection to avoid thunderstorms entirely (strategic maneuvering).

12. Do advise ATC, when switched to another controller, that you are deviating for thunderstorms before accepting to rejoin the original route.

13. Do ensure that after an authorized weather deviation, before accepting to rejoin the original route, that the route of flight is clear of thunderstorms.

14. Do avoid by at least 20 miles any thunderstorm identified as severe or giving an intense radar echo. This is especially true under the anvil of a large cumulonimbus.

15. Do circumnavigate the entire area if the area has 6/10 thunderstorm coverage.

16. Do remember that vivid and frequent lightning indicates the probability of a severe thunderstorm.

17. Do regard as extremely hazardous any thunderstorm with tops 35,000 feet or higher whether the top is visually sighted or determined by radar.

18. Do give a PIREP for the flight conditions.

19. Do divert and wait out the thunderstorms on the ground if unable to navigate around an area of thunderstorms.

20. Do contact Flight Service for assistance in avoiding thunderstorms. Flight Service specialists have NEXRAD mosaic radar imagery and NEXRAD single site radar with unique features such as base and composite reflectivity, echo tops, and VAD wind profiles.

b. If you cannot avoid penetrating a thunderstorm, following are some Do's before entering the storm:

1. Tighten your safety belt, put on your shoulder harness (if installed), if and secure all loose objects.

2. Plan and hold the course to take the aircraft through the storm in a minimum time.

3. To avoid the most critical icing, establish a penetration altitude below the freezing level or above the level of -15ºC.

4. Verify that pitot heat is on and turn on carburetor heat or jet engine anti-ice. Icing can be rapid at any altitude and cause almost instantaneous power failure and/or loss of airspeed indication.

5. Establish power settings for turbulence penetration airspeed recommended in the aircraft manual.

6. Turn up cockpit lights to highest intensity to lessen temporary blindness from lightning.

7. If using automatic pilot, disengage Altitude Hold Mode and Speed Hold Mode. The automatic altitude and speed controls will increase maneuvers of the aircraft thus increasing structural stress.

8. If using airborne radar, tilt the antenna up and down occasionally. This will permit the detection of other thunderstorm activity at altitudes other than the one being flown.

c. Following are some Do's and Don'ts during the thunderstorm penetration:

1. Do keep your eyes on your instruments. Looking outside the cockpit can increase danger of temporary blindness from lightning.

2. Don't change power settings; maintain settings for the recommended turbulence penetration airspeed.

3. Do maintain constant attitude. Allow the altitude and airspeed to fluctuate.

4. Don't turn back once you are in the thunderstorm. A straight course through the storm most likely will get the aircraft out of the hazards most quickly. In addition, turning maneuvers increase stress on the aircraft.

"Reported Temperature" row. Round this number as applicable and then add to the final MA altitude only.

(b) Aircraft with temperature compensating system: If flying an aircraft equipped with a system capable of temperature compensation, follow the instructions for applying temperature compensation provided in the AFM, AFM supplement, or system operating manual. Ensure the temperature compensation system is on and active prior to the segment(s) being corrected. Manually calculate an altimetry correction for the MDA or DA. Determine an altimetry correction from the ICAO table based on the reported airport temperature and the height difference between the MDA or DA, as applicable, and the airport elevation, or use the compensating system to calculate a temperature corrected altitude for the published MDA or DA if able.

f. Acceptable Use of Table for manual CTA altitude correction: (See TBL 7−3−1.) Pilots may calculate a correction with a visual interpolation of the chart when using reported temperature and height above airport. This calculated altitude correction may then be rounded to the nearest whole hundred or rounded up. For example, a correction of 130 ft. from the chart may be rounded to 100 ft. or 200 ft. A correction of 280 ft. will be rounded up to 300 ft. This rounded correction will be added to the appropriate altitudes for the "Individual" or "All" segment method. The correction calculated from the table for the MDA or DA may be used as is or rounded up, but never rounded down. This number will be added to the MDA, DA, and all step−down fixes inside of the FAF as applicable.

1. No extrapolation above the 5000 ft. column is required. Pilots may use the 5000 ft. "height above airport in feet" column for calculating corrections when the calculated altitude is greater than 5000 ft. above reporting station elevation. Pilots must add the correction(s) from the table to the affected segment altitude(s) and fly at the new corrected altitude. Do not round down when using the 5000 ft. column for calculated height above airport values greater than 5000 ft. Pilots may extrapolate above the 5000 ft. column to apply a correction if desired.

2. These techniques have been adopted to minimize pilot distraction by limiting the number of entries into the table when making corrections. Although not all altitudes on the approach will be corrected back to standard day values, a safe distance above the terrain/obstacle will be maintained on the corrected approach segment(s). Pilots may calculate a correction for each fix based on the fix altitude if desired.

NOTE−
Pilots may use Real Time Mesoscale Analysis (RTMA): Alternate Report of Surface Temperature, for computing altitude corrections, when airport temperatures are not available via normal reporting. The RTMA website is http://nomads.ncep.noaa.gov/pub/data/nccf/com/rtma/prod/airport_temps/.

g. Communication: Pilots must request approval from ATC whenever applying a cold temperature altitude correction. Pilots do not need to inform ATC of the final approach segment correction (i.e., new MDA or DA). This request should be made on initial radio contact with the ATC facility issuing the approach clearance. ATC requires this information in order to ensure appropriate vertical separation between known traffic. Pilots should query ATC when vectored altitudes to a segment are lower than the requested corrected altitude. Pilots are encouraged to self−announce corrected altitude when flying into a non−towered airfield.

1. The following are examples of appropriate pilot−to−ATC communication when applying cold−temperature altitude corrections.

(a) On initial check−in with ATC providing approach clearance: Missoula, MT (example below).

- Vectors to final approach course: Outside of IAFs: "*Request 9700 ft. for cold temperature operations.*"

- Vectors to final approach course: Inside of ODIRE: "*Request 7300 ft. for cold temperature operations.*"

- Missed Approach segment: "*Require final holding altitude, 12500 ft. on missed approach for cold temperature operations.*"

(b) Pilots cleared by ATC for an instrument approach procedure; "Cleared the RNAV (GPS) Y RWY 12 approach (from any IAF)". Missoula, MT (example below).

- IAF: "*Request 9700 ft. for cold temperature operations at LANNY, CHARL, or ODIRE.*"

7−3−6. Examples for Calculating Altitude Corrections on CTAs

All 14 CFR Part 97 IAPs must be corrected at an airport. The following example provides the steps for correcting the different segments of an approach and will be applied to all 14 CFR Part 97 IAPs:

a. Missoula Intl (KMSO). Reported Temperature −12°C: RNAV (GPS) Y RWY 12.

1. All Segments Method: All segments corrected from IAF through MA holding altitude.

(a) Manual Calculation:

(1) Cold Temperature Restricted Airport Temperature Limit: −12°C.

(2) Altitude at the Final Approach Fix (FAF) (SUPPY) = 6200 ft.

(3) Airport elevation = 3206 ft.

(4) Difference: 6200 ft. – 3206 ft. = 2994 ft.

(5) Use TBL 7−3−1, ICAO Cold Temperature Error Table, a height above airport of 2994 ft. and −12°C. Visual interpolation is approximately 300 ft. Actual interpolation is 300 ft.

(6) Add 300 ft. to the FAF and all procedure altitudes outside of the FAF up to and including IAF altitude(s):

[a] LANNY (IAF), CHARL (IAF), and ODIRE (IAF Holding−in−Lieu): 9400 + 300 = 9700 ft.

[b] CALIP (stepdown fix): 7000 + 300 = 7300 ft.

[c] SUPPY (FAF): 6200 + 300 = 6500 ft.

(7) Correct altitudes within the final segment altitude based on the minima used. LP MDA = 4520 ft.

(8) Difference: 4520 ft. – 3206 ft. = 1314 ft.

(9) AIM 7−3−1 Table: 1314 ft. at −12°C is approximately 150ft. Use 150 ft. or round up to 200 ft.

(10) Add corrections to altitudes up to but not including the FAF:

[a] BEGPE (stepdown fix): 4840 + 150 = 4990 ft.

[b] LNAV MDA: 4520 + 150 = 4670 ft.

(11) Correct JENKI/Missed Approach Holding Altitude: MA altitude is 12000:

[a] JENKI: 12000 − 3206 = 8794 ft.

(12) Table 7−3−1: 8794 ft. at −12°C. Enter table at −12°C and intersect the 5000 ft. height above airport column. The approximate value is 500 ft.

(13) Add correction to holding fix final altitude:

[a] JENKI: 12000 + 500 = 12500 ft.

b. Temperature Compensating System: Operators using a temperature compensating RNAV system to make altitude corrections will be set to the current airport temperature (−12°C) and activated prior to passing the IAF. A manual calculation of the cold temperature altitude correction is required for the MDA/DA.

1. Individual Segments Method: Missoula requires correction in the intermediate and final segments. However, in this example, the missed approach is also shown.

(a) Manual Calculation: Use the appropriate steps in the All Segments Method above to apply a correction to the required segment.

(1) Intermediate. Use steps 7−3−6 a. 1. (a) (1) thru (6). Do not correct the IAF or IF when using individual segments method.

(2) Final. Use steps 7−3−6 a. 1. (a) (7) thru (10).

(3) Missed Approach. Use steps 7−3−6 a, 1. (a) (11) thru (13).

(b) Temperature Compensating System: Operators using a temperature compensating RNAV system to make altitude corrections will be set to the current airport temperature (−12°C) and activated at a point needed to correct the altitude for the segment. A manual calculation of the cold temperature altitude correction is required for the MDA/DA.

Section 6. Potential Flight Hazards

7−6−1. Accident Cause Factors

a. The 10 most frequent cause factors for general aviation accidents that involve the pilot-in-command are:

1. Inadequate preflight preparation and/or planning.

2. Failure to obtain and/or maintain flying speed.

3. Failure to maintain direction control.

4. Improper level off.

5. Failure to see and avoid objects or obstructions.

6. Mismanagement of fuel.

7. Improper inflight decisions or planning.

8. Misjudgment of distance and speed.

9. Selection of unsuitable terrain.

10. Improper operation of flight controls.

b. This list remains relatively stable and points out the need for continued refresher training to establish a higher level of flight proficiency for all pilots. A part of the FAA's continuing effort to promote increased aviation safety is the Aviation Safety Program. For information on Aviation Safety Program activities contact your nearest Flight Standards District Office.

c. Alertness. Be alert at all times, especially when the weather is good. Most pilots pay attention to business when they are operating in full IFR weather conditions, but strangely, air collisions almost invariably have occurred under ideal weather conditions. Unlimited visibility appears to encourage a sense of security which is not at all justified. Considerable information of value may be obtained by listening to advisories being issued in the terminal area, even though controller workload may prevent a pilot from obtaining individual service.

d. Giving Way. If you think another aircraft is too close to you, give way instead of waiting for the other pilot to respect the right-of-way to which you may be entitled. It is a lot safer to pursue the right-of-way angle after you have completed your flight.

7−6−2. VFR in Congested Areas

A high percentage of near midair collisions occur below 8,000 feet AGL and within 30 miles of an airport. When operating VFR in these highly congested areas, whether you intend to land at an airport within the area or are just flying through, it is recommended that extra vigilance be maintained and that you monitor an appropriate control frequency. Normally the appropriate frequency is an approach control frequency. By such monitoring action you can "get the picture" of the traffic in your area. When the approach controller has radar, radar traffic advisories may be given to VFR pilots upon request.

REFERENCE−
AIM, Paragraph 4−1−15, Radar Traffic Information Service

7−6−3. Obstructions To Flight

a. General. Many structures exist that could significantly affect the safety of your flight when operating below 500 feet AGL, and particularly below 200 feet AGL. While 14 CFR Part 91.119 allows flight below 500 AGL when over sparsely populated areas or open water, such operations are very dangerous. At and below 200 feet AGL there are numerous power lines, antenna towers, etc., that are not marked and lighted as obstructions and; therefore, may not be seen in time to avoid a collision. Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs) are issued on those lighted structures experiencing temporary light outages. However, some time may pass before the FAA is notified of these outages, and the NOTAM issued, thus pilot vigilance is imperative.

b. Antenna Towers. Extreme caution should be exercised when flying less than 2,000 feet AGL because of numerous skeletal structures, such as radio and television antenna towers, that exceed 1,000 feet AGL with some extending higher than 2,000 feet AGL. Most skeletal structures are supported by guy wires which are very difficult to see in good weather and can be invisible at dusk or during periods of reduced visibility. These wires can extend about 1,500 feet horizontally from a structure; therefore, all skeletal structures should be avoided horizontally by at least 2,000 feet. Additionally, new towers may not be on your current chart because the information was not received prior to the printing of the chart.

c. Overhead Wires. Overhead transmission and utility lines often span approaches to runways, natural flyways such as lakes, rivers, gorges, and canyons, and cross other landmarks pilots frequently follow such as highways, railroad tracks, etc. As with antenna towers, these high voltage/power lines or the supporting structures of these lines may not always be readily visible and the wires may be virtually impossible to see under certain conditions. In some locations, the supporting structures of overhead transmission lines are equipped with unique sequence flashing white strobe light systems to indicate that there are wires between the structures. However, many power lines do not require notice to the FAA and, therefore, are not marked and/or lighted. Many of those that do require notice do not exceed 200 feet AGL or meet the Obstruction Standard of 14 CFR Part 77 and, therefore, are not marked and/or lighted. All pilots are cautioned to remain extremely vigilant for these power lines or their supporting structures when following natural flyways or during the approach and landing phase. This is particularly important for seaplane and/or float equipped aircraft when landing on, or departing from, unfamiliar lakes or rivers.

d. Other Objects/Structures. There are other objects or structures that could adversely affect your flight such as construction cranes near an airport, newly constructed buildings, new towers, etc. Many of these structures do not meet charting requirements or may not yet be charted because of the charting cycle. Some structures do not require obstruction marking and/or lighting and some may not be marked and lighted even though the FAA recommended it.

7−6−4. Avoid Flight Beneath Unmanned Balloons

a. The majority of unmanned free balloons currently being operated have, extending below them, either a suspension device to which the payload or instrument package is attached, or a trailing wire antenna, or both. In many instances these balloon subsystems may be invisible to the pilot until the aircraft is close to the balloon, thereby creating a potentially dangerous situation. Therefore, good judgment on the part of the pilot dictates that aircraft should remain well clear of all unmanned free balloons and flight below them should be avoided at all times.

b. Pilots are urged to report any unmanned free balloons sighted to the nearest FAA ground facility with which communication is established. Such information will assist FAA ATC facilities to identify and flight follow unmanned free balloons operating in the airspace.

7−6−5. Unmanned Aircraft Systems

a. Unmanned Aircraft Systems (UAS), formerly referred to as "Unmanned Aerial Vehicles" (UAVs) or "drones," are having an increasing operational presence in the NAS. Once the exclusive domain of the military, UAS are now being operated by various entities. Although these aircraft are "unmanned," UAS are flown by a remotely located pilot and crew. Physical and performance characteristics of unmanned aircraft (UA) vary greatly and unlike model aircraft that typically operate lower than 400 feet AGL, UA may be found operating at virtually any altitude and any speed. Sizes of UA can be as small as several pounds to as large as a commercial transport aircraft. UAS come in various categories including airplane, rotorcraft, powered−lift (tilt−rotor), and lighter−than−air. Propulsion systems of UAS include a broad range of alternatives from piston powered and turbojet engines to battery and solar−powered electric motors.

b. To ensure segregation of UAS operations from other aircraft, the military typically conducts UAS operations within restricted or other special use airspace. However, UAS operations are now being approved in the NAS outside of special use airspace through the use of FAA−issued Certificates of Waiver or Authorization (COA) or through the issuance of a special airworthiness certificate. COA and special airworthiness approvals authorize UAS flight operations to be contained within specific geographic boundaries and altitudes, usually require coordination with an ATC facility, and typically require the issuance of a NOTAM describing the operation to be conducted. UAS approvals also require observers to provide "see−and−avoid" capability to the UAS crew and to provide the necessary compliance with 14 CFR Section 91.113. For UAS operations approved at or above FL180, UAS operate under the same requirements as that of manned aircraft (i.e., flights

7−6−11. Precipitation Static

a. Precipitation static is caused by aircraft in flight coming in contact with uncharged particles. These particles can be rain, snow, fog, sleet, hail, volcanic ash, dust; any solid or liquid particles. When the aircraft strikes these neutral particles the positive element of the particle is reflected away from the aircraft and the negative particle adheres to the skin of the aircraft. In a very short period of time a substantial negative charge will develop on the skin of the aircraft. If the aircraft is not equipped with static dischargers, or has an ineffective static discharger system, when a sufficient negative voltage level is reached, the aircraft may go into "CORONA." That is, it will discharge the static electricity from the extremities of the aircraft, such as the wing tips, horizontal stabilizer, vertical stabilizer, antenna, propeller tips, etc. This discharge of static electricity is what you will hear in your headphones and is what we call P−static.

b. A review of pilot reports often shows different symptoms with each problem that is encountered. The following list of problems is a summary of many pilot reports from many different aircraft. Each problem was caused by P−static:

1. Complete loss of VHF communications.

2. Erroneous magnetic compass readings (30 percent in error).

3. High pitched squeal on audio.

4. Motor boat sound on audio.

5. Loss of all avionics in clouds.

6. VLF navigation system inoperative most of the time.

7. Erratic instrument readouts.

8. Weak transmissions and poor receptivity of radios.

9. "St. Elmo's Fire" on windshield.

c. Each of these symptoms is caused by one general problem on the airframe. This problem is the inability of the accumulated charge to flow easily to the wing tips and tail of the airframe, and properly discharge to the airstream.

d. Static dischargers work on the principal of creating a relatively easy path for discharging negative charges that develop on the aircraft by using a discharger with fine metal points, carbon coated rods, or carbon wicks rather than wait until a large charge is developed and discharged off the trailing edges of the aircraft that will interfere with avionics equipment. This process offers approximately 50 decibels (dB) static noise reduction which is adequate in most cases to be below the threshold of noise that would cause interference in avionics equipment.

e. It is important to remember that precipitation static problems can only be corrected with the proper number of quality static dischargers, properly installed on a properly bonded aircraft. P−static is indeed a problem in the all weather operation of the aircraft, but there are effective ways to combat it. All possible methods of reducing the effects of P−static should be considered so as to provide the best possible performance in the flight environment.

f. A wide variety of discharger designs is available on the commercial market. The inclusion of well−designed dischargers may be expected to improve airframe noise in P−static conditions by as much as 50 dB. Essentially, the discharger provides a path by which accumulated charge may leave the airframe quietly. This is generally accomplished by providing a group of tiny corona points to permit onset of corona−current flow at a low aircraft potential. Additionally, aerodynamic design of dischargers to permit corona to occur at the lowest possible atmospheric pressure also lowers the corona threshold. In addition to permitting a low−potential discharge, the discharger will minimize the radiation of radio frequency (RF) energy which accompanies the corona discharge, in order to minimize effects of RF components at communications and navigation frequencies on avionics performance. These effects are reduced through resistive attachment of the corona point(s) to the airframe, preserving direct current connection but attenuating the higher−frequency components of the discharge.

g. Each manufacturer of static dischargers offers information concerning appropriate discharger location on specific airframes. Such locations emphasize the trailing outboard surfaces of wings and horizontal tail surfaces, plus the tip of the vertical stabilizer, where charge tends to accumulate on the airframe.

Sufficient dischargers must be provided to allow for current−carrying capacity which will maintain airframe potential below the corona threshold of the trailing edges.

h. In order to achieve full performance of avionic equipment, the static discharge system will require periodic maintenance. A pilot knowledgeable of P−static causes and effects is an important element in assuring optimum performance by early recognition of these types of problems.

7−6−12. Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation (Laser) Operations and Reporting Illumination of Aircraft

a. Lasers have many applications. Of concern to users of the National Airspace System are those laser events that may affect pilots, e.g., outdoor laser light shows or demonstrations for entertainment and advertisements at special events and theme parks. Generally, the beams from these events appear as bright blue−green in color; however, they may be red, yellow, or white. However, some laser systems produce light which is invisible to the human eye.

b. FAA regulations prohibit the disruption of aviation activity by any person on the ground or in the air. The FAA and the Food and Drug Administration (the Federal agency that has the responsibility to enforce compliance with Federal requirements for laser systems and laser light show products) are working together to ensure that operators of these devices do not pose a hazard to aircraft operators.

c. Pilots should be aware that illumination from these laser operations are able to create temporary vision impairment miles from the actual location. In addition, these operations can produce permanent eye damage. Pilots should make themselves aware of where these activities are being conducted and avoid these areas if possible.

d. Recent and increasing incidents of unauthorized illumination of aircraft by lasers, as well as the proliferation and increasing sophistication of laser devices available to the general public, dictates that the FAA, in coordination with other government agencies, take action to safeguard flights from these unauthorized illuminations.

e. Pilots should report laser illumination activity to the controlling Air Traffic Control facilities, Federal Contract Towers or Flight Service Stations as soon as possible after the event. The following information should be included:

1. UTC Date and Time of Event.

2. Call Sign or Aircraft Registration Number.

3. Type Aircraft.

4. Nearest Major City.

5. Altitude.

6. Location of Event (Latitude/Longitude and/or Fixed Radial Distance (FRD)).

7. Brief Description of the Event and any other Pertinent Information.

f. Pilots are also encouraged to complete the Laser Beam Exposure Questionnaire located on the FAA Laser Safety Initiative website at http://www.faa.gov/about/initiatives/lasers/ and submit electronically per the directions on the questionnaire, as soon as possible after landing.

g. When a laser event is reported to an air traffic facility, a general caution warning will be broadcasted on all appropriate frequencies every five minutes for 20 minutes and broadcasted on the ATIS for one hour following the report.

PHRASEOLOGY−
UNAUTHORIZED LASER ILLUMINATION EVENT, (UTC time), (location), (altitude), (color), (direction).

EXAMPLE−
"Unauthorized laser illumination event, at 0100z, 8 mile final runway 18R at 3,000 feet, green laser from the southwest."

REFERENCE−
FAA Order JO 7110.65, Paragraph 10−2−14, Unauthorized Laser Illumination of Aircraft
FAA Order JO 7210.3, Paragraph 2−1−27, Reporting Unauthorized Laser Illumination of Aircraft

h. When these activities become known to the FAA, Notices to Air Missions (NOTAMs) are issued to inform the aviation community of the events. Pilots should consult NOTAMs or the Special Notices section of the Chart Supplement U.S. for information regarding these activities.

7−6−16. Space Launch and Reentry Area

Locations where commercial space launch and/or reentry operations occur. Hazardous operations occur in space launch and reentry areas, and for pilot awareness, a rocket−shaped symbol is used to depict them on sectional aeronautical charts. These locations may have vertical launches from launch pads, horizontal launches from runways, and/or reentering vehicles coming back to land. Because of the wide range of hazards associated with space launch and reentry areas, pilots are expected to check NOTAMs for the specific area prior to flight to determine the location and lateral boundaries of the associated hazard area, and the active time. NOTAMs may include terms such as “rocket launch activity,” “space launch,” or “space reentry,” depending upon the type of operation. Space launch and reentry areas are not established for amateur rocket operations conducted per 14 CFR Part 101.

FIG 7−6−3

Space Launch and Reentry Area Depicted on a Sectional Chart

Chapter 9. Aeronautical Charts and Related Publications

Section 1. Types of Charts Available

9−1−1. General

Civil aeronautical charts for the U.S. and its territories, and possessions are produced by Aeronautical Information Services (AIS), http://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav which is part of FAA's Air Traffic Organization, Mission Support Services.

9−1−2. Obtaining Aeronautical Charts

Public sales of charts and publications are available through a network of FAA approved print providers. A listing of products, dates of latest editions and agents is available on the AIS website at: http://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav.

9−1−3. Selected Charts and Products Available

VFR Navigation Charts
IFR Navigation Charts
Planning Charts
Supplementary Charts and Publications
Digital Products

9−1−4. General Description of Each Chart Series

a. VFR Navigation Charts.

1. Sectional Aeronautical Charts. Sectional Charts are designed for visual navigation of slow to medium speed aircraft. The topographic information consists of contour lines, shaded relief, drainage patterns, and an extensive selection of visual checkpoints and landmarks used for flight under VFR. Cultural features include cities and towns, roads, railroads, and other distinct landmarks. The aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, special−use airspace, obstructions, and related data. Scale 1 inch = 6.86 nm/1:500,000. 60 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised every 56 days. (See FIG 9−1−1 and FIG 9−1−2.)

2. VFR Terminal Area Charts (TAC). TACs depict the airspace designated as Class B airspace. While similar to sectional charts, TACs have more detail because the scale is larger. The TAC should be used by pilots intending to operate to or from airfields within or near Class B or Class C airspace. Areas with TAC coverage are indicated by a • on the Sectional Chart indexes. Scale 1 inch = 3.43 nm/1:250,000. Revised every 56 days. (See FIG 9−1−1 and FIG 9−1−2.)

3. U.S. Gulf Coast VFR Aeronautical Chart. The Gulf Coast Chart is designed primarily for helicopter operation in the Gulf of Mexico area. Information depicted includes offshore mineral leasing areas and blocks, oil drilling platforms, and high density helicopter activity areas. Scale 1 inch = 13.7 nm/1:1,000,000. 55 x 27 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised every 56 days.

4. Grand Canyon VFR Aeronautical Chart. Covers the Grand Canyon National Park area and is designed to promote aviation safety, flight free zones, and facilitate VFR navigation in this popular area. The chart contains aeronautical information for general aviation VFR pilots on one side and commercial VFR air tour operators on the other side. Revised every 56 days.

FIG 9−1−1

Sectional and VFR Terminal Area Charts for the Conterminous U.S., Hawaii, Puerto Rico, and Virgin Islands

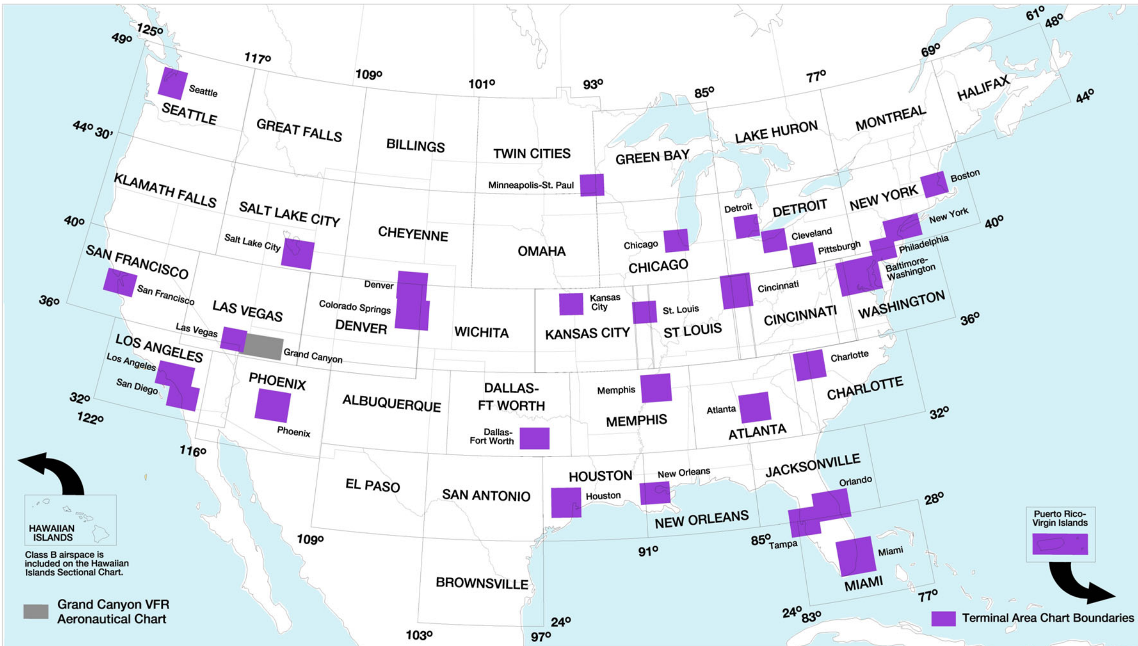
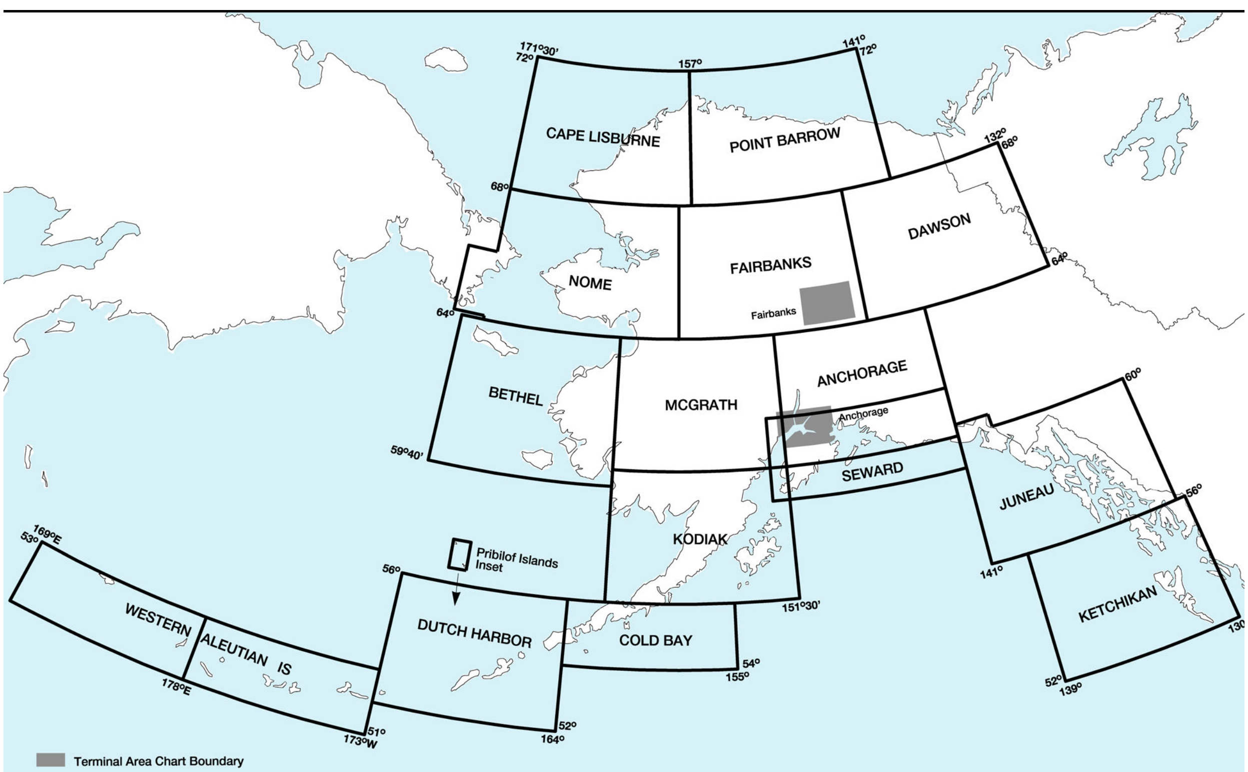


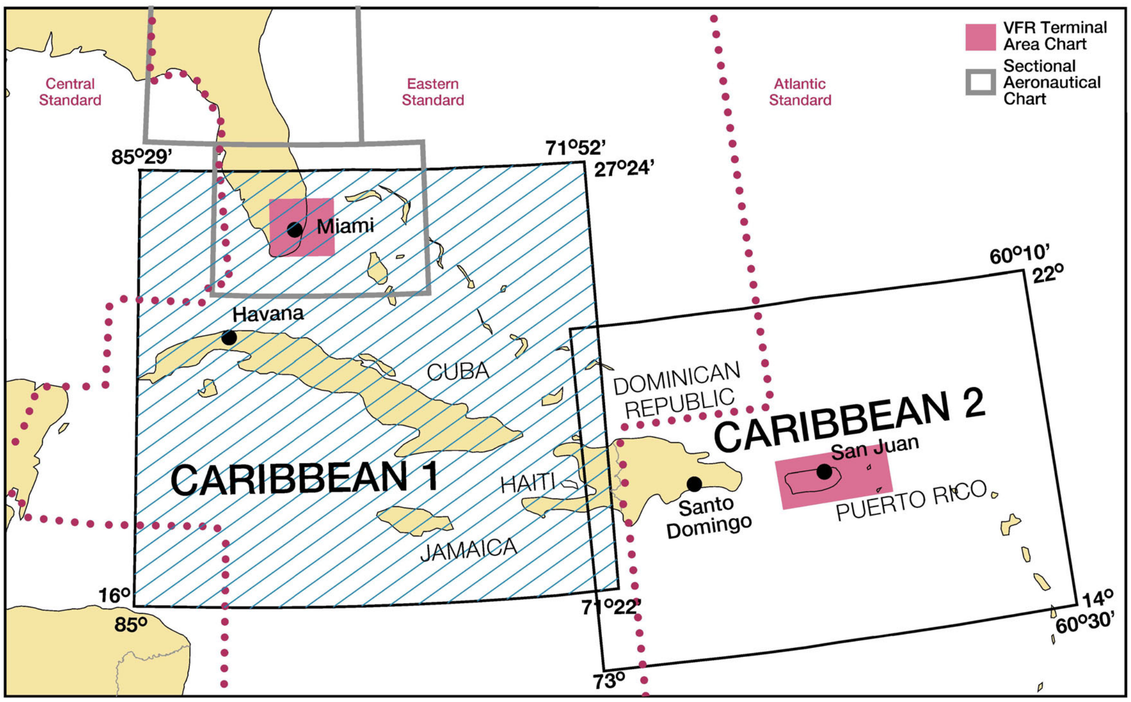
FIG 9−1−2

Sectional and VFR Terminal Area Charts for Alaska



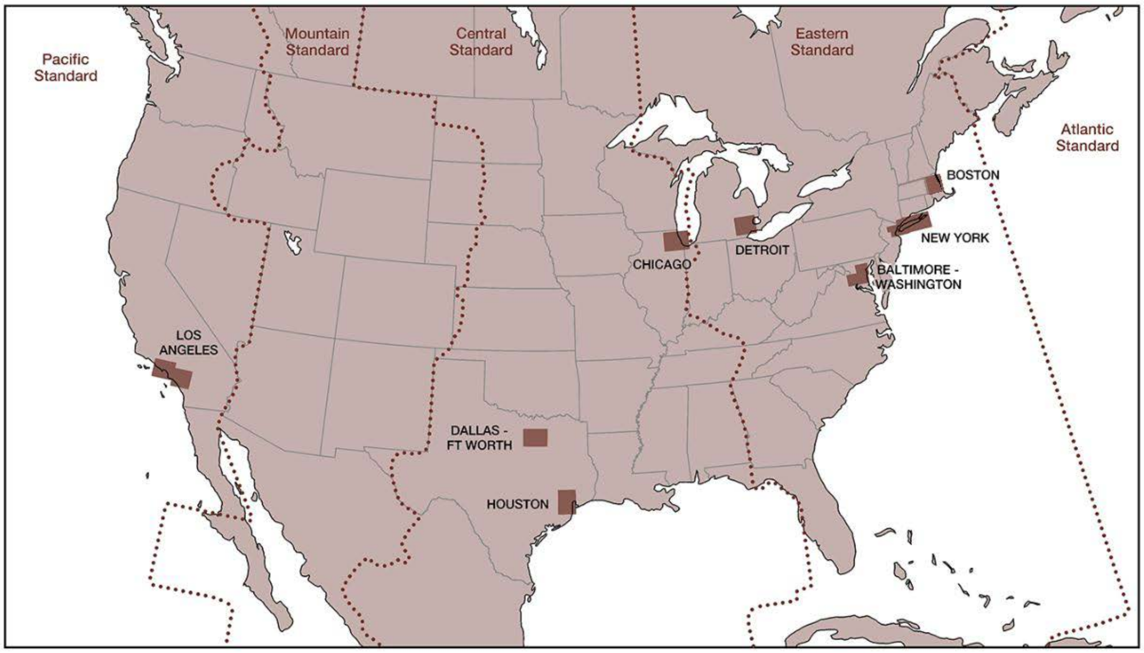
5. Caribbean VFR Aeronautical Charts. Caribbean 1 and 2 (CAC−1 and CAC−2) are designed for visual navigation to assist familiarization of foreign aeronautical and topographic information. The aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, special−use airspace, obstructions, and related data. The topographic information consists of contour lines, shaded relief, drainage patterns, and a selection of landmarks used for flight under VFR. Cultural features include cities and towns, roads, railroads, and other distinct landmarks. Scale 1 inch = 13.7 nm/1:1,000,000. CAC−1 consists of two sides measuring 30” x 60” each. CAC−2 consists of two sides measuring 20” x 60” each. Revised every 56 days. (See FIG 9−1−3.)

FIG 9−1−3
Caribbean VFR Aeronautical Charts



6. Helicopter Route Charts. A three−color chart series which shows current aeronautical information useful to helicopter pilots navigating in areas with high concentrations of helicopter activity. Information depicted includes helicopter routes, four classes of heliports with associated frequency and lighting capabilities, NAVAIDs, and obstructions. In addition, pictorial symbols, roads, and easily identified geographical features are portrayed. Scale 1 inch = 1.71 nm/1:125,000. 34 x 30 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised every 56 days. (See FIG 9−1−4.)

FIG 9−1−4
Helicopter Route Charts



b. IFR Navigation Charts.

1. IFR En Route Low Altitude Charts (Conterminous U.S. and Alaska). En route low altitude charts provide aeronautical information for navigation under IFR conditions below 18,000 feet MSL. This four−color chart series includes airways; limits of controlled airspace; VHF NAVAIDs with frequency, identification, channel, geographic coordinates; airports with terminal air/ground communications; minimum en route and obstruction clearance altitudes; airway distances; reporting points; special use airspace; and military training routes. Scales vary from 1 inch = 5nm to 1 inch = 20 nm. 50 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Charts revised every 56 days. *Area charts* show congested terminal areas at a large scale. They are included with subscriptions to any conterminous U.S. Set Low (Full set, East or West sets). (See FIG 9−1−5 and FIG 9−1−6.)

3. U.S. Terminal Procedures Publication (TPP). TPPs are published in 24 loose−leaf or perfect bound volumes covering the conterminous U.S., Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands. A Change Notice is published at the midpoint between revisions in bound volume format and is available on the internet for free download at the AIS website. (See FIG 9−1−15.) The TPPs include:

(a) Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) Charts. IAP charts portray the aeronautical data that is required to execute instrument approaches to airports. Each chart depicts the IAP, all related navigation data, communications information, and an airport sketch. Each procedure is designated for use with a specific electronic navigational aid, such as ILS, VOR, NDB, RNAV, etc.

(b) Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) Charts. DP charts are designed to expedite clearance delivery and to facilitate transition between takeoff and en route operations. They furnish pilots' departure routing clearance information in graphic and textual form.

(c) Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Charts. STAR charts are designed to expedite ATC arrival procedures and to facilitate transition between en route and instrument approach operations. They depict preplanned IFR ATC arrival procedures in graphic and textual form. Each STAR procedure is presented as a separate chart and may serve either a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographic area.

(d) Airport Diagrams. Full page airport diagrams are designed to assist in the movement of ground traffic at locations with complex runway/taxiway configurations and provide information for updating geodetic position navigational systems aboard aircraft. Airport diagrams are available for free download at the AIS website.

4. Alaska Terminal Procedures Publication. This publication contains all terminal flight procedures for civil and military aviation in Alaska. Included are IAP charts, DP charts, STAR charts, airport diagrams, radar minimums, and supplementary support data such as IFR alternate minimums, take−off minimums, rate of descent tables, rate of climb tables and inoperative components tables. Volume is 5−3/8 x 8−1/4 inch top bound. Publication revised every 56 days with provisions for a Terminal Change Notice, as required.

c. Planning Charts.

1. U.S. IFR/VFR Low Altitude Planning Chart. This chart is designed for prefight and en route flight planning for IFR/VFR flights. Depiction includes low altitude airways and mileage, NAVAIDs, airports, special use airspace, cities, times zones, major drainage, a directory of airports with their airspace classification, and a mileage table showing great circle distances between major airports. Scale 1 inch = 47nm/1:3,400,000. Chart revised annually, and is available either folded or unfolded for wall mounting. (See FIG 9−1−10.)

2. Gulf of Mexico and Caribbean Planning Chart. This is a VFR planning chart on the reverse side of the *Puerto Rico − Virgin Islands VFR Terminal Area Chart.* Information shown includes mileage between airports of entry, a selection of special use airspace and a directory of airports with their available services. Scale 1 inch = 85nm/1:6,192,178. 60 x 20 inches folded to 5 x 10 inches. Revised every 56 days. (See FIG 9−1−10.)

3. Alaska VFR Wall Planning Chart. This chart is designed for VFR preflight planning and chart selection. It includes aeronautical and topographic information of the state of Alaska. The aeronautical information includes public and military airports; radio aids to navigation; and Class B, Class C, TRSA and special−use airspace. The topographic information includes city tint, populated places, principal roads, and shaded relief. Scale 1 inch = 27.4 nm/1:2,000,000. The one sided chart is 58.5 x 40.75 inches and is designed for wall mounting. Revised annually. (See FIG 9−1−9.)

FIG 9-1-9
Alaska VFR Wall Planning Chart

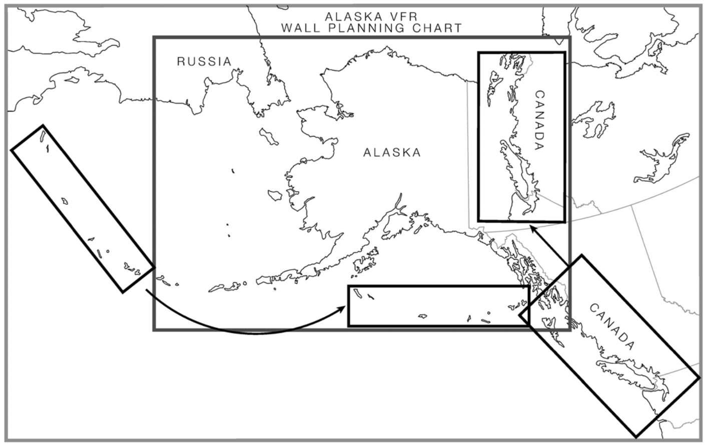
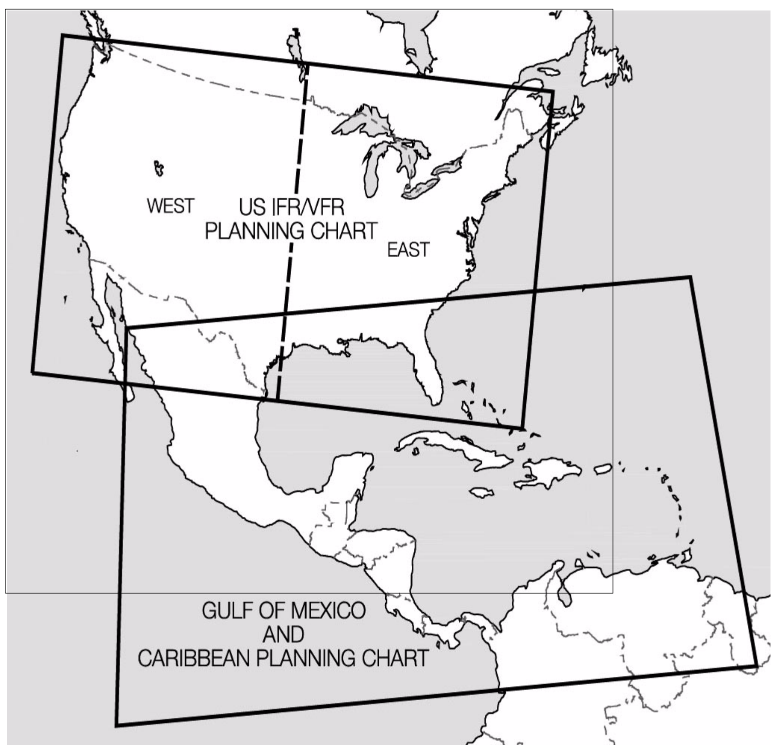


FIG 9-1-10
Planning Charts



4. U.S. VFR Wall Planning Chart. This chart is designed for VFR preflight planning and chart selection. It includes aeronautical and topographic information of the conterminous U.S. The aeronautical information includes airports, radio aids to navigation, Class B airspace and special use airspace. The topographic information includes city tint, populated places, principal roads, drainage patterns, and shaded relief. Scale 1 inch = 43 nm/ 1:3,100,000. The one−sided chart is 59 x 36 inches and ships unfolded for wall mounting. Revised annually. (See FIG 9−1−11.)

FIG 9−1−11
U.S. VFR Wall Planning Chart

5. Charted VFR Flyway Planning Charts. This chart is printed on the reverse side of selected TAC charts. The coverage is the same as the associated TAC. Flyway planning charts depict flight paths and altitudes recommended for use to bypass high traffic areas. Ground references are provided as a guide for visual orientation. Flyway planning charts are designed for use in conjunction with TACs and sectional charts and are not to be used for navigation. Chart scale 1 inch = 3.43 nm/1:250,000.

d. Supplementary Charts and Publications.

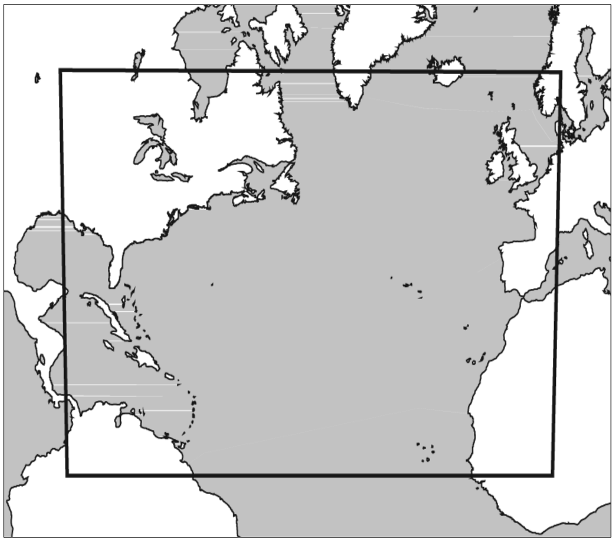
1. Chart Supplement U.S. This 7−volume booklet series contains data on airports, seaplane bases, heliports, NAVAIDs, communications data, weather data sources, airspace, special notices, and operational procedures. Coverage includes the conterminous U.S., Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands. The Chart Supplement U.S. shows data that cannot be readily depicted in graphic form; for example, airport hours of operations, types of fuel available, runway widths, lighting codes, etc. The Chart Supplement U.S. also provides a means for pilots to update visual charts between edition dates (The Chart Supplement U.S. is published every 56 days while Sectional Aeronautical and VFR Terminal Area Charts are generally revised every six months). The Aeronautical Chart Bulletins (VFR Chart Update Bulletins) are available for free download at the AIS website. Volumes are side−bound 5−3/8 x 8−1/4 inches. (See FIG 9−1−14.)

2. Chart Supplement Alaska. This is a civil/military flight information publication issued by FAA every 56 days. It is a single volume booklet designed for use with appropriate IFR or VFR charts. The Chart Supplement Alaska contains airport sketches, communications data, weather data sources, airspace, listing of navigational facilities, and special notices and procedures. Volume is side−bound 5−3/8 x 8−1/4 inches.

3. Chart Supplement Pacific. This supplement is designed for use with appropriate VFR or IFR en route charts. Included in this one−volume booklet are the chart supplement, communications data, weather data sources, airspace, navigational facilities, special notices, and Pacific area procedures. IAP charts, DP charts, STAR charts, airport diagrams, radar minimums, and supporting data for the Hawaiian and Pacific Islands are included. The manual is published every 56 days. Volume is side−bound 5−3/8 x 8−1/4 inches.

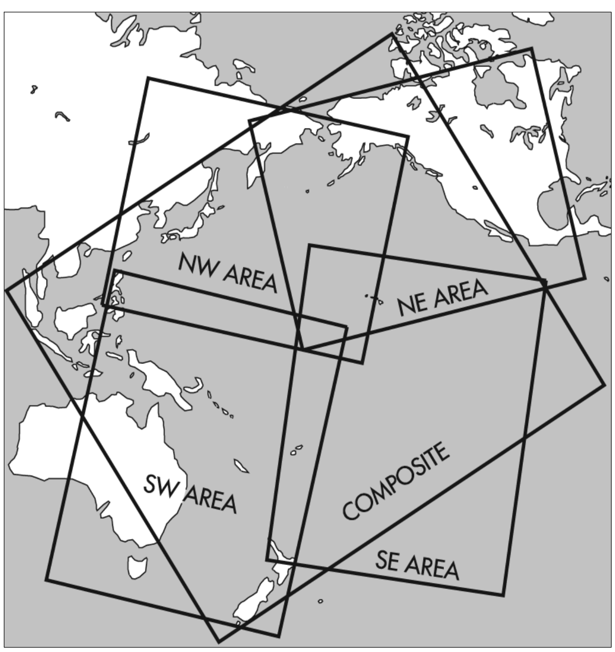
4. North Atlantic Route Chart. Designed for FAA controllers to monitor transatlantic flights, this 5−color chart shows oceanic control areas, coastal navigation aids, oceanic reporting points, and NAVAID geographic coordinates. Full Size Chart: Scale 1 inch = 113.1 nm/1:8,250,000. Chart is shipped flat only. Half Size Chart: Scale 1 inch = 150.8 nm/1:11,000,000. Chart is 29−3/4 x 20−1/2 inches, shipped folded to 5 x 10 inches only. Chart revised every 56 days. (See FIG 9−1−12.)

FIG 9−1−12
North Atlantic Route Charts



5. North Pacific Route Charts. These charts are designed for FAA controllers to monitor transoceanic flights. They show established intercontinental air routes, including reporting points with geographic positions. Composite Chart: Scale 1 inch = 164 nm/1:12,000,000. 48 x 41−1/2 inches. Area Charts: Scale 1 inch = 95.9 nm/1:7,000,000. 52 x 40−1/2 inches. All charts shipped unfolded. Charts revised every 56 days. (See FIG 9−1−13.)

FIG 9−1−13
North Pacific Oceanic Route Charts



6. Airport Obstruction Charts (OC). The OC is a 1:12,000 scale graphic depicting 14 CFR Part 77, Objects Affecting Navigable Airspace, surfaces, a representation of objects that penetrate these surfaces, aircraft movement and apron areas, navigational aids, prominent airport buildings, and a selection of roads and other planimetric detail in the airport vicinity. Also included are tabulations of runway and other operational data.

7. FAA Aeronautical Chart User's Guide. A booklet designed to be used as a teaching aid and reference document. It describes the substantial amount of information provided on FAA's aeronautical charts and publications. It includes explanations and illustrations of chart terms and symbols organized by chart type. The users guide is available for free download at the AIS website.

e. Digital Products.

1. The Digital Aeronautical Information CD (DAICD). The DAICD is a combination of the NAVAID Digital Data File, the Digital Chart Supplement, and the Digital Obstacle File on one Compact Disk. These three digital products are no longer sold separately. The files are updated every 56 days and are available by subscription only.

(a) The NAVAID Digital Data File. This file contains a current listing of NAVAIDs that are compatible with the National Airspace System. This file contains all NAVAIDs including ILS and its components, in the U.S., Puerto Rico, and the Virgin Islands plus bordering facilities in Canada, Mexico, and the Atlantic and Pacific areas.

(b) The Digital Obstacle File. This file describes all obstacles of interest to aviation users in the U.S., with limited coverage of the Pacific, Caribbean, Canada, and Mexico. The obstacles are assigned unique numerical identifiers, accuracy codes, and listed in order of ascending latitude within each state or area.

2. The Coded Instrument Flight Procedures (CIFP) (ARINC 424 [Ver 13 & 15]). The CIFP is a basic digital dataset, modeled to an international standard, which can be used as a basis to support GPS navigation. Initial data elements included are: Airport and Helicopter Records, VHF and NDB Navigation aids, en route waypoints and airways. Additional data elements will be added in subsequent releases to include: departure procedures, standard terminal arrivals, and GPS/RNAV instrument approach procedures. The database is updated every 28 days. The data is available by subscription only and is distributed on CD−ROM or by ftp download.

3. digital−Visual Charts (d−VC). These digital VFR charts are geo−referenced images of FAA Sectional Aeronautical, TAC, and Helicopter Route charts. Additional digital data may easily be overlaid on the raster image using commonly available Geographic Information System software. Data such as weather, temporary flight restrictions, obstacles, or other geospatial data can be combined with d−VC data to support a variety of needs. The file resolution is 300 dots per inch and the data is 8−bit color. The data is provided as a GeoTIFF and distributed on DVD−R media and on the AIS website. The root mean square error of the transformation will not exceed two pixels. Digital−VCs are updated every 56 days and are available by subscription only.

FIG 9−1−14
Chart Supplement U.S. Geographic Areas

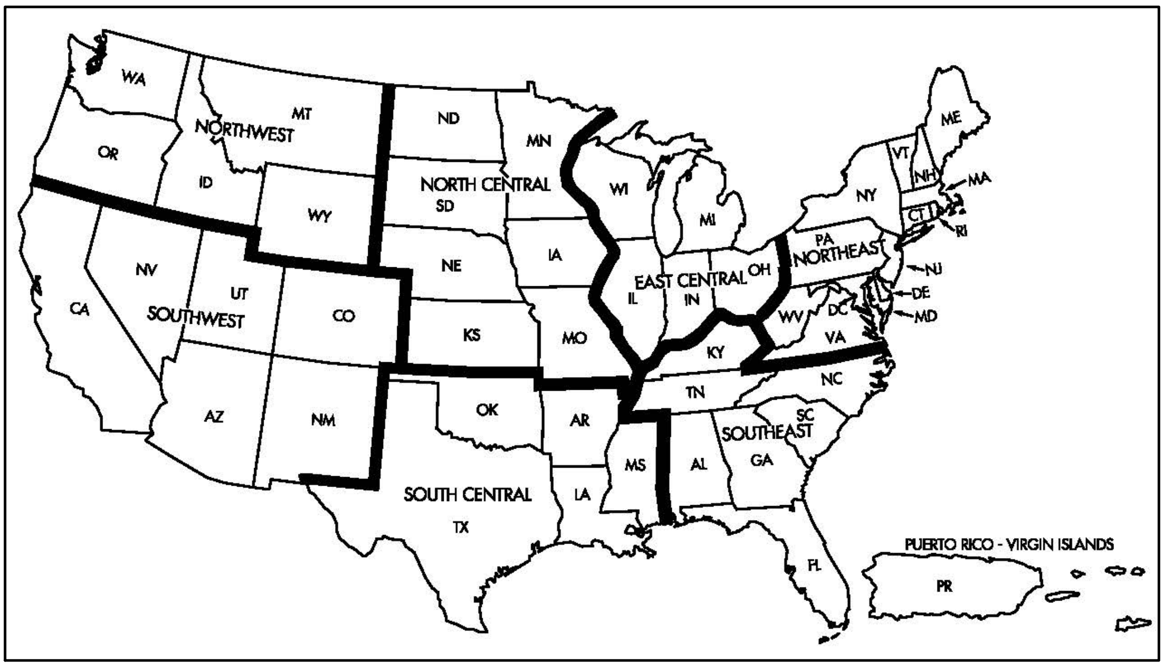
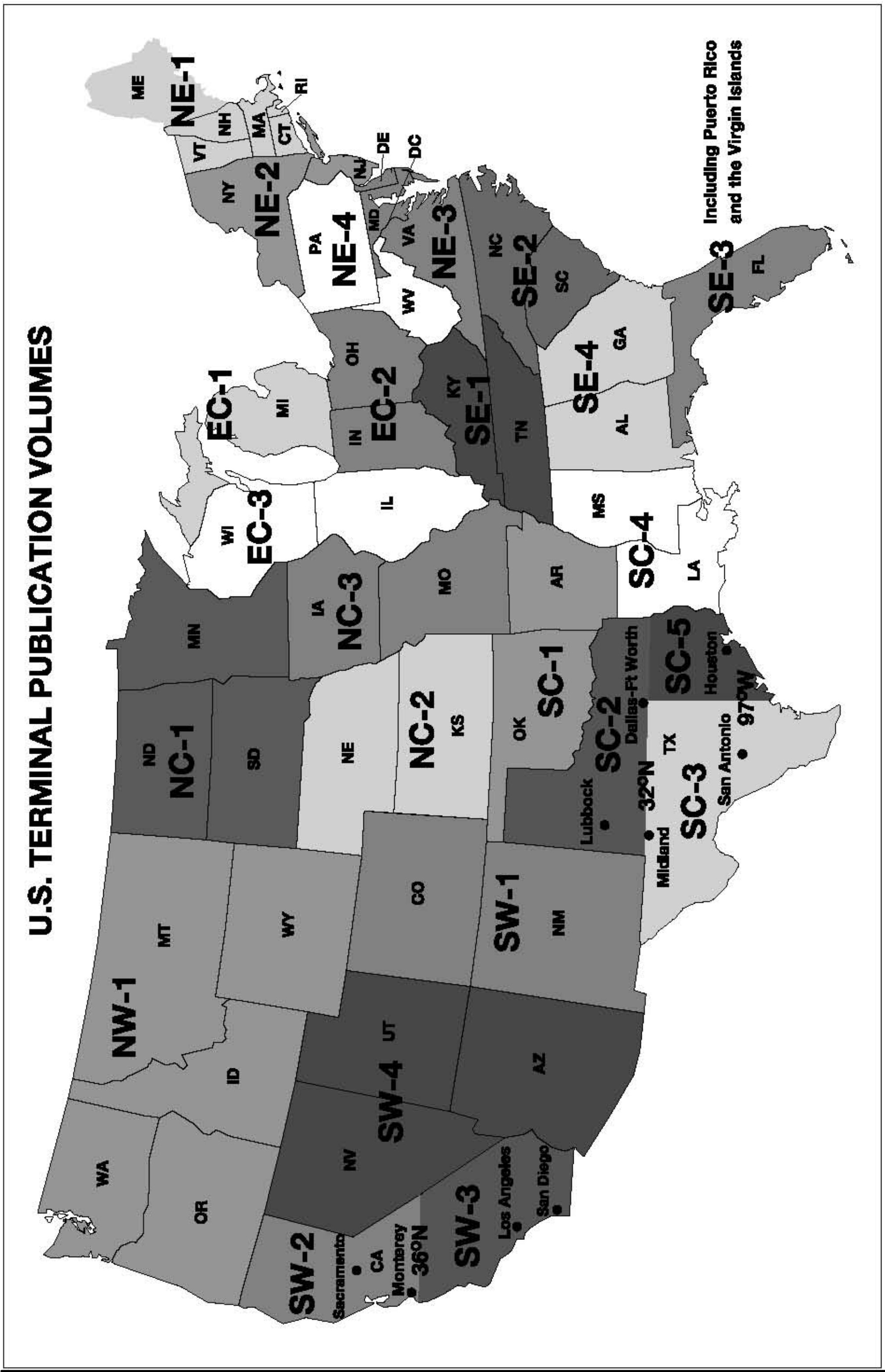


FIG 9-1-15
U.S. Terminal Publication Volumes



Chapter 10. Helicopter Operations

Section 1. Helicopter IFR Operations

10−1−1. Helicopter Flight Control Systems

a. The certification requirements for helicopters to operate under Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) are contained in 14 CFR Part 27, Airworthiness Standards: Normal Category Rotorcraft, and 14 CFR Part 29, Airworthiness Standards: Transport Category Rotorcraft. To meet these requirements, helicopter manufacturers usually utilize a set of stabilization and/or Automatic Flight Control Systems (AFCSs).

b. Typically, these systems fall into the following categories:

1. Aerodynamic surfaces, which impart some stability or control capability not found in the basic VFR configuration.

2. Trim systems, which provide a cyclic centering effect. These systems typically involve a magnetic brake/spring device, and may also be controlled by a four−way switch on the cyclic. This is a system that supports "hands on" flying of the helicopter by the pilot.

3. Stability Augmentation Systems (SASs), which provide short−term rate damping control inputs to increase helicopter stability. Like trim systems, SAS supports "hands on" flying.

4. Attitude Retention Systems (ATTs), which return the helicopter to a selected attitude after a disturbance. Changes in desired attitude can be accomplished usually through a four−way "beep" switch, or by actuating a "force trim" switch on the cyclic, setting the attitude manually, and releasing. Attitude retention may be a SAS function, or may be the basic "hands off" autopilot function.

5. Autopilot Systems (APs), which provide for "hands off" flight along specified lateral and vertical paths, including heading, altitude, vertical speed, navigation tracking, and approach. These systems typically have a control panel for mode selection, and system for indication of mode status. Autopilots may or may not be installed with an associated Flight Director System (FD). Autopilots typically control the helicopter about the roll and pitch axes (cyclic control) but may also include yaw axis (pedal control) and collective control servos.

6. FDs, which provide visual guidance to the pilot to fly specific selected lateral and vertical modes of operation. The visual guidance is typically provided as either a "dual cue" (commonly known as a "cross−pointer") or "single cue" (commonly known as a "vee−bar") presentation superimposed over the attitude indicator. Some FDs also include a collective cue. The pilot manipulates the helicopter's controls to satisfy these commands, yielding the desired flight path, or may couple the flight director to the autopilot to perform automatic flight along the desired flight path. Typically, flight director mode control and indication is shared with the autopilot.

c. In order to be certificated for IFR operation, a specific helicopter may require the use of one or more of these systems, in any combination.

d. In many cases, helicopters are certificated for IFR operations with either one or two pilots. Certain equipment is required to be installed and functional for two pilot operations, and typically, additional equipment is required for single pilot operation. These requirements are usually described in the limitations section of the Rotorcraft Flight Manual (RFM).

e. In addition, the RFM also typically defines systems and functions that are required to be in operation or engaged for IFR flight in either the single or two pilot configuration. Often, particularly in two pilot operation, this level of augmentation is less than the full capability of the installed systems. Likewise, single pilot operation may require a higher level of augmentation.

f. The RFM also identifies other specific limitations associated with IFR flight. Typically, these limitations include, but are not limited to:

1. Minimum equipment required for IFR flight (in some cases, for both single pilot and two pilot operations).

2. Vmini (minimum speed − IFR).

NOTE–
The manufacturer may also recommend a minimum IFR airspeed during instrument approach.

3. Vnei (never exceed speed – IFR).

4. Maximum approach angle.

5. Weight and center of gravity limits.

6. Aircraft configuration limitations (such as aircraft door positions and external loads).

7. Aircraft system limitations (generators, inverters, etc.).

8. System testing requirements (many avionics and AFCS/AP/FD systems incorporate a self–test feature).

9. Pilot action requirements (such as the pilot must have his/her hands and feet on the controls during certain operations, such as during instrument approach below certain altitudes).

g. It is very important that pilots be familiar with the IFR requirements for their particular helicopter. Within the same make, model and series of helicopter, variations in the installed avionics may change the required equipment or the level of augmentation for a particular operation.

h. During flight operations, pilots must be aware of the mode of operation of the augmentation systems, and the control logic and functions employed. For example, during an ILS approach using a particular system in the three–cue mode (lateral, vertical and collective cues), the flight director *collective cue* responds to glideslope deviation, while the horizontal bar of the "cross–pointer" responds to airspeed deviations. The same system, while flying an ILS in the two–cue mode, provides for the *horizontal bar* to respond to glideslope deviations. This concern is particularly significant when operating using two pilots. Pilots should have an established set of procedures and responsibilities for the control of flight director/autopilot modes for the various phases of flight. Not only does a full understanding of the system modes provide for a higher degree of accuracy in control of the helicopter, it is the basis for crew identification of a faulty system.

i. Relief from the prohibition to takeoff with any inoperative instruments or equipment may be provided through a Minimum Equipment List (see 14 CFR Section 91.213 and 14 CFR Section 135.179, Inoperative Instruments and Equipment). In many cases, a helicopter configured for single pilot IFR may depart IFR with certain equipment inoperative, provided a crew of two pilots is used. Pilots are cautioned to ensure the pilot–in–command and second–in–command meet the requirements of 14 CFR Section 61.58, Pilot–in–Command Proficiency Check: Operation of Aircraft Requiring More Than One Pilot Flight Crewmember, and 14 CFR Section 61.55, Second–in–Command Qualifications, or 14 CFR Part 135, Operating Requirements: Commuter and On–Demand Operations, Subpart E, Flight Crewmember Requirements, and Subpart G, Crewmember Testing Requirements, as appropriate.

j. Experience has shown that modern AFCS/AP/FD equipment installed in IFR helicopters can, in some cases, be very complex. This complexity requires the pilot(s) to obtain and maintain a high level of knowledge of system operation, limitations, failure indications and reversionary modes. In some cases, this may only be reliably accomplished through formal training.

10–1–2. Helicopter Instrument Approaches

a. Instrument flight procedures (IFPs) permit helicopter operations to heliports and runways during periods of low ceilings and reduced visibility (e.g. approach/SID/STAR/en route). IFPs can be designed for both public and private heliports using FAA instrument criteria. The FAA does recognize there are non–FAA service providers with proprietary special criteria. Special IFPs are reviewed and approved by Flight Technologies and Procedures Division and may have specified aircraft performance or equipment requirements, special crew training, airport facility equipment, waivers from published standards, proprietary criteria and restricted access. Special IFPs are not published in the Federal Register or printed in government Flight Information Publications.

b. Helicopters are capable of flying any published IFPs, for which they are properly equipped, subject to the following limitations and conditions:

1. Helicopters flying conventional (i.e. non–Copter) IAPs may reduce the visibility minima to not less than one–half the published Category A landing visibility minima, or $^1/_4$ statute mile visibility/1200 RVR, whichever is greater, unless the procedure is annotated with "**Visibility Reduction by Helicopters NA.**" This annotation means that there are penetrations of the final approach obstacle identification surface (OIS) and that the 14 CFR Section 97.3 visibility reduction rule does not apply and you must take precaution to avoid any obstacles in the visual segment. No reduction in MDA/DA is permitted at any time. The helicopter may initiate the final approach segment at speeds up to the upper limit of the highest approach category authorized by the procedure, but must be slowed to no more than 90 KIAS at the missed approach point (MAP) in order to apply the visibility reduction. Pilots are cautioned that such a decelerating approach may make early identification of wind shear on the approach path difficult or impossible. If required, use the Inoperative Components and Visual Aids Table provided inside the front cover of the U.S. Terminal Procedures Publication to derive the Category A minima before applying the 14 CFR Section 97.3 rule.

2. Helicopters flying Copter IAPs should use the published minima, with no reductions allowed. Unless otherwise specified on the instrument procedure chart, 90 KIAS is the maximum speed on the approach.

3. Pilots flying Area Navigation (RNAV) Copter IAPs should also limit their speed to 90 KIAS unless otherwise specified on the instrument procedure chart. The final and missed approach segment speeds must be limited to no more than 70 KIAS unless otherwise charted. Military RNAV Copter IAPs are limited to no more than 90 KIAS throughout the procedure. Use the published minima; no reductions allowed.

NOTE–
Obstruction clearance surfaces are based on the aircraft speed identified on the approach chart and have been designed on RNAV approaches for 70 knots unless otherwise indicated. If the helicopter is flown at higher speeds, it may fly outside of protected airspace. Some helicopters have a V_{MINI} greater than 70 knots; therefore, they cannot meet the 70 knot limitation to conduct these RNAV approaches. Some helicopter autopilots, when used in the "go–around" mode, are programmed with a V_{YI} greater than 70 knots. Therefore, those helicopters when using the autopilot "go–around" mode, cannot meet the 70 knot limitation for the RNAV approach. It may be possible to use the autopilot for the missed approach in other than the "go–around" mode and meet the 70 knot limitation. When operating at speeds other than V_{YI} or V_Y, performance data may not be available in the RFM to predict compliance with climb gradient requirements. Pilots may use observed performance in similar weight/altitude/temperature/speed conditions to evaluate the suitability of performance. Pilots are cautioned to monitor climb performance to ensure compliance with procedure requirements.

NOTE–
V_{MINI} – Instrument flight minimum speed, utilized in complying with minimum limit speed requirements for instrument flight

V_{YI} – Instrument climb speed, utilized instead of V_Y for compliance with the climb requirements for instrument flight

V_Y – Speed for best rate of climb

4. TBL 10–1–1 summarizes these requirements.

5. Even with weather conditions reported at or above minimums, under some combinations of reduced cockpit cutoff angle, approach/runway lighting, and high MDA/DH (coupled with a low visibility minima), the pilot may not be able to identify the required visual reference(s), or those references may only be visible in a very small portion of the available field of view. Even if identified by the pilot, the visual references may not support normal maneuvering and normal rates of descent to landing. The effect of such a combination may be exacerbated by other conditions such as rain on the windshield, or incomplete windshield defogging coverage.

6. Pilots should always be prepared to execute a missed approach even though weather conditions may be reported at or above minimums.

NOTE–
See paragraph 5–4–21, Missed Approach, for additional information on missed approach procedures.

TBL 10−1−1
Helicopter Use of Standard Instrument Approach Procedures

Procedure	Helicopter Visibility Minima	Helicopter MDA/DA	Maximum Speed Limitations
Conventional (non−Copter)	The greater of: one half the Category A visibility minima, $^{1}/_{4}$ statute mile visibility, or 1200 RVR	As published for Category A	The helicopter may initiate the final approach segment at speeds up to the upper limit of the highest approach category authorized by the procedure, but must be slowed to no more than 90 KIAS at the MAP in order to apply the visibility reduction.
Copter Procedure	As published	As published	90 KIAS maximum when on a published route/track.
RNAV (GPS) Copter Procedure	As published	As published	The maximum speed for a Copter approach will be 90 KIAS or as published on the chart. Note: Higher approach angles may require a lower approach speed and aircraft V_{MINI}. Military procedures are limited to 90 KIAS for all segments.

NOTE−
Several factors affect the ability of the pilot to acquire and maintain the visual references specified in 14 CFR Section 91.175(c), even in cases where the flight visibility may be at the minimum derived from the criteria in TBL 10−1−1. These factors include, but are not limited to:

1. *Cockpit cutoff angle (the angle at which the cockpit or other airframe structure limits downward visibility below the horizon).*

2. *Combinations of high MDA/DH and low visibility minimum, such as approaches with reduced helicopter visibility minima (per 14 CFR Section 97.3).*

3. *Type, configuration, and intensity of approach and runway/heliport lighting systems.*

4. *Type of obscuring phenomenon and/or windshield contamination.*

10−1−3. Helicopter Approach Procedures to VFR Heliports

a. The FAA may develop helicopter instrument approaches for heliports that do not meet the design standards for an IFR heliport. The majority of IFR approaches to VFR heliports are developed in support of Helicopter Air Ambulance (HAA) operators. These approaches may require use of conventional NAVAIDS or a RNAV system (e.g., GPS). They may be developed either as a special approach (pilot training is required for special procedures due to their unique characteristics) or a public approach (no special training required). These instrument procedures may be designed to guide the helicopter to a specific landing area (Proceed Visually) or to a point−in−space with a "Proceed VFR" segment.

1. An approach to a specific landing area. This type of approach is aligned to a missed approach point from which a landing can be accomplished with a maximum course change of 30 degrees. The visual segment from the MAP to the landing area is evaluated for obstacle hazards. These procedures are annotated: "PROCEED VISUALLY FROM (named MAP) OR CONDUCT THE SPECIFIED MISSED APPROACH."

(a) "Proceed Visually" requires the pilot to acquire and maintain visual contact with the landing area at or prior to the MAP, or execute a missed approach. The visibility minimum is based on the distance from the MAP to the landing area, among other factors.

(b) The pilot is required to have the published minimum visibility throughout the visual segment flying the path described on the approach chart.

(c) Similar to an approach to a runway, the pilot is responsible for obstacle or terrain avoidance from the MAP to the landing area.

(d) Upon reaching the published MAP, or as soon as practicable thereafter, the pilot should advise

ATC whether proceeding visually and canceling IFR or complying with the missed approach instructions. See paragraph 5−1−15, Canceling IFR Flight Plan.

(e) Where any necessary visual reference requirements are specified by the FAA, at least one of the following visual references for the intended heliport is visible and identifiable before the pilot may proceed visually:

(1) FATO or FATO lights.

(2) TLOF or TLOF lights.

(3) Heliport Instrument Lighting System (HILS).

(4) Heliport Approach Lighting System (HALS).

(5) Visual Glideslope Indicator (VGSI).

(6) Windsock or windsock light.

(7) Heliport beacon.

(8) Other facilities or systems approved by the Flight Technologies and Procedures Division (AFS−400).

2. Approach to a Point−in−Space (PinS). At locations where the MAP is located more than 2 SM from the landing area, or the path from the MAP to the landing area is populated with obstructions which require avoidance actions or requires turn greater than 30 degrees, a PinS Proceed VFR procedure may be developed. These approaches are annotated "PROCEED VFR FROM (named MAP) OR CONDUCT THE SPECIFIED MISSED APPROACH."

(a) These procedures require the pilot, at or prior to the MAP, to determine if the published minimum visibility, or the weather minimums required by the operating rule (e.g., Part 91, Part 135, etc.), or operations specifications (whichever is higher) is available to safely transition from IFR to VFR flight. If not, the pilot must execute a missed approach. For Part 135 operations, pilots may not begin the instrument approach unless the latest weather report indicates that the weather conditions are at or above the authorized IFR minimums or the VFR weather minimums (as required by the class of airspace, operating rule and/or Operations Specifications) whichever is higher.

(b) Visual contact with the landing site is not required; however, the pilot must have the appropriate VFR weather minimums throughout the visual segment. The visibility is limited to no lower than that published in the procedure, until canceling IFR.

(c) IFR obstruction clearance areas are not applied to the VFR segment between the MAP and the landing site. Pilots are responsible for obstacle or terrain avoidance from the MAP to the landing area.

(d) Upon reaching the MAP defined on the approach procedure, or as soon as practicable thereafter, the pilot should advise ATC whether proceeding VFR and canceling IFR, or complying with the missed approach instructions. See paragraph 5−1−15, Canceling IFR Flight Plan.

(e) If the visual segment penetrates Class B, C, or D airspace, pilots are responsible for obtaining a Special VFR clearance, when required.

10−1−4. The Gulf of Mexico Grid System

a. On October 8, 1998, the Southwest Regional Office of the FAA, with assistance from the Helicopter Safety Advisory Conference (HSAC), implemented the world's first Instrument Flight Rules (IFR) Grid System in the Gulf of Mexico. This navigational route structure is completely independent of ground−based navigation aids (NAVAIDs) and was designed to facilitate helicopter IFR operations to offshore destinations. The Grid System is defined by over 300 offshore waypoints located 20 minutes apart (latitude and longitude). Flight plan routes are routinely defined by just 4 segments: departure point (lat/long), first en route grid waypoint, last en route grid waypoint prior to approach procedure, and destination point (lat/long). There are over 4,000 possible offshore landing sites. Upon reaching the waypoint prior to the destination, the pilot may execute an Offshore Standard Approach Procedure (OSAP), a Helicopter En Route Descent Areas (HEDA) approach, or an Airborne Radar Approach (ARA). For more information on these helicopter instrument procedures, refer to FAA AC 90−80B, Approval of Offshore Standard Approach Procedures, Airborne Radar Approaches, and Helicopter En Route Descent Areas, on the FAA website http://www.faa.gov under Advisory Circulars. The return flight plan is just the reverse with the requested stand−alone GPS approach contained in the remarks section.

1. The large number (over 300) of waypoints in the grid system makes it difficult to assign phonetically pronounceable names to the waypoints that would be meaningful to pilots and controllers. A unique naming system was adopted that enables pilots and controllers to derive the fix position from the name. The five−letter names are derived as follows:

(a) The waypoints are divided into sets of 3 columns each. A three−letter identifier, identifying a geographical area or a NAVAID to the north, represents each set.

(b) Each column in a set is named after its position, i.e., left (L), center (C), and right (R).

(c) The rows of the grid are named alphabetically from north to south, starting with A for the northern most row.

EXAMPLE−
LCHRC would be pronounced "Lake Charles Romeo Charlie." The waypoint is in the right−hand column of the Lake Charles VOR set, in row C (third south from the northern most row).

2. In December 2009, significant improvements to the Gulf of Mexico grid system were realized with the introduction of ATC separation services using ADS−B. In cooperation with the oil and gas services industry, HSAC and Helicopter Association International (HAI), the FAA installed an infrastructure of ADS−B ground stations, weather stations (AWOS) and VHF remote communication outlets (RCO) throughout a large area of the Gulf of Mexico. This infrastructure allows the FAA's Houston ARTCC to provide "domestic−like" air traffic control service in the offshore area beyond 12nm from the coastline to hundreds of miles offshore to aircraft equipped with ADS−B. Properly equipped aircraft can now be authorized to receive more direct routing, domestic en route separation minima and real time flight following. Operators who do not have authorization to receive ATC separation services using ADS−B, will continue to use the low altitude grid system and receive procedural separation from Houston ARTCC. Non−ADS−B equipped aircraft also benefit from improved VHF communication and expanded weather information coverage.

3. Three requirements must be met for operators to file IFR flight plans utilizing the grid:

(a) The helicopter must be equipped for IFR operations and equipped with IFR approved GPS navigational units.

(b) The operator must obtain prior written approval from the appropriate Flight Standards District Office through a Letter of Authorization or Operations Specification, as appropriate.

(c) The operator must be a signatory to the Houston ARTCC Letter of Agreement.

4. Operators who wish to benefit from ADS−B based ATC separation services must meet the following additional requirements:

(a) The Operator's installed ADS−B Out equipment must meet the performance requirements of one of the following FAA Technical Standard Orders (TSO), or later revisions: TSO−C154c, Universal Access Transceiver (UAT) Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast (ADS−B) Equipment, or TSO−C166b, Extended Squitter Automatic Dependent Surveillance−Broadcast (ADS−B) and Traffic Information.

(b) Flight crews must comply with the procedures prescribed in the Houston ARTCC Letter of Agreement dated December 17, 2009, or later.

NOTE−
The unique ADS−B architecture in the Gulf of Mexico depends upon reception of an aircraft's Mode C in addition to the other message elements described in 14 CFR 91.227. Flight crews must be made aware that loss of Mode C also means that ATC will not receive the aircraft's ADS−B signal.

5. FAA/AIS publishes the grid system waypoints on the IFR Gulf of Mexico Vertical Flight Reference Chart. A commercial equivalent is also available. The chart is updated annually and is available from an FAA approved print provider or FAA directly, website address: http://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/flight_info/aeronav.

10−1−5. Departure Procedures

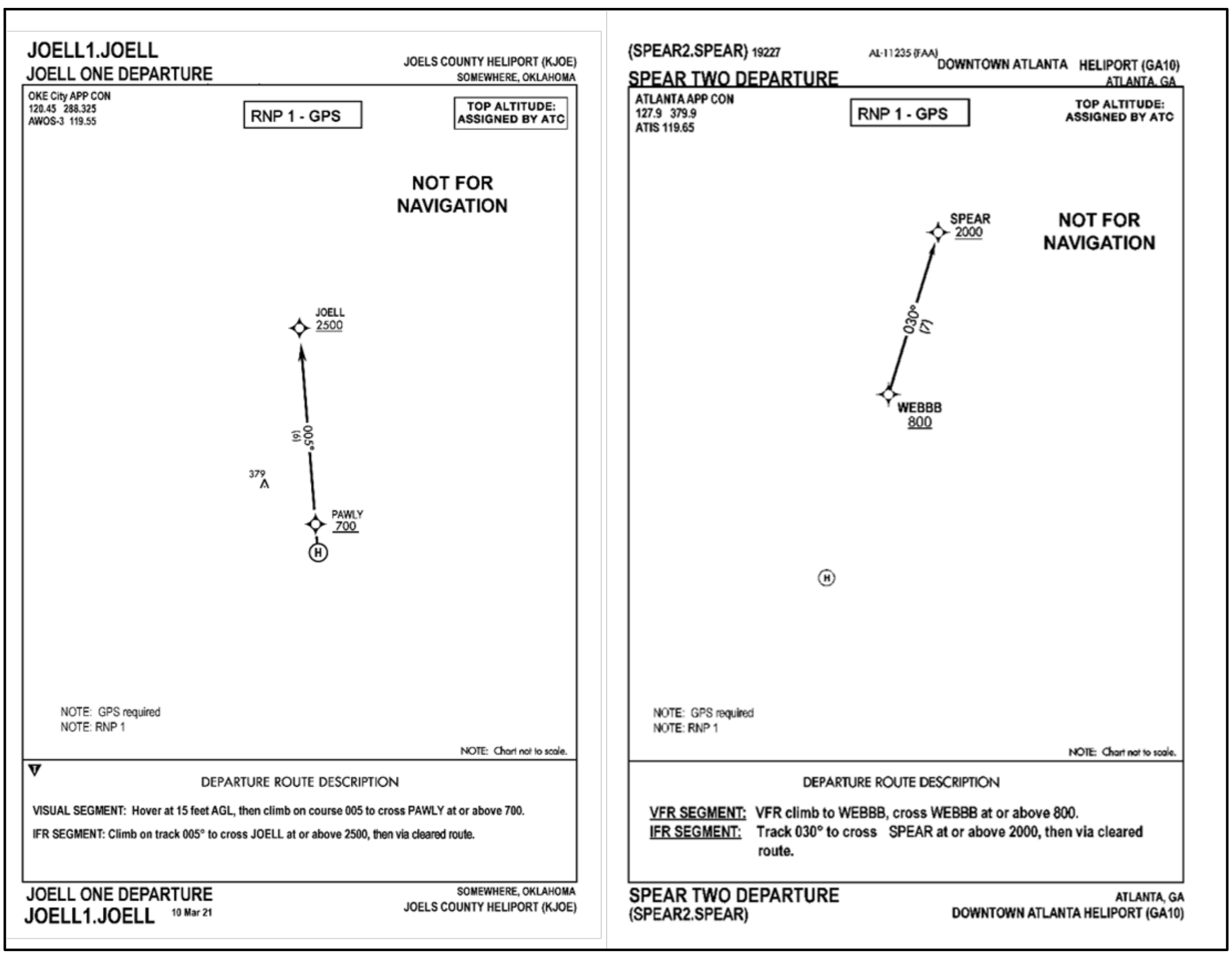
a. When departing from a location on a point−in−space (PinS) SID with a visual segment indicated and the departure instruction describes the visual segment the aircraft must cross the initial departure fix (IDF) outbound at−or−above the altitude depicted on the chart. The helicopter will initially establish a hover at or above the heliport crossing height (HCH) specified on the chart.

The HCH specifies a minimum hover height to begin the climb to assist in avoiding obstacles. The helicopter will leave the departure location on the published outbound heading/course specified, climbing at least 400 ft/per NM (or as depicted on the chart), remaining clear of clouds, crossing at or above the IDF altitude specified, prior to proceeding outbound on the procedure. For example the chart may include these instructions: "Hover at 15 ft AGL, then climb on track 005, remaining clear of clouds, to cross PAWLY at or above 700."

b. When flying a PinS SID procedure containing a segment with instructions to "proceed VFR," the pilot must keep the aircraft clear of the clouds and cross the IDF outbound at or above the altitude depicted. Departure procedures that support multiple departure locations will have a Proceed VFR segment leading to the IDF. The chart will provide a bearing and distance to the IDF from the heliport. That bearing and distance are for pilot orientation purposes only and are not a required procedure track. The helicopter will leave the departure location via pilot navigation in order to align with the departure route and comply with the altitude specified at the IDF. For example, the chart may include these instructions: "VFR Climb to WEBBB, Cross WEBBB at or above 800."

c. Once the aircraft reaches the IDF, the aircraft should proceed out the described route as specified on the chart, crossing each consecutive fix at or above the indicated altitude(s) until reaching the end of the departure or as directed by ATC.

FIG 10–1–1
Departure Charts



Section 2. Special Operations

10−2−1. Offshore Helicopter Operations

a. Introduction

The offshore environment offers unique applications and challenges for helicopter pilots. The mission demands, the nature of oil and gas exploration and production facilities, and the flight environment (weather, terrain, obstacles, traffic), demand special practices, techniques and procedures not found in other flight operations. Several industry organizations have risen to the task of reducing risks in offshore operations, including the Helicopter Safety Advisory Conference (HSAC) (**http://www.hsac.org**), and the Offshore Committee of the Helicopter Association International (HAI) (**http://www.rotor.com**). The following recommended practices for offshore helicopter operations are based on guidance developed by HSAC for use in the Gulf of Mexico, and provided here with their permission. While not regulatory, these recommended practices provide aviation and oil and gas industry operators with useful information in developing procedures to avoid certain hazards of offshore helicopter operations.

NOTE−
*Like all aviation practices, these recommended practices are under constant review. In addition to normal procedures for comments, suggested changes, or corrections to the AIM (contained in the Preface), any questions or feedback concerning these recommended procedures may also be directed to the HSAC through the feedback feature of the HSAC website (**http://www.hsac.org**).*

b. Passenger Management on and about Heliport Facilities

1. Background. Several incidents involving offshore helicopter passengers have highlighted the potential for incidents and accidents on and about the heliport area. The following practices will minimize risks to passengers and others involved in heliport operations.

2. Recommended Practices

(a) Heliport facilities should have a designated and posted passenger waiting area which is clear of the heliport, heliport access points, and stairways.

(b) Arriving passengers and cargo should be unloaded and cleared from the heliport and access route prior to loading departing passengers and cargo.

(c) Where a flight crew consists of more than one pilot, one crewmember should supervise the unloading/loading process from outside the aircraft.

(d) Where practical, a designated facility employee should assist with loading/unloading, etc.

c. Crane−Helicopter Operational Procedures

1. Background. Historical experience has shown that catastrophic consequences can occur when industry safe practices for crane/helicopter operations are not observed. The following recommended practices are designed to minimize risks during crane and helicopter operations.

2. Recommended Practices

(a) Personnel awareness

(1) Crane operators and pilots should develop a mutual understanding and respect of the others' operational limitations and cooperate in the spirit of safety;

(2) Pilots need to be aware that crane operators sometimes cannot release the load to cradle the crane boom, such as when attached to wire line lubricators or supporting diving bells; and

(3) Crane operators need to be aware that helicopters require warm up before takeoff, a two−minute cool down before shutdown, and cannot circle for extended lengths of time because of fuel consumption.

(b) It is recommended that when helicopters are approaching, maneuvering, taking off, or running on the heliport, cranes be shutdown and the operator leave the cab. Cranes not in use must have their booms cradled, if feasible. If in use, the crane's boom(s) are to be pointed away from the heliport and the crane shutdown for helicopter operations.

(c) Pilots will not approach, land on, takeoff, or have rotor blades turning on heliports of structures not complying with the above practice.

(d) It is recommended that cranes on offshore platforms, rigs, vessels, or any other facility, which could interfere with helicopter operations (including approach/departure paths):

(1) Be equipped with a red rotating beacon or red high intensity strobe light connected to the system powering the crane, indicating the crane is under power;

(2) Be designed to allow the operator a maximum view of the helideck area and should be equipped with wide−angle mirrors to eliminate blind spots; and

(3) Have their boom tips, headache balls, and hooks painted with high visibility international orange.

d. Helicopter/Tanker Operations

1. Background. The interface of helicopters and tankers during shipboard helicopter operations is complex and may be hazardous unless appropriate procedures are coordinated among all parties. The following recommended practices are designed to minimize risks during helicopter/tanker operations:

2. Recommended Practices

(a) Management, flight operations personnel, and pilots should be familiar with and apply the operating safety standards set forth in "Guide to Helicopter/Ship Operations", International Chamber of Shipping, Third Edition, 5−89 (as amended), establishing operational guidelines/standards and safe practices sufficient to safeguard helicopter/tanker operations.

(b) Appropriate plans, approvals, and communications must be accomplished prior to reaching the vessel, allowing tanker crews sufficient time to perform required safety preparations and position crew members to receive or dispatch a helicopter safely.

(c) Appropriate approvals and direct communications with the bridge of the tanker must be maintained throughout all helicopter/tanker operations.

(d) Helicopter/tanker operations, including landings/departures, must not be conducted until the helicopter pilot−in−command has received and acknowledged permission from the bridge of the tanker.

(e) Helicopter/tanker operations must not be conducted during product/cargo transfer.

(f) Generally, permission will not be granted to land on tankers during mooring operations or while maneuvering alongside another tanker.

e. Helideck/Heliport Operational Hazard Warning(s) Procedures

1. Background

(a) A number of operational hazards can develop on or near offshore helidecks or onshore heliports that can be minimized through procedures for proper notification or visual warning to pilots. Examples of hazards include but are not limited to:

(1) Perforating operations: subparagraph f.

(2) H_2S gas presence: subparagraph g.

(3) Gas venting: subparagraph h; or,

(4) Closed helidecks or heliports: subparagraph i (unspecified cause).

(b) These and other operational hazards are currently minimized through timely dissemination of a written Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) for pilots by helicopter companies and operators. A NOTAM provides a written description of the hazard, time and duration of occurrence, and other pertinent information. ANY POTENTIAL HAZARD should be communicated to helicopter operators or company aviation departments as early as possible to allow the NOTAM to be activated.

(c) To supplement the existing NOTAM procedure and further assist in reducing these hazards, a standardized visual signal(s) on the helideck/heliport will provide a positive indication to an approaching helicopter of the status of the landing area. Recommended Practice(s) have been developed to reinforce the NOTAM procedures and standardize visual signals.

f. Drilling Rig Perforating Operations: Helideck/Heliport Operational Hazard Warning(s)/Procedure(s)

1. Background. A critical step in the oil well completion process is perforation, which involves the use of explosive charges in the drill pipe to open the pipe to oil or gas deposits. Explosive charges used in conjunction with perforation operations offshore can potentially be prematurely detonated by radio transmissions, including those from helicopters. The following practices are recommended.

2. Recommended Practices

(a) Personnel Conducting Perforating Operations. Whenever perforating operations are scheduled and operators are concerned that radio transmissions from helicopters in the vicinity may jeopardize the operation, personnel conducting perforating operations should take the following precautionary measures:

(1) Notify company aviation departments, helicopter operators or bases, and nearby manned platforms of the pending perforation operation so the Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) system can be activated for the perforation operation and the temporary helideck closure.

(2) Close the deck and make the radio warning clearly visible to passing pilots, install a temporary marking (described in subparagraph 10−2−1i1(b)) with the words "NO RADIO" stenciled in red on the legs of the diagonals. The letters should be 24 inches high and 12 inches wide. (See FIG 10−2−1.)

(3) The marker should be installed during the time that charges may be affected by radio transmissions.

(b) Pilots

(1) When operating within 1,000 feet of a known perforation operation or observing the white X with red "NO RADIO" warning indicating perforation operations are underway, pilots will avoid radio transmissions from or near the helideck (within 1,000 feet) and will not land on the deck if the X is present. In addition to communications radios, radio transmissions are also emitted by aircraft radar, transponders, ADS−B equipment, radar altimeters, and DME equipment, and ELTs.

(2) Whenever possible, make radio calls to the platform being approached or to the Flight Following Communications Center at least one mile out on approach. Ensure all communications are complete outside the 1,000 foot hazard distance. If no response is received, or if the platform is not radio equipped, further radio transmissions should not be made until visual contact with the deck indicates it is open for operation (no white "X").

g. Hydrogen Sulfide Gas Helideck/Heliport Operational Hazard Warning(s)/Procedures

1. Background. Hydrogen sulfide (H_2S) gas: Hydrogen sulfide gas in higher concentrations (300−500 ppm) can cause loss of consciousness within a few seconds and presents a hazard to pilots on/near offshore helidecks. When operating in offshore areas that have been identified to have concentrations of hydrogen sulfide gas, the following practices are recommended.

2. Recommended Practices

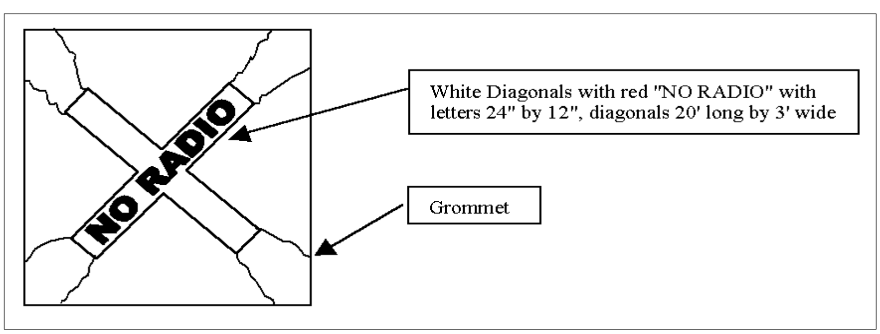
(a) Pilots

(1) Ensure approved protective air packs are available for emergency use by the crew on the helicopter.

(2) If shutdown on a helideck, request the supervisor in charge provide a briefing on location of protective equipment and safety procedures.

(3) If while flying near a helideck and the visual red beacon alarm is observed or an unusually strong odor of "rotten eggs" is detected, immediately don the protective air pack, exit to an area upwind, and notify the suspected source field of the hazard.

FIG 10−2−1
Closed Helideck Marking − No Radio



(b) Oil Field Supervisors

(1) If presence of hydrogen sulfide is detected, a red rotating beacon or red high intensity strobe light adjacent to the primary helideck stairwell or wind indicator on the structure should be turned on to provide visual warning of hazard. If the beacon is to be located near the stairwell, the State of Louisiana "Offshore Heliport Design Guide" and FAA Advisory Circular (AC) 150/5390−2A, Heliport Design Guide, should be reviewed to ensure proper clearance on the helideck.

(2) Notify nearby helicopter operators and bases of the hazard and advise when hazard is cleared.

(3) Provide a safety briefing to include location of protective equipment to all arriving personnel.

(4) Wind socks or indicator should be clearly visible to provide upwind indication for the pilot.

h. Gas Venting Helideck/Heliport Operational Hazard Warning(s)/Procedures − Operations Near Gas Vent Booms

1. Background. Ignited flare booms can release a large volume of natural gas and create a hot fire and intense heat with little time for the pilot to react. Likewise, unignited gas vents can release reasonably large volumes of methane gas under certain conditions. Thus, operations conducted very near unignited gas vents require precautions to prevent inadvertent ingestion of combustible gases by the helicopter engine(s). The following practices are recommended.

2. Pilots

(a) Gas will drift upwards and downwind of the vent. Plan the approach and takeoff to observe and avoid the area downwind of the vent, remaining as far away as practicable from the open end of the vent boom.

(b) Do not attempt to start or land on an offshore helideck when the deck is downwind of a gas vent unless properly trained personnel verify conditions are safe.

3. Oil Field Supervisors

(a) During venting of large amounts of unignited raw gas, a red rotating beacon or red high intensity strobe light adjacent to the primary helideck stairwell or wind indicator should be turned on to provide visible warning of hazard. If the beacon is to be located near the stairwell, the State of Louisiana "Offshore Heliport Design Guide" and FAA AC 150/5390−2A, Heliport Design Guide, should be reviewed to ensure proper clearance from the helideck.

(b) Notify nearby helicopter operators and bases of the hazard for planned operations.

(c) Wind socks or indicator should be clearly visible to provide upward indication for the pilot.

i. Helideck/Heliport Operational Warning(s)/Procedure(s) − Closed Helidecks or Heliports

1. Background. A white "X" marked diagonally from corner to corner across a helideck or heliport touchdown area is the universally accepted visual indicator that the landing area is closed for safety of other reasons and that helicopter operations are not permitted. The following practices are recommended.

(a) Permanent Closing. If a helideck or heliport is to be permanently closed, X diagonals of the same size and location as indicated above should be used, but the markings should be painted on the landing area.

NOTE−
White Decks: If a helideck is painted white, then international orange or yellow markings can be used for the temporary or permanent diagonals.

(b) Temporary Closing. A temporary marker can be used for hazards of an interim nature. This marker could be made from vinyl or other durable material in the shape of a diagonal "X." The marker should be white with legs at least 20 feet long and 3 feet in width. This marker is designed to be quickly secured and removed from the deck using grommets and rope ties. The duration, time, location, and nature of these temporary closings should be provided to and coordinated with company aviation departments, nearby helicopter bases, and helicopter operators supporting the area. These markers MUST be removed when the hazard no longer exists. (See FIG 10−2−2.)

Abbreviation/ Acronym	Meaning
V_{REF}	The reference landing approach speed, usually about 1.3 times V_{so} plus 50 percent of the wind gust speed in excess of the mean wind speed.
V_{SO}	The stalling speed or the minimum steady flight speed in the landing configuration at maximum weight.
VTF	Vector to Final
VV	Vertical Visibility
VVI	Vertical Velocity Indicator
V_Y	Speed for best rate of climb
V_{YI}	Instrument climb speed, utilized instead of V_Y for compliance with the climb requirements for instrument flight
WA	AIRMET
WAAS	Wide Area Augmentation System
WFO	Weather Forecast Office

Abbreviation/ Acronym	Meaning
WGS−84	World Geodetic System of 1984
WMO	World Meteorological Organization
WMS . .	Wide−Area Master Station
WMSC	Weather Message Switching Center
WMSCR	Weather Message Switching Center Replacement
WP	Waypoint
WRA	Weather Reconnaissance Area
WRS	Wide−Area Ground Reference Station
WS	SIGMET
WSO	Weather Service Office
WSP	Weather Systems Processor
WST	Convective Significant Meteorological Information
WW	Severe Weather Watch Bulletin

Appendix 4. FAA Form 7233−4 − International Flight Plan

a. The FAA will accept a flight plan in international format for IFR, VFR, SFRA, and DVFR flights. File the flight plan electronically via a Flight Service Station (FSS), FAA contracted flight plan filing service, or other commercial flight plan filing service. Depending on the filing service chosen, the method of entering data may be different but the information required is generally the same.

b. The international flight plan format is mandatory for:

1. Any flight plan filed through a FSS or FAA contracted flight plan filing service; with the exception of Department of Defense flight plans and civilian stereo route flight plans, which can still be filed using the format prescribed in FAA Form 7233−1.

NOTE−
DOD Form DD−175 and FAA Form 7233−1 are considered to follow the same format.

2. Any flight that will depart U.S. domestic airspace. For DOD flight plan purposes, offshore Warning Areas may use FAA Form 7233−1 or military equivalent.

3. Any flight requesting routing that requires Performance Based Navigation.

4. Any flight requesting services that require filing of capabilities only supported in the international flight plan format.

NOTE−
Additional information to assist with filing a flight plan using the international format can be found at http://www.faa.gov/ato?k=fpl.

c. Flight Plan Contents

1. A flight plan will include information shown below:

(a) Flight Specific Information (TBL 4−1)

(b) Aircraft Specific Information (TBL 4−19)

(c) Flight Routing Information (TBL 4−20)

(d) Flight Specific Supplementary Information (Item 19)

2. The tables indicate where the information is located in the international flight plan format, the information required for U.S. domestic flights, and the location of equivalent information in the domestic flight plan format.

3. International flights, including those that temporarily leave domestic U.S. airspace and return, require all applicable information in the international flight plan. Additional information can be found in ICAO Doc. 4444 (Procedures for Air Navigation Services, Air Traffic Management), and ICAO Doc. 7030 (Regional Supplemental Procedures) as well as the Aeronautical Information Publications (AIPs), Aeronautical Information Circulars (AICs), and NOTAMs of applicable other countries.

TBL 4−1

Flight Specific Information

Item	International Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233−4)	Domestic U.S. Requirements	Equivalent Item on Domestic Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233−1)
Aircraft Identification	Item 7	Required	Item 2
Flight Rules	Item 8	Required	Item 1
Type of Flight	Item 8	No need to file for domestic U.S. flight	N/A
Equipment and Capabilities	Item 10 Item 18 PBN/; NAV/; COM/; DAT/; SUR/	Required	Item 3
Date of Flight	Item 18 DOF/	Include when date of flight is not today	N/A
Reasons for Special Handling	Item 18 STS/; RMK/	Include when special category is applicable	Item 11
Remarks	Item 18 RMK/	Include when necessary	Item 11
Operator	Item 18 OPR/	No need to file for domestic U.S. flight	N/A
Flight Plan Originator	Item 18 ORGN/	No need to file for domestic U.S. flight	N/A

d. Instructions for Flight−Specific Information Items

1. Aircraft Identification (Item 7) Aircraft Identification is always required. Aircraft identification must not exceed seven alphanumeric characters and be either:

(a) The ICAO designator for the aircraft operating agency, followed by the flight identification (for example, KLM511, NGA213, JTR25). When in radiotelephony the call sign to be used by the aircraft will consist of the ICAO telephony designator for the operating agency followed by the flight identification (for example, KLM511, NIGERIA213, JESTER25);

(b) The nationality or common mark and registration of the aircraft (for example, EIAKO, 4XBCD, N2567GA), when:

(1) In radiotelephony, the call sign to be used by the aircraft will consist of this identification alone (for example, CGAJS) or preceded by the ICAO telephony designator for the aircraft operating agency (for example, BLIZZARD CGAJS); or

(2) The aircraft is not equipped with radio.

NOTE−
1. *Standards for nationality, common and registration marks to be used are contained in Annex 7, Chapter 2.*

2. *Provisions for using radiotelephony call signs are contained in Annex 10, Volume II, Chapter 5. ICAO designators and telephony designators for aircraft operating agencies are contained in Doc 8585—Designators for Aircraft Operating Agencies, Aeronautical Authorities and Services.*

NOTE−
Some countries' aircraft identifications begin with a number, which cannot be processed by U.S. ATC automation. The FAA will add a leading letter temporarily to gain automation acceptance for aircraft identifications that begin with a numeral. For flight−processing systems (e.g., ERAM or STARS) which will not accept a call sign that begins with a number, if the call sign is 6 characters or less, add a Q at the beginning of the call sign. If the call sign is 7 characters, delete the first character and replace it with a Q. Put the original call sign in the remarks section of the flight plan.

EXAMPLE−
9HRA becomes Q9HRA
5744233 becomes Q744233

2. Flight Rules (Item 8a)

(a) Flight rules are always required.

(b) Flight rules must indicate IFR (I) or VFR (V).

(c) For composite flight plans, submit separate flight plans for the IFR and VFR portions of the flight. Specify in Item 15 the point or points where change of flight rules is planned. The IFR plan will be routed to ATC, and the VFR plan will be routed to a Flight Service for Search and Rescue services.

NOTE–
The pilot is responsible for opening and closing the VFR flight plan. ATC does not have knowledge of a VFR flight plan's status.

3. Type of Flight (Item 8b)

(a) The type of flight is optional for flights remaining wholly within U.S. domestic airspace.

(b) Indicate the type of flight as follows:

- G – General Aviation
- S – Scheduled Air Service
- N – Non–Scheduled Air Transport Operation
- M – Military
- X – other than any of the defined categories above

4. Equipment and Capabilities (Item 10, Item 18 NAV/, COM/, DAT/, SUR/)

(a) Equipment and capabilities that can be filed in a flight plan include:

- Navigation capabilities in Item 10a, Item 18 PBN/, and Item 18 NAV/
- Voice communication capabilities in Item 10a and Item 18 COM/
- Data communication capabilities in Item 10a and Item 18 DAT/
- Approach capabilities in Item 10a and Item 18 NAV/
- Surveillance capabilities in Item 10b and Item 18 SUR/

(b) Codes allowed in Item 10a are shown in Table 4–2. Codes allowed in Item 10b are shown in TBL 4–3. Codes recognized in Item 18 NAV/, COM/, DAT/, and SUR/ are shown in TBL 4–4. Note that other service providers may define additional allowable (and required) codes for use in Item 18 NAV/, COM/, DAT/, or SUR/. Codes to designate PBN capability are described in TBL 4–5.

Radio communication, navigation and approach aid equipment and capabilities

ENTER one letter as follows:

N if no COM/NAV/approach aid equipment for the route to be flown is carried, or the equipment is unserviceable,

OR

S if standard COM/NAV/approach aid equipment for the route to be flown is carried and serviceable (see Note 1),

AND/OR

ENTER one or more of the following letters from TBL 4–2 to indicate the serviceable COM/NAV/ approach aid equipment and capabilities available.

TBL 4−2
Item 10a Navigation, Communication, and Approach Aid Capabilities

A	GBAS Landing System	J7	CPDLC FANS 1/A SATCOM (Iridium)
B	LPV (APV with SBAS)	K	MLS
C	LORAN C	L	ILS
D	DME	M1	ATC SATVOICE (INMARSAT)
E1	FMC WPR ACARS	M2	Reserved
E2	D−FIS ACARS	M3	ATC RTF (Iridium)
E3	PDC ACARS	O	VOR
F	ADF	P1	CPDLC RCP 400 *(See Note 7)*
G	GNSS *(See Note 2)*	P2	CPDLC RCP 240 *(See Note 7)*
H	HF RTF	P3	SATVOICE RCP 400 *(See Note 7)*
I	Inertial Navigation	P4−P9	Reserved for RCP
J1	CPDLC ATN VDL Mode 2 *(See Note 3)*	R	PBN Approved *(See Note 4)*
J2	CPDLC FANS 1/A HFDL	T	TACAN
J3	CPDLC FANS 1/A VDL Mode A	U	UHF RTF
J4	CPDLC FANS 1/A Mode 2	V	VHF RTF
J5	CPDLC FANS 1/A SATCOM (INMARSAT)	W	RVSM Approved
J6	Reserved	X	MNPS Approved /North Atlantic (NAT) High Level Airspace (HLA) approved
		Y	VHF with 8.33 kHz Channel Spacing Capability
		Z	Other equipment carried or other capabilities *(See Note 5)*

Any alphanumeric characters not indicated above are reserved.

NOTE−
1. *If the letter "S" is used, standard equipment is considered to be VHF RTF, VOR, and ILS, unless another combination is prescribed by the appropriate ATS authority.*
2. *If the letter "G" is used, the types of external GNSS augmentation, if any, are specified in Item 18 following the indicator NAV/ and separated by a space.*

EXAMPLE−
NAV/SBAS

3. *See RTCA/EUROCAE Interoperability Requirements Standard for ATN Baseline 1 (ATN B1 INTEROP Standard – DO −280B/ED−110B) for data link services air traffic control clearance and information/air traffic control communications management/air traffic control microphone check.*
4. *If the letter "R" is used, the performance−based navigation levels that can be met are specific in Item 18 following the indicator PBN/. Guidance material on the application of performance−based navigation to a specific route segment, route, or area is contained in the Performance−based Navigation (PBN) Manual (Doc 9613)*
5. *If the letter "Z" is used, specify in Item 18 the other equipment carried or other capabilities, preceded by COM/, NAV/, and/or DAT, as appropriate.*
6. *Information on navigation capability is provided to ATC for clearance and routing purposes.*
7. *Guidance on the application of performance−based communication, which prescribes RCP to an air traffic service in a specific area, is contained in the Performance−based Communication and Surveillance (PBCS) Manual (Doc 9869).*

TBL 4−3

Item 10b Surveillance Capabilities

ENTER "N" if no surveillance equipment for the route to be flown is carried, or the equipment is unserviceable,

or

ENTER One or more of the following descriptors, to a maximum of 20 characters, to describe the serviceable surveillance equipment and/or capabilities on board.

ENTER no more than one transponder code (Modes A, C, or S)

SSR Modes A and C:

A	Transponder	Mode A (4 digits – 4096 codes)
C	Transponder	Mode A (4 digits – 4096 codes) and Mode C

SSR Mode S:

E	Transponder	Mode S, including aircraft identification, pressure−altitude, and extended squitter (ADS−B) capability
H	Transponder	Mode S, including aircraft identification, pressure−altitude, and enhanced surveillance capability
I	Transponder	Mode S, including aircraft identification, but no pressure−altitude capability
L	Transponder	Mode S, including aircraft identification, pressure−altitude, extended squitter (ADS−B), and enhanced surveillance capability
P	Transponder	Mode S, including pressure−altitude, but no aircraft identification capability
S	Transponder	Mode S, including both pressure−altitude and aircraft identification capability
X	Transponder	Mode S, with neither aircraft identification nor pressure−altitude

NOTE−
Enhanced surveillance capability is the ability of the aircraft to down−link aircraft derived data via Mode S transponder.

ADS−B:

B1	ADS−B with dedicated 1090 MHz ADS−B "out" capability
B2	ADS−B with dedicated 1090 MHz ADS−B "out" and "in" capability
U1	ADS−B with "out" capability using UAT
U2	ADS−B with "out" and "in" capability using UAT
V1	ADS−B with "out" capability using VDL Mode 4
V2	ADS−B with "out" and "in" capability using VDL Mode 4

NOTE−
File no more than one code for each type of capability, e.g., file B1 or B2 and not both

ADS−C:

D1	ADS−C with FANS 1/A capabilities
G1	ADS−C with ATN capabilities

Alphanumeric characters not included above are reserved.

EXAMPLE−
ADE3RV/HB2U2V2G1

NOTE−
1. *The RSP specification(s), if applicable, will be listed in Item 18 following the indicator SUR/, using the characters "RSP" followed by the specifications value. Currently RSP180 and RSP400 are in use.*
2. *List additional surveillance equipment or capabilities in Item 18 following the indicator SUR/.*

TBL 4-4

Item 18 NAV/, COM/, DAT/, and SUR/ capabilities used by FAA

Item	Purpose	Entry	Explanation
NAV/ entries used by FAA	Qualify PBN for departure or arrival only	RNVD0E2A1	Indicates that flight is capable of RNAV 1 arrivals and RNAV 2 en route, but cannot fly an RNAV 1 departure.
		RNVD1E2A0	Indicates that flight is capable of RNAV 1 departures and RNAV 2 en route, but cannot fly an RNAV 1 arrival.
COM/ entries used by FAA	N/A	N/A	The FAA currently does not use any entries in COM/.
DAT/ entries used by FAA	Capability and preference for delivery of pre-departure clearance	Priority number followed by: • FANS • FANSP • PDC • VOICE	Entries are combined with a priority number, for example; 1FANS2PDC means a preference for departure clearance delivered via FANS 1/A; with capability to also receive the clearance via ACARS PDC. FANS = FANS 1/A DCL FANSP = FANS 1/A+ DCL PDC = ACARS PDC VOICE = PDC via voice (no automated delivery)
SUR/ entries used by FAA	Req. Surveillance Performance	RSP180	Aircraft is authorized for Required Surveillance Performance RSP180
		RSP400	Aircraft is authorized for Required Surveillance Performance RSP400
	ADS-B	260B	Aircraft has 1090 MHz Extended Squitter ADS-B compliant with RTCA DO-260B (complies with FAA requirements)
		282B	Aircraft has 978 MHz UAT ADS-B compliant with RTCA DO-282B (complies with FAA requirements)

NOTE-
Other entries in NAV/, COM/, DAT/, and SUR/ are permitted for international flights when instructed by other service providers. Direction on use of these capabilities by the FAA is detailed in the following sections.

TBL 4−5

Item 18. PBN/ Specifications

(Include as many of the applicable descriptors, up to a maximum of 8 entries (not more than 16 characters).

PBN/	RNAV SPECIFICATIONS
A1	RNAV 10 (RNP 10)
B1	RNAV 5 all permitted sensors
B2	RNAV 5 GNSS
B3	RNAV 5 DME/DME
B4	RNAV 5 VOR/DME
B5	RNAV 5 INS or IRS
B6	RNAV 5 LORAN C
C1	RNAV 2 all permitted sensors
C2	RNAV 2 GNSS
C3	RNAV 2 DME/DME
C4	RNAV 2 DME/DME/IRU
D1	RNAV 1 all permitted sensors
D2	RNAV 1 GNSS
D3	RNAV 1 DME/DME
D4	RNAV 1 DME/DME/IRU
PBN/	**RNP SPECIFICATIONS**
L1	RNP 4
O1	Basic RNP 1 all permitted sensors
O2	Basic RNP 1 GNSS
O3	Basic RNP 1 DME/DME
O4	Basic RNP 1 DME/DME/IRU
S1	RNP APCH
S2	RNP APCH with BARO−VNAV
T1	RNP AR APCH with RF (special authorization required)
T2	RNP AR APCH without RF (special authorization required)

NOTE−
1. *PBN Codes B1−B6 indicates RNAV 5 capability. The FAA considers these B codes to be synonymous and qualifying for point−to−point routing but not for assignment to the PBN routes shown in the table.*
2. *Combinations of alphanumeric characters not included above are reserved.*
3. *The PBN/ specifications are allowed per ICAO Doc. 4444. The FAA makes use of a subset of these codes as described in the section on filing navigation capability.*

(c) The following sections detail what capabilities need to be provided to obtain services from the FAA for:

- IFR flights (general).
- Assignment of Performance−Based Navigation (PBN) routes.
- Automated Departure clearance (via Datacom DCL or PDC).
- Reduced Vertical Separation Minima (if requesting FL 290 or above).
- Reduced Separation in Oceanic Airspace.

(d) Capabilities such as voice communications, required communications performance, approach aids, and ADS−C, are not required in a flight plan that remains entirely within domestic airspace.

(e) Flights that leave domestic United States airspace may be required to include additional capabilities, per requirements for the FIRs being overflown. Consult the appropriate State Aeronautical Information Publications for requirements.

(f) Include the capability only if:

- The requisite equipment is installed and operational;
- The crew is trained as required; and
- Any required Operations Specification, Letter of Authorization, or other approvals are in hand.

NOTE–
Do not include a capability solely based on the installed equipment if an operational approval is required.

5. Filing equipment and capability in an IFR Flight Plan. This section details the minimum requirements to identify capabilities in an IFR flight plan for flights in the domestic United States. Other requirements to file a capability are associated with obtaining specific services as described in subsequent sections. The basic capabilities that must be addressed include Navigation, Transponder, Voice, and ADS−B Out as described below. A designator for “Standard” capability is also allowed to cover a suite of commonly carried voice, navigation, and approach equipment with one code.

(a) Standard Capability and No Capability (Item 10a)

- Use “S” if VHF radio, VOR, and ILS equipment for the route to be flown are carried and serviceable. Use of the ’S’ removes the need to list these three capabilities separately.
- Use “N” if no communications, navigation, or approach aid equipment for the route to be flown are carried or the equipment is unserviceable.
- When there is no transponder, ADS−B, or ADS−C capability then file only the letter ’N’ in Item 10b.

(b) Navigation Capabilities (Item 10a, Item 18 NAV/)

- Indicate radio navigation capability by filing one or more of the codes in TBL 4−6.
- Indicate Area Navigation (RNAV) capability by filing one or more of the codes in TBL 4−7.

TBL 4−6
Radio Navigation Capabilities

Capability	Item 10a	Item 18 NAV/
VOR	O	
DME	D	
TACAN	T	

TBL 4−7
Area Navigation Capabilities

Capability	Item 10a	Item 18 NAV/
GNSS	G	SBAS (if WAAS equipped) GBAS (if LAAS equipped)
INS	I	
DME / DME	DR	
VOR / DME	DOR	

NOTE–
1. *SBAS – Space−Based Augmentation System*
GBAS − Ground−Based Augmentation System
2. *No PBN/ code needs to be filed to indicate the ability to fly point−to−point routes using GNSS or INS.*
3. *Filing one of these four area navigation capabilities as shown does not indicate performance based navigation sufficient for flying Q−Routes, T−Routes, or RNAV SIDs or STARs. To qualify for these routes, see the section on Performance Based Navigation Routes.*

(c) Transponder Capabilities (Item 10b)

• For domestic flights, it is not necessary to indicate Mode S capability. It is acceptable to simply file one of the following codes in TBL 4−8.

TBL 4−8

Mode C

Capability	Item 10b
Transponder with no Mode C	A
Transponder with Mode C	C

• International flights must file in accordance with relevant AIPs and regional supplements. Include one of the Mode S codes in TBL 4−9, if appropriate.

NOTE−
File only one transponder code.

TBL 4−9

Mode S

Capability	Aircraft ID	Altitude Encoding	Item 10b
Mode S Transponder	No	No	X
Mode S Transponder	No	Yes	P
Mode S Transponder	Yes	No	I
Mode S Transponder	Yes	Yes	S
Mode S Transponder with Extended Squitter	Yes	Yes	E
Enhanced Mode S Transponder	Yes	Yes	H
Enhanced Mode S Transponder with Extended Squitter	Yes	Yes	L

(d) ADS−B Capabilities (Item 10b, Item 18 SUR/ and Item 18 CODE/)

• Indicate ADS−B capability as shown in TBL 4−10. The accompanying entry in Item 18 indicates that the equipment is compliant with 14 CFR §91.227. Some ADS−B equipment used in other countries is based on an earlier standard and does not meet U.S. requirements.

• Do not file an ADS−B code for "in" capability only. There is currently no way to indicate that an aircraft has "in" capability but no "out" capability.

• For aircraft with ADS−B "out" on one frequency and "in" on another, include only the ADS−B "out" code. For example, B1 or U1, (See TBL 4−10).

TBL 4−10

ADS−B Capabilities

Capability	Item 10b	Item 18 SUR/
1090 ES Out Capability	B1	260B
1090 ES Out and In Capability	B2	260B
UAT Out Capability	U1	282B
UAT Out and In Capability	U2	282B

(e) Voice Communication Capabilities (Item 10a)

The FAA does not require indication of voice communication capabilities in a flight plan for domestic flights, but it is permissible. For flights outside the domestic United States, all relevant capabilities must be indicated as follows (See TBL 4−11):

TBL 4−11

Voice Communication Capabilities

Capability	Item 10a
VHF Radio	V
UHF Radio	U
HF Radio	H
VHF Radio (8.33 kHZ Spacing)	Y
ATC SATVOICE (INMARSAT)	M1
ATC SATVOICE (Iridium)	M2

(f) Approach Aid Capabilities (Item 10a).

The FAA does not require filing of approach aid capability in order to request a specific type of approach, however any of the codes indicated in TBL 4−12 in 10a are permissible.

• International flights may be required to indicate approach capability, based on instructions from relevant service providers.

TBL 4−12

Approach Aid Capabilities

Capability	Item 10a
ILS	L
MLS	K
LPV Approach (APV with SBAS) (WAAS)	B
GBAS Landing System (LAAS)	A

6. Performance−Based Navigation Routes (Item 10a, Item 18 PBN/, Item 18 NAV/)− When planning to fly routes that require PBN capability, file the appropriate capability as shown in TBL 4−13.

TBL 4−13

Filing for Performance Based Navigation (PBN) Routes

Type of Routing	Capability Required	Item 10a	Item 18 PBN/ See NOTE 4	Notes
RNAV SID or STAR (See NOTE 1)	RNAV 1	GR	D2	If GNSS
		DIR	D4	If DME/DME/IRU
Domestic Q−Route (see separate requirements for Gulf of Mexico Q−Routes)	RNAV 2	GR	C2	If GNSS
		DIR	C4	If DME/DME/IRU
T−Route	RNAV 2	GR	C2	GNSS is required for T−Routes
RNAV (GPS) Approach	RNAV Approach, GPS	GR	S1	*Domestic arrivals do not need to file PBN approach capabilities to request the approach.*
RNAV (GPS) Approach	RNAV Approach, GPS Baro−VNAV	GR	S2	
RNP AR Approach with RF	RNP (Special Authorization Required) RF Leg Capability	GR	T1	
RNP AR Approach without RF	RNP (Special Authorization Required)	GR	T2	

NOTE−

1. *If the flight is requesting an RNAV SID only (no RNAV STAR) or RNAV STAR only (no RNAV SID) then the flight plan can include the following entries in Item 18 NAV/:*

- *Assign RNAV SID, but no RNAV STAR: NAV/RNVD1E2A0 (optionally, the A0 may be omitted)*
- *Assign RNAV STAR, but no RNAV SID: NAV/RNVD0E2A1 (optionally, the D0 may be omitted)*

2. *PBN code D1 includes the capabilities of D2, D3, and D4. PBN code B1 includes the capabilities of B2, B3, and B4. PBN code C1 includes the capabilities of C2, C3, and C4.*

7. Automated Departure Clearance Delivery (DCL or PDC). When planning to use automated pre−departure clearance delivery capability, file as indicated below.

(a) PDC provides pre−departure clearances from the FAA to the operator’s designated flight operations center, which then delivers the clearance to the pilot by various means. Use of PDC does not require any special flight plan entry.

(b) DCL provides pre−departure clearances from the FAA directly to the cockpit/FMS via Controller Pilot Datalink Communications (CPDLC). Use of DCL requires flight plan entries as follows:

- Include CPDLC codes in Item 10a only if the flight is capable of en route/oceanic CPDLC, the codes are not required for DCL.
- Include Z in Item 10a to indicate there is information provided in Item 18 DAT/.
- Include the clearance delivery methods of which the flight is capable, and order of preference in Item 18 DAT/. (See AIM 5−2−2)
    - VOICE − deliver clearance via Voice
    - PDC − deliver clearance via PDC
    - FANS − deliver clearance via FANS 1/A
    - FANSP − deliver clearance via FANS 1/A+

EXAMPLE−

DAT/1FANS2PDC
DAT/1FANSP2VOICE

8. Operating in Reduced Vertical Separation Minima (RVSM) Airspace (Item 10a). When planning to fly in RVSM airspace (FL 290 up to and including FL 410) then file as indicated below.

(a) If capable and approved for RVSM operations, per AIM 4−6−1, Applicability and RVSM Mandate (Date/Time and Area), file a W in Item 10a. Include the aircraft registration mark in Item 18 REG/, which is used to post−operationally monitor the safety of RVSM operations.

- Do not file a “W” in Item 10a if the aircraft is capable of RVSM operations, but is not approved to operate in RVSM airspace.
- If RVSM capability is lost after the flight plan is filed, request that ATC remove the ’W’ from Item 10a.

(b) When requesting to operate non−RVSM in RVSM airspace, using one of the exceptions identified in AIM 4−6−10, do not include a “W” in Item 10a. Include STS/NONRVSM in Item 18. STS/NONRVSM is used only as part of a request to operate non−RVSM in RVSM airspace.

9. Eligibility for Reduced Oceanic Separation. Indicate eligibility for the listed reduced separation minima as indicated in the tables below. Full Operational Requirements for these services are found in Part 3, Section 2, “International Oceanic Airspace Notices” of the NOTAM book available at http://www.faa.gov/air_traffic/publications/notices/.

TBL 4−14

Filing for Gulf of Mexico CTA

Dimension of Separation	Separation Minima	ADS−C Surveillance Requirements	Comm. Requirement	PBN Requirement	Flight Plan Entries			
					ADS−C in Item 10b	CPDLC in Item 10a	PBN in Item 18 PBN/ (also File ’R’ in Item 10a)	PBN in Item 18 NAV/
Lateral	50 NM	N/A (ADS−C not required)	Voice comm− HF or VHF as required to maintain contact over the entire route to be flown.	RNP10 or RNP4	N/A	N/A	A1 or L1	N/A

NOTE−
If not RNAV10/RNP10 capable and planning to operate in the Gulf of Mexico CTA, then put the notation NONRNP10 in Item 18 RMK/, preferably first.

TBL 4−15

Filing for 50 NM Lateral Separation in Anchorage Arctic FIR

Dimension of Separation	Separation Minima	ADS−C Surveillance Requirements	Comm. Requirement	PBN Requirement	Flight Plan Entries			
					ADS−C in Item 10b	CPDLC in Item 10a	PBN in Item 18 PBN/ (also File ’R’ in Item 10a)	PBN in Item 18 NAV/
Lateral	50 NM	N/A (ADS−C not required)	None beyond normal requirements for the airspace	RNP10 or RNP4	N/A	N/A	A1 or L1	N/A

TBL 4−16

Filing for 30 NM Lateral, 30 NM Longitudinal, and 50 NM Longitudinal Oceanic Separation in Anchorage, Oakland, and New York Oceanic CTAs

Dimension of Separation	Separation Minima	ADS−C Surveillance Requirements	Comm. Requirement	PBN Requirement	Flight Plan Entries			
					ADS−C in Item 10b	CPDLC in Item 10a	PBN in Item 18 PBN/ (also File 'R' in Item 10a)	PBN in Item 18 NAV/
Longitudinal	50 NM	Position report at least every 27 minutes (at least every 32 minutes if both aircraft are approved for RNP−4 operations)	CPDLC	RNP10	D1	J5, and/or J6, and/or J7	A1	N/A
Longitudinal	30 NM	ADS−C position report at least every 10 minutes	CPDLC	RNP4	D1	J5, and/or J6, and/or J7	L1	N/A
Lateral	30 NM	ADS−C−based lateral deviation event contract with 5NM lateral deviation from planned routing set as threshold for triggering ADS report of lateral deviation event	CPDLC	RNP4	D1	J5, and/or J6, and/or J7	L1	N/A

TBL 4−17

Filing for Reduced Oceanic Separation when RSP/RCP Required on March 29, 2018

Dimension of Separation	Separation Minima	RSP Requirement	RCP Requirement	PBN Requirement	Flight Plan Entries				
					RSP in Item 18 SUR/	RCP in Item 10a	CDPLC in Item10a	PBN in Item 18 PBN/ (also File 'R' in Item 10a)	PBN in Item 18 NAV/
Lateral	55.5 km 30 NM	180	240	RNP 2 or RNP4	RSP180	P2	J5, and/or J6, and/or J7	L1	
Performance−based Longitudinal	5 Minutes	180	240	RNAV10 (RNP10) RNP4, or RNP2	RSP180	P2	J5, and/or J6, and/or J7	A1 or L1	RNP2(See Note)
Performance−based Longitudinal	55.5 km 30 NM	180	240	RNP4 or RNP2	RSP180	P2	J5, and/or J6, and/or J7	L1	RNP2(See Note)
Performance−based Longitudinal	93 km 50 NM	180	240	RNAV10 (RNP10) or RNP4,	RSP180	P2	J5, and/or J6, and/or J7	A1 or L1	

NOTE−
Filing of RNP2 alone is not supported in FAA controlled airspace; PBN/L1 (for RNP4) must be filed to obtain the indicated separation.

10. Date of Flight (Item 18 DOF/)

Flights planned more than 23 hours after the time the flight plan is filed, must include the date of flight in DOF/ expressed in a six−digit format YYMMDD, where YY equals the year (Y), MM equals the month, and DD equals the day.

NOTE−
FAA ATC systems will not accept flight plans more than 23 hours prior to their proposed departure time. FAA Flight Service and commercial flight planning services generally accept flight plans earlier and forward to ATC at an appropriate time, typically 2 to 4 hours before the flight.

EXAMPLE−
DOF/171130

11. Reasons for Special Handling (Item 18 STS/)

(a) Indicate the applicable Special Handling in Item 18 STS/ as shown in TBL 4−18.

NOTE−
Priority for a flight is not automatically granted based on filing one of these codes but is based on documented procedures. In some cases, additional information may also be required in remarks; follow all such instructions as well.

TBL 4−18

Special Handling

Special Handling	Item 18 STS/
Flight operating in accordance with an altitude reservation	ALTRV
Flight approved for exemption from ATFM measures by the appropriate ATS authority	ATFMX
Fire Fighting	FFR
Flight check for calibration of NAVAIDS	FLTCK
Flight carrying hazardous material(s)	HAZMAT
Flight with Head of State status	HEAD
Medical flight declared by medical authorities	HOSP
Flight operating on a humanitarian mission	HUM
Flight for which a military entity assumes responsibility for separation of military aircraft	MARSA
Life critical medical emergency evacuation	MEDEVAC
Non−RVSM capable flight intending to operate in RVSM airspace	NONRVSM
Flight engaged in a search and rescue mission	SAR
Flight engaged in military, customs, or police services	STATE

(b) Any other requests for special handling must be made in Item 18 RMK/.

(c) Include plain−language remarks when required by ATC or deemed necessary. Do not use special characters, for example; / * − = +.

EXAMPLE−
RMK/NRP
RMK/DVRSN

12. Remarks

Include when necessary.

13. Operator (Item 18 OPR/)

When the operator is not obvious from the aircraft identification, the operator may be indicated.

EXAMPLE−
OPR/NETJETS

14. Flight Plan Originator (Item 18 ORGN/)

(a) VFR flight plans originating outside of FAA FSS or FAA contracted flight plan filing services must enter the 8−letter AFTN address of the service where the flight plan was originally filed. Alternately, enter the name of the service where the FPL was originally filed. This information is critical to locating the FPL originator in the event additional information is needed.

(b) For IFR flight plans, the original filers AFTN address may be indicated, which is helpful in cases where a flight plan has been forwarded.

EXAMPLE−
ORGN/Acme Flight Plans
ORGN/KDENXLDS

TBL 4−19

Aircraft Specific Information

Item	International Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233−4)	Domestic U.S. Requirements	Equivalent Item on Domestic Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233−1)
Number of Aircraft	Item 9	Included when more than one a/c in flight	Item 3
Type of Aircraft	Item 9	Required	Item 3
Wake Turbulence Category	Item 9	Required	N/A
Aircraft Registration	Item 18 REG/	Include when planning to operate in RVSM airspace	N/A
Mode S Address	Item 18 CODE/	Not required within U.S. controlled airspace	N/A
SELCAL Codes	Item 18 SEL/	Include when SELCAL equipped	N/A
Performance Category	Item 18 PER/	Not required for domestic flights	N/A

e. Instructions for Aircraft−Specific Information.

1. Number of Aircraft (Item 9) when there is more than one aircraft in the flight; indicate the number of aircraft up to 99.

2. Type of Aircraft (Item 9)

(a) Provide the appropriate 2−4−character aircraft type designator listed in FAA Order 7360.1, Aircraft Type Designators at:
https://www.faa.gov/regulations_policies/orders_notices/index.cfm/go/document.information/documentID/1036757

(b) When there is no designator for the aircraft type use 'ZZZZ', and provide a description in Item 18 TYP/.

3. Wake Turbulence Category (Item 9)

A Wake Turbulence Category is required for all aircraft types. Provide the appropriate wake turbulence category for the aircraft type as listed in FAA Order 7360.1. The categories include:

(a) J − SUPER, aircraft types specified as such in FAA Order JO 7360.1, Aircraft Type Designators.

(b) H − HEAVY, to indicate an aircraft type with a maximum certificated take−off mass of 300,000 lbs. or more, with the exception of aircraft types listed in FAA Order JO 7360.1 in the SUPER (J) category.

(c) M − MEDIUM, to indicate an aircraft type with a maximum certificated take−off mass of less than 300,000 lbs. but more than 15,500 lbs.

(d) L − LIGHT, to indicate an aircraft type with a maximum certificated take−off mass of 15,500 lbs. or less.

4. Aircraft Registration (Item 18 REG/)

The aircraft registration must be provided here if different from the Item 7 entry. The registration mark must not include any spaces or hyphens. Additionally, the actual aircraft registration must also be included if Item 7 would have contained a leading numeric and was modified to be prefixed with the appropriate alphabetic character for U.S. ATC acceptance.

EXAMPLE−
U.S. aircraft with registration N789AK
REG/N789AK
Belgian aircraft with registration OO−FAH
REG/OOFAH

5. Mode S Address (Item 18 CODE/)

There is no U.S. requirement to file the aircraft Mode S Code in Item 18.

6. SELCAL code (Item 18 SEL/)

(a) Flights with HF radio and Selective Calling capability should include their 4−letter SELCAL code. Per the U.S. AIP, GEN 3.4, Paragraph 9, Selective Calling System (SELCAL) Facilities Available.

(b) The SELCAL is a communication system that permits the selective calling of individual aircraft over radio−telephone channels from the ground station to properly equipped aircraft, to eliminate the need for the flight crew to constantly monitor the frequency in use.

EXAMPLE−
SEL/CLEF

7. Performance Category (Item 18 PER/)

Include the appropriate single−letter Aircraft Approach Category as defined in the Pilot/Controller Glossary.

EXAMPLE−
PER/A

TBL 4−20

Flight Routing Information

Item	International Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233−4)	Domestic U.S. Requirements	Equivalent Item on Domestic Flight Plan (FAA Form 7233−1)
Departure Airport	Item 13	Required	Item 2
Departure Time	Item 13	Required	Item 1
Cruise Speed	Item 15	Required	N/A
Requested Altitude	Item 15	Required	Item 3
Route	Item 15	Required	N/A
Delay En Route	Item 15, Item 18 DLE/	Required	N/A
Destination Airport	Item 16	Required	Item 11
Total Estimated Elapsed Time	Item 16	Required	Item
Alternate Airport	Item 16 Item 18 ALTN/ (Destination Alternate). RALT/ (En route Alternate); TALT/ (Take−off Alternate)	If necessary No need to file for domestic U.S. flight	N/A
Estimated Elapsed Times	Item 18 EET/	Include when filing flight plan with center other than departure center	N/A

f. Instructions for Flight Routing Items

1. Departure Airport (Item 13, Item 18 DEP/)

(a) Enter the departure airport. The airport should be identified using the four−letter location identifier from FAA Order JO 7350.9, Location Identifiers, or from ICAO Document 7910. FSS and FAA contracted flight plan filing services will allow up to 11 characters in the departure field. This will permit entry of non−ICAO identifier airports, and other fixes such as an intersection, fix/radial/distance, and latitude/longitude coordinates. Other electronic filing services may require a different format.

NOTE−
While user interfaces for flight plan filing are not specified, all flight plan filing services must adhere to the appropriate Interface Control Document upon transmission of the flight plan to the control facility.

(b) When the intended departure airport (Item 13) is outside of domestic U.S. airspace, or if using the paper version of FAA Form 7233−4, or DOD equivalent, if the chosen flight plan filing service does not allow non−ICAO airport identifiers in Item 13 or Item 16, use the following ICAO procedure. Enter four Z's (ZZZZ) in Item 13 and include the non−ICAO airport location identifier, fix, or waypoint location in Item 18 DEP/. A text description following the location identifier is permissible in Item 18 DEP/.

NOTE−
Use of non−ICAO identifiers in Item 13 and Item 16 is only permissible when flight destination is within U.S. airspace. If the destination is outside of the U.S., then both Item 13 and Item 16 must contain either a valid ICAO airport identifier or ZZZZ. Use of non−ICAO departure point is not permitted in Item 13 if destination in Item 16 is outside of U.S.

EXAMPLE−
DEP/MD21
DEP/W29 BAY BRIDGE AIRPORT
DEP/EMI211017
DEP/3925N07722W

2. Departure Time (Item 13)

Indicate the expected departure time using 4 digits, 2 digits for hours and 2 digits for minutes. Time is to be entered as Coordinated Universal Time (UTC).

3. Requested Cruising Speed (Item 15)

(a) Include the requested cruising speed as True Airspeed in knots using an N followed by four digits.

EXAMPLE−
N0450

(b) Indicate the requested cruising speed in Mach using an M followed by three digits.

EXAMPLE−
M081

4. Requested Cruising Altitude or Flight Level (Item 15)

(a) Indicate a Requested Flight Level using the letter F followed by 3 digits.

EXAMPLE−
F350

(b) Indicate a Requested Altitude in hundreds of feet using the letter A followed by 3 digits.

EXAMPLE−
A080

5. Route (Item 15)

Provide the requested route of flight using a combination of published routes, latitude/longitude, and/or fixes in the following formats.

(a) Consecutive fixes, lat/long points, NAVAIDs, and waypoints should be separated by the characters "DCT", meaning direct.

EXAMPLE−
FLACK DCT IRW DCT IRW12503
4020N07205W DCT MONEY

(b) A published route should be preceded by a fix that is published on the route, indicating where the route will be joined. The published route should be followed by a fix that is published as part of the route, indicating where the route will be exited.

EXAMPLE−
DALL3 EIC V18 MEI LGC4

(c) It is acceptable to specify intended speed and altitude changes along the route by appending an oblique stroke followed by the next speed and altitude. However, note that FAA ATC systems will neither process this information nor display it to ATC personnel. Pilots are expected to maintain the last assigned altitude and request revised altitude clearances from ATC.

EXAMPLE–
DCT APN J177 LEXOR/N0467F380 J177 TAM/N0464F390 J177

NOTE–
Further guidance on route construction can be found at http://www.faa.gov/ato?k=fpl.

6. Delay En Route (Item 15, Item 18 DLE/)

(a) ICAO defines Item 18 DLE/ to provide information about a delay en route. International flights with a delay outside U.S. domestic airspace should indicate the place and duration of the delay in Item 18 DLE/. The delay is expressed by a fix identifier followed by the duration in hours (H) and minutes (M), HHMM.

EXAMPLE–
DLE/EMI0140

(b) U.S. ATC systems will accept but not process information in DLE/. Therefore, for flights in the lower 48 states, it is preferable to include the delay as part of the route (Item 15). Delay in this format is specified by an oblique stroke (/) followed by the letter D, followed by 2 digits for hours (H) of delay, followed by a plus sign (+), followed by 2 digits for minutes (M) of delay: /DHH+MM.

EXAMPLE–
DCT EMI/D01+40 DCT MAPEL/D00+30 V143 DELRO DCT

7. Destination Airport (Item 16, Item 18 DEST/)

(a) Enter the destination airport. The airport should be identified using the four−letter location identifier from FAA Order JO 7350.9, Location Identifiers, or from ICAO Document 7910. FSS and FAA contracted flight plan filing services will allow up to 11 characters in the destination field. This will permit entry of non−ICAO identifier airports, and other fixes such as an intersection, fix/radial/distance, and latitude/longitude coordinates. Other electronic filing services may require a different format.

NOTE–
While user interfaces for flight plan filing are not specified, all flight plan filing services must adhere to the appropriate Interface Control Document upon transmission of the flight plan to the control facility.

(b) When the intended destination (Item 16) is outside of domestic U.S. airspace, or if using the paper version of FAA Form 7233−4, or if the chosen flight plan filing service does not allow non−ICAO airport identifiers in Item 13 or Item 16, use the following ICAO procedure. Enter four Z's (ZZZZ) in Item 13 and include the non−ICAO airport location identifier, fix, or waypoint location in Item 18 DEP/. A text description following the location identifier is permissible in Item 18 DEP/.

EXAMPLE–
DEST/06A MOTON FIELD
DEST/4AK6
DEST/MONTK
DEST /3925N07722W

8. Total Estimated Elapsed Time (Item 16)

All flight plans must include the total estimated elapsed time from departure to destination in hours (H) and minutes (M), format HHMM.

9. Alternate Airport (Item 16, Item 18 ALTN/)

(a) When necessary, specify an alternate airport in Item 16 using the four−letter location identifier from FAA Order 7350.9 or ICAO Document 7910. When the airport does not have a four−letter location identifier, include ZZZZ in Item 16c and file the non−standard identifier in Item 18 ALTN/.

(b) While the FAA does not require filing of alternate airports in the flight plan provided to ATC, rules for establishing alternate airports must be followed.

(c) Adding an alternate may assist during Search and Rescue by identifying additional areas to search.

(d) Although alternate airport information filed in a flight plan will be accepted by air traffic computer systems, it will not be presented to controllers. If diversion to an alternate airport becomes necessary, pilots are expected to notify ATC and request an amended clearance.

EXAMPLE−
ALTN/W50 2W2

10. Estimated Elapsed Times (EET) at boundaries or reporting points (Item 18 EET/)

EETs are required for international or oceanic flights when crossing a Flight Information Region (FIR) boundary. The EET will include the ICAO four−letter location identifier for the FIR followed by the elapsed time to the FIR boundary (e.g., KZNY0245 indicates 2 hours, 45 minutes from departure until the New York FIR boundary).

EXAMPLE−
EET/MMFR0011 MMTY0039 KZAB0105

11. Remarks (Item 18 RMK/)

Enter only those remarks pertinent to ATC or to the clarification of other flight plan information. Items of a personal nature are not accepted.

NOTE−
1. *"DVRSN" should be placed in Item 11 only if the pilot/company is requesting priority handling to their original destination from ATC as a result of a diversion as defined in the Pilot/Controller Glossary.*
2. *Do not assume that remarks will be automatically transmitted to every controller. Specific ATC or en route requests should be made directly to the appropriate controller.*

g. Flight Specific Supplemental Information (Item 19)

1. Item 19 data must be included when completing FAA Form 7233−4. This information will be retained by the facility/organization that transmits the flight plan to Air Traffic Control (ATC), for Search and Rescue purposes, but it will not be transmitted to ATC as part of the flight plan.

2. Do not include Supplemental Information as part of Item 18. The information in Item 19 is retained with the flight plan filing service for retrieval only if necessary.

NOTE−
Supplemental Information within Item 19 will be transmitted as a separate message to the destination FSS for VFR flight plans filed with a FSS or FAA contracted flight plan filing service. This will reduce the time necessary to conduct SAR actions should the flight become overdue, as this information will be readily available to the destination Flight Service Station.

3. Minimum required Item 19 entries for a domestic flight are Endurance, Persons on Board, Pilot Name and Contact Information, and Color of Aircraft. Additional entries may be required by foreign air traffic services, or at pilot discretion.

(a) After E/ Enter fuel endurance time in hours and minutes.

(b) After P/ Enter total number of persons on board using up to 30 alphanumeric characters. Enter TBN (to be notified) if the total number of persons is not known at the time of filing.

EXAMPLE−
P/005
P/TBN
P/ON FILE CAPEAIR OPERATIONS

(c) R/ (Radio) Cross out items not carried

(d) S/ (Survival Equipment) Cross out items not carried.

(e) J/ (Jackets) Cross out items not carried.

(f) D/ (Life Raft/Dinghies) Enter number carried and total capacity. Indicate if covered and color.

(g) A/ (Aircraft Color and Markings) Enter aircraft color(s).

EXAMPLE−
White Yellow Blue

4. N/ (Remarks. Not for ATC) select N if no remarks. Enter comments concerning survival equipment and information concerning personal GPS locating service, if utilized. Enter name and contact information for responsible party to verify VFR arrival/closure, if desired. Ensure party will be available for contact at ETA. (for example; FBO is open at ETA)

5. C/ (Pilot) Enter name and contact information, including telephone number, of pilot−in−command. Ensure contact information will be valid at ETA in case SAR is necessary.

FAA FORM 7233−4, INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN

Approved OMB No. 2120-0026
Exp. 7/31/2020

U S Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration

International Flight Plan

PRIORITY ADDRESSEE(S)

<=FF

<=

FILING TIME ORIGINATOR <=

SPECIFIC IDENTIFICATION OF ADDRESSEE(S) AND / OR ORIGINATOR

3 MESSAGE TYPE 7 AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION 8 FLIGHT RULES TYPE OF FLIGHT

<=(FPL — — — <=

9 NUMBER TYPE OF AIRCRAFT WAKE TURBULENCE CAT. 10 EQUIPMENT

— / — / <=

13 DEPARTURE AERODROME TIME

— <=

15 CRUISING SPEED LEVEL ROUTE

—

<=

16 DESTINATION AERODROME TOTAL EET HR MIN ALTN AERODROME 2ND ALTN AERODROME <=

18 OTHER INFORMATION

—

<=

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION (NOT TO BE TRANSMITTED IN FPL MESSAGES)

19 ENDURANCE HR MIN PERSONS ON BOARD EMERGENCY RADIO UHF VHF ELT

—E/ P/ R/ U V E

SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT POLAR DESERT MARITIME JUNGLE JACKETS LIGHT FLUORES UHF VHF

/ P D M J / L F U V

DINGHIES

NUMBER CAPACITY COVER COLOR

D / C <=

AIRCRAFT COLOR AND MARKINGS

A/

REMARKS

N / <=

PILOT-IN-COMMAND

C/)<=

FILED BY ACCEPTED BY ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

FAA Form 7233-4 (7/15)

FAA FORM 7233−4, INTERNATIONAL FLIGHT PLAN

Approved OMB No. 2120-0026
Exp. 7/31/2020

U S Department of Transportation
Federal Aviation Administration

International Flight Plan

PRIORITY <=FF

ADDRESSEE(S) <=

FILING TIME

ORIGINATOR <=

SPECIFIC IDENTIFICATION OF ADDRESSEE(S) AND / OR ORIGINATOR

3 MESSAGE TYPE <=(FPL

7 AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION — N 7 8 9 A K

8 FLIGHT RULES — I

TYPE OF FLIGHT — G <=

9 NUMBER —

TYPE OF AIRCRAFT T B M 8

WAKE TURBULENCE CAT. / L

10 EQUIPMENT — SDGR /S <=

13 DEPARTURE AERODROME — K B O S

TIME 1 7 0 0 <=

15 CRUISING SPEED — N 0 2 1 0

LEVEL F 2 7 0

ROUTE LBSTA4 LBSTA DCT ENE J573 YSJ DCT <=

16 DESTINATION AERODROME C Y S J

TOTAL EET HR MIN 0 1 4 5

ALTN AERODROME Z Z Z Z

2ND ALTN AERODROME <=

18 OTHER INFORMATION — PBN/A1B1C1 EET/CZQM0100 ALTN/CCW3 <=

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION (NOT TO BE TRANSMITTED IN FPL MESSAGES)

19 ENDURANCE HR MIN —E/ 0 6 0 0

PERSONS ON BOARD P/ 0 0 5

EMERGENCY RADIO R/ UHF U VHF V ELT ~~E~~

SURVIVAL EQUIPMENT / POLAR ~~P~~ DESERT D MARITIME ~~M~~ JUNGLE J

JACKETS ~~J~~ / LIGHT ~~L~~ FLUORES F UHF U VHF V

DINGHIES
NUMBER 0 1 CAPACITY 0 1 0 COVER ~~C~~ COLOR ORANGE <=
D /

AIRCRAFT COLOR AND MARKINGS
A/ WHITE RED YELLOW

REMARKS
N / SPOT GEN3 <=

PILOT-IN-COMMAND
C/ W. MORIARTY 555-555-5555)<=

FILED BY | ACCEPTED BY | ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

FAA Form 7233-4 (7/15)

Appendix 5. FAA Form 7233−1 − Flight Plan

Throughout this document where references are made to FAA Form 7233−1, Flight Plan, and FAA Form 7233−4, International Flight Plan, DOD use of the equivalent DOD Forms 175 and 1801 respectively, are implied and acceptable. Within U.S. controlled air space, FAA Form 7233−1, Flight Plan, may be used by filers of DOD/military flight plans and civilian stereo route flight plans. Use of the international format flight plan format is mandatory for:

a. Any flight plan filed through a FSS or FAA contracted flight plan filing service; with the exception of Department of Defense flight plans and civilian stereo route flight plans, which can still be filed using the format prescribed in FAA Form 7233−1.

NOTE−
DOD Form DD−175 and FAA Form 7233−1 are considered to follow the same format.

b. Any flight that will depart U.S. domestic airspace. For DOD flight plan purposes, offshore Warning Areas may use FAA Form 7233−1 or military equivalent.

c. Any flight requesting routing that requires Performance Based Navigation.

d. Any flight requesting services that require filing of capabilities only supported in the international flight plan format.

NOTE−
The order of flight plan elements in FAA Form 7233−1 is equivalent to the DD−175.

e. Explanation of IFR/VFR Flight Plan Items.

(1) Block 1. Check the type of flight plan.

(2) Block 2. Enter your complete aircraft identification.

(3) Block 3. Enter the aircraft type.

(4) Block 4. Enter the true airspeed (TAS).

(5) Block 5. Enter the departure airport identifier.

(6) Block 6. Enter the proposed departure time in Zulu (Z). If airborne, specify the actual or proposed departure time as appropriate.

(7) Block 7. Enter the appropriate altitude.

(8) Block 8. Define the route of flight by using NAVAID identifier codes and airways.

(9) Block 9. Enter the destination airport identifier code.

(10) Block 10. Enter the estimated time en route in hours and minutes.

(11) Block 11. Enter remarks, if necessary.

(12) Block 12. Specify the fuel on board in hours and minutes.

(13) Block 13. Specify an alternate airport if desired.

(14) Block 14. Enter name and contact information for pilot in command.

NOTE−
This information is essential in the event of search and rescue operations.

(15) Block 15. Enter total number of persons on board (POB) including crew.

(16) Block 16. Enter the aircraft color.

FIG 5-1

FAA Form 7233-1 - Flight Plan (Blank)
For Military/DOD, Civilian Stereo Route Flight Plan Use Only

PRIVACY ACT STATEMENT: This statement is provided pursuant to the Privacy Act of 1974, 5 USC § 552a: The authority for collecting this information is contained in 49 U.S.C. §§ 40113, 44702, 44703, 44709, and 14 C.F.R. Part 6 - [Part 61, 63, 65, or 67. The principal purpose for which the information is intended to be used is to allow you to submit your flight plan. Submission of the data is voluntary. Failure to provide all required information may result in you not being able to submit your flight plan. The information collected on this form will be included in a Privacy Act System of Records known as DOT/FAA 847, titled "Aviation Records on Individuals" and will be subject to the routine uses published in the System of Records Notice (SORN) for DOT/FAA 847 (see www.dot.gov/privacy/privacyactnotices).

Paperwork Reduction Act Statement: A federal agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to, nor shall a person be subject to a penalty for failure to comply with a collection of information subject to the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act unless that collection of information displays a current valid OMB Control Number. The OMB Control Number for this information collection is 2120-0026. Public reporting for this collection of information is estimated to be approximately 2.5 minutes per response, including the time for reviewing instructions,completing and reviewing the collection of information. All responses to this collection of information are mandatory per14 CFR Part 91. Comments concerning the accuracy of this burden and suggestions for reducing the burden should be directed to the FAA at: 800 Independence Ave. SW, Washington, DC 20591, Attn: Information Collection Clearance Officer, ASP-110.

Form Approved: OMB No. 2120-0026 Exp. 7/31/2020

FLIGHT PLAN
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

(FAA USE ONLY) ☐ PILOT BRIEFING ☐ VNR ☐ STOPOVER

TIME STARTED

SPECIALIST INITIALS

1. TYPE: VFR / IFR / DVFR
2. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION
3. AIRCRAFT TYPE / SPECIAL EQUIPMENT
4. TRUE AIRSPEED — KTS
5. DEPARTURE POINT
6. DEPARTURE TIME — PROPOSED (Z) / ACTUAL (Z)
7. CRUISING ALTITUDE
8. ROUTE OF FLIGHT
9. DESTINATION (Name of airport and city)
10. EST. TIME ENROUTE — HOURS / MINUTES
11. REMARKS
12. FUEL ON BOARD — HOURS / MINUTES
13. ALTERNATE AIRPORT(S)
14. PILOT'S NAME, ADDRESS & TELEPHONE NUMBER & AIRCRAFT HOME BASE
15. NUMBER ABOARD
17. DESTINATION CONTACT/TELEPHONE (OPTIONAL)
16. COLOR OF AIRCRAFT

CIVIL AIRCRAFT PILOTS. FAR Part 91 requires you file an IFR flight plan to operate under instrument flight rules in controlled airspace. Failure to file could result in a civil penalty not to exceed $1,000 for each violation (Section 901 of the Federal Aviation Act of 1958, as amended). Filing of a VFR flight plan is recommended as a good operating practice. See also Part 99 for requirements concerning DVFR flight plans.

FAA Form 7233-1 (8-82)
Electronic Version (Adobe)

CLOSE VFR FLIGHT PLAN WITH _______________ FSS ON ARRIVAL

MILITARY STOPOVER (FAA USE ONLY)

TYPE: ☐ IFR ☐ VFR
AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION
AIRCRAFT TYPE/SPECIAL EQUIPMENT
REMARKS
DEPARTURE POINT
DESTINATION
ETA

TAS	DEP. PT	ETD	ALTITUDE	ROUTE OF FLIGHT	DESTINATION	ETE	REMARKS
KTS							
KTS							
KTS							
KTS							

REMARKS

INITIALS

FAA Form 7233-1 (8-82) Electronic Version (Adobe)

FIG 5−2

FAA Form 7233−1 − Flight Plan (Sample)
For Military/DOD, Civilian Stereo Route Flight Plan Use Only

PRIVACY ACT STATEMENT: This statement is provided pursuant to the Privacy Act of 1974, 5 USC § 552a: The authority for collecting this information is contained in 49 U.S.C. §§ 40113, 44702, 44703, 44709, and 14 C.F.R. Part 6 - [Part 61, 63, 65, or 67. The principal purpose for which the information is intended to be used is to allow you to submit your flight plan. Submission of the data is voluntary. Failure to provide all required information may result in you not being able to submit your flight plan. The information collected on this form will be included in a Privacy Act System of Records known as DOT/FAA 847, titled "Aviation Records on Individuals" and will be subject to the routine uses published in the System of Records Notice (SORN) for DOT/FAA 847 (see www.dot.gov/privacy/privacyactnotices).

Paperwork Reduction Act Statement: A federal agency may not conduct or sponsor, and a person is not required to respond to, nor shall a person be subject to a penalty for failure to comply with a collection of information subject to the requirements of the Paperwork Reduction Act unless that collection of information displays a current valid OMB Control Number. The OMB Control Number for this information collection is 2120-0026. Public reporting for this collection of information is estimated to be approximately 2.5 minutes per response, including the time for reviewing instructions,completing and reviewing the collection of information. All responses to this collection of information are mandatory per14 CFR Part 91. Comments concerning the accuracy of this burden and suggestions for reducing the burden should be directed to the FAA at: 800 Independence Ave. SW, Washington, DC 20591, Attn: Information Collection Clearance Officer, ASP-110.

Form Approved: OMB No. 2120-0026 Exp. 7/31/2020

FLIGHT PLAN
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION
FEDERAL AVIATION ADMINISTRATION

(FAA USE ONLY) ☐ PILOT BRIEFING ☐ VNR ☐ STOPOVER | TIME STARTED | SPECIALIST INITIALS

1. TYPE: ✓ VFR / IFR / DVFR
2. AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION: G60683
3. AIRCRAFT TYPE / SPECIAL EQUIPMENT: UH60/A
4. TRUE AIRSPEED: 0125 KTS
5. DEPARTURE POINT: BGR
6. DEPARTURE TIME: PROPOSED (Z): P1230 | ACTUAL (Z):
7. CRUISING ALTITUDE: VFR
8. ROUTE OF FLIGHT: 2B7 AUG PWM CON
9. DESTINATION (Name of airport and city): CON
10. EST. TIME ENROUTE: HOURS 02 | MINUTES 00
11. REMARKS:
12. FUEL ON BOARD: HOURS 03 | MINUTES 00
13. ALTERNATE AIRPORT(S):
14. PILOT'S NAME, ADDRESS & TELEPHONE NUMBER & AIRCRAFT HOME BASE: G. BOWLBY 207-555-5555
15. NUMBER ABOARD: 5
16. COLOR OF AIRCRAFT: OLIVE DRAB
17. DESTINATION CONTACT/TELEPHONE (OPTIONAL): 603-555-5555 BGR

CIVIL AIRCRAFT PILOTS. FAR Part 91 requires you file an IFR flight plan to operate under instrument flight rules in controlled airspace. Failure to file could result in a civil penalty not to exceed $1,000 for each violation (Section 901 of the Federal Aviation Act of 1958, as amended). Filing of a VFR flight plan is recommended as a good operating practice. See also Part 99 for requirements concerning DVFR flight plans.

FAA Form 7233-1 (8-82)
Electronic Version (Adobe)

CLOSE VFR FLIGHT PLAN WITH ______________ FSS ON ARRIVAL

MILITARY STOPOVER (FAA USE ONLY)

TYPE: ☐ IFR ☐ VFR | AIRCRAFT IDENTIFICATION | AIRCRAFT TYPE/SPECIAL EQUIPMENT | REMARKS
DEPARTURE POINT | DESTINATION | ETA

TAS	DEP. PT	ETD	ALTITUDE	ROUTE OF FLIGHT	DESTINATION	ETE	REMARKS
KTS							
KTS							
KTS							
KTS							

REMARKS | INITIALS

FAA Form 7233-1 (8-82) Electronic Version (Adobe)

PILOT/CONTROLLER GLOSSARY

PURPOSE

a. This Glossary was compiled to promote a common understanding of the terms used in the Air Traffic Control system. It includes those terms which are intended for pilot/controller communications. Those terms most frequently used in pilot/controller communications are printed in ***bold italics***. The definitions are primarily defined in an operational sense applicable to both users and operators of the National Airspace System. Use of the Glossary will preclude any misunderstandings concerning the system's design, function, and purpose.

b. Because of the international nature of flying, terms used in the Lexicon, published by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO), are included when they differ from FAA definitions. These terms are followed by "[ICAO]." For the reader's convenience, there are also cross references to related terms in other parts of the Glossary and to other documents, such as the Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) and the Aeronautical Information Manual (AIM).

c. This Glossary will be revised, as necessary, to maintain a common understanding of the system.

EXPLANATION OF CHANGES

d. Terms Added:
AIRBORNE REROUTE (ABRR)
ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE WINDOW (ADW)
AUTOMATED TERMINAL PROXIMITY ALERT (ATPA)
AVIATION WATCH NOTIFICATION MESSAGE
CLOSED LOOP CLEARANCE
COLD TEMPERATURE CORRECTION
CONSOLIDATED WAKE TURBULENCE (CWT)
CONSTRAINT SATISFACTION POINT (CSP)
COUPLED SCHEDULING (CS)/ EXTENDED METERING (XM)
DELAY COUNTDOWN TIMER (DCT)
DEPARTURE VIEWER
EN ROUTE TRANSITION WAYPOINT
GROUND−BASED INTERVAL MANAGEMENT−SPACING (GIM−S), SPEED ADVISORY
INTEGRATED DEPARTURE/ARRIVAL CAPABILITY (IDAC)
METER REFERENCE ELEMENT (MRE)
METER REFERENCE POINT LIST (MRP)
OPEN LOOP CLEARANCE
PLAN, EXECUTE, REVIEW, TRAIN, IMPROVE (PERTI)
PLANVIEW GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE (PGUI)
PRE−DEPARTURE REROUTE (PDRR)
REROUTE IMPACT ASSESSMENT (RRIA)
ROUTE AMENDMENT DIALOG (RAD)
RUNWAY TRANSITION WAYPOINT
SPACE LAUNCH AND RENTRY AREA
SPEED ADVISORY
SURFACE METERING PROGRAM

SURFACE VIEWER
SUSPICIOUS UAS
TERMINAL FLIGHT DATA MANAGER (TFDM)
TERMINAL SEQUENCING AND SPACING (TSAS)
TIME−BASED MANAGEMENT (TBM)
TIMELINE GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE (TGUI)
TOP OF DESCENT (TOD)
TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT INITIATIVE (TMI)
TRAJECTORY−BASED OPERATIONS (TBO)
WAKE RE−CATEGORIZATION (RECAT)

e. Terms Deleted:
ACTUAL CALCULATED LANDING TIME (ACLT)
AIRPORT STREAM FILTER (ASF)
ARRIVAL AIRCRAFT INTERVAL (AAI)
ARRIVAL SECTOR ADVISORY LIST
ARRIVAL SEQUENCING PROGRAM
CENTER TRACON AUTOMATION SYSTEM (CTAS)
COLD TEMPERATURE COMPENSATION
DELAY TIME
EN ROUTE SPACING PROGRAM (ESP)
FREEZE CALCULATED LANDING TIME
METER FIX TIME/SLOT TIME (MFT)
METERING POSITION(S)
METERING POSITION LIST
METER LIST
METER LIST DISPLAY INTERVAL
TENTATIVE CALCULATED LANDING TIME (TCLT)
TRANSITION WAYPOINT
VERTEX
VERTEX TIME OF ARRIVAL

f. Terms Modified:
AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER (ATCSCC)
ARRIVAL SECTOR
COMMON ROUTE
EN ROUTE TRANSITION
FLIGHT SERVICE STATION (FSS)
METER FIX ARC
METERING
NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST (NFDD)
NOTICE TO AIRMEN (NOTAM)
OFF−ROUTE OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE (OROCA)
RUNWAY TRANSITION
SEGMENTS OF A SID/STAR
TIME BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)
TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM ALERT
TRANSITION
WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE AREA (WRA)

g. Editorial/format changes were made where necessary. Revision bars were not used due to the insignificant nature of the changes.

A

AAR−
(See AIRPORT ARRIVAL RATE.)

ABBREVIATED IFR FLIGHT PLANS− An authorization by ATC requiring pilots to submit only that information needed for the purpose of ATC. It includes only a small portion of the usual IFR flight plan information. In certain instances, this may be only aircraft identification, location, and pilot request. Other information may be requested if needed by ATC for separation/control purposes. It is frequently used by aircraft which are airborne and desire an instrument approach or by aircraft which are on the ground and desire a climb to VFR-on-top.
(See VFR-ON-TOP.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ABEAM− An aircraft is "abeam" a fix, point, or object when that fix, point, or object is approximately 90 degrees to the right or left of the aircraft track. Abeam indicates a general position rather than a precise point.

ABORT− To terminate a preplanned aircraft maneuver; e.g., an aborted takeoff.

ABRR−
(See AIRBORNE REROUTE)

ACC [ICAO]−
(See ICAO term AREA CONTROL CENTER.)

ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE− The runway plus stopway length declared available and suitable for the acceleration and deceleration of an airplane aborting a takeoff.

ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]− The length of the take-off run available plus the length of the stopway if provided.

ACDO−
(See AIR CARRIER DISTRICT OFFICE.)

ACKNOWLEDGE− Let me know that you have received and understood this message.

ACL−
(See AIRCRAFT LIST.)

ACLS−
(See AUTOMATIC CARRIER LANDING SYSTEM.)

ACROBATIC FLIGHT− An intentional maneuver involving an abrupt change in an aircraft's attitude, an abnormal attitude, or abnormal acceleration not necessary for normal flight.
(See ICAO term ACROBATIC FLIGHT.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

ACROBATIC FLIGHT [ICAO]− Maneuvers intentionally performed by an aircraft involving an abrupt change in its attitude, an abnormal attitude, or an abnormal variation in speed.

ACTIVE RUNWAY−
(See RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY.)

ACTUAL NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE (ANP)−
(See REQUIRED NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE.)

ADDITIONAL SERVICES− Advisory information provided by ATC which includes but is not limited to the following:

a. Traffic advisories.

b. Vectors, when requested by the pilot, to assist aircraft receiving traffic advisories to avoid observed traffic.

c. Altitude deviation information of 300 feet or more from an assigned altitude as observed on a verified (reading correctly) automatic altitude readout (Mode C).

d. Advisories that traffic is no longer a factor.

e. Weather and chaff information.

f. Weather assistance.

g. Bird activity information.

h. Holding pattern surveillance. Additional services are provided to the extent possible contingent only upon the controller's capability to fit them into the performance of higher priority duties and on the basis of limitations of the radar, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, and controller workload. The controller has complete discretion for determining if he/she is able to provide or continue to provide a service in a particular case. The controller's reason not to provide or continue to provide a service in a particular case is not subject to question by the pilot and need not be made known to him/her.

(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ADF−
(See AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER.)

ADIZ−
(See AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE.)

ADLY−
(See ARRIVAL DELAY.)

ADMINISTRATOR− The Federal Aviation Administrator or any person to whom he/she has delegated his/her authority in the matter concerned.

ADR−
(See AIRPORT DEPARTURE RATE.)

ADS [ICAO]−
(See ICAO term AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE.)

ADS−B−
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST.)

ADS−C−
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−CONTRACT.)

ADVISE INTENTIONS− Tell me what you plan to do.

ADVISORY− Advice and information provided to assist pilots in the safe conduct of flight and aircraft movement.
(See ADVISORY SERVICE.)

ADVISORY FREQUENCY− The appropriate frequency to be used for Airport Advisory Service.
(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)
(See UNICOM.)
(Refer to ADVISORY CIRCULAR NO. 90-66.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ADVISORY SERVICE− Advice and information provided by a facility to assist pilots in the safe conduct of flight and aircraft movement.
(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)
(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)
(See RADAR ADVISORY.)
(See SAFETY ALERT.)
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ADW−
(See ARRIVAL DEPARTURE WINDOW)

AERIAL REFUELING− A procedure used by the military to transfer fuel from one aircraft to another during flight.
(Refer to VFR/IFR Wall Planning Charts.)

AERODROME− A defined area on land or water (including any buildings, installations and equipment) intended to be used either wholly or in part for the arrival, departure, and movement of aircraft.

AERODROME BEACON [ICAO]− Aeronautical beacon used to indicate the location of an aerodrome from the air.

AERODROME CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]− Air traffic control service for aerodrome traffic.

AERODROME CONTROL TOWER [ICAO]− A unit established to provide air traffic control service to aerodrome traffic.

AERODROME ELEVATION [ICAO]− The elevation of the highest point of the landing area.

AERODROME TRAFFIC CIRCUIT [ICAO]− The specified path to be flown by aircraft operating in the vicinity of an aerodrome.

AERONAUTICAL BEACON− A visual NAVAID displaying flashes of white and/or colored light to indicate the location of an airport, a heliport, a landmark, a certain point of a Federal airway in mountainous terrain, or an obstruction.
(See AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AERONAUTICAL CHART− A map used in air navigation containing all or part of the following: topographic features, hazards and obstructions, navigation aids, navigation routes, designated airspace, and airports. Commonly used aeronautical charts are:

a. Sectional Aeronautical Charts (1:500,000)− Designed for visual navigation of slow or medium speed aircraft. Topographic information on these charts features the portrayal of relief and a judicious selection of visual check points for VFR flight. Aeronautical information includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, permanent special use airspace (SUA), obstructions, and related data.

b. VFR Terminal Area Charts (1:250,000)− Depict Class B airspace which provides for the control or segregation of all the aircraft within Class B airspace. The chart depicts topographic information and aeronautical information which includes visual and radio aids to navigation, airports, controlled airspace, permanent SUA, obstructions, and related data.

c. En Route Low Altitude Charts− Provide aeronautical information for en route instrument navigation (IFR) in the low altitude stratum. Information includes the portrayal of airways, limits of controlled airspace, position identification and frequencies of radio aids, selected airports, minimum en route and minimum obstruction clearance altitudes, airway distances, reporting points, permanent SUA, and related data. Area charts, which are a part of this series, furnish terminal data at a larger scale in congested areas.

d. En Route High Altitude Charts− Provide aeronautical information for en route instrument navigation (IFR) in the high altitude stratum. Information includes the portrayal of jet routes, identification and frequencies of radio aids, selected airports, distances, time zones, special use airspace, and related information.

e. Instrument Approach Procedure (IAP) Charts− Portray the aeronautical data which is required to execute an instrument approach to an airport. These charts depict the procedures, including all related data, and the airport diagram. Each procedure is designated for use with a specific type of electronic navigation system including NDB, TACAN, VOR, ILS RNAV and GLS. These charts are identified by the type of navigational aid(s)/equipment required to provide final approach guidance.

f. Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) Charts− Designed to expedite clearance delivery and to facilitate transition between takeoff and en route operations. Each DP is presented as a separate chart and may serve a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographical location.

g. Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) Charts− Designed to expedite air traffic control arrival procedures and to facilitate transition between en route and instrument approach operations. Each STAR procedure is presented as a separate chart and may serve a single airport or more than one airport in a given geographical location.

h. Airport Taxi Charts− Designed to expedite the efficient and safe flow of ground traffic at an airport. These charts are identified by the official airport name; e.g., Ronald Reagan Washington National Airport.

(See ICAO term AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

AERONAUTICAL CHART [ICAO]− A representation of a portion of the earth, its culture and relief, specifically designated to meet the requirements of air navigation.

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL (AIM)− A primary FAA publication whose purpose is to instruct airmen about operating in the National Airspace System of the U.S. It provides basic flight information, ATC Procedures and general instructional information concerning health, medical facts, factors affecting flight safety, accident and hazard reporting, and types of aeronautical charts and their use.

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION (AIP) [ICAO]− A publication issued by or with the authority of a State and containing aeronautical information of a lasting character essential to air navigation.

(See CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION SERVICES (AIS)− A facility in Silver Spring, MD, established by FAA to operate a central aeronautical information service for the collection, validation, and dissemination of aeronautical data in support of the activities of government, industry, and the aviation community. The information is published in the National Flight Data Digest.

(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST.)

AFFIRMATIVE− Yes.

AFIS−

(See AUTOMATIC FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE − ALASKA FSSs ONLY.)

AFP−

(See AIRSPACE FLOW PROGRAM.)

AHA−

(See AIRCRAFT HAZARD AREA.)

AIM−

(See AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION MANUAL.)

AIP [ICAO]−

(See ICAO term AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION PUBLICATION.)

AIR CARRIER DISTRICT OFFICE− An FAA field office serving an assigned geographical area, staffed with Flight Standards personnel serving the aviation industry and the general public on matters related to the certification and operation of scheduled air carriers and other large aircraft operations.

AIR DEFENSE EMERGENCY− A military emergency condition declared by a designated authority. This condition exists when an attack upon the continental U.S., Alaska, Canada, or U.S. installations in Greenland by hostile aircraft or missiles is considered probable, is imminent, or is taking place.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE (ADIZ)− An area of airspace over land or water in which the ready identification, location, and control of all aircraft (except for Department of Defense and law enforcement aircraft) is required in the interest of national security.

Note: ADIZ locations and operating and flight plan requirements for civil aircraft operations are specified in 14 CFR Part 99.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIR NAVIGATION FACILITY− Any facility used in, available for use in, or designed for use in, aid of air navigation, including landing areas, lights, any apparatus or equipment for disseminating weather information, for signaling, for radio-directional finding, or for radio or other electrical communication, and any other structure or mechanism having a similar purpose for guiding or controlling flight in the air or the landing and takeoff of aircraft.

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

AIR ROUTE SURVEILLANCE RADAR− Air route traffic control center (ARTCC) radar used primarily to detect and display an aircraft's position while en route between terminal areas. The ARSR enables controllers to provide radar air traffic control service when aircraft are within the ARSR coverage. In some instances, ARSR may enable an ARTCC to provide terminal radar services similar to but usually more limited than those provided by a radar approach control.

AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER (ARTCC)− A facility established to provide air traffic control service to aircraft operating on IFR flight plans within controlled airspace and principally during the en route phase of flight. When equipment capabilities and controller workload permit, certain advisory/assistance services may be provided to VFR aircraft.

(See EN ROUTE AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIR TAXI− Used to describe a helicopter/VTOL aircraft movement conducted above the surface but normally not above 100 feet AGL. The aircraft may proceed either via hover taxi or flight at speeds more than 20 knots. The pilot is solely responsible for selecting a safe airspeed/altitude for the operation being conducted.

(See HOVER TAXI.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIR TRAFFIC− Aircraft operating in the air or on an airport surface, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas.

(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC.)

AIR TRAFFIC [ICAO]− All aircraft in flight or operating on the maneuvering area of an aerodrome.

AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE− An authorization by air traffic control for the purpose of preventing collision between known aircraft, for an aircraft to proceed under specified traffic conditions within controlled airspace. The pilot-in-command of an aircraft may not deviate from the provisions of a visual flight rules (VFR) or instrument flight rules (IFR) air traffic clearance except in an emergency or unless an amended clearance has been obtained. Additionally, the pilot may request a different clearance from that which has been issued by air traffic control (ATC) if information available to the pilot makes another course of action more practicable or if aircraft equipment limitations or company procedures forbid compliance with the clearance issued. Pilots may also request clarification or amendment, as appropriate, any time a clearance is not fully understood, or considered unacceptable because of safety of flight. Controllers should, in such instances and to the extent of operational practicality and safety, honor the pilot's request.

14 CFR Part 91.3(a) states: "The pilot in command of an aircraft is directly responsible for, and is the final authority as to, the operation of that aircraft." THE PILOT IS RESPONSIBLE TO REQUEST AN AMENDED CLEARANCE if ATC issues a clearance that would cause a pilot to deviate from a rule or regulation, or in the pilot's opinion, would place the aircraft in jeopardy.

(See ATC INSTRUCTIONS.)
(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL CLEARANCE.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL− A service operated by appropriate authority to promote the safe, orderly and expeditious flow of air traffic.

(See ICAO term AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL CLEARANCE [ICAO]− Authorization for an aircraft to proceed under conditions specified by an air traffic control unit.

Note 1: For convenience, the term air traffic control clearance is frequently abbreviated to clearance when used in appropriate contexts.

Note 2: The abbreviated term clearance may be prefixed by the words taxi, takeoff, departure, en route, approach or landing to indicate the particular portion of flight to which the air traffic control clearance relates.

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]− A service provided for the purpose of:

a. Preventing collisions:

1. Between aircraft; and

2. On the maneuvering area between aircraft and obstructions.

b. Expediting and maintaining an orderly flow of air traffic.

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SPECIALIST− A person authorized to provide air traffic control service.

(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See ICAO term CONTROLLER.)

AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER (ATCSCC)− An Air Traffic Tactical Operations facility responsible for monitoring and managing the flow of air traffic throughout the NAS, producing a safe, orderly, and expeditious flow of traffic while minimizing delays. The following functions are located at the ATCSCC:

a. Central Altitude Reservation Function (CARF). Responsible for coordinating, planning, and approving special user requirements under the Altitude Reservation (ALTRV) concept.

(See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)

b. Airport Reservation Office (ARO). Monitors the operation and allocation of reservations for unscheduled operations at airports designated by the Administrator as High Density Airports. These airports are generally known as slot controlled airports. The ARO allocates reservations on a first come, first served basis determined by the time the request is received at the ARO.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 93.)
(See CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

c. U.S. Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) Office. Responsible for collecting, maintaining, and distributing NOTAMs for the U.S. civilian and military, as well as international aviation communities.

(See NOTICE TO AIR MISSIONS.)

d. Weather Unit. Monitor all aspects of weather for the U.S. that might affect aviation including cloud cover, visibility, winds, precipitation, thunderstorms, icing, turbulence, and more. Provide forecasts based on observations and on discussions with meteorologists from various National Weather Service offices, FAA facilities, airlines, and private weather services.

e. Air Traffic Organization (ATO) Space Operations and Unmanned Aircraft System (UAS); the Office of Primary Responsibility (OPR) for all space and upper class E tactical operations in the National Airspace System (NAS).

AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE− A generic term meaning:

a. Flight Information Service.

b. Alerting Service.

c. Air Traffic Advisory Service.

d. Air Traffic Control Service:

1. Area Control Service,

2. Approach Control Service, or

3. Airport Control Service.

AIR TRAFFIC SERVICE (ATS) ROUTES − The term "ATS Route" is a generic term that includes "VOR Federal airways," "colored Federal airways," "jet routes," and "RNAV routes." The term "ATS route" does not replace these more familiar route names, but serves only as an overall title when listing the types of routes that comprise the United States route structure.

AIRBORNE− An aircraft is considered airborne when all parts of the aircraft are off the ground.

AIRBORNE DELAY− Amount of delay to be encountered in airborne holding.

AIRBORNE REROUTE (ABRR)− A capability within the Traffic Flow Management System used for the timely development and implementation of tactical reroutes for airborne aircraft. This capability defines a set of aircraft−specific reroutes that address a certain traffic flow problem and then electronically transmits them to En Route Automation Modernization (ERAM) for execution by the appropriate sector controllers.

AIRCRAFT− Device(s) that are used or intended to be used for flight in the air, and when used in air traffic control terminology, may include the flight crew.

(See ICAO term AIRCRAFT.)

AIRCRAFT [ICAO]− Any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air other than the reactions of the air against the earth's surface.

AIRCRAFT APPROACH CATEGORY− A grouping of aircraft based on a speed of 1.3 times the stall speed in the landing configuration at maximum gross landing weight. An aircraft must fit in only one category. If it is necessary to maneuver at speeds in excess of the upper limit of a speed range for a category, the minimums for the category for that speed must be used. For example, an aircraft which falls in Category A, but is circling to land at a speed in excess of 91 knots, must use the approach Category B minimums when circling to land. The categories are as follows:

a. Category A− Speed less than 91 knots.

b. Category B− Speed 91 knots or more but less than 121 knots.

c. Category C− Speed 121 knots or more but less than 141 knots.

d. Category D− Speed 141 knots or more but less than 166 knots.

e. Category E− Speed 166 knots or more.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 97.)

AIRCRAFT CLASSES− For the purposes of Wake Turbulence Separation Minima, ATC classifies aircraft as Super, Heavy, Large, and Small as follows:

a. Super. The Airbus A-380-800 (A388) and the Antonov An-225 (A225) are classified as super.

b. Heavy− Aircraft capable of takeoff weights of 300,000 pounds or more whether or not they are operating at this weight during a particular phase of flight.

c. Large− Aircraft of more than 41,000 pounds, maximum certificated takeoff weight, up to but not including 300,000 pounds.

d. Small− Aircraft of 41,000 pounds or less maximum certificated takeoff weight.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRCRAFT CONFLICT− Predicted conflict, within EDST of two aircraft, or between aircraft and airspace. A Red alert is used for conflicts when the predicted minimum separation is 5 nautical miles or less. A Yellow alert is used when the predicted minimum separation is between 5 and approximately 12 nautical miles. A Blue alert is used for conflicts between an aircraft and predefined airspace.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

AIRCRAFT LIST (ACL)− A view available with EDST that lists aircraft currently in or predicted to be in a particular sector's airspace. The view contains textual flight data information in line format and may be sorted into various orders based on the specific needs of the sector team.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

AIRCRAFT SURGE LAUNCH AND RECOVERY− Procedures used at USAF bases to provide increased launch and recovery rates in instrument flight rules conditions. ASLAR is based on:

a. Reduced separation between aircraft which is based on time or distance. Standard arrival separation applies between participants including multiple flights until the DRAG point. The DRAG point is a published location on an ASLAR approach where aircraft landing second in a formation slows to a predetermined airspeed. The DRAG point is the reference point at which MARSA applies as expanding elements effect separation within a flight or between subsequent participating flights.

b. ASLAR procedures shall be covered in a Letter of Agreement between the responsible USAF military ATC facility and the concerned Federal Aviation Administration facility. Initial Approach Fix spacing requirements are normally addressed as a minimum.

AIRCRAFT HAZARD AREA (AHA)− Used by ATC to segregate air traffic from a launch vehicle, reentry vehicle, amateur rocket, jettisoned stages, hardware, or falling debris generated by failures associated with any of these activities. An AHA is designated via NOTAM as either a TFR or stationary ALTRV. Unless otherwise specified, the vertical limits of an AHA are from the surface to unlimited.

(See CONTINGENCY HAZARD AREA.)
(See REFINED HAZARD AREA.)
(See TRANSITIONAL HAZARD AREA.)

AIRCRAFT WAKE TURBULENCE CATEGORIES− For the purpose of Wake Turbulence Recategorization (RECAT) Separation Minima, ATC groups aircraft into categories ranging from Category A through Category I, dependent upon the version of RECAT that is applied. Specific category assignments vary and are listed in the RECAT Orders.

AIRMEN'S METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION (AIRMET)− In-flight weather advisories issued only to amend the Aviation Surface Forecast, Aviation Cloud Forecast, or area forecast concerning weather phenomena which are of operational interest to all aircraft and potentially hazardous to aircraft having limited capability because of lack of equipment, instrumentation, or pilot qualifications. AIRMETs concern weather of less severity than that covered by SIGMETs or Convective SIGMETs. AIRMETs cover moderate icing, moderate turbulence, sustained winds of 30 knots or more at the surface, widespread areas of ceilings less than 1,000 feet and/or visibility less than 3 miles, and extensive mountain obscurement.

(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See CWA.)
(See SAW.)
(See SIGMET.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT− An area on land or water that is used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of aircraft and includes its buildings and facilities, if any.

AIRPORT ADVISORY AREA− The area within ten miles of an airport without a control tower or where the tower is not in operation, and on which a Flight Service Station is located.

(See LOCAL AIRPORT ADVISORY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT ARRIVAL RATE (AAR)− A dynamic input parameter specifying the number of arriving aircraft which an airport or airspace can accept from the ARTCC per hour. The AAR is used to calculate the desired interval between successive arrival aircraft.

AIRPORT DEPARTURE RATE (ADR)− A dynamic parameter specifying the number of aircraft which can depart an airport and the airspace can accept per hour.

AIRPORT ELEVATION− The highest point of an airport's usable runways measured in feet from mean sea level.

(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME ELEVATION.)

AIRPORT LIGHTING− Various lighting aids that may be installed on an airport. Types of airport lighting include:

a. Approach Light System (ALS)− An airport lighting facility which provides visual guidance to landing aircraft by radiating light beams in a directional pattern by which the pilot aligns the aircraft with the extended centerline of the runway on his/her final approach for landing. Condenser-Discharge Sequential Flashing Lights/Sequenced Flashing Lights may be installed in conjunction with the ALS at some airports. Types of Approach Light Systems are:

1. ALSF-1− Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights in ILS Cat-I configuration.

2. ALSF-2− Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights in ILS Cat-II configuration. The ALSF-2 may operate as an SSALR when weather conditions permit.

3. SSALF− Simplified Short Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights.

4. SSALR− Simplified Short Approach Light System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

5. MALSF− Medium Intensity Approach Light System with Sequenced Flashing Lights.

6. MALSR− Medium Intensity Approach Light System with Runway Alignment Indicator Lights.

7. RLLS− Runway Lead-in Light System Consists of one or more series of flashing lights installed at or near ground level that provides positive visual guidance along an approach path, either curving or straight, where special problems exist with hazardous terrain, obstructions, or noise abatement procedures.

8. RAIL− Runway Alignment Indicator Lights− Sequenced Flashing Lights which are installed only in combination with other light systems.

9. ODALS− Omnidirectional Approach Lighting System consists of seven omnidirectional flashing lights located in the approach area of a nonprecision runway. Five lights are located on the runway centerline extended with the first light located 300 feet from the threshold and extending at equal intervals up to 1,500 feet from the threshold. The other two lights are located, one on each side of the runway threshold, at a lateral distance of 40 feet from the runway edge, or 75 feet from the runway edge when installed on a runway equipped with a VASI.

(Refer to FAA Order JO 6850.2, VISUAL GUIDANCE LIGHTING SYSTEMS.)

b. Runway Lights/Runway Edge Lights− Lights having a prescribed angle of emission used to define the lateral limits of a runway. Runway lights are uniformly spaced at intervals of approximately 200 feet, and the intensity may be controlled or preset.

c. Touchdown Zone Lighting− Two rows of transverse light bars located symmetrically about the runway centerline normally at 100 foot intervals. The basic system extends 3,000 feet along the runway.

d. Runway Centerline Lighting− Flush centerline lights spaced at 50-foot intervals beginning 75 feet from the landing threshold and extending to within 75 feet of the opposite end of the runway.

e. Threshold Lights− Fixed green lights arranged symmetrically left and right of the runway centerline, identifying the runway threshold.

f. Runway End Identifier Lights (REIL)− Two synchronized flashing lights, one on each side of the runway threshold, which provide rapid and positive identification of the approach end of a particular runway.

g. Visual Approach Slope Indicator (VASI)− An airport lighting facility providing vertical visual approach slope guidance to aircraft during approach to landing by radiating a directional pattern of high intensity red and white focused light beams which indicate to the pilot that he/she is "on path" if he/she sees red/white, "above path" if white/white, and "below path" if red/red. Some airports serving large aircraft have three-bar VASIs which provide two visual glide paths to the same runway.

h. Precision Approach Path Indicator (PAPI)− An airport lighting facility, similar to VASI, providing vertical approach slope guidance to aircraft during approach to landing. PAPIs consist of a single row of either two or four lights, normally installed on the left side of the runway, and have an effective visual range of about 5 miles during the day and up to 20 miles at night. PAPIs radiate a directional pattern of high intensity red and white focused light beams which indicate that the pilot is "on path" if the pilot sees an equal number of white lights and red lights, with white to the left of the red; "above path" if the pilot sees more white than red lights; and "below path" if the pilot sees more red than white lights.

i. Boundary Lights− Lights defining the perimeter of an airport or landing area.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT MARKING AIDS− Markings used on runway and taxiway surfaces to identify a specific runway, a runway threshold, a centerline, a hold line, etc. A runway should be marked in accordance with its present usage such as:

a. Visual.

b. Nonprecision instrument.

c. Precision instrument.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT REFERENCE POINT (ARP)− The approximate geometric center of all usable runway surfaces.

AIRPORT RESERVATION OFFICE− Office responsible for monitoring the operation of slot controlled airports. It receives and processes requests for unscheduled operations at slot controlled airports.

AIRPORT ROTATING BEACON− A visual NAVAID operated at many airports. At civil airports, alternating white and green flashes indicate the location of the airport. At military airports, the beacons flash alternately white and green, but are differentiated from civil beacons by dualpeaked (two quick) white flashes between the green flashes.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME BEACON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION EQUIPMENT (ASDE)− Surveillance equipment specifically designed to detect aircraft, vehicular traffic, and other objects, on the surface of an airport, and to present the image on a tower display. Used to augment visual observation by tower personnel of aircraft and/or vehicular movements on runways and taxiways. There are three ASDE systems deployed in the NAS:

a. ASDE−3− a Surface Movement Radar.

b. ASDE−X− a system that uses an X−band Surface Movement Radar, multilateration, and ADS−B.

c. Airport Surface Surveillance Capability (ASSC)− A system that uses Surface Movement Radar, multilateration, and ADS−B.

AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR− Approach control radar used to detect and display an aircraft's position in the terminal area. ASR provides range and azimuth information but does not provide elevation data. Coverage of the ASR can extend up to 60 miles.

AIRPORT TAXI CHARTS−

(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE− A service provided by a control tower for aircraft operating on the movement area and in the vicinity of an airport.

(See MOVEMENT AREA.)
(See TOWER.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME CONTROL SERVICE.)

AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL TOWER−

(See TOWER.)

AIRSPACE CONFLICT− Predicted conflict of an aircraft and active Special Activity Airspace (SAA).

AIRSPACE FLOW PROGRAM (AFP)− AFP is a Traffic Management (TM) process administered by the Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC) where aircraft are assigned an Expect Departure Clearance Time (EDCT) in order to manage capacity and demand for a specific area of the National Airspace System (NAS). The purpose of the program is to mitigate the effects of en route constraints. It is a flexible program and may be implemented in various forms depending upon the needs of the air traffic system.

AIRSPACE HIERARCHY− Within the airspace classes, there is a hierarchy and, in the event of an overlap of airspace: Class A preempts Class B, Class B preempts Class C, Class C preempts Class D, Class D preempts Class E, and Class E preempts Class G.

AIRSPEED− The speed of an aircraft relative to its surrounding air mass. The unqualified term "airspeed" means one of the following:

a. Indicated Airspeed− The speed shown on the aircraft airspeed indicator. This is the speed used in pilot/controller communications under the general term "airspeed."

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 1.)

b. True Airspeed− The airspeed of an aircraft relative to undisturbed air. Used primarily in flight planning and en route portion of flight. When used in pilot/controller communications, it is referred to as "true airspeed" and not shortened to "airspeed."

AIRSTART− The starting of an aircraft engine while the aircraft is airborne, preceded by engine shutdown during training flights or by actual engine failure.

AIRWAY− A Class E airspace area established in the form of a corridor, the centerline of which is defined by radio navigational aids.

(See FEDERAL AIRWAYS.)
(See ICAO term AIRWAY.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 71.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AIRWAY [ICAO]− A control area or portion thereof established in the form of corridor equipped with radio navigational aids.

AIRWAY BEACON− Used to mark airway segments in remote mountain areas. The light flashes Morse Code to identify the beacon site.

(Refer to AIM.)

AIS−

(See AERONAUTICAL INFORMATION SERVICES.)

AIT−

(See AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER.)

ALERFA (Alert Phase) [ICAO]− A situation wherein apprehension exists as to the safety of an aircraft and its occupants.

ALERT− A notification to a position that there is an aircraft-to-aircraft or aircraft-to-airspace conflict, as detected by Automated Problem Detection (APD).

ALERT AREA−
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

ALERT NOTICE (ALNOT)− A request originated by a flight service station (FSS) or an air route traffic control center (ARTCC) for an extensive communication search for overdue, unreported, or missing aircraft.

ALERTING SERVICE− A service provided to notify appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue aid and assist such organizations as required.

ALNOT−
(See ALERT NOTICE.)

ALONG−TRACK DISTANCE (ATD)− The horizontal distance between the aircraft's current position and a fix measured by an area navigation system that is not subject to slant range errors.

ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY− Letters and numerals used to show identification, altitude, beacon code, and other information concerning a target on a radar display.
(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)

ALTERNATE AERODROME [ICAO]− An aerodrome to which an aircraft may proceed when it becomes either impossible or inadvisable to proceed to or to land at the aerodrome of intended landing.

Note: The aerodrome from which a flight departs may also be an en-route or a destination alternate aerodrome for the flight.

ALTERNATE AIRPORT− An airport at which an aircraft may land if a landing at the intended airport becomes inadvisable.
(See ICAO term ALTERNATE AERODROME.)

ALTIMETER SETTING− The barometric pressure reading used to adjust a pressure altimeter for variations in existing atmospheric pressure or to the standard altimeter setting (29.92).
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ALTITUDE− The height of a level, point, or object measured in feet Above Ground Level (AGL) or from Mean Sea Level (MSL).
(See FLIGHT LEVEL.)

a. MSL Altitude− Altitude expressed in feet measured from mean sea level.

b. AGL Altitude− Altitude expressed in feet measured above ground level.

c. Indicated Altitude− The altitude as shown by an altimeter. On a pressure or barometric altimeter it is altitude as shown uncorrected for instrument error and uncompensated for variation from standard atmospheric conditions.
(See ICAO term ALTITUDE.)

ALTITUDE [ICAO]− The vertical distance of a level, a point or an object considered as a point, measured from mean sea level (MSL).

ALTITUDE READOUT− An aircraft's altitude, transmitted via the Mode C transponder feature, that is visually displayed in 100-foot increments on a radar scope having readout capability.
(See ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY.)
(See AUTOMATED RADAR TERMINAL SYSTEMS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ALTITUDE RESERVATION (ALTRV)− Airspace utilization under prescribed conditions normally employed for the mass movement of aircraft or other special user requirements which cannot otherwise be accomplished. ALTRVs are approved by the appropriate FAA facility.
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER.)

ALTITUDE RESTRICTION− An altitude or altitudes, stated in the order flown, which are to be maintained until reaching a specific point or time. Altitude restrictions may be issued by ATC due to traffic, terrain, or other airspace considerations.

ALTITUDE RESTRICTIONS ARE CANCELED− Adherence to previously imposed altitude restrictions is no longer required during a climb or descent.

ALTRV−
(See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)

AMVER–

(See AUTOMATED MUTUAL-ASSISTANCE VESSEL RESCUE SYSTEM.)

APB–

(See AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION BOUNDARY.)

APD–

(See AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION.)

APDIA–

(See AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION INHIBITED AREA.)

APPROACH CLEARANCE– Authorization by ATC for a pilot to conduct an instrument approach. The type of instrument approach for which a clearance and other pertinent information is provided in the approach clearance when required.

(See CLEARED APPROACH.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to AIM.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY– A terminal ATC facility that provides approach control service in a terminal area.

(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE– Air traffic control service provided by an approach control facility for arriving and departing VFR/IFR aircraft and, on occasion, en route aircraft. At some airports not served by an approach control facility, the ARTCC provides limited approach control service.

(See ICAO term APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE [ICAO]– Air traffic control service for arriving or departing controlled flights.

APPROACH GATE– An imaginary point used within ATC as a basis for vectoring aircraft to the final approach course. The gate will be established along the final approach course 1 mile from the final approach fix on the side away from the airport and will be no closer than 5 miles from the landing threshold.

APPROACH/DEPARTURE HOLD AREA– The locations on taxiways in the approach or departure areas of a runway designated to protect landing or departing aircraft. These locations are identified by signs and markings.

APPROACH LIGHT SYSTEM–

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

APPROACH SEQUENCE– The order in which aircraft are positioned while on approach or awaiting approach clearance.

(See LANDING SEQUENCE.)
(See ICAO term APPROACH SEQUENCE.)

APPROACH SEQUENCE [ICAO]– The order in which two or more aircraft are cleared to approach to land at the aerodrome.

APPROACH SPEED– The recommended speed contained in aircraft manuals used by pilots when making an approach to landing. This speed will vary for different segments of an approach as well as for aircraft weight and configuration.

APPROACH WITH VERTICAL GUIDANCE (APV)– A term used to describe RNAV approach procedures that provide lateral and vertical guidance but do not meet the requirements to be considered a precision approach.

APPROPRIATE ATS AUTHORITY [ICAO]– The relevant authority designated by the State responsible for providing air traffic services in the airspace concerned. In the United States, the "appropriate ATS authority" is the Program Director for Air Traffic Planning and Procedures, ATP-1.

APPROPRIATE AUTHORITY–

a. Regarding flight over the high seas: the relevant authority is the State of Registry.

b. Regarding flight over other than the high seas: the relevant authority is the State having sovereignty over the territory being overflown.

APPROPRIATE OBSTACLE CLEARANCE MINIMUM ALTITUDE– Any of the following:

(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

APPROPRIATE TERRAIN CLEARANCE MINIMUM ALTITUDE− Any of the following:

(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDE.)

(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)

(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

APRON− A defined area on an airport or heliport intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers or cargo, refueling, parking, or maintenance. With regard to seaplanes, a ramp is used for access to the apron from the water.

(See ICAO term APRON.)

APRON [ICAO]− A defined area, on a land aerodrome, intended to accommodate aircraft for purposes of loading or unloading passengers, mail or cargo, refueling, parking or maintenance.

ARC− The track over the ground of an aircraft flying at a constant distance from a navigational aid by reference to distance measuring equipment (DME).

AREA CONTROL CENTER [ICAO]− An air traffic control facility primarily responsible for ATC services being provided IFR aircraft during the en route phase of flight. The U.S. equivalent facility is an air route traffic control center (ARTCC).

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV)− A method of navigation which permits aircraft operation on any desired flight path within the coverage of ground− or space−based navigation aids or within the limits of the capability of self-contained aids, or a combination of these.

Note: Area navigation includes performance−based navigation as well as other operations that do not meet the definition of performance−based navigation.

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) APPROACH CONFIGURATION:

a. STANDARD T− An RNAV approach whose design allows direct flight to any one of three initial approach fixes (IAF) and eliminates the need for procedure turns. The standard design is to align the procedure on the extended centerline with the missed approach point (MAP) at the runway threshold, the final approach fix (FAF), and the initial approach/intermediate fix (IAF/IF). The other two IAFs will be established perpendicular to the IF.

b. MODIFIED T− An RNAV approach design for single or multiple runways where terrain or operational constraints do not allow for the standard T. The "T" may be modified by increasing or decreasing the angle from the corner IAF(s) to the IF or by eliminating one or both corner IAFs.

c. STANDARD I− An RNAV approach design for a single runway with both corner IAFs eliminated. Course reversal or radar vectoring may be required at busy terminals with multiple runways.

d. TERMINAL ARRIVAL AREA (TAA)− The TAA is controlled airspace established in conjunction with the Standard or Modified T and I RNAV approach configurations. In the standard TAA, there are three areas: straight-in, left base, and right base. The arc boundaries of the three areas of the TAA are published portions of the approach and allow aircraft to transition from the en route structure direct to the nearest IAF. TAAs will also eliminate or reduce feeder routes, departure extensions, and procedure turns or course reversal.

1. STRAIGHT-IN AREA− A 30 NM arc centered on the IF bounded by a straight line extending through the IF perpendicular to the intermediate course.

2. LEFT BASE AREA− A 30 NM arc centered on the right corner IAF. The area shares a boundary with the straight-in area except that it extends out for 30 NM from the IAF and is bounded on the other side by a line extending from the IF through the FAF to the arc.

3. RIGHT BASE AREA− A 30 NM arc centered on the left corner IAF. The area shares a boundary with the straight-in area except that it extends out for 30 NM from the IAF and is bounded on the other side by a line extending from the IF through the FAF to the arc.

AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) PRECISION RUNWAY MONITORING (PRM) APPROACH− A GPS approach, which requires vertical guidance, used in lieu of another type of PRM approach to conduct approaches to parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet and at least 3,000 feet, where simultaneous close parallel approaches are permitted. Also used in lieu of an ILS PRM and/or LDA PRM approach to conduct Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach (SOIA) operations.

ARMY AVIATION FLIGHT INFORMATION BULLETIN− A bulletin that provides air operation data covering Army, National Guard, and Army Reserve aviation activities.

ARO−
(See AIRPORT RESERVATION OFFICE.)

ARRESTING SYSTEM− A safety device consisting of two major components, namely, engaging or catching devices and energy absorption devices for the purpose of arresting both tailhook and/or nontailhook-equipped aircraft. It is used to prevent aircraft from overrunning runways when the aircraft cannot be stopped after landing or during aborted takeoff. Arresting systems have various names; e.g., arresting gear, hook device, wire barrier cable.
(See ABORT.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ARRIVAL CENTER− The ARTCC having jurisdiction for the impacted airport.

ARRIVAL DELAY− A parameter which specifies a period of time in which no aircraft will be metered for arrival at the specified airport.

ARRIVAL/DEPARTURE WINDOW (ADW)− A depiction presented on an air traffic control display, used by the controller to prevent possible conflicts between arrivals to, and departures from, a runway. The ADW identifies that point on the final approach course by which a departing aircraft must have begun takeoff.

ARRIVAL SECTOR (En Route)− An operational control sector containing one or more meter fixes on or near the TRACON boundary.

ARRIVAL TIME− The time an aircraft touches down on arrival.

ARSR−
(See AIR ROUTE SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)

ARTCC−
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

ASDA−
(See ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

ASDA [ICAO]−
(See ICAO Term ACCELERATE-STOP DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

ASDE−
(See AIRPORT SURFACE DETECTION EQUIPMENT.)

ASLAR−
(See AIRCRAFT SURGE LAUNCH AND RECOVERY.)

ASR−
(See AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)

ASR APPROACH−
(See SURVEILLANCE APPROACH.)

ASSOCIATED− A radar target displaying a data block with flight identification and altitude information.
(See UNASSOCIATED.)

ATC−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL.)

ATC ADVISES− Used to prefix a message of noncontrol information when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.
(See ADVISORY.)

ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE− Airspace of defined vertical/lateral limits, assigned by ATC, for the purpose of providing air traffic segregation between the specified activities being conducted within the assigned airspace and other IFR air traffic.
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

ATC CLEARANCE−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE.)

ATC CLEARS− Used to prefix an ATC clearance when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

ATC INSTRUCTIONS− Directives issued by air traffic control for the purpose of requiring a pilot to take specific actions; e.g., "Turn left heading two five zero," "Go around," "Clear the runway."
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

ATC PREFERRED ROUTE NOTIFICATION− EDST notification to the appropriate controller of the need to determine if an ATC preferred route needs to be applied, based on destination airport.
(See ROUTE ACTION NOTIFICATION.)
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

ATC PREFERRED ROUTES− Preferred routes that are not automatically applied by Host.

ATC REQUESTS− Used to prefix an ATC request when it is relayed to an aircraft by other than an air traffic controller.

ATC SECURITY SERVICES− Communications and security tracking provided by an ATC facility in support of the DHS, the DOD, or other Federal security elements in the interest of national security. Such security services are only applicable within designated areas. ATC security services do not include ATC basic radar services or flight following.

ATC SECURITY SERVICES POSITION− The position responsible for providing ATC security services as defined. This position does not provide ATC, IFR separation, or VFR flight following services, but is responsible for providing security services in an area comprising airspace assigned to one or more ATC operating sectors. This position may be combined with control positions.

ATC SECURITY TRACKING− The continuous tracking of aircraft movement by an ATC facility in support of the DHS, the DOD, or other security elements for national security using radar (i.e., radar tracking) or other means (e.g., manual tracking) without providing basic radar services (including traffic advisories) or other ATC services not defined in this section.

ATS SURVEILLANCE SERVICE [ICAO]− A term used to indicate a service provided directly by means of an ATS surveillance system.

ATC SURVEILLANCE SOURCE− Used by ATC for establishing identification, control and separation using a target depicted on an air traffic control facility's video display that has met the relevant safety standards for operational use and received from one, or a combination, of the following surveillance sources:
a. Radar (See RADAR.)
b. ADS-B (See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST.)
c. WAM (See WIDE AREA MULTILATERATION.)

(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)
(See ICAO term RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ATS SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM [ICAO]− A generic term meaning variously, ADS−B, PSR, SSR or any comparable ground−based system that enables the identification of aircraft.

Note: A comparable ground−based system is one that has been demonstrated, by comparative assessment or other methodology, to have a level of safety and performance equal to or better than monopulse SSR.

ATCAA−
(See ATC ASSIGNED AIRSPACE.)

ATCRBS−
(See RADAR.)

ATCSCC−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SYSTEM COMMAND CENTER.)

ATCT−
(See TOWER.)

ATD−
(See ALONG−TRACK DISTANCE.)

ATIS−
(See AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

ATIS [ICAO]−
(See ICAO Term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

ATPA−
(See AUTOMATED TERMINAL PROXIMITY ALERT.)

ATS ROUTE [ICAO]− A specified route designed for channeling the flow of traffic as necessary for the provision of air traffic services.

Note: The term "ATS Route" is used to mean variously, airway, advisory route, controlled or uncontrolled route, arrival or departure, etc.

ATTENTION ALL USERS PAGE (AAUP)- The AAUP provides the pilot with additional information relative to conducting a specific operation, for example, PRM approaches and RNAV departures.

AUTOLAND APPROACH−An autoland system aids by providing control of aircraft systems during a precision instrument approach to at least decision altitude and possibly all the way to touchdown, as well as in some cases, through the landing rollout. The autoland system is a sub-system of the autopilot system from which control surface management occurs. The aircraft autopilot sends instructions to the autoland system and monitors the autoland system performance and integrity during its execution.

AUTOMATED EMERGENCY DESCENT−
(See EMERGENCY DESCENT MODE.)

AUTOMATED INFORMATION TRANSFER (AIT)− A precoordinated process, specifically defined in facility directives, during which a transfer of altitude control and/or radar identification is accomplished without verbal coordination between controllers using information communicated in a full data block.

AUTOMATED MUTUAL-ASSISTANCE VESSEL RESCUE SYSTEM− A facility which can deliver, in a matter of minutes, a surface picture (SURPIC) of vessels in the area of a potential or actual search and rescue incident, including their predicted positions and their characteristics.

(See FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 10−6−4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION (APD)− An Automation Processing capability that compares trajectories in order to predict conflicts.

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION BOUNDARY (APB)− The adapted distance beyond a facilities boundary defining the airspace within which EDST performs conflict detection.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

AUTOMATED PROBLEM DETECTION INHIBITED AREA (APDIA)− Airspace surrounding a terminal area within which APD is inhibited for all flights within that airspace.

AUTOMATED TERMINAL PROXIMITY ALERT (ATPA)− Monitors the separation of aircraft on the Final Approach Course (FAC), displaying a graphical notification (cone and/or mileage) when a potential loss of separation is detected. The warning cone (Yellow) will display at 45 seconds and the alert cone (Red) will display at 24 seconds prior to predicted loss of separation. Current distance between two aircraft on final will be displayed in line 3 of the full data block of the trailing aircraft in corresponding colors.

AUTOMATED WEATHER SYSTEM− Any of the automated weather sensor platforms that collect weather data at airports and disseminate the weather information via radio and/or landline. The systems currently consist of the Automated Surface Observing System (ASOS) and Automated Weather Observation System (AWOS).

AUTOMATED UNICOM− Provides completely automated weather, radio check capability and airport advisory information on an Automated UNICOM system. These systems offer a variety of features, typically selectable by microphone clicks, on the UNICOM frequency. Availability will be published in the Chart Supplement U.S. and approach charts.

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORT−

(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)

AUTOMATIC ALTITUDE REPORTING− That function of a transponder which responds to Mode C interrogations by transmitting the aircraft's altitude in 100-foot increments.

AUTOMATIC CARRIER LANDING SYSTEM− U.S. Navy final approach equipment consisting of precision tracking radar coupled to a computer data link to provide continuous information to the aircraft, monitoring capability to the pilot, and a backup approach system.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE (ADS) [ICAO]− A surveillance technique in which aircraft automatically provide, via a data link, data derived from on−board navigation and position fixing systems, including aircraft identification, four dimensional position and additional data as appropriate.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE− BROADCAST (ADS-B)− A surveillance system in which an aircraft or vehicle to be detected is fitted with cooperative equipment in the form of a data link transmitter. The aircraft or vehicle periodically broadcasts its GNSS−derived position and other required information such as identity and velocity, which is then received by a ground−based or space−based receiver for processing and display at an air traffic control facility, as well as by suitably equipped aircraft.

(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST IN.)
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST OUT.)
(See COOPERATIVE SURVEILLANCE.)
(See GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM.)
(See SPACE−BASED ADS−B.)

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE− BROADCAST IN (ADS−B In)− Aircraft avionics capable of receiving ADS−B Out transmissions directly from other aircraft, as well as traffic or weather information transmitted from ground stations.

(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST OUT.)
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−REBROADCAST.)
(See FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST.)
(See TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST.)

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST OUT (ADS−B Out)− The transmitter onboard an aircraft or ground vehicle that periodically broadcasts its GNSS−derived position along with other required information, such as identity, altitude, and velocity.

(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST.)
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST IN.)

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−CONTRACT (ADS−C)− A data link position reporting system, controlled by a ground station, that establishes contracts with an aircraft's avionics that occur automatically whenever specific events occur, or specific time intervals are reached.

AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE-REBROADCAST (ADS-R)− A datalink translation function of the ADS−B ground system required to accommodate the two separate operating frequencies (978 MHz and 1090 MHz). The ADS−B system receives the ADS−B messages transmitted on one frequency and ADS−R translates and reformats the information for rebroadcast and use on the other frequency. This allows ADS−B In equipped aircraft to see nearby ADS−B Out traffic regardless of the operating link of the other aircraft. Aircraft operating on the same ADS−B frequency exchange information directly and do not require the ADS−R translation function.

AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER− An aircraft radio navigation system which senses and indicates the direction to a L/MF nondirectional radio beacon (NDB) ground transmitter. Direction is indicated to the pilot as a magnetic bearing or as a relative bearing to the longitudinal axis of the aircraft depending on the type of indicator installed in the aircraft. In certain applications, such as military, ADF operations may be based on airborne and ground transmitters in the VHF/UHF frequency spectrum.

(See BEARING.)
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

AUTOMATIC FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE (AFIS) − ALASKA FSSs ONLY− The continuous broadcast of recorded non−control information at airports in Alaska where a FSS provides local airport advisory service. The AFIS broadcast automates the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information such as weather, wind, altimeter, favored runway, braking action, airport NOTAMs, and other applicable information. The information is continuously broadcast over a discrete VHF radio frequency (usually the ASOS/ AWOS frequency).

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE− The continuous broadcast of recorded noncontrol information in selected terminal areas. Its purpose is to improve controller effectiveness and to relieve frequency congestion by automating the repetitive transmission of essential but routine information; e.g., "Los Angeles information Alfa. One three zero zero Coordinated Universal Time. Weather, measured ceiling two thousand overcast, visibility three, haze, smoke, temperature seven one, dew point five seven, wind two five zero at five, altimeter two niner niner six. I-L-S Runway Two Five Left approach in use, Runway Two Five Right closed, advise you have Alfa."

(See ICAO term AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE [ICAO]− The provision of current, routine information to arriving and departing aircraft by means of continuous and repetitive broadcasts throughout the day or a specified portion of the day.

AUTOROTATION− A rotorcraft flight condition in which the lifting rotor is driven entirely by action of the air when the rotorcraft is in motion.

a. Autorotative Landing/Touchdown Autorotation. Used by a pilot to indicate that the landing will be made without applying power to the rotor.

b. Low Level Autorotation. Commences at an altitude well below the traffic pattern, usually below 100 feet AGL and is used primarily for tactical military training.

c. 180 degrees Autorotation. Initiated from a downwind heading and is commenced well inside the normal traffic pattern. "Go around" may not be possible during the latter part of this maneuver.

AVAILABLE LANDING DISTANCE (ALD)− The portion of a runway available for landing and roll-out for aircraft cleared for LAHSO. This distance is measured from the landing threshold to the hold-short point.

AVIATION WATCH NOTIFICATION MESSAGE− The Storm Prediction Center (SPC) issues Aviation Watch Notification Messages (SAW) to provide an area threat alert for the aviation meteorology community to forecast organized severe thunderstorms that may produce tornadoes, large hail, and/or convective damaging winds as indicated in Public Watch Notification Messages within the Continental U.S. A SAW message provides a description of the type of watch issued by SPC, a valid time, an approximation of the area in a watch, and primary hazard(s).

AVIATION WEATHER SERVICE− A service provided by the National Weather Service (NWS) and FAA which collects and disseminates pertinent weather information for pilots, aircraft operators, and ATC. Available aviation weather reports and forecasts are displayed at each NWS office and FAA FSS.

(See TRANSCRIBED WEATHER BROADCAST.)
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

C

CALCULATED LANDING TIME− A term that may be used in place of tentative or actual calculated landing time, whichever applies.

CALL FOR RELEASE− Wherein the overlying ARTCC requires a terminal facility to initiate verbal coordination to secure ARTCC approval for release of a departure into the en route environment.

CALL UP− Initial voice contact between a facility and an aircraft, using the identification of the unit being called and the unit initiating the call.
(Refer to AIM.)

CANADIAN MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION AIRSPACE− That portion of Canadian domestic airspace within which MNPS separation may be applied.

CARDINAL ALTITUDES− "Odd" or "Even" thousand-foot altitudes or flight levels; e.g., 5,000, 6,000, 7,000, FL 250, FL 260, FL 270.
(See ALTITUDE.)
(See FLIGHT LEVEL.)

CARDINAL FLIGHT LEVELS−
(See CARDINAL ALTITUDES.)

CAT−
(See CLEAR-AIR TURBULENCE.)

CATCH POINT− A fix/waypoint that serves as a transition point from the high altitude waypoint navigation structure to an arrival procedure (STAR) or the low altitude ground−based navigation structure.

CEILING− The heights above the earth's surface of the lowest layer of clouds or obscuring phenomena that is reported as "broken," "overcast," or "obscuration," and not classified as "thin" or "partial."
(See ICAO term CEILING.)

CEILING [ICAO]− The height above the ground or water of the base of the lowest layer of cloud below 6,000 meters (20,000 feet) covering more than half the sky.

CENTER−
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)

CENTER'S AREA− The specified airspace within which an air route traffic control center (ARTCC) provides air traffic control and advisory service.
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CENTER WEATHER ADVISORY− An unscheduled weather advisory issued by Center Weather Service Unit meteorologists for ATC use to alert pilots of existing or anticipated adverse weather conditions within the next 2 hours. A CWA may modify or redefine a SIGMET.
(See AIRMET.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See SAW.)
(See SIGMET.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CENTRAL EAST PACIFIC− An organized route system between the U.S. West Coast and Hawaii.

CEP−
(See CENTRAL EAST PACIFIC.)

CERAP−
(See COMBINED CENTER-RAPCON.)

CERTIFICATE OF WAIVER OR AUTHORIZATION (COA)− An FAA grant of approval for a specific flight operation or airspace authorization or waiver.

CERTIFIED TOWER RADAR DISPLAY (CTRD)− An FAA radar display certified for use in the NAS.

CFR−
(See CALL FOR RELEASE.)

CHA
(See CONTINGENCY HAZARD AREA)

CHAFF− Thin, narrow metallic reflectors of various lengths and frequency responses, used to reflect radar energy. These reflectors, when dropped from aircraft and allowed to drift downward, result in large targets on the radar display.

CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.− A publication designed primarily as a pilot's operational manual containing all airports, seaplane bases, and heliports open to the public including communications data, navigational facilities, and certain special notices and procedures. This publication is issued in seven volumes according to geographical area.

CHARTED VFR FLYWAYS− Charted VFR Flyways are flight paths recommended for use to bypass areas heavily traversed by large turbine-powered aircraft. Pilot compliance with recommended flyways and associated altitudes is strictly voluntary. VFR Flyway Planning charts are published on the back of existing VFR Terminal Area charts.

CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURE APPROACH− An approach conducted while operating on an instrument flight rules (IFR) flight plan which authorizes the pilot of an aircraft to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport via visual landmarks and other information depicted on a charted visual flight procedure. This approach must be authorized and under the control of the appropriate air traffic control facility. Weather minimums required are depicted on the chart.

CHASE− An aircraft flown in proximity to another aircraft normally to observe its performance during training or testing.

CHASE AIRCRAFT−
(See CHASE.)

CHOP− A form of turbulence.

a. Light Chop– Turbulence that causes slight, rapid and somewhat rhythmic bumpiness without appreciable changes in altitude or attitude.

b. Moderate Chop– Turbulence similar to Light Chop but of greater intensity. It causes rapid bumps or jolts without appreciable changes in aircraft altitude or attitude.
(See TURBULENCE.)

CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER− A maneuver initiated by the pilot to align the aircraft with a runway for landing when a straight-in landing from an instrument approach is not possible or is not desirable. At tower controlled airports, this maneuver is made only after ATC authorization has been obtained and the pilot has established required visual reference to the airport.
(See CIRCLE TO RUNWAY.)
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CIRCLE TO RUNWAY (RUNWAY NUMBER)− Used by ATC to inform the pilot that he/she must circle to land because the runway in use is other than the runway aligned with the instrument approach procedure. When the direction of the circling maneuver in relation to the airport/runway is required, the controller will state the direction (eight cardinal compass points) and specify a left or right downwind or base leg as appropriate; e.g., "Cleared VOR Runway Three Six Approach circle to Runway Two Two," or "Circle northwest of the airport for a right downwind to Runway Two Two."
(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CIRCLING APPROACH−
(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)

CIRCLING MANEUVER−
(See CIRCLE-TO-LAND MANEUVER.)

CIRCLING MINIMA−
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

CLASS A AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS B AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS C AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS D AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS E AIRSPACE−
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLASS G AIRSPACE− Airspace that is not designated in 14 CFR Part 71 as Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, or Class E controlled airspace is Class G (uncontrolled) airspace.
(See UNCONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

CLEAR AIR TURBULENCE (CAT)− Turbulence encountered in air where no clouds are present. This term is commonly applied to high-level turbulence associated with wind shear. CAT is often encountered in the vicinity of the jet stream.
(See WIND SHEAR.)
(See JET STREAM.)

CLEAR OF THE RUNWAY−

a. Taxiing aircraft, which is approaching a runway, is clear of the runway when all parts of the aircraft are held short of the applicable runway holding position marking.

b. A pilot or controller may consider an aircraft, which is exiting or crossing a runway, to be clear of the runway when all parts of the aircraft are beyond the runway edge and there are no restrictions to its continued movement beyond the applicable runway holding position marking.

c. Pilots and controllers shall exercise good judgement to ensure that adequate separation exists between all aircraft on runways and taxiways at airports with inadequate runway edge lines or holding position markings.

CLEARANCE−

(See AIR TRAFFIC CLEARANCE.)

CLEARANCE LIMIT− The fix, point, or location to which an aircraft is cleared when issued an air traffic clearance.

(See ICAO term CLEARANCE LIMIT.)

CLEARANCE LIMIT [ICAO]− The point to which an aircraft is granted an air traffic control clearance.

CLEARANCE VOID IF NOT OFF BY (TIME)− Used by ATC to advise an aircraft that the departure clearance is automatically canceled if takeoff is not made prior to a specified time. The pilot must obtain a new clearance or cancel his/her IFR flight plan if not off by the specified time.

(See ICAO term CLEARANCE VOID TIME.)

CLEARANCE VOID TIME [ICAO]− A time specified by an air traffic control unit at which a clearance ceases to be valid unless the aircraft concerned has already taken action to comply therewith.

CLEARED APPROACH− ATC authorization for an aircraft to execute any standard or special instrument approach procedure for that airport. Normally, an aircraft will be cleared for a specific instrument approach procedure.

(See CLEARED (Type of) APPROACH.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED (Type of) APPROACH− ATC authorization for an aircraft to execute a specific instrument approach procedure to an airport; e.g., "Cleared ILS Runway Three Six Approach."

(See APPROACH CLEARANCE.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED AS FILED− Means the aircraft is cleared to proceed in accordance with the route of flight filed in the flight plan. This clearance does not include the altitude, DP, or DP Transition.

(See REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED FOR TAKEOFF− ATC authorization for an aircraft to depart. It is predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions.

CLEARED FOR THE OPTION− ATC authorization for an aircraft to make a touch-and-go, low approach, missed approach, stop and go, or full stop landing at the discretion of the pilot. It is normally used in training so that an instructor can evaluate a student's performance under changing situations. Pilots should advise ATC if they decide to remain on the runway, of any delay in their stop and go, delay clearing the runway, or are unable to comply with the instruction(s).

(See OPTION APPROACH.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLEARED THROUGH− ATC authorization for an aircraft to make intermediate stops at specified airports without refiling a flight plan while en route to the clearance limit.

CLEARED TO LAND− ATC authorization for an aircraft to land. It is predicated on known traffic and known physical airport conditions.

CLEARWAY− An area beyond the takeoff runway under the control of airport authorities within which terrain or fixed obstacles may not extend above specified limits. These areas may be required for certain turbine-powered operations and the size and upward slope of the clearway will differ depending on when the aircraft was certificated.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 1.)

CLIMB TO VFR− ATC authorization for an aircraft to climb to VFR conditions within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas when the only weather limitation is restricted visibility. The aircraft must remain clear of clouds while climbing to VFR.

(See SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CLIMBOUT− That portion of flight operation between takeoff and the initial cruising altitude.

CLIMB VIA− An abbreviated ATC clearance that requires compliance with the procedure lateral path, associated speed restrictions, and altitude restrictions along the cleared route or procedure.

CLOSE PARALLEL RUNWAYS− Two parallel runways whose extended centerlines are separated by less than 4,300 feet and at least 3000 feet (750 feet for SOIA operations) for which ATC is authorized to conduct simultaneous independent approach operations. PRM and simultaneous close parallel appear in approach title. Dual communications, special pilot training, an Attention All Users Page (AAUP), NTZ monitoring by displays that have aural and visual alerting algorithms are required. A high update rate surveillance sensor is required for certain runway or approach course spacing.

CLOSED LOOP CLEARANCE− A vector or reroute clearance that includes a return to route point and updates ERAM to accurately reflect the anticipated route (e.g., a QU route pick that anticipates length of vector and includes the next fix that ties into the route of flight.)

CLOSED RUNWAY− A runway that is unusable for aircraft operations. Only the airport management/military operations office can close a runway.

CLOSED TRAFFIC− Successive operations involving takeoffs and landings or low approaches where the aircraft does not exit the traffic pattern.

CLOUD− A cloud is a visible accumulation of minute water droplets and/or ice particles in the atmosphere above the Earth's surface. Cloud differs from ground fog, fog, or ice fog only in that the latter are, by definition, in contact with the Earth's surface.

CLT−

(See CALCULATED LANDING TIME.)

CLUTTER− In radar operations, clutter refers to the reception and visual display of radar returns caused by precipitation, chaff, terrain, numerous aircraft targets, or other phenomena. Such returns may limit or preclude ATC from providing services based on radar.

(See CHAFF.)
(See GROUND CLUTTER.)
(See PRECIPITATION.)
(See TARGET.)
(See ICAO term RADAR CLUTTER.)

CMNPS−

(See CANADIAN MINIMUM NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE SPECIFICATION AIRSPACE.)

COA−

(See CERTIFICATE OF WAIVER OR AUTHORIZATION.)

COASTAL FIX− A navigation aid or intersection where an aircraft transitions between the domestic route structure and the oceanic route structure.

CODES− The number assigned to a particular multiple pulse reply signal transmitted by a transponder.

(See DISCRETE CODE.)

COLD TEMPERATURE CORRECTION− A correction in feet, based on height above airport and temperature, that is added to the aircraft's indicated altitude to offset the effect of cold temperature on true altitude.

COLLABORATIVE TRAJECTORY OPTIONS PROGRAM (CTOP)− CTOP is a traffic management program administered by the Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC) that manages demand through constrained airspace, while considering operator preference with regard to both route and delay as defined in a Trajectory Options Set (TOS).

COMBINED CENTER-RAPCON− An air traffic facility which combines the functions of an ARTCC and a radar approach control facility.

(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)
(See RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)

COMMON POINT− A significant point over which two or more aircraft will report passing or have reported passing before proceeding on the same or diverging tracks. To establish/maintain longitudinal separation, a controller may determine a common point not originally in the aircraft's flight plan and then clear the aircraft to fly over the point.

(See SIGNIFICANT POINT.)

COMMON PORTION−
(See COMMON ROUTE.)

COMMON ROUTE− That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and the coastal fix.

OR

COMMON ROUTE−
(See SEGMENTS OF A SID/STAR)

COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY (CTAF)− A frequency designed for the purpose of carrying out airport advisory practices while operating to or from an airport without an operating control tower. The CTAF may be a UNICOM, Multicom, FSS, or tower frequency and is identified in appropriate aeronautical publications.
(See DESIGNATED COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY (CTAF) AREA.)
(Refer to AC 90-66, Non−Towered Airport Flight Operations.)

COMPASS LOCATOR− A low power, low or medium frequency (L/MF) radio beacon installed at the site of the outer or middle marker of an instrument landing system (ILS). It can be used for navigation at distances of approximately 15 miles or as authorized in the approach procedure.

a. Outer Compass Locator (LOM)− A compass locator installed at the site of the outer marker of an instrument landing system.
(See OUTER MARKER.)

b. Middle Compass Locator (LMM)− A compass locator installed at the site of the middle marker of an instrument landing system.
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)
(See ICAO term LOCATOR.)

COMPASS ROSE− A circle, graduated in degrees, printed on some charts or marked on the ground at an airport. It is used as a reference to either true or magnetic direction.

COMPLY WITH RESTRICTIONS− An ATC instruction that requires an aircraft being vectored back onto an arrival or departure procedure to comply with all altitude and/or speed restrictions depicted on the procedure. This term may be used in lieu of repeating each remaining restriction that appears on the procedure.

COMPOSITE FLIGHT PLAN− A flight plan which specifies VFR operation for one portion of flight and IFR for another portion. It is used primarily in military operations.
(Refer to AIM.)

COMPULSORY REPORTING POINTS− Reporting points which must be reported to ATC. They are designated on aeronautical charts by solid triangles or filed in a flight plan as fixes selected to define direct routes. These points are geographical locations which are defined by navigation aids/fixes. Pilots should discontinue position reporting over compulsory reporting points when informed by ATC that their aircraft is in "radar contact."

COMPUTER NAVIGATION FIX (CNF)− A Computer Navigation Fix is a point defined by a latitude/longitude coordinate and is required to support Performance−Based Navigation (PBN) operations. A five−letter identifier denoting a CNF can be found next to an "x" on en route charts and on some approach charts. Eventually, all CNFs will be labeled and begin with the letters "CF" followed by three consonants (e.g., 'CFWBG'). CNFs are not recognized by ATC, are not contained in ATC fix or automation databases, and are not used for ATC purposes. Pilots should not use CNFs for point−to−point navigation (e.g., proceed direct), filing a flight plan, or in aircraft/ATC communications. Use of CNFs has not been adopted or recognized by the International Civil Aviation Organization (ICAO).
(REFER to AIM 1−1−17b5(i)(2), Global Positioning System (GPS).

CONDITIONS NOT MONITORED− When an airport operator cannot monitor the condition of the movement area or airfield surface area, this information is issued as a NOTAM. Usually necessitated due to staffing, operating hours or other mitigating factors associated with airport operations.

CONFIDENCE MANEUVER− A confidence maneuver consists of one or more turns, a climb or descent, or other maneuver to determine if the pilot in command (PIC) is able to receive and comply with ATC instructions.

CONFLICT ALERT− A function of certain air traffic control automated systems designed to alert radar controllers to existing or pending situations between tracked targets (known IFR or VFR aircraft) that require his/her immediate attention/action.
(See MODE C INTRUDER ALERT.)

CONFLICT RESOLUTION− The resolution of potential conflictions between aircraft that are radar identified and in communication with ATC by ensuring that radar targets do not touch. Pertinent traffic advisories shall be issued when this procedure is applied.

Note: This procedure shall not be provided utilizing mosaic radar systems.

CONFORMANCE− The condition established when an aircraft's actual position is within the conformance region constructed around that aircraft at its position, according to the trajectory associated with the aircraft's Current Plan.

CONFORMANCE REGION− A volume, bounded laterally, vertically, and longitudinally, within which an aircraft must be at a given time in order to be in conformance with the Current Plan Trajectory for that aircraft. At a given time, the conformance region is determined by the simultaneous application of the lateral, vertical, and longitudinal conformance bounds for the aircraft at the position defined by time and aircraft's trajectory.

CONSOLAN− A low frequency, long-distance NAVAID used principally for transoceanic navigations.

CONSOLIDATED WAKE TURBULENCE (CWT)− A version of RECAT that has nine categories, A through I, that refines the grouping of aircraft while optimizing wake turbulence separation.

CONSTRAINT SATISFACTION POINT (CSP)− Meter Reference Elements (MREs) that are actively scheduled by TBFM. Constraint satisfaction occurs when the Scheduled Time of Arrival generated for each metered flight conforms to all the scheduling constraints specified at all the applicable CSPs.

CONTACT−

a. Establish communication with (followed by the name of the facility and, if appropriate, the frequency to be used).

b. A flight condition wherein the pilot ascertains the attitude of his/her aircraft and navigates by visual reference to the surface.

(See CONTACT APPROACH.)
(See RADAR CONTACT.)

CONTACT APPROACH− An approach wherein an aircraft on an IFR flight plan, having an air traffic control authorization, operating clear of clouds with at least 1 mile flight visibility and a reasonable expectation of continuing to the destination airport in those conditions, may deviate from the instrument approach procedure and proceed to the destination airport by visual reference to the surface. This approach will only be authorized when requested by the pilot and the reported ground visibility at the destination airport is at least 1 statute mile.

(Refer to AIM.)

CONTAMINATED RUNWAY− A runway is considered contaminated whenever standing water, ice, snow, slush, frost in any form, heavy rubber, or other substances are present. A runway is contaminated with respect to rubber deposits or other friction-degrading substances when the average friction value for any 500-foot segment of the runway within the ALD fails below the recommended minimum friction level and the average friction value in the adjacent 500-foot segments falls below the maintenance planning friction level.

CONTERMINOUS U.S.− The 48 adjoining States and the District of Columbia.

CONTINENTAL UNITED STATES− The 49 States located on the continent of North America and the District of Columbia.

CONTINGENCY HAZARD AREA (CHA)− Used by ATC. Areas of airspace that are defined and distributed in advance of a launch or reentry operation and are activated in response to a failure.

(See AIRCRAFT HAZARD AREA.)
(See REFINED HAZARD AREA.)
(See TRANSITIONAL HAZARD AREA.)

CONTINUE− When used as a control instruction should be followed by another word or words clarifying what is expected of the pilot. Example: "continue taxi," "continue descent," "continue inbound," etc.

CONTROL AREA [ICAO]− A controlled airspace extending upwards from a specified limit above the earth.

CONTROL SECTOR− An airspace area of defined horizontal and vertical dimensions for which a controller or group of controllers has air traffic control responsibility, normally within an air route traffic control center or an approach control facility. Sectors are established based on predominant traffic flows, altitude strata, and controller workload. Pilot communications during operations within a sector are normally maintained on discrete frequencies assigned to the sector.

(See DISCRETE FREQUENCY.)

CONTROL SLASH− A radar beacon slash representing the actual position of the associated aircraft. Normally, the control slash is the one closest to the interrogating radar beacon site. When ARTCC radar is operating in narrowband (digitized) mode, the control slash is converted to a target symbol.

CONTROLLED AIRSPACE− An airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification.

a. Controlled airspace is a generic term that covers Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, and Class E airspace.

b. Controlled airspace is also that airspace within which all aircraft operators are subject to certain pilot qualifications, operating rules, and equipment requirements in 14 CFR Part 91 (for specific operating requirements, please refer to 14 CFR Part 91). For IFR operations in any class of controlled airspace, a pilot must file an IFR flight plan and receive an appropriate ATC clearance. Each Class B, Class C, and Class D airspace area designated for an airport contains at least one primary airport around which the airspace is designated (for specific designations and descriptions of the airspace classes, please refer to 14 CFR Part 71).

c. Controlled airspace in the United States is designated as follows:

1. CLASS A− Generally, that airspace from 18,000 feet MSL up to and including FL 600, including the airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous States and Alaska. Unless otherwise authorized, all persons must operate their aircraft under IFR.

2. CLASS B− Generally, that airspace from the surface to 10,000 feet MSL surrounding the nation's busiest airports in terms of airport operations or passenger enplanements. The configuration of each Class B airspace area is individually tailored and consists of a surface area and two or more layers (some Class B airspace areas resemble upside-down wedding cakes), and is designed to contain all published instrument procedures once an aircraft enters the airspace. An ATC clearance is required for all aircraft to operate in the area, and all aircraft that are so cleared receive separation services within the airspace. The cloud clearance requirement for VFR operations is "clear of clouds."

3. CLASS C− Generally, that airspace from the surface to 4,000 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower, are serviced by a radar approach control, and that have a certain number of IFR operations or passenger enplanements. Although the configuration of each Class C area is individually tailored, the airspace usually consists of a surface area with a 5 NM radius, a circle with a 10 NM radius that extends no lower than 1,200 feet up to 4,000 feet above the airport elevation, and an outer area that is not charted. Each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while within the airspace. VFR aircraft are only separated from IFR aircraft within the airspace.

(See OUTER AREA.)

4. CLASS D− Generally, that airspace from the surface to 2,500 feet above the airport elevation (charted in MSL) surrounding those airports that have an operational control tower. The configuration of each Class D airspace area is individually tailored and when instrument procedures are published, the airspace will normally be designed to contain the procedures. Arrival extensions for instrument approach procedures may be Class D or Class E airspace. Unless otherwise authorized, each person must establish two-way radio communications with the ATC facility providing air traffic services prior to entering the airspace and thereafter maintain those communications while in the airspace. No separation services are provided to VFR aircraft.

5. CLASS E− Generally, if the airspace is not Class A, Class B, Class C, or Class D, and it is controlled airspace, it is Class E airspace. Class E airspace extends upward from either the surface or a designated altitude to the overlying or adjacent controlled airspace. When designated as a surface area, the airspace will be configured to contain all instrument procedures. Also in this class are Federal airways, airspace beginning at either 700 or 1,200 feet AGL used to transition to/from the terminal or en route environment, en route domestic, and offshore airspace areas designated below 18,000 feet MSL. Unless designated at a lower altitude, Class E airspace begins at 14,500 MSL over the United States, including that airspace overlying the waters within 12 nautical miles of the coast of the 48 contiguous States and Alaska, up to, but not including 18,000 feet MSL, and the airspace above FL 600.

CONTROLLED AIRSPACE [ICAO]− An airspace of defined dimensions within which air traffic control service is provided to IFR flights and to VFR flights in accordance with the airspace classification.

Note: Controlled airspace is a generic term which covers ATS airspace Classes A, B, C, D, and E.

CONTROLLED TIME OF ARRIVAL− Arrival time assigned during a Traffic Management Program. This time may be modified due to adjustments or user options.

CONTROLLER−
(See AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SPECIALIST.)

CONTROLLER [ICAO]− A person authorized to provide air traffic control services.

CONTROLLER PILOT DATA LINK COMMUNICATIONS (CPDLC)− A two−way digital communications system that conveys textual air traffic control messages between controllers and pilots using ground or satellite-based radio relay stations.

***CONVECTIVE SIGMET*−** A weather advisory concerning convective weather significant to the safety of all aircraft. Convective SIGMETs are issued for tornadoes, lines of thunderstorms, embedded thunderstorms of any intensity level, areas of thunderstorms greater than or equal to VIP level 4 with an area coverage of $^{4}/_{10}$ (40%) or more, and hail $^{3}/_{4}$ inch or greater.
(See AIRMET.)
(See CWA.)
(See SAW.)
(See SIGMET.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CONVECTIVE SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION−
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)

COOPERATIVE SURVEILLANCE− Any surveillance system, such as secondary surveillance radar (SSR), wide−area multilateration (WAM), or ADS−B, that is dependent upon the presence of certain equipment onboard the aircraft or vehicle to be detected.
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST.)
(See NON−COOPERATIVE SURVEILLANCE.)
(See RADAR.)
(See WIDE AREA MULTILATERATION.)

COORDINATES− The intersection of lines of reference, usually expressed in degrees/minutes/ seconds of latitude and longitude, used to determine position or location.

COORDINATION FIX− The fix in relation to which facilities will handoff, transfer control of an aircraft, or coordinate flight progress data. For terminal facilities, it may also serve as a clearance for arriving aircraft.

COPTER−
(See HELICOPTER.)

CORRECTION− An error has been made in the transmission and the correct version follows.

COUPLED APPROACH− An instrument approach performed by the aircraft autopilot, and/or visually depicted on the flight director, which is receiving position information and/or steering commands from onboard navigational equipment. In general, coupled non-precision approaches must be flown manually (autopilot disengaged) at altitudes lower than 50 feet AGL below the minimum descent altitude, and coupled precision approaches must be flown manually (autopilot disengaged) below 50 feet AGL unless authorized to conduct autoland operations. Coupled instrument approaches are commonly flown to the allowable IFR weather minima established by the operator or PIC, or flown VFR for training and safety.

COUPLED SCHEDULING (CS)/ EXTENDED METERING (XM)− Adds additional Constraint Satisfaction Points for metered aircraft along their route. This provides the ability to merge flows upstream from the meter fix and results in a more optimal distribution of delays over a greater distance from the airport, increased meter list accuracy, and more accurate delivery to the meter fix.

COURSE−

a. The intended direction of flight in the horizontal plane measured in degrees from north.

b. The ILS localizer signal pattern usually specified as the front course or the back course.

(See BEARING.)
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See RADIAL.)

CPDLC−
(See CONTROLLER PILOT DATA LINK COMMUNICATIONS.)

CPL [ICAO]−
(See ICAO term CURRENT FLIGHT PLAN.)

CRITICAL ENGINE− The engine which, upon failure, would most adversely affect the performance or handling qualities of an aircraft.

CROSS (FIX) AT (ALTITUDE)− Used by ATC when a specific altitude restriction at a specified fix is required.

CROSS (FIX) AT OR ABOVE (ALTITUDE)− Used by ATC when an altitude restriction at a specified fix is required. It does not prohibit the aircraft from crossing the fix at a higher altitude than specified; however, the higher altitude may not be one that will violate a succeeding altitude restriction or altitude assignment.

(See ALTITUDE RESTRICTION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

CROSS (FIX) AT OR BELOW (ALTITUDE)− Used by ATC when a maximum crossing altitude at a specific fix is required. It does not prohibit the aircraft from crossing the fix at a lower altitude; however, it must be at or above the minimum IFR altitude.

(See ALTITUDE RESTRICTION.)
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

CROSSWIND−

a. When used concerning the traffic pattern, the word means "crosswind leg."

(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

b. When used concerning wind conditions, the word means a wind not parallel to the runway or the path of an aircraft.

(See CROSSWIND COMPONENT.)

CROSSWIND COMPONENT− The wind component measured in knots at 90 degrees to the longitudinal axis of the runway.

CRUISE− Used in an ATC clearance to authorize a pilot to conduct flight at any altitude from the minimum IFR altitude up to and including the altitude specified in the clearance. The pilot may level off at any intermediate altitude within this block of airspace. Climb/descent within the block is to be made at the discretion of the pilot. However, once the pilot starts descent and verbally reports leaving an altitude in the block, he/she may not return to that altitude without additional ATC clearance. Further, it is approval for the pilot to proceed to and make an approach at destination airport and can be used in conjunction with:

a. An airport clearance limit at locations with a standard/special instrument approach procedure. The CFRs require that if an instrument letdown to an airport is necessary, the pilot shall make the letdown in accordance with a standard/special instrument approach procedure for that airport, or

b. An airport clearance limit at locations that are within/below/outside controlled airspace and without a standard/special instrument approach procedure. Such a clearance is NOT AUTHORIZATION for the pilot to descend under IFR conditions below the applicable minimum IFR altitude nor does it imply that ATC is exercising control over aircraft in Class G airspace; however, it provides a means for the aircraft to proceed to destination airport, descend, and land in accordance with applicable CFRs governing VFR flight operations. Also, this provides search and rescue protection until such time as the IFR flight plan is closed.

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

CRUISE CLIMB− A climb technique employed by aircraft, usually at a constant power setting, resulting in an increase of altitude as the aircraft weight decreases.

CRUISING ALTITUDE− An altitude or flight level maintained during en route level flight. This is a constant altitude and should not be confused with a cruise clearance.

(See ALTITUDE.)
(See ICAO term CRUISING LEVEL.)

CRUISING LEVEL−
(See CRUISING ALTITUDE.)

CRUISING LEVEL [ICAO]− A level maintained during a significant portion of a flight.

CSP−
(See CONSTRAINT SATISFACTION POINT)

CT MESSAGE− An EDCT time generated by the ATCSCC to regulate traffic at arrival airports. Normally, a CT message is automatically transferred from the traffic management system computer to the NAS en route computer and appears as an EDCT. In the event of a communication failure between the traffic management system computer and the NAS, the CT message can be manually entered by the TMC at the en route facility.

CTA−
(See CONTROLLED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)
(See ICAO term CONTROL AREA.)

CTAF−
(See COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY.)

CTOP−
(See COLLABORATIVE TRAJECTORY OPTIONS PROGRAM)

CTRD−
(See CERTIFIED TOWER RADAR DISPLAY.)

CURRENT FLIGHT PLAN [ICAO]− The flight plan, including changes, if any, brought about by subsequent clearances.

CURRENT PLAN− The ATC clearance the aircraft has received and is expected to fly.

CVFP APPROACH−
(See CHARTED VISUAL FLIGHT PROCEDURE APPROACH.)

CWA−
(See CENTER WEATHER ADVISORY and WEATHER ADVISORY.)

CWT−
(See CONSOLIDATED WAKE TURBULENCE.)

D

D−ATIS−

(See DIGITAL-AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

D−ATIS [ICAO]−

(See ICAO Term DATA LINK AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE.)

DA [ICAO]−

(See ICAO Term DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT.)

DAIR−

(See DIRECT ALTITUDE AND IDENTITY READOUT.)

DANGER AREA [ICAO]− An airspace of defined dimensions within which activities dangerous to the flight of aircraft may exist at specified times.

Note: The term "Danger Area" is not used in reference to areas within the United States or any of its possessions or territories.

DAS−

(See DELAY ASSIGNMENT.)

DATA BLOCK−

(See ALPHANUMERIC DISPLAY.)

DATA LINK AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (D−ATIS) [ICAO]− The provision of ATIS via data link.

DCT−

(See DELAY COUNTDOWN TIMER.)

DEAD RECKONING− Dead reckoning, as applied to flying, is the navigation of an airplane solely by means of computations based on airspeed, course, heading, wind direction, and speed, groundspeed, and elapsed time.

DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT [ICAO Annex 6]- A specified altitude or height (A/H) in the precision approach at which a missed approach must be initiated if the required visual reference to continue the approach has not been established.

1. Decision altitude (DA) is referenced to mean sea level and decision height (DH) is referenced to the threshold elevation.

2. Category II and III minima are expressed as a DH and not a DA. Minima is assessed by reference to a radio altimeter and not a barometric altimeter, which makes the minima a DH.

3. The required visual reference means that section of the visual aids or of the approach area which should have been in view for sufficient time for the pilot to have made an assessment of the aircraft position and rate of change of position, in relation to the desired flight path.

DECISION ALTITUDE (DA)− A specified altitude (mean sea level (MSL)) on an instrument approach procedure (ILS, GLS, vertically guided RNAV) at which the pilot must decide whether to continue the approach or initiate an immediate missed approach if the pilot does not see the required visual references.

DECISION HEIGHT (DH)− With respect to the operation of aircraft, means the height at which a decision must be made during an ILS or PAR instrument approach to either continue the approach or to execute a missed approach.

(See ICAO term DECISION ALTITUDE/DECISION HEIGHT.)

DECODER− The device used to decipher signals received from ATCRBS transponders to effect their display as select codes.

(See CODES.)
(See RADAR.)

DEFENSE AREA– Any airspace of the contiguous United States that is not an ADIZ in which the control of aircraft is required for reasons of national security.

DEFENSE VISUAL FLIGHT RULES− Rules applicable to flights within an ADIZ conducted under the visual flight rules in 14 CFR Part 91.

(See AIR DEFENSE IDENTIFICATION ZONE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 99.)

DELAY ASSIGNMENT (DAS)− Delays are distributed to aircraft based on the traffic management program parameters. The delay assignment is calculated in 15−minute increments and appears as a table in Traffic Flow Management System (TFMS).

DELAY COUNTDOWN TIMER (DCT)− The display of the delay that must be absorbed by a flight prior to crossing a Meter Reference Element (MRE) to meet the TBFM Scheduled Time of Arrival (STA).

It is calculated by taking the difference between the frozen STA and the Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA).

DELAY INDEFINITE (REASON IF KNOWN) EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME)− Used by ATC to inform a pilot when an accurate estimate of the delay time and the reason for the delay cannot immediately be determined; e.g., a disabled aircraft on the runway, terminal or center area saturation, weather below landing minimums, etc.

(See EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME).)

DEPARTURE CENTER− The ARTCC having jurisdiction for the airspace that generates a flight to the impacted airport.

DEPARTURE CONTROL− A function of an approach control facility providing air traffic control service for departing IFR and, under certain conditions, VFR aircraft.

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

DEPARTURE SEQUENCING PROGRAM− A program designed to assist in achieving a specified interval over a common point for departures.

DEPARTURE TIME− The time an aircraft becomes airborne.

DEPARTURE VIEWER− A capability within the Traffic Flow Management System (TFMS) that provides combined displays for monitoring departure by fixes and departure airports. Traffic management personnel can customize the displays by selecting the departure airports and fixes of interest. The information displayed is the demand for the resource (fix or departure airport) in time bins with the flight list and a flight history for one flight at a time. From the display, flights can be selected for route amendment, one or more at a time, and the Route Amendment Dialogue (RAD) screen automatically opens for easy route selection and execution. Reroute options are based on Coded Departure Route (CDR) database and Trajectory Options Set (TOS) (when available).

DESCEND VIA– An abbreviated ATC clearance that requires compliance with a published procedure lateral path and associated speed restrictions and provides a pilot-discretion descent to comply with published altitude restrictions.

DESCENT SPEED ADJUSTMENTS− Speed deceleration calculations made to determine an accurate VTA. These calculations start at the transition point and use arrival speed segments to the vertex.

DESIGNATED COMMON TRAFFIC ADVISORY FREQUENCY (CTAF) AREA− In Alaska, in addition to being designated for the purpose of carrying out airport advisory practices while operating to or from an airport without an operating airport traffic control tower, a CTAF may also be designated for the purpose of carrying out advisory practices for operations in and through areas with a high volume of VFR traffic.

DESIRED COURSE−

a. True− A predetermined desired course direction to be followed (measured in degrees from true north).

b. Magnetic− A predetermined desired course direction to be followed (measured in degrees from local magnetic north).

DESIRED TRACK− The planned or intended track between two waypoints. It is measured in degrees from either magnetic or true north. The instantaneous angle may change from point to point along the great circle track between waypoints.

DETRESFA (DISTRESS PHASE) [ICAO]− The code word used to designate an emergency phase wherein there is reasonable certainty that an aircraft and its occupants are threatened by grave and imminent danger or require immediate assistance.

DEVIATIONS−

a. A departure from a current clearance, such as an off course maneuver to avoid weather or turbulence.

b. Where specifically authorized in the CFRs and requested by the pilot, ATC may permit pilots to deviate from certain regulations.

DH−

(See DECISION HEIGHT.)

DH [ICAO]−

(See ICAO Term DECISION ALTITUDE/ DECISION HEIGHT.)

DIGITAL-AUTOMATIC TERMINAL INFORMATION SERVICE (D-ATIS)− The service provides text messages to aircraft, airlines, and other users outside the standard reception range of conventional ATIS via landline and data link communications to the cockpit. Also, the service provides a computer− synthesized voice message that can be transmitted to all aircraft within range of existing transmitters. The Terminal Data Link System (TDLS) D-ATIS application uses weather inputs from local automated weather sources or manually entered meteorological data together with preprogrammed menus to provide standard information to users. Airports with D-ATIS capability are listed in the Chart Supplement U.S.

DIGITAL TARGET− A computer−generated symbol representing an aircraft's position, based on a primary return or radar beacon reply, shown on a digital display.

DIGITAL TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEM (DTAS)− A system where digital radar and beacon data is presented on digital displays and the operational program monitors the system performance on a real−time basis.

DIGITIZED TARGET− A computer−generated indication shown on an analog radar display resulting from a primary radar return or a radar beacon reply.

DIRECT− Straight line flight between two navigational aids, fixes, points, or any combination thereof. When used by pilots in describing off-airway routes, points defining direct route segments become compulsory reporting points unless the aircraft is under radar contact.

DIRECTLY BEHIND− An aircraft is considered to be operating directly behind when it is following the actual flight path of the lead aircraft over the surface of the earth except when applying wake turbulence separation criteria.

DISCRETE BEACON CODE−
(See DISCRETE CODE.)

DISCRETE CODE− As used in the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS), any one of the 4096 selectable Mode 3/A aircraft transponder codes except those ending in zero zero; e.g., discrete codes: 0010, 1201, 2317, 7777; nondiscrete codes: 0100, 1200, 7700. Nondiscrete codes are normally reserved for radar facilities that are not equipped with discrete decoding capability and for other purposes such as emergencies (7700), VFR aircraft (1200), etc.
(See RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

DISCRETE FREQUENCY− A separate radio frequency for use in direct pilot-controller communications in air traffic control which reduces frequency congestion by controlling the number of aircraft operating on a particular frequency at one time. Discrete frequencies are normally designated for each control sector in en route/terminal ATC facilities. Discrete frequencies are listed in the Chart Supplement U.S. and the DOD FLIP IFR En Route Supplement.
(See CONTROL SECTOR.)

DISPLACED THRESHOLD− A threshold that is located at a point on the runway other than the designated beginning of the runway.
(See THRESHOLD.)
(Refer to AIM.)

DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT (DME)− Equipment (airborne and ground) used to measure, in nautical miles, the slant range distance of an aircraft from the DME navigational aid.
(See TACAN.)
(See VORTAC.)

DISTRESS− A condition of being threatened by serious and/or imminent danger and of requiring immediate assistance.

DIVE BRAKES−
(See SPEED BRAKES.)

DIVERSE VECTOR AREA− In a radar environment, that area in which a prescribed departure route is not required as the only suitable route to avoid obstacles. The area in which random radar vectors below the MVA/MIA, established in accordance with the TERPS criteria for diverse departures, obstacles and terrain avoidance, may be issued to departing aircraft.

DIVERSION (DVRSN)− Flights that are required to land at other than their original destination for reasons beyond the control of the pilot/company, e.g. periods of significant weather.

DME−
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

DME FIX− A geographical position determined by reference to a navigational aid which provides distance and azimuth information. It is defined by a specific distance in nautical miles and a radial, azimuth, or course (i.e., localizer) in degrees magnetic from that aid.
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)
(See FIX.)

DME SEPARATION− Spacing of aircraft in terms of distances (nautical miles) determined by reference to distance measuring equipment (DME).
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)

DOD FLIP− Department of Defense Flight Information Publications used for flight planning, en route, and terminal operations. FLIP is produced by the National Geospatial−Intelligence Agency (NGA) for world-wide use. United States Government Flight Information Publications (en route charts and instrument approach procedure charts) are incorporated in DOD FLIP for use in the National Airspace System (NAS).

DOMESTIC AIRSPACE− Airspace which overlies the continental land mass of the United States plus Hawaii and U.S. possessions. Domestic airspace extends to 12 miles offshore.

DOMESTIC NOTICE− A special notice or notice containing graphics or plain language text pertaining to almost every aspect of aviation, such as military training areas, large scale sporting events, air show information, Special Traffic Management Programs (STMPs), and airport−specific information. These notices are applicable to operations within the United States and can be found on the Domestic Notices website.

DOWNBURST− A strong downdraft which induces an outburst of damaging winds on or near the ground. Damaging winds, either straight or curved, are highly divergent. The sizes of downbursts vary from 1/2 mile or less to more than 10 miles. An intense downburst often causes widespread damage. Damaging winds, lasting 5 to 30 minutes, could reach speeds as high as 120 knots.

DOWNWIND LEG−
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

DP−
(See INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

DRAG CHUTE− A parachute device installed on certain aircraft which is deployed on landing roll to assist in deceleration of the aircraft.

DROP ZONE− Any pre-determined area upon which parachutists or objects land after making an intentional parachute jump or drop.
(Refer to 14 CFR §105.3, Definitions)

DSP−
(See DEPARTURE SEQUENCING PROGRAM.)

DTAS−
(See DIGITAL TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEM.)

DUE REGARD− A phase of flight wherein an aircraft commander of a State-operated aircraft assumes responsibility to separate his/her aircraft from all other aircraft.
(See also FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 1−2−1, WORD MEANINGS.)

DUTY RUNWAY−
(See RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY.)

DVA−
(See DIVERSE VECTOR AREA.)

DVFR−
(See DEFENSE VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

DVFR FLIGHT PLAN− A flight plan filed for a VFR aircraft which intends to operate in airspace within which the ready identification, location, and control of aircraft are required in the interest of national security.

DVRSN−
(See DIVERSION.)

DYNAMIC− Continuous review, evaluation, and change to meet demands.

DYNAMIC RESTRICTIONS− Those restrictions imposed by the local facility on an “as needed” basis to manage unpredictable fluctuations in traffic demands.

E

EAS−
(See EN ROUTE AUTOMATION SYSTEM.)

EDCT−
(See EXPECT DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME.)

EDST−
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL)

EFC−
(See EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME).)

ELT−
(See EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER.)

EMERGENCY− A distress or an urgency condition.

EMERGENCY AUTOLAND SYSTEM− This system, if activated, will determine an optimal airport, plot a course, broadcast the aircraft's intentions, fly to the airport, land, and (depending on the model) shut down the engines. Though the system will broadcast the aircraft's intentions, the controller should assume that transmissions to the aircraft will not be acknowledged.

EMERGENCY DESCENT MODE− This automated system senses conditions conducive to hypoxia (cabin depressurization). If an aircraft is equipped and the system is activated, it is designed to turn the aircraft up to 90 degrees, then descend to a lower altitude and level off, giving the pilot(s) time to recover.

EMERGENCY LOCATOR TRANSMITTER (ELT)− A radio transmitter attached to the aircraft structure which operates from its own power source on 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz. It aids in locating downed aircraft by radiating a downward sweeping audio tone, 2-4 times per second. It is designed to function without human action after an accident.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

E-MSAW−
(See EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING.)

ENHANCED FLIGHT VISION SYSTEM (EFVS)− An EFVS is an installed aircraft system which uses an electronic means to provide a display of the forward external scene topography (the natural or man−made features of a place or region especially in a way to show their relative positions and elevation) through the use of imaging sensors, including but not limited to forward−looking infrared, millimeter wave radiometry, millimeter wave radar, or low−light level image intensification. An EFVS includes the display element, sensors, computers and power supplies, indications, and controls. An operator's authorization to conduct an EFVS operation may have provisions which allow pilots to conduct IAPs when the reported weather is below minimums prescribed on the IAP to be flown.

EN ROUTE AIR TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICES− Air traffic control service provided aircraft on IFR flight plans, generally by centers, when these aircraft are operating between departure and destination terminal areas. When equipment, capabilities, and controller workload permit, certain advisory/assistance services may be provided to VFR aircraft.
(See AIR ROUTE TRAFFIC CONTROL CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

EN ROUTE AUTOMATION SYSTEM (EAS)− The complex integrated environment consisting of situation display systems, surveillance systems and flight data processing, remote devices, decision support tools, and the related communications equipment that form the heart of the automated IFR air traffic control system. It interfaces with automated terminal systems and is used in the control of en route IFR aircraft.
(Refer to AIM.)

EN ROUTE CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL (EDST)− An automated tool provided at each Radar Associate position in selected En Route facilities. This tool utilizes flight and radar data to determine present and future trajectories for all active and proposal aircraft and provides enhanced automated flight data management.

EN ROUTE DESCENT− Descent from the en route cruising altitude which takes place along the route of flight.

EN ROUTE HIGH ALTITUDE CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE LOW ALTITUDE CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

EN ROUTE MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (E−MSAW)− A function of the EAS that aids the controller by providing an alert when a tracked aircraft is below or predicted by the computer to go below a predetermined minimum IFR altitude (MIA).

EN ROUTE TRANSITION−
(See SEGMENTS OF A SID/STAR.)

EN ROUTE TRANSITION WAYPOINT
(See SEGMENTS OF A SID/STAR.)

EST−
(See ESTIMATED.)

ESTABLISHED− To be stable or fixed at an altitude or on a course, route, route segment, heading, instrument approach or departure procedure, etc.

ESTABLISHED ON RNP (EoR) CONCEPT− A system of au . . thorized instrument approaches, ATC procedures, surveillance, and communication requirements that allow aircraft operations to be safely conducted with approved reduced separation criteria once aircraft are established on a PBN segment of a published instrument flight procedure.

ESTIMATED (EST)−When used in NOTAMs "EST" is a contraction that is used by the issuing authority only when the condition is expected to return to service prior to the expiration time. Using "EST" lets the user know that this NOTAM has the possibility of returning to service earlier than the expiration time. Any NOTAM which includes an "EST" will be auto−expired at the designated expiration time.

ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME [ICAO]− The estimated time required to proceed from one significant point to another.
(See ICAO Term TOTAL ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME.)

ESTIMATED OFF-BLOCK TIME [ICAO]− The estimated time at which the aircraft will commence movement associated with departure.

ESTIMATED POSITION ERROR (EPE)−
(See Required Navigation Performance)

ESTIMATED TIME OF ARRIVAL− The time the flight is estimated to arrive at the gate (scheduled operators) or the actual runway on times for nonscheduled operators.

ESTIMATED TIME EN ROUTE− The estimated flying time from departure point to destination (lift-off to touchdown).

ETA−
(See ESTIMATED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

ETE−
(See ESTIMATED TIME EN ROUTE.)

EXECUTE MISSED APPROACH− Instructions issued to a pilot making an instrument approach which means continue inbound to the missed approach point and execute the missed approach procedure as described on the Instrument Approach Procedure Chart or as previously assigned by ATC. The pilot may climb immediately to the altitude specified in the missed approach procedure upon making a missed approach. No turns should be initiated prior to reaching the missed approach point. When conducting an ASR or PAR approach, execute the assigned missed approach procedure immediately upon receiving instructions to "execute missed approach."
(Refer to AIM.)

EXPECT (ALTITUDE) AT (TIME) or (FIX)− Used under certain conditions to provide a pilot with an altitude to be used in the event of two-way communications failure. It also provides altitude information to assist the pilot in planning.
(Refer to AIM.)

EXPECT DEPARTURE CLEARANCE TIME (EDCT)− The runway release time assigned to an aircraft in a traffic management program and shown on the flight progress strip as an EDCT.
(See GROUND DELAY PROGRAM.)

EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE (TIME)− The time a pilot can expect to receive clearance beyond a clearance limit.

EXPECT FURTHER CLEARANCE VIA (AIRWAYS, ROUTES OR FIXES)− Used to inform a pilot of the routing he/she can expect if any part of the route beyond a short range clearance limit differs from that filed.

EXPEDITE− Used by ATC when prompt compliance is required to avoid the development of an imminent situation. Expedite climb/descent normally indicates to a pilot that the approximate best rate of climb/descent should be used without requiring an exceptional change in aircraft handling characteristics.

F

FAF−
(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)

FALLEN HERO– Remains of fallen members of the United States military are often returned home by aircraft. These flights may be identified with the phrase "FALLEN HERO" added to the remarks section of the flight plan, or they may be transmitted via air/ground communications. If able, these flights will receive priority handling.

FAST FILE− An FSS system whereby a pilot files a flight plan via telephone that is recorded and later transcribed for transmission to the appropriate air traffic facility. (Alaska only.)

FAWP− Final Approach Waypoint

FEATHERED PROPELLER− A propeller whose blades have been rotated so that the leading and trailing edges are nearly parallel with the aircraft flight path to stop or minimize drag and engine rotation. Normally used to indicate shutdown of a reciprocating or turboprop engine due to malfunction.

FEDERAL AIRWAYS−
(See LOW ALTITUDE AIRWAY STRUCTURE.)

FEEDER FIX− The fix depicted on Instrument Approach Procedure Charts which establishes the starting point of the feeder route.

FEEDER ROUTE− A route depicted on instrument approach procedure charts to designate routes for aircraft to proceed from the en route structure to the initial approach fix (IAF).
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FERRY FLIGHT− A flight for the purpose of:

a. Returning an aircraft to base.

b. Delivering an aircraft from one location to another.

c. Moving an aircraft to and from a maintenance base. Ferry flights, under certain conditions, may be conducted under terms of a special flight permit.

FIELD ELEVATION−
(See AIRPORT ELEVATION.)

FILED− Normally used in conjunction with flight plans, meaning a flight plan has been submitted to ATC.

FILED EN ROUTE DELAY− Any of the following preplanned delays at points/areas along the route of flight which require special flight plan filing and handling techniques.

a. Terminal Area Delay. A delay within a terminal area for touch-and-go, low approach, or other terminal area activity.

b. Special Use Airspace Delay. A delay within a Military Operations Area, Restricted Area, Warning Area, or ATC Assigned Airspace.

c. Aerial Refueling Delay. A delay within an Aerial Refueling Track or Anchor.

FILED FLIGHT PLAN− The flight plan as filed with an ATS unit by the pilot or his/her designated representative without any subsequent changes or clearances.

FINAL− Commonly used to mean that an aircraft is on the final approach course or is aligned with a landing area.
(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See FINAL APPROACH-IFR.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH [ICAO]− That part of an instrument approach procedure which commences at the specified final approach fix or point, or where such a fix or point is not specified.

a. At the end of the last procedure turn, base turn or inbound turn of a racetrack procedure, if specified; or

b. At the point of interception of the last track specified in the approach procedure; and ends at a point in the vicinity of an aerodrome from which:

1. A landing can be made; or

2. A missed approach procedure is initiated.

FINAL APPROACH COURSE− A bearing/radial/track of an instrument approach leading to a runway or an extended runway centerline all without regard to distance.

FINAL APPROACH FIX− The fix from which the final approach (IFR) to an airport is executed and which identifies the beginning of the final approach segment. It is designated on Government charts by the Maltese Cross symbol for nonprecision approaches and the lightning bolt symbol, designating the PFAF, for precision approaches; or when ATC directs a lower-than-published glideslope/path or vertical path intercept altitude, it is the resultant actual point of the glideslope/path or vertical path intercept.

(See FINAL APPROACH POINT.)
(See GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH-IFR− The flight path of an aircraft which is inbound to an airport on a final instrument approach course, beginning at the final approach fix or point and extending to the airport or the point where a circle-to-land maneuver or a missed approach is executed.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)
(See FINAL APPROACH POINT.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See ICAO term FINAL APPROACH.)

FINAL APPROACH POINT− The point, applicable only to a nonprecision approach with no depicted FAF (such as an on airport VOR), where the aircraft is established inbound on the final approach course from the procedure turn and where the final approach descent may be commenced. The FAP serves as the FAF and identifies the beginning of the final approach segment.

(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT−

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]− That segment of an instrument approach procedure in which alignment and descent for landing are accomplished.

FINAL CONTROLLER− The controller providing information and final approach guidance during PAR and ASR approaches utilizing radar equipment.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

FINAL GUARD SERVICE− A value added service provided in conjunction with LAA/RAA only during periods of significant and fast changing weather conditions that may affect landing and takeoff operations.

FINAL MONITOR AID− A high resolution color display that is equipped with the controller alert system hardware/software used to monitor the no transgression zone (NTZ) during simultaneous parallel approach operations. The display includes alert algorithms providing the target predictors, a color change alert when a target penetrates or is predicted to penetrate the no transgression zone (NTZ), synthesized voice alerts, and digital mapping.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

FINAL MONITOR CONTROLLER− Air Traffic Control Specialist assigned to radar monitor the flight path of aircraft during simultaneous parallel (approach courses spaced less than 9000 feet/9200 feet above 5000 feet) and simultaneous close parallel approach operations. Each runway is assigned a final monitor controller during simultaneous parallel and simultaneous close parallel ILS approaches.

FIR−

(See FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION.)

FIRST TIER CENTER− An ARTCC immediately adjacent to the impacted center.

FIS−B−

(See FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST.)

FIX− A geographical position determined by visual reference to the surface, by reference to one or more radio NAVAIDs, by celestial plotting, or by another navigational device.

FIX BALANCING− A process whereby aircraft are evenly distributed over several available arrival fixes reducing delays and controller workload.

FLAG− A warning device incorporated in certain airborne navigation and flight instruments indicating that:

a. Instruments are inoperative or otherwise not operating satisfactorily, or

b. Signal strength or quality of the received signal falls below acceptable values.

FLAG ALARM−

(See FLAG.)

FLAMEOUT− An emergency condition caused by a loss of engine power.

FLAMEOUT PATTERN− An approach normally conducted by a single-engine military aircraft experiencing loss or anticipating loss of engine power or control. The standard overhead approach starts at a relatively high altitude over a runway ("high key") followed by a continuous 180 degree turn to a high, wide position ("low key") followed by a continuous 180 degree turn final. The standard straight-in pattern starts at a point that results in a straight-in approach with a high rate of descent to the runway. Flameout approaches terminate in the type approach requested by the pilot (normally fullstop).

FLIGHT CHECK− A call sign prefix used by FAA aircraft engaged in flight inspection/certification of navigational aids and flight procedures. The word "recorded" may be added as a suffix; e.g., "Flight Check 320 recorded" to indicate that an automated flight inspection is in progress in terminal areas.

(See FLIGHT INSPECTION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

FLIGHT FOLLOWING−
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION− An airspace of defined dimensions within which Flight Information Service and Alerting Service are provided.

a. Flight Information Service. A service provided for the purpose of giving advice and information useful for the safe and efficient conduct of flights.

b. Alerting Service. A service provided to notify appropriate organizations regarding aircraft in need of search and rescue aid and to assist such organizations as required.

FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE− A service provided for the purpose of giving advice and information useful for the safe and efficient conduct of flights.

FLIGHT INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST (FIS−B)− A ground broadcast service provided through the ADS−B Broadcast Services network over the UAT data link that operates on 978 MHz. The FIS−B system provides pilots and flight crews of properly equipped aircraft with a cockpit display of certain aviation weather and aeronautical information.

FLIGHT INSPECTION− Inflight investigation and evaluation of a navigational aid to determine whether it meets established tolerances.

(See FLIGHT CHECK.)
(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

FLIGHT LEVEL− A level of constant atmospheric pressure related to a reference datum of 29.92 inches of mercury. Each is stated in three digits that represent hundreds of feet. For example, flight level (FL) 250 represents a barometric altimeter indication of 25,000 feet; FL 255, an indication of 25,500 feet.

(See ICAO term FLIGHT LEVEL.)

FLIGHT LEVEL [ICAO]− A surface of constant atmospheric pressure which is related to a specific pressure datum, 1013.2 hPa (1013.2 mb), and is separated from other such surfaces by specific pressure intervals.

Note 1: A pressure type altimeter calibrated in accordance with the standard atmosphere:
a. When set to a QNH altimeter setting, will indicate altitude;
b. When set to a QFE altimeter setting, will indicate height above the QFE reference datum; and
c. When set to a pressure of 1013.2 hPa (1013.2 mb), may be used to indicate flight levels.

Note 2: The terms 'height' and 'altitude,' used in Note 1 above, indicate altimetric rather than geometric heights and altitudes.

FLIGHT LINE− A term used to describe the precise movement of a civil photogrammetric aircraft along a predetermined course(s) at a predetermined altitude during the actual photographic run.

FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS− A computer system that uses a large data base to allow routes to be preprogrammed and fed into the system by means of a data loader. The system is constantly updated with respect to position accuracy by reference to conventional navigation aids. The sophisticated program and its associated data base ensures that the most appropriate aids are automatically selected during the information update cycle.

FLIGHT PATH− A line, course, or track along which an aircraft is flying or intended to be flown.

(See COURSE.)
(See TRACK.)

FLIGHT PLAN− Specified information relating to the intended flight of an aircraft that is filed

electronically, orally, or in writing with an FSS, third−party vendor, or an ATC facility.
(See FAST FILE.)
(See FILED.)
(Refer to AIM.)

FLIGHT PLAN AREA (FPA)− The geographical area assigned to a flight service station (FSS) for the purpose of establishing primary responsibility for services that may include search and rescue for VFR aircraft, issuance of NOTAMs, pilot briefings, inflight services, broadcast services, emergency services, flight data processing, international operations, and aviation weather services. Large consolidated FSS facilities may combine FPAs into larger areas of responsibility (AOR).
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See TIE-IN FACILITY.)

FLIGHT RECORDER− A general term applied to any instrument or device that records information about the performance of an aircraft in flight or about conditions encountered in flight. Flight recorders may make records of airspeed, outside air temperature, vertical acceleration, engine RPM, manifold pressure, and other pertinent variables for a given flight.
(See ICAO term FLIGHT RECORDER.)

FLIGHT RECORDER [ICAO]− Any type of recorder installed in the aircraft for the purpose of complementing accident/incident investigation.

Note: See Annex 6 Part I, for specifications relating to flight recorders.

FLIGHT SERVICE STATION (FSS)− An air traffic facility which provides pilot briefings, flight plan processing, en route flight advisories, search and rescue services, and assistance to lost aircraft and aircraft in emergency situations. FSS also relay ATC clearances, process Notices to Air Missions, and broadcast aviation weather and aeronautical information. In Alaska, FSS provide Airport Advisory Services.
(See FLIGHT PLAN AREA.)
(See TIE-IN FACILITY.)

FLIGHT STANDARDS DISTRICT OFFICE− An FAA field office serving an assigned geographical area and staffed with Flight Standards personnel who serve the aviation industry and the general public on matters relating to the certification and operation of air carrier and general aviation aircraft. Activities include general surveillance of operational safety, certification of airmen and aircraft, accident prevention, investigation, enforcement, etc.

FLIGHT TERMINATION− The intentional and deliberate process of terminating the flight of a UA in the event of an unrecoverable lost link, loss of control, or other failure that compromises the safety of flight.

FLIGHT TEST− A flight for the purpose of:

a. Investigating the operation/flight characteristics of an aircraft or aircraft component.

b. Evaluating an applicant for a pilot certificate or rating.

FLIGHT VISIBILITY−
(See VISIBILITY.)

FLIP−
(See DOD FLIP.)

FLY-BY WAYPOINT− A fly-by waypoint requires the use of turn anticipation to avoid overshoot of the next flight segment.

FLY HEADING (DEGREES)− Informs the pilot of the heading he/she should fly. The pilot may have to turn to, or continue on, a specific compass direction in order to comply with the instructions. The pilot is expected to turn in the shorter direction to the heading unless otherwise instructed by ATC.

FLY-OVER WAYPOINT− A fly-over waypoint precludes any turn until the waypoint is overflown and is followed by an intercept maneuver of the next flight segment.

FLY VISUAL TO AIRPORT−
(See PUBLISHED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE VISUAL SEGMENT.)

FLYAWAY− When the pilot is unable to effect control of the aircraft and, as a result, the UA is not operating in a predictable or planned manner.

FMA−
(See FINAL MONITOR AID.)

FMS−
(See FLIGHT MANAGEMENT SYSTEM.)

FORMATION FLIGHT− More than one aircraft which, by prior arrangement between the pilots, operate as a single aircraft with regard to navigation and position reporting. Separation between aircraft within the formation is the responsibility of the flight leader and the pilots of the other aircraft in the flight.

This includes transition periods when aircraft within the formation are maneuvering to attain separation from each other to effect individual control and during join-up and breakaway.

a. A standard formation is one in which a proximity of no more than 1 mile laterally or longitudinally and within 100 feet vertically from the flight leader is maintained by each wingman.

b. Nonstandard formations are those operating under any of the following conditions:

1. When the flight leader has requested and ATC has approved other than standard formation dimensions.

2. When operating within an authorized altitude reservation (ALTRV) or under the provisions of a letter of agreement.

3. When the operations are conducted in airspace specifically designed for a special activity.

(See ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

FRC−
(See REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE.)

FREEZE/FROZEN− Terms used in referring to arrivals which have been assigned ACLTs and to the lists in which they are displayed.

FREEZE HORIZON− The time or point at which an aircraft's STA becomes fixed and no longer fluctuates with each radar update. This setting ensures a constant time for each aircraft, necessary for the metering controller to plan his/her delay technique. This setting can be either in distance from the meter fix or a prescribed flying time to the meter fix.

FREEZE SPEED PARAMETER− A speed adapted for each aircraft to determine fast and slow aircraft. Fast aircraft freeze on parameter FCLT and slow aircraft freeze on parameter MLDI.

FRICTION MEASUREMENT− A measurement of the friction characteristics of the runway pavement surface using continuous self-watering friction measurement equipment in accordance with the specifications, procedures and schedules contained in AC 150/5320−12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces.

FSDO−
(See FLIGHT STANDARDS DISTRICT OFFICE.)

FSPD−
(See FREEZE SPEED PARAMETER.)

FSS−
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)

FUEL DUMPING− Airborne release of usable fuel. This does not include the dropping of fuel tanks.
(See JETTISONING OF EXTERNAL STORES.)

FUEL REMAINING− A phrase used by either pilots or controllers when relating to the fuel remaining on board until actual fuel exhaustion. When transmitting such information in response to either a controller question or pilot initiated cautionary advisory to air traffic control, pilots will state the APPROXIMATE NUMBER OF MINUTES the flight can continue with the fuel remaining. All reserve fuel SHOULD BE INCLUDED in the time stated, as should an allowance for established fuel gauge system error.

FUEL SIPHONING− Unintentional release of fuel caused by overflow, puncture, loose cap, etc.

FUEL VENTING−
(See FUEL SIPHONING.)

FUSED TARGET-
(See DIGITAL TARGET)

FUSION [STARS]- the combination of all available surveillance sources (airport surveillance radar [ASR], air route surveillance radar [ARSR], ADS-B, etc.) into the display of a single tracked target for air traffic control separation services. FUSION is the equivalent of the current single-sensor radar display. FUSION performance is characteristic of a single-sensor radar display system. Terminal areas use mono-pulse secondary surveillance radar (ASR 9, Mode S or ASR 11, MSSR).

G

GATE HOLD PROCEDURES− Procedures at selected airports to hold aircraft at the gate or other ground location whenever departure delays exceed or are anticipated to exceed 15 minutes. The sequence for departure will be maintained in accordance with initial call−up unless modified by flow control restrictions. Pilots should monitor the ground control/clearance delivery frequency for engine start/taxi advisories or new proposed start/taxi time if the delay changes.

GCA−
(See GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH.)

GDP−
(See GROUND DELAY PROGRAM.)

GENERAL AVIATION− That portion of civil aviation that does not include scheduled or unscheduled air carriers or commercial space operations.
(See ICAO term GENERAL AVIATION.)

GENERAL AVIATION [ICAO]− All civil aviation operations other than scheduled air services and nonscheduled air transport operations for remuneration or hire.

GEO MAP− The digitized map markings associated with the ASR-9 Radar System.

GLIDEPATH−
(See GLIDESLOPE.)

GLIDEPATH [ICAO]− A descent profile determined for vertical guidance during a final approach.

GLIDEPATH INTERCEPT ALTITUDE−
(See GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE.)

GLIDESLOPE− Provides vertical guidance for aircraft during approach and landing. The glideslope/glidepath is based on the following:

a. Electronic components emitting signals which provide vertical guidance by reference to airborne instruments during instrument approaches such as ILS; or,

b. Visual ground aids, such as VASI, which provide vertical guidance for a VFR approach or for the visual portion of an instrument approach and landing.

c. PAR. Used by ATC to inform an aircraft making a PAR approach of its vertical position (elevation) relative to the descent profile.
(See ICAO term GLIDEPATH.)

GLIDESLOPE INTERCEPT ALTITUDE− The published minimum altitude to intercept the glideslope in the intermediate segment of an instrument approach. Government charts use the lightning bolt symbol to identify this intercept point. This intersection is called the Precise Final Approach fix (PFAF). ATC directs a higher altitude, the resultant intercept becomes the PFAF.
(See FINAL APPROACH FIX.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM (GNSS)− GNSS refers collectively to the worldwide positioning, navigation, and timing determination capability available from one or more satellite constellations. A GNSS constellation may be augmented by ground stations and/or geostationary satellites to improve integrity and position accuracy.
(See GROUND−BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM.)
(See SATELLITE−BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM.)

GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE (GNSS MEA)− The minimum en route IFR altitude on a published ATS route or route segment which assures acceptable Global Navigation Satellite System reception and meets obstacle clearance requirements.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)

GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS)− GPS refers to the worldwide positioning, navigation and timing determination capability available from the U.S. satellite constellation. The service provided by GPS for civil use is defined in the GPS Standard Positioning System Performance Standard. GPS is composed of space, control, and user elements.

GNSS [ICAO]−
(See GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM.)

GNSS MEA−
(See GLOBAL NAVIGATION SATELLITE SYSTEM MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

GO AHEAD− Proceed with your message. Not to be used for any other purpose.

GO AROUND− Instructions for a pilot to abandon his/her approach to landing. Additional instructions may follow. Unless otherwise advised by ATC, a VFR aircraft or an aircraft conducting visual approach should overfly the runway while climbing to traffic pattern altitude and enter the traffic pattern via the crosswind leg. A pilot on an IFR flight plan making an instrument approach should execute the published missed approach procedure or proceed as instructed by ATC; e.g., "Go around" (additional instructions if required).
(See LOW APPROACH.)
(See MISSED APPROACH.)

GPD−
(See GRAPHIC PLAN DISPLAY.)

GPS−
(See GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM.)

GRAPHIC PLAN DISPLAY (GPD)− A view available with EDST that provides a graphic display of aircraft, traffic, and notification of predicted conflicts. Graphic routes for Current Plans and Trial Plans are displayed upon controller request.
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

GROSS NAVIGATION ERROR (GNE) − A lateral deviation of 10 NM or more from the aircraft's cleared route.

GROUND BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (GBAS)– A ground based GNSS station which provides local differential corrections, integrity parameters and approach data via VHF data broadcast to GNSS users to meet real-time performance requirements for CAT I precision approaches. The aircraft applies the broadcast data to improve the accuracy and integrity of its GNSS signals and computes the deviations to the selected approach. A single ground station can serve multiple runway ends up to an approximate radius of 23 NM.

GROUND BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (GBAS) LANDING SYSTEM (GLS)- A type of precision IAP based on local augmentation of GNSS data using a single GBAS station to transmit locally corrected GNSS data, integrity parameters and approach information. This improves the accuracy of aircraft GNSS receivers' signal in space, enabling the pilot to fly a precision approach with much greater flexibility, reliability and complexity. The GLS procedure is published on standard IAP charts, features the title GLS with the designated runway and minima as low as 200 feet DA. Future plans are expected to support Cat II and CAT III operations.

GROUND−BASED INTERVAL MANAGEMENT−SPACING (GIM−S), SPEED ADVISORY− A calculated speed that will allow aircraft to meet the TBFM schedule at en route and TRACON boundary meter fixes.

GROUND CLUTTER− A pattern produced on the radar scope by ground returns which may degrade other radar returns in the affected area. The effect of ground clutter is minimized by the use of moving target indicator (MTI) circuits in the radar equipment resulting in a radar presentation which displays only targets which are in motion.
(See CLUTTER.)

GROUND COMMUNICATION OUTLET (GCO)− An unstaffed, remotely controlled, ground/ground communications facility. Pilots at uncontrolled airports may contact ATC and FSS via VHF radio to a telephone connection. If the connection goes to ATC, the pilot can obtain an IFR clearance or close an IFR flight plan. If the connection goes to Flight Service, the pilot can open or close a VFR flight plan; obtain an updated weather briefing prior to takeoff; close an IFR flight plan; or, for Alaska or MEDEVAC only, obtain an IFR clearance. Pilots will use four "key clicks" on the VHF radio to contact the appropriate ATC facility or six "key clicks" to contact the FSS. The GCO system is intended to be used only on the ground.

GROUND CONTROLLED APPROACH− A radar approach system operated from the ground by air traffic control personnel transmitting instructions to the pilot by radio. The approach may be conducted with surveillance radar (ASR) only or with both surveillance and precision approach radar (PAR). Usage of the term "GCA" by pilots is discouraged except when referring to a GCA facility. Pilots should specifically request a "PAR" approach when a precision radar approach is desired or request an "ASR" or "surveillance" approach when a nonprecision radar approach is desired.

(See RADAR APPROACH.)

GROUND DELAY PROGRAM (GDP)− A traffic management process administered by the ATCSCC, when aircraft are held on the ground. The purpose of the program is to support the TM mission and limit airborne holding. It is a flexible program and may be implemented in various forms depending upon the needs of the AT system. Ground delay programs provide for equitable assignment of delays to all system users.

GROUND SPEED− The speed of an aircraft relative to the surface of the earth.

GROUND STOP (GS)− The GS is a process that requires aircraft that meet a specific criteria to remain on the ground. The criteria may be airport specific, airspace specific, or equipment specific; for example, all departures to San Francisco, or all departures entering Yorktown sector, or all Category I and II aircraft going to Charlotte. GSs normally occur with little or no warning.

GROUND VISIBILITY−

(See VISIBILITY.)

GS−

(See GROUND STOP.)

I

I SAY AGAIN− The message will be repeated.

IAF−

(See INITIAL APPROACH FIX.)

IAP−

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

IAWP− Initial Approach Waypoint

ICAO−

(See ICAO Term INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION.)

ICAO 3LD−

(See ICAO Term ICAO Three−Letter Designator)

ICAO Three−Letter Designator (3LD)− An ICAO 3LD is an exclusive designator that, when used together with a flight number, becomes the aircraft call sign and provides distinct aircraft identification to air traffic control (ATC). ICAO approves 3LDs to enhance the safety and security of the air traffic system. An ICAO 3LD may be assigned to a company, agency, or organization and is used instead of the aircraft registration number for ATC operational and security purposes. An ICAO 3LD is also used for aircraft identification in the flight plan and associated messages and can be used for domestic and international flights. A telephony associated with an ICAO 3LD is used for radio communication.

ICING− The accumulation of airframe ice.

Types of icing are:

a. Rime Ice− Rough, milky, opaque ice formed by the instantaneous freezing of small supercooled water droplets.

b. Clear Ice− A glossy, clear, or translucent ice formed by the relatively slow freezing of large supercooled water droplets.

c. Mixed− A mixture of clear ice and rime ice.

Intensity of icing:

a. Trace− Ice becomes noticeable. The rate of accumulation is slightly greater than the rate of sublimation. A representative accretion rate for reference purposes is less than ¼ inch (6 mm) per hour on the outer wing. The pilot should consider exiting the icing conditions before they become worse.

b. Light− The rate of ice accumulation requires occasional cycling of manual deicing systems to minimize ice accretions on the airframe. A representative accretion rate for reference purposes is ¼ inch to 1 inch (0.6 to 2.5 cm) per hour on the unprotected part of the outer wing. The pilot should consider exiting the icing condition.

c. Moderate− The rate of ice accumulation requires frequent cycling of manual deicing systems to minimize ice accretions on the airframe. A representative accretion rate for reference purposes is 1 to 3 inches (2.5 to 7.5 cm) per hour on the unprotected part of the outer wing. The pilot should consider exiting the icing condition as soon as possible.

d. Severe− The rate of ice accumulation is such that ice protection systems fail to remove the accumulation of ice and ice accumulates in locations not normally prone to icing, such as areas aft of protected surfaces and any other areas identified by the manufacturer. A representative accretion rate for reference purposes is more than 3 inches (7.5 cm) per hour on the unprotected part of the outer wing. By regulation, immediate exit is required.

Note:

Severe icing is aircraft dependent, as are the other categories of icing intensity. Severe icing may occur at any ice accumulation rate when the icing rate or ice accumulations exceed the tolerance of the aircraft.

IDAC−

(See INTEGRATED DEPARTURE/ARRIVAL CAPABILITY.)

IDENT− A request for a pilot to activate the aircraft transponder identification feature. This will help the controller to confirm an aircraft identity or to identify an aircraft.

(Refer to AIM.)

IDENT FEATURE− The special feature in the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) equipment. It is used to immediately distinguish one displayed beacon target from other beacon targets.

(See IDENT.)

IDENTIFICATION [ICAO]− The situation which exists when the position indication of a particular aircraft is seen on a situation display and positively identified.

IF−
(See INTERMEDIATE FIX.)

IF NO TRANSMISSION RECEIVED FOR (TIME)− Used by ATC in radar approaches to prefix procedures which should be followed by the pilot in event of lost communications.
(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

IFR−
(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)

IFR AIRCRAFT− An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with instrument flight rules.

IFR CONDITIONS− Weather conditions below the minimum for flight under visual flight rules.
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

IFR DEPARTURE PROCEDURE−
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

IFR FLIGHT−
(See IFR AIRCRAFT.)

IFR LANDING MINIMUMS−
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES (IR)− Routes used by the Department of Defense and associated Reserve and Air Guard units for the purpose of conducting low-altitude navigation and tactical training in both IFR and VFR weather conditions below 10,000 feet MSL at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES− Title 14 Code of Federal Regulations Part 91, prescribes standard takeoff rules for certain civil users. At some airports, obstructions or other factors require the establishment of nonstandard takeoff minimums, departure procedures, or both to assist pilots in avoiding obstacles during climb to the minimum en route altitude. Those airports are listed in FAA/DOD Instrument Approach Procedures (IAPs) Charts under a section entitled “IFR Takeoff Minimums and Departure Procedures.” The FAA/DOD IAP chart legend illustrates the symbol used to alert the pilot to nonstandard takeoff minimums and departure procedures. When departing IFR from such airports or from any airports where there are no departure procedures, DPs, or ATC facilities available, pilots should advise ATC of any departure limitations. Controllers may query a pilot to determine acceptable departure directions, turns, or headings after takeoff. Pilots should be familiar with the departure procedures and must assure that their aircraft can meet or exceed any specified climb gradients.

IF/IAWP− Intermediate Fix/Initial Approach Waypoint. The waypoint where the final approach course of a T approach meets the crossbar of the T. When designated (in conjunction with a TAA) this waypoint will be used as an IAWP when approaching the airport from certain directions, and as an IFWP when beginning the approach from another IAWP.

IFWP− Intermediate Fix Waypoint

ILS−
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

ILS CATEGORIES− 1. Category I. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 200 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,800 feet.− 2. Special Authorization Category I. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 150 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,400 feet, HUD to DH. 3. Category II. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 100 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,200 feet (with autoland or HUD to touchdown and noted on authorization, RVR 1,000 feet).− 4. Special Authorization Category II with Reduced Lighting. An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach to a height above touchdown of not less than 100 feet and with runway visual range of not less than 1,200 feet with autoland or HUD to touchdown and noted on authorization (no touchdown zone and centerline lighting are required).− 5. Category III:

a. IIIA.−An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and with runway visual range of not less than 700 feet.

b. IIIB.−An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and with runway visual range of not less than 150 feet.

c. IIIC.−An ILS approach procedure which provides for approach without a decision height minimum and without runway visual range minimum.

IM−

(See INNER MARKER.)

IMC−

(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

IMMEDIATELY− Used by ATC or pilots when such action compliance is required to avoid an imminent situation.

INCERFA (Uncertainty Phase) [ICAO]− A situation wherein uncertainty exists as to the safety of an aircraft and its occupants.

INCREASED SEPARATION REQUIRED (ISR)− Indicates the confidence level of the track requires 5 NM separation. 3 NM separation, 1 ½ NM separation, and target resolution cannot be used.

INCREASE SPEED TO (SPEED)−

(See SPEED ADJUSTMENT.)

INERTIAL NAVIGATION SYSTEM (INS)− An RNAV system which is a form of self-contained navigation.

(See Area Navigation/RNAV.)

INFLIGHT REFUELING−

(See AERIAL REFUELING.)

INFLIGHT WEATHER ADVISORY−

(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

INFORMATION REQUEST (INREQ)− A request originated by an FSS for information concerning an overdue VFR aircraft.

INITIAL APPROACH FIX (IAF)− The fixes depicted on instrument approach procedure charts that identify the beginning of the initial approach segment(s).

(See FIX.)

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT−

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]− That segment of an instrument approach procedure between the initial approach fix and the intermediate approach fix or, where applicable, the final approach fix or point.

INLAND NAVIGATION FACILITY− A navigation aid on a North American Route at which the common route and/or the noncommon route begins or ends.

INNER MARKER− A marker beacon used with an ILS (CAT II) precision approach located between the middle marker and the end of the ILS runway, transmitting a radiation pattern keyed at six dots per second and indicating to the pilot, both aurally and visually, that he/she is at the designated decision height (DH), normally 100 feet above the touchdown zone elevation, on the ILS CAT II approach. It also marks progress during a CAT III approach.

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)

(Refer to AIM.)

INNER MARKER BEACON−

(See INNER MARKER.)

INREQ−

(See INFORMATION REQUEST.)

INS−

(See INERTIAL NAVIGATION SYSTEM.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH−

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS [ICAO]− An approach and landing using instruments for navigation guidance based on an instrument approach procedure. There are two methods for executing instrument approach operations:

a. A two−dimensional (2D) instrument approach operation, using lateral navigation guidance only; and

b. A three−dimensional (3D) instrument approach operation, using both lateral and vertical navigation guidance.

Note: Lateral and vertical navigation guidance refers to the guidance provided either by:
a) a ground−based radio navigation aid; or
b) computer−generated navigation data from ground−based, space−based, self−contained navigation aids or a combination of these.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE− A series of predetermined maneuvers for the orderly transfer of an aircraft under instrument flight conditions from the beginning of the initial approach to a landing or to a point from which a landing may be made visually. It is prescribed and approved for a specific airport by competent authority.

(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

a. U.S. civil standard instrument approach procedures are approved by the FAA as prescribed under 14 CFR Part 97 and are available for public use.

b. U.S. military standard instrument approach procedures are approved and published by the Department of Defense.

c. Special instrument approach procedures are approved by the FAA for individual operators but are not published in 14 CFR Part 97 for public use.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE [ICAO]− A series of predetermined maneuvers by reference to flight instruments with specified protection from obstacles from the initial approach fix, or where applicable, from the beginning of a defined arrival route to a point from which a landing can be completed and thereafter, if a landing is not completed, to a position at which holding or en route obstacle clearance criteria apply.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT APPROACH OPERATIONS)

INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE CHARTS−

(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (DP)− A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) departure procedure published for pilot use, in graphic or textual format, that provides obstruction clearance from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. There are two types of DP, Obstacle Departure Procedure (ODP), printed either textually or graphically, and, Standard Instrument Departure (SID), which is always printed graphically.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (DP) CHARTS−

(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES (IFR)− Rules governing the procedures for conducting instrument flight. Also a term used by pilots and controllers to indicate type of flight plan.

(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES [ICAO]− A set of rules governing the conduct of flight under instrument meteorological conditions.

INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM (ILS)− A precision instrument approach system which normally consists of the following electronic components and visual aids:

a. Localizer.
(See LOCALIZER.)

b. Glideslope.
(See GLIDESLOPE.)

c. Outer Marker.
(See OUTER MARKER.)

d. Middle Marker.
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)

e. Approach Lights.
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS (IMC)− Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud, and ceiling less than the minima specified for visual meteorological conditions.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

INSTRUMENT RUNWAY− A runway equipped with electronic and visual navigation aids for which a precision or nonprecision approach procedure having straight-in landing minimums has been approved.

(See ICAO term INSTRUMENT RUNWAY.)

INSTRUMENT RUNWAY [ICAO]− One of the following types of runways intended for the operation of aircraft using instrument approach procedures:

a. Nonprecision Approach Runway− An instrument runway served by visual aids and a nonvisual aid providing at least directional guidance adequate for a straight-in approach.

b. Precision Approach Runway, Category I− An instrument runway served by ILS and visual aids intended for operations down to 60 m (200 feet) decision height and down to an RVR of the order of 800 m.

c. Precision Approach Runway, Category II− An instrument runway served by ILS and visual aids intended for operations down to 30 m (100 feet) decision height and down to an RVR of the order of 400 m.

d. Precision Approach Runway, Category III− An instrument runway served by ILS to and along the surface of the runway and:

1. Intended for operations down to an RVR of the order of 200 m (no decision height being applicable) using visual aids during the final phase of landing;

2. Intended for operations down to an RVR of the order of 50 m (no decision height being applicable) using visual aids for taxiing;

3. Intended for operations without reliance on visual reference for landing or taxiing.

Note 1: See Annex 10 Volume I, Part I, Chapter 3, for related ILS specifications.

Note 2: Visual aids need not necessarily be matched to the scale of nonvisual aids provided. The criterion for the selection of visual aids is the conditions in which operations are intended to be conducted.

INTEGRATED DEPARTURE/ARRIVAL CAPABILITY (IDAC)− A Tower/TRACON departure scheduling capability within TBFM that allows departures to be scheduled into either an arrival flow or an en route flow. IDAC provides a mechanism for electronic coordination of departure release times.

INTEGRITY− The ability of a system to provide timely warnings to users when the system should not be used for navigation.

INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT−
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT [ICAO]− That segment of an instrument approach procedure between either the intermediate approach fix and the final approach fix or point, or between the end of a reversal, race track or dead reckoning track procedure and the final approach fix or point, as appropriate.

INTERMEDIATE FIX− The fix that identifies the beginning of the intermediate approach segment of an instrument approach procedure. The fix is not normally identified on the instrument approach chart as an intermediate fix (IF).
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

INTERMEDIATE LANDING− On the rare occasion that this option is requested, it should be approved. The departure center, however, must advise the ATCSCC so that the appropriate delay is carried over and assigned at the intermediate airport. An intermediate landing airport within the arrival center will not be accepted without coordination with and the approval of the ATCSCC.

INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT− Relating to international flight, it means:

a. An airport of entry which has been designated by the Secretary of Treasury or Commissioner of Customs as an international airport for customs service.

b. A landing rights airport at which specific permission to land must be obtained from customs authorities in advance of contemplated use.

c. Airports designated under the Convention on International Civil Aviation as an airport for use by international commercial air transport and/or international general aviation.
(See ICAO term INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT.)
(Refer to Chart Supplement U.S.)

INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT [ICAO]− Any airport designated by the Contracting State in whose territory it is situated as an airport of entry and departure for international air traffic, where the formalities incident to customs, immigration, public health, animal and plant quarantine and similar procedures are carried out.

INTERNATIONAL CIVIL AVIATION ORGANIZATION [ICAO]− A specialized agency of the

United Nations whose objective is to develop the principles and techniques of international air navigation and to foster planning and development of international civil air transport.

INTERNATIONAL NOTICE− A notice containing flight prohibitions, potential hostile situations, or other international/foreign oceanic airspace matters. These notices can be found on the International Notices website.

INTERROGATOR− The ground-based surveillance radar beacon transmitter-receiver, which normally scans in synchronism with a primary radar, transmitting discrete radio signals which repetitiously request all transponders on the mode being used to reply. The replies received are mixed with the primary radar returns and displayed on the same plan position indicator (radar scope). Also, applied to the airborne element of the TACAN/DME system.

(See TRANSPONDER.)

(Refer to AIM.)

INTERSECTING RUNWAYS− Two or more runways which cross or meet within their lengths.

(See INTERSECTION.)

INTERSECTION−

a. A point defined by any combination of courses, radials, or bearings of two or more navigational aids.

b. Used to describe the point where two runways, a runway and a taxiway, or two taxiways cross or meet.

INTERSECTION DEPARTURE− A departure from any runway intersection except the end of the runway.

(See INTERSECTION.)

INTERSECTION TAKEOFF−

(See INTERSECTION DEPARTURE.)

IR−

(See IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

IRREGULAR SURFACE− A surface that is open for use but not per regulations.

ISR−

(See INCREASED SEPARATION REQUIRED.)

M

MAA−
(See MAXIMUM AUTHORIZED ALTITUDE.)

MACH NUMBER− The ratio of true airspeed to the speed of sound; e.g., MACH .82, MACH 1.6.
(See AIRSPEED.)

MACH TECHNIQUE [ICAO]− Describes a control technique used by air traffic control whereby turbojet aircraft operating successively along suitable routes are cleared to maintain appropriate MACH numbers for a relevant portion of the en route phase of flight. The principle objective is to achieve improved utilization of the airspace and to ensure that separation between successive aircraft does not decrease below the established minima.

MAHWP− Missed Approach Holding Waypoint

MAINTAIN−

a. Concerning altitude/flight level, the term means to remain at the altitude/flight level specified. The phrase "climb and" or "descend and" normally precedes "maintain" and the altitude assignment; e.g., "descend and maintain 5,000."

b. Concerning other ATC instructions, the term is used in its literal sense; e.g., maintain VFR.

MAINTENANCE PLANNING FRICTION LEVEL− The friction level specified in AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, which represents the friction value below which the runway pavement surface remains acceptable for any category or class of aircraft operations but which is beginning to show signs of deterioration. This value will vary depending on the particular friction measurement equipment used.

MAKE SHORT APPROACH− Used by ATC to inform a pilot to alter his/her traffic pattern so as to make a short final approach.
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

MAN PORTABLE AIR DEFENSE SYSTEMS (MANPADS)− MANPADS are lightweight, shoulder−launched, missile systems used to bring down aircraft and create mass casualties. The potential for MANPADS use against airborne aircraft is real and requires familiarity with the subject. Terrorists choose MANPADS because the weapons are low cost, highly mobile, require minimal set−up time, and are easy to use and maintain. Although the weapons have limited range, and their accuracy is affected by poor visibility and adverse weather, they can be fired from anywhere on land or from boats where there is unrestricted visibility to the target.

MANDATORY ALTITUDE− An altitude depicted on an instrument Approach Procedure Chart requiring the aircraft to maintain altitude at the depicted value.

MANPADS−
(See MAN PORTABLE AIR DEFENSE SYSTEMS.)

MAP−
(See MISSED APPROACH POINT.)

MARKER BEACON− An electronic navigation facility transmitting a 75 MHz vertical fan or boneshaped radiation pattern. Marker beacons are identified by their modulation frequency and keying code, and when received by compatible airborne equipment, indicate to the pilot, both aurally and visually, that he/she is passing over the facility.
(See INNER MARKER.)
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)
(See OUTER MARKER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MARSA−
(See MILITARY AUTHORITY ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR SEPARATION OF AIRCRAFT.)

MAWP− Missed Approach Waypoint

MAXIMUM AUTHORIZED ALTITUDE− A published altitude representing the maximum usable altitude or flight level for an airspace structure or route segment. It is the highest altitude on a Federal airway, jet route, area navigation low or high route, or other direct route for which an MEA is designated in 14 CFR Part 95 at which adequate reception of navigation aid signals is assured.

MAYDAY− The international radiotelephony distress signal. When repeated three times, it indicates imminent and grave danger and that immediate assistance is requested.

(See PAN-PAN.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MCA−
(See MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE.)

MDA−
(See MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE.)

MEA−
(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

MEARTS−
(See MICRO-EN ROUTE AUTOMATED RADAR TRACKING SYSTEM.)

METEOROLOGICAL IMPACT STATEMENT− An unscheduled planning forecast describing conditions expected to begin within 4 to 12 hours which may impact the flow of air traffic in a specific center's (ARTCC) area.

METER FIX ARC− A semicircle, equidistant from a meter fix, usually in low altitude relatively close to the meter fix, used to help TBFM/ERAM calculate a meter time, and determine appropriate sector meter list assignments for aircraft not on an established arrival route or assigned a meter fix.

METER REFERENCE ELEMENT (MRE)− A constraint point through which traffic flows are managed. An MRE can be the runway threshold, a meter fix, or a meter arc.

METER REFERENCE POINT LIST (MRP)− A list of TBFM delay information conveyed to the controller on the situation display via the Meter Reference Point View, commonly known as the "Meter List."

METERING−A method of time−regulating traffic flows in the en route and terminal environments.

METERING AIRPORTS− Airports adapted for metering and for which optimum flight paths are defined. A maximum of 15 airports may be adapted.

METERING FIX− A fix along an established route from over which aircraft will be metered prior to entering terminal airspace. Normally, this fix should be established at a distance from the airport which will facilitate a profile descent 10,000 feet above airport elevation (AAE) or above.

MHA−
(See MINIMUM HOLDING ALTITUDE.)

MIA−
(See MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES.)

MICROBURST− A small downburst with outbursts of damaging winds extending 2.5 miles or less. In spite of its small horizontal scale, an intense microburst could induce wind speeds as high as 150 knots

(Refer to AIM.)

MICRO-EN ROUTE AUTOMATED RADAR TRACKING SYSTEM (MEARTS)− An automated radar and radar beacon tracking system capable of employing both short-range (ASR) and long-range (ARSR) radars. This microcomputer driven system provides improved tracking, continuous data recording, and use of full digital radar displays.

MID RVR−
(See VISIBILITY.)

MIDDLE COMPASS LOCATOR−
(See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

MIDDLE MARKER− A marker beacon that defines a point along the glideslope of an ILS normally located at or near the point of decision height (ILS Category I). It is keyed to transmit alternate dots and dashes, with the alternate dots and dashes keyed at the rate of 95 dot/dash combinations per minute on a 1300 Hz tone, which is received aurally and visually by compatible airborne equipment.

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See MARKER BEACON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MILES-IN-TRAIL− A specified distance between aircraft, normally, in the same stratum associated with the same destination or route of flight.

MILITARY AUTHORITY ASSUMES RESPONSIBILITY FOR SEPARATION OF AIRCRAFT (MARSA)− A condition whereby the military services involved assume responsibility for separation between participating military aircraft in the ATC system. It is used only for required IFR operations which are specified in letters of agreement or other appropriate FAA or military documents.

MILITARY LANDING ZONE− A landing strip used exclusively by the military for training. A military landing zone does not carry a runway designation.

MILITARY OPERATIONS AREA−
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES− Airspace of defined vertical and lateral dimensions established for the conduct of military flight training at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.
(See IFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)
(See VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

MINIMA−
(See MINIMUMS.)

MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE (MCA)− The lowest altitude at certain fixes at which an aircraft must cross when proceeding in the direction of a higher minimum en route IFR altitude (MEA).
(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)

MINIMUM DESCENT ALTITUDE (MDA)− The lowest altitude, expressed in feet above mean sea level, to which descent is authorized on final approach or during circle-to-land maneuvering in execution of a standard instrument approach procedure where no electronic glideslope is provided.
(See NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE (MEA)− The lowest published altitude between radio fixes which assures acceptable navigational signal coverage and meets obstacle clearance requirements between those fixes. The MEA prescribed for a Federal airway or segment thereof, area navigation low or high route, or other direct route applies to the entire width of the airway, segment, or route between the radio fixes defining the airway, segment, or route.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM FRICTION LEVEL− The friction level specified in AC 150/5320-12, Measurement, Construction, and Maintenance of Skid Resistant Airport Pavement Surfaces, that represents the minimum recommended wet pavement surface friction value for any turbojet aircraft engaged in LAHSO. This value will vary with the particular friction measurement equipment used.

MINIMUM FUEL− Indicates that an aircraft's fuel supply has reached a state where, upon reaching the destination, it can accept little or no delay. This is not an emergency situation but merely indicates an emergency situation is possible should any undue delay occur.
(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM HOLDING ALTITUDE− The lowest altitude prescribed for a holding pattern which assures navigational signal coverage, communications, and meets obstacle clearance requirements.

MINIMUM IFR ALTITUDES (MIA)− Minimum altitudes for IFR operations as prescribed in 14 CFR Part 91. These altitudes are published on aeronautical charts and prescribed in 14 CFR Part 95 for airways and routes, and in 14 CFR Part 97 for standard instrument approach procedures. If no applicable minimum altitude is prescribed in 14 CFR Part 95 or 14 CFR Part 97, the following minimum IFR altitude applies:

a. In designated mountainous areas, 2,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown; or

b. Other than mountainous areas, 1,000 feet above the highest obstacle within a horizontal distance of 4 nautical miles from the course to be flown; or

c. As otherwise authorized by the Administrator or assigned by ATC.
(See MINIMUM CROSSING ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM EN ROUTE IFR ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE.)
(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE (MOCA)− The lowest published altitude in effect between radio fixes on VOR airways, off-airway routes, or route segments which meets obstacle clearance requirements for the entire route segment and which assures acceptable navigational signal coverage only within 25 statute (22 nautical) miles of a VOR.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)

MINIMUM RECEPTION ALTITUDE (MRA)− The lowest altitude at which an intersection can be determined.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 95.)

MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE (MSA)−

a. The minimum altitude specified in 14 CFR Part 91 for various aircraft operations.

b. Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance for emergency use. These altitudes will be identified as Minimum Safe Altitudes or Emergency Safe Altitudes and are established as follows:

1. Minimum Safe Altitude (MSA). Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance within a 25-mile radius of the navigation facility, waypoint, or airport reference point upon which the MSA is predicated. MSAs are for emergency use only and do not necessarily assure acceptable navigational signal coverage.

(See ICAO term Minimum Sector Altitude.)

2. Emergency Safe Altitude (ESA). Altitudes depicted on approach charts which provide at least 1,000 feet of obstacle clearance in nonmountainous areas and 2,000 feet of obstacle clearance in designated mountainous areas within a 100-mile radius of the navigation facility or waypoint used as the ESA center. These altitudes are normally used only in military procedures and are identified on published procedures as "Emergency Safe Altitudes."

MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING (MSAW)− A function of the EAS and STARS computer that aids the controller by alerting him/her when a tracked Mode C equipped aircraft is below or is predicted by the computer to go below a predetermined minimum safe altitude.

(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM SECTOR ALTITUDE [ICAO]− The lowest altitude which may be used under emergency conditions which will provide a minimum clearance of 300 m (1,000 feet) above all obstacles located in an area contained within a sector of a circle of 46 km (25 NM) radius centered on a radio aid to navigation.

MINIMUMS− Weather condition requirements established for a particular operation or type of operation; e.g., IFR takeoff or landing, alternate airport for IFR flight plans, VFR flight, etc.

(See IFR CONDITIONS.)
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(See VFR CONDITIONS.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE (MVA)− The lowest MSL altitude at which an IFR aircraft will be vectored by a radar controller, except as otherwise authorized for radar approaches, departures, and missed approaches. The altitude meets IFR obstacle clearance criteria. It may be lower than the published MEA along an airway or J-route segment. It may be utilized for radar vectoring only upon the controller's determination that an adequate radar return is being received from the aircraft being controlled. Charts depicting minimum vectoring altitudes are normally available only to the controllers and not to pilots.

(Refer to AIM.)

MINUTES-IN-TRAIL− A specified interval between aircraft expressed in time. This method would more likely be utilized regardless of altitude.

MIS−

(See METEOROLOGICAL IMPACT STATEMENT.)

MISSED APPROACH−

a. A maneuver conducted by a pilot when an instrument approach cannot be completed to a landing. The route of flight and altitude are shown on instrument approach procedure charts. A pilot executing a missed approach prior to the Missed Approach Point (MAP) must continue along the final approach to the MAP.

b. A term used by the pilot to inform ATC that he/she is executing the missed approach.

c. At locations where ATC radar service is provided, the pilot should conform to radar vectors when provided by ATC in lieu of the published missed approach procedure.

(See MISSED APPROACH POINT.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MISSED APPROACH POINT (MAP)− A point prescribed in each instrument approach procedure at which a missed approach procedure shall be executed if the required visual reference does not exist.

(See MISSED APPROACH.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE [ICAO]− The procedure to be followed if the approach cannot be continued.

MISSED APPROACH SEGMENT−
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

MM−
(See MIDDLE MARKER.)

MOA−
(See MILITARY OPERATIONS AREA.)

MOCA−
(See MINIMUM OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE.)

MODE− The letter or number assigned to a specific pulse spacing of radio signals transmitted or received by ground interrogator or airborne transponder components of the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS). Mode A (military Mode 3) and Mode C (altitude reporting) are used in air traffic control.
(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See RADAR.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)
(See ICAO term MODE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

MODE (SSR MODE) [ICAO]− The letter or number assigned to a specific pulse spacing of the interrogation signals transmitted by an interrogator. There are 4 modes, A, B, C and D specified in Annex 10, corresponding to four different interrogation pulse spacings.

MODE C INTRUDER ALERT− A function of certain air traffic control automated systems designed to alert radar controllers to existing or pending situations between a tracked target (known IFR or VFR aircraft) and an untracked target (unknown IFR or VFR aircraft) that requires immediate attention/action.
(See CONFLICT ALERT.)

MODEL AIRCRAFT− An unmanned aircraft that is: (1) capable of sustained flight in the atmosphere; (2) flown within visual line of sight of the person operating the aircraft; and (3) flown for hobby or recreational purposes.

MONITOR− (When used with communication transfer) listen on a specific frequency and stand by for instructions. Under normal circumstances do not establish communications.

MONITOR ALERT (MA)− A function of the TFMS that provides traffic management personnel with a tool for predicting potential capacity problems in individual operational sectors. The MA is an indication that traffic management personnel need to analyze a particular sector for actual activity and to determine the required action(s), if any, needed to control the demand.

MONITOR ALERT PARAMETER (MAP)− The number designated for use in monitor alert processing by the TFMS. The MAP is designated for each operational sector for increments of 15 minutes.

MOSAIC/MULTI−SENSOR MODE− Accepts positional data from multiple radar or ADS−B sites. Targets are displayed from a single source within a radar sort box according to the hierarchy of the sources assigned.

MOUNTAIN WAVE– Mountain waves occur when air is being blown over a mountain range or even the ridge of a sharp bluff area. As the air hits the upwind side of the range, it starts to climb, thus creating what is generally a smooth updraft which turns into a turbulent downdraft as the air passes the crest of the ridge. Mountain waves can cause significant fluctuations in airspeed and altitude with or without associated turbulence.
(Refer to AIM.)

MOVEMENT AREA− The runways, taxiways, and other areas of an airport/heliport which are utilized for taxiing/hover taxiing, air taxiing, takeoff, and landing of aircraft, exclusive of loading ramps and parking areas. At those airports/heliports with a tower, specific approval for entry onto the movement area must be obtained from ATC.
(See ICAO term MOVEMENT AREA.)

MOVEMENT AREA [ICAO]− That part of an aerodrome to be used for the takeoff, landing and taxiing of aircraft, consisting of the maneuvering area and the apron(s).

MOVING TARGET INDICATOR− An electronic device which will permit radar scope presentation only from targets which are in motion. A partial remedy for ground clutter.

MRA−
(See MINIMUM RECEPTION ALTITUDE.)

MRE−
(See METER REFERENCE ELEMENT.)

MRP
(See METER REFERENCE POINT LIST.)

MSA−
(See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE.)

MSAW−
(See MINIMUM SAFE ALTITUDE WARNING.)

MTI−
(See MOVING TARGET INDICATOR.)

MTR−
(See MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

MULTICOM− A mobile service not open to public correspondence used to provide communications essential to conduct the activities being performed by or directed from private aircraft.

MULTIPLE RUNWAYS− The utilization of a dedicated arrival runway(s) for departures and a dedicated departure runway(s) for arrivals when feasible to reduce delays and enhance capacity.

MVA−
(See MINIMUM VECTORING ALTITUDE.)

N

NAS–
(See NATIONAL AIRSPACE SYSTEM.)

NAT HLA–
(See NORTH ATLANTIC HIGH LEVEL AIRSPACE.)

NATIONAL AIRSPACE SYSTEM– The common network of U.S. airspace; air navigation facilities, equipment and services, airports or landing areas; aeronautical charts, information and services; rules, regulations and procedures, technical information, and manpower and material. Included are system components shared jointly with the military.

NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN AIRSPACE (NBCAP)– Airspace over United States territory located within the North American continent between Canada and Mexico, including adjacent territorial waters outward to about boundaries of oceanic control areas (CTA)/Flight Information Regions (FIR).
(See FLIGHT INFORMATION REGION.)

NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST (NFDD)– A daily (except weekends and Federal holidays) publication of flight information appropriate to aeronautical charts, aeronautical publications, Notices to Air Missions, or other media serving the purpose of providing operational flight data essential to safe and efficient aircraft operations.

NATIONAL SEARCH AND RESCUE PLAN– An interagency agreement which provides for the effective utilization of all available facilities in all types of search and rescue missions.

NAVAID–
(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)

NAVAID CLASSES– VOR, VORTAC, and TACAN aids are classed according to their operational use. The three classes of NAVAIDs are:

a. T– Terminal.

b. L– Low altitude.

c. H– High altitude.

Note: The normal service range for T, L, and H class aids is found in the AIM. Certain operational requirements make it necessary to use some of these aids at greater service ranges than specified. Extended range is made possible through flight inspection determinations. Some aids also have lesser service range due to location, terrain, frequency protection, etc. Restrictions to service range are listed in Chart Supplement U.S.

NAVIGABLE AIRSPACE– Airspace at and above the minimum flight altitudes prescribed in the CFRs including airspace needed for safe takeoff and landing.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

NAVIGATION REFERENCE SYSTEM (NRS)– The NRS is a system of waypoints developed for use within the United States for flight planning and navigation without reference to ground based navigational aids. The NRS waypoints are located in a grid pattern along defined latitude and longitude lines. The initial use of the NRS will be in the high altitude environment. The NRS waypoints are intended for use by aircraft capable of point–to–point navigation.

NAVIGATION SPECIFICATION [ICAO]– A set of aircraft and flight crew requirements needed to support performance–based navigation operations within a defined airspace. There are two kinds of navigation specifications:

a. RNP specification. A navigation specification based on area navigation that includes the requirement for performance monitoring and alerting, designated by the prefix RNP; e.g., RNP 4, RNP APCH.

b. RNAV specification. A navigation specification based on area navigation that does not include the requirement for performance monitoring and alerting, designated by the prefix RNAV; e.g., RNAV 5, RNAV 1.

Note: The Performance–based Navigation Manual (Doc 9613), Volume II contains detailed guidance on navigation specifications.

NAVIGATIONAL AID– Any visual or electronic device airborne or on the surface which provides point-to-point guidance information or position data to aircraft in flight.
(See AIR NAVIGATION FACILITY.)

NAVSPEC-
(See NAVIGATION SPECIFICATION [ICAO].)

NBCAP AIRSPACE−
(See NATIONAL BEACON CODE ALLOCATION PLAN AIRSPACE.)

NDB−
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

NEGATIVE− "No," or "permission not granted," or "that is not correct."

NEGATIVE CONTACT− Used by pilots to inform ATC that:

a. Previously issued traffic is not in sight. It may be followed by the pilot's request for the controller to provide assistance in avoiding the traffic.

b. They were unable to contact ATC on a particular frequency.

NFDD−
(See NATIONAL FLIGHT DATA DIGEST.)

NIGHT− The time between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as published in the Air Almanac, converted to local time.
(See ICAO term NIGHT.)

NIGHT [ICAO]− The hours between the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight or such other period between sunset and sunrise as may be specified by the appropriate authority.

Note: Civil twilight ends in the evening when the center of the sun's disk is 6 degrees below the horizon and begins in the morning when the center of the sun's disk is 6 degrees below the horizon.

NO GYRO APPROACH− A radar approach/vector provided in case of a malfunctioning gyro-compass or directional gyro. Instead of providing the pilot with headings to be flown, the controller observes the radar track and issues control instructions "turn right/left" or "stop turn" as appropriate.
(Refer to AIM.)

NO GYRO VECTOR−
(See NO GYRO APPROACH.)

NO TRANSGRESSION ZONE (NTZ)− The NTZ is a 2,000 foot wide zone, located equidistant between parallel runway or SOIA final approach courses, in which flight is normally not allowed.

NONAPPROACH CONTROL TOWER− Authorizes aircraft to land or takeoff at the airport controlled by the tower or to transit the Class D airspace. The primary function of a nonapproach control tower is the sequencing of aircraft in the traffic pattern and on the landing area. Nonapproach control towers also separate aircraft operating under instrument flight rules clearances from approach controls and centers. They provide ground control services to aircraft, vehicles, personnel, and equipment on the airport movement area.

NONCOMMON ROUTE/PORTION− That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and a designated North American terminal.

NON−COOPERATIVE SURVEILLANCE− Any surveillance system, such as primary radar, that is not dependent upon the presence of any equipment on the aircraft or vehicle to be tracked.
(See COOPERATIVE SURVEILLANCE.)
(See RADAR.)

NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON− An L/MF or UHF radio beacon transmitting nondirectional signals whereby the pilot of an aircraft equipped with direction finding equipment can determine his/her bearing to or from the radio beacon and "home" on or track to or from the station. When the radio beacon is installed in conjunction with the Instrument Landing System marker, it is normally called a Compass Locator.
(See AUTOMATIC DIRECTION FINDER.)
(See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

NONMOVEMENT AREAS− Taxiways and apron (ramp) areas not under the control of air traffic.

NONPRECISION APPROACH−
(See NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

NONPRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE− A standard instrument approach procedure in which no electronic glideslope is provided; e.g., VOR, TACAN, NDB, LOC, ASR, LDA, or SDF approaches.

NONRADAR− Precedes other terms and generally means without the use of radar, such as:

a. Nonradar Approach. Used to describe instrument approaches for which course guidance on final approach is not provided by ground-based precision or surveillance radar. Radar vectors to the final approach course may or may not be provided by

ATC. Examples of nonradar approaches are VOR, NDB, TACAN, ILS, RNAV, and GLS approaches.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See FINAL APPROACH-IFR.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See RADAR APPROACH.)

b. Nonradar Approach Control. An ATC facility providing approach control service without the use of radar.

(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)
(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

c. Nonradar Arrival. An aircraft arriving at an airport without radar service or at an airport served by a radar facility and radar contact has not been established or has been terminated due to a lack of radar service to the airport.

(See RADAR ARRIVAL.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

d. Nonradar Route. A flight path or route over which the pilot is performing his/her own navigation. The pilot may be receiving radar separation, radar monitoring, or other ATC services while on a nonradar route.

(See RADAR ROUTE.)

e. Nonradar Separation. The spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minima without the use of radar; e.g., vertical, lateral, or longitudinal separation.

(See RADAR SEPARATION.)

NON−RESTRICTIVE ROUTING (NRR)− Portions of a proposed route of flight where a user can flight plan the most advantageous flight path with no requirement to make reference to ground−based NAVAIDs.

NOPAC−
(See NORTH PACIFIC.)

NORDO (No Radio)− Aircraft that cannot or do not communicate by radio when radio communication is required are referred to as "NORDO."

(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

NORMAL OPERATING ZONE (NOZ)− The NOZ is the operating zone within which aircraft flight remains during normal independent simultaneous parallel ILS approaches.

NORTH AMERICAN ROUTE− A numerically coded route preplanned over existing airway and route systems to and from specific coastal fixes serving the North Atlantic. North American Routes consist of the following:

a. Common Route/Portion. That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and the coastal fix.

b. Noncommon Route/Portion. That segment of a North American Route between the inland navigation facility and a designated North American terminal.

c. Inland Navigation Facility. A navigation aid on a North American Route at which the common route and/or the noncommon route begins or ends.

d. Coastal Fix. A navigation aid or intersection where an aircraft transitions between the domestic route structure and the oceanic route structure.

NORTH AMERICAN ROUTE PROGRAM (NRP)− The NRP is a set of rules and procedures which are designed to increase the flexibility of user flight planning within published guidelines.

NORTH ATLANTIC HIGH LEVEL AIRSPACE (NAT HLA)− That volume of airspace (as defined in ICAO Document 7030) between FL 285 and FL 420 within the Oceanic Control Areas of Bodo Oceanic, Gander Oceanic, New York Oceanic East, Reykjavik, Santa Maria, and Shanwick, excluding the Shannon and Brest Ocean Transition Areas. ICAO Doc 007 *North Atlantic Operations and Airspace Manual* provides detailed information on related aircraft and operational requirements.

NORTH PACIFIC− An organized route system between the Alaskan west coast and Japan.

NOT STANDARD− Varying from what is expected or published. For use in NOTAMs only.

NOT STD-
(See NOT STANDARD.)

NOTAM−
(See NOTICE TO AIR MISSIONS.)

NOTAM [ICAO]− A notice containing information concerning the establishment, condition or change in any aeronautical facility, service, procedure or hazard, the timely knowledge of which is essential to personnel concerned with flight operations.

a. I Distribution− Distribution by means of telecommunication.

b. II Distribution− Distribution by means other than telecommunications.

NOTICE TO AIR MISSIONS (NOTAM)− A notice containing information (not known sufficiently in advance to publicize by other means) concerning the establishment, condition, or change in any component (facility, service, or procedure of, or hazard in the National Airspace System) the timely knowledge of which is essential to personnel concerned with flight operations.

NOTAM(D)− A NOTAM given (in addition to local dissemination) distant dissemination beyond the area of responsibility of the Flight Service Station. These NOTAMs will be stored and available until canceled.

c. FDC NOTAM− A NOTAM regulatory in nature, transmitted by USNOF and given system wide dissemination.
(See ICAO term NOTAM.)

NRR−
(See NON−RESTRICTIVE ROUTING.)

NRS−
(See NAVIGATION REFERENCE SYSTEM.)

NUMEROUS TARGETS VICINITY (LOCATION)− A traffic advisory issued by ATC to advise pilots that targets on the radar scope are too numerous to issue individually.
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

O

OBSTACLE− An existing object, object of natural growth, or terrain at a fixed geographical location or which may be expected at a fixed location within a prescribed area with reference to which vertical clearance is or must be provided during flight operation.

OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE (ODP)− A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) departure procedure printed for pilot use in textual or graphic form to provide obstruction clearance via the least onerous route from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. ODPs are recommended for obstruction clearance and may be flown without ATC clearance unless an alternate departure procedure (SID or radar vector) has been specifically assigned by ATC.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURES.)

(Refer to AIM.)

OBSTACLE FREE ZONE− The OFZ is a three−dimensional volume of airspace which protects for the transition of aircraft to and from the runway. The OFZ clearing standard precludes taxiing and parked airplanes and object penetrations, except for frangible NAVAID locations that are fixed by function. Additionally, vehicles, equipment, and personnel may be authorized by air traffic control to enter the area using the provisions of FAA Order JO 7110.65, paragraph 3−1−5, Vehicles/Equipment/Personnal Near/On Runways. The runway OFZ and when applicable, the inner-approach OFZ, and the inner-transitional OFZ, comprise the OFZ.

a. Runway OFZ. The runway OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered above the runway. The runway OFZ is the airspace above a surface whose elevation at any point is the same as the elevation of the nearest point on the runway centerline. The runway OFZ extends 200 feet beyond each end of the runway. The width is as follows:

1. For runways serving large airplanes, the greater of:

(a) 400 feet, or

(b) 180 feet, plus the wingspan of the most demanding airplane, plus 20 feet per 1,000 feet of airport elevation.

2. For runways serving only small airplanes:

(a) 300 feet for precision instrument runways.

(b) 250 feet for other runways serving small airplanes with approach speeds of 50 knots, or more.

(c) 120 feet for other runways serving small airplanes with approach speeds of less than 50 knots.

b. Inner-approach OFZ. The inner-approach OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered on the approach area. The inner-approach OFZ applies only to runways with an approach lighting system. The inner-approach OFZ begins 200 feet from the runway threshold at the same elevation as the runway threshold and extends 200 feet beyond the last light unit in the approach lighting system. The width of the inner-approach OFZ is the same as the runway OFZ and rises at a slope of 50 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) from the beginning.

c. Inner-transitional OFZ. The inner transitional surface OFZ is a defined volume of airspace along the sides of the runway and inner-approach OFZ and applies only to precision instrument runways. The inner-transitional surface OFZ slopes 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) out from the edges of the runway OFZ and inner-approach OFZ to a height of 150 feet above the established airport elevation.

(Refer to AC 150/5300-13, Chapter 3.)

(Refer to FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 3−1−5, Vehicles/Equipment/Personnel Near/On Runways.)

OBSTRUCTION− Any object/obstacle exceeding the obstruction standards specified by 14 CFR Part 77, Subpart C.

OBSTRUCTION LIGHT− A light or one of a group of lights, usually red or white, frequently mounted on a surface structure or natural terrain to warn pilots of the presence of an obstruction.

OCEANIC AIRSPACE− Airspace over the oceans of the world, considered international airspace, where oceanic separation and procedures per the International Civil Aviation Organization are applied. Responsibility for the provisions of air traffic control service in this airspace is delegated to various countries, based generally upon geographic proximity and the availability of the required resources.

OCEANIC ERROR REPORT− A report filed when ATC observes an Oceanic Error as defined by FAA Order 7110.82, Reporting Oceanic Errors.

OCEANIC PUBLISHED ROUTE− A route established in international airspace and charted or described in flight information publications, such as Route Charts, DOD En route Charts, Chart Supplements, NOTAMs, and Track Messages.

OCEANIC TRANSITION ROUTE− An ATS route established for the purpose of transitioning aircraft to/from an organized track system.

ODP−
(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)

OFF COURSE− A term used to describe a situation where an aircraft has reported a position fix or is observed on radar at a point not on the ATC-approved route of flight.

OFF−ROUTE OBSTRUCTION CLEARANCE ALTITUDE (OROCA)− A published altitude which provides terrain and obstruction clearance with a 1,000 foot buffer in non−mountainous areas and a 2,000 foot buffer in designated mountainous areas within the United States, and a 3,000 foot buffer outside the US ADIZ. These altitudes are not assessed for NAVAID signal coverage, air traffic control surveillance, or communications coverage, and are published for general situational awareness, flight planning, and in−flight contingency use.

OFF-ROUTE VECTOR− A vector by ATC which takes an aircraft off a previously assigned route. Altitudes assigned by ATC during such vectors provide required obstacle clearance.

OFFSET PARALLEL RUNWAYS− Staggered runways having centerlines which are parallel.

OFFSHORE/CONTROL AIRSPACE AREA− That portion of airspace between the U.S. 12 NM limit and the oceanic CTA/FIR boundary within which air traffic control is exercised. These areas are established to provide air traffic control services. Offshore/Control Airspace Areas may be classified as either Class A airspace or Class E airspace.

OFT−
(See OUTER FIX TIME.)

OM−
(See OUTER MARKER.)

ON COURSE−

a. Used to indicate that an aircraft is established on the route centerline.

b. Used by ATC to advise a pilot making a radar approach that his/her aircraft is lined up on the final approach course.
(See ON-COURSE INDICATION.)

ON-COURSE INDICATION− An indication on an instrument, which provides the pilot a visual means of determining that the aircraft is located on the centerline of a given navigational track, or an indication on a radar scope that an aircraft is on a given track.

ONE-MINUTE WEATHER− The most recent one minute updated weather broadcast received by a pilot from an uncontrolled airport ASOS/AWOS.

ONER−
(See OCEANIC NAVIGATIONAL ERROR REPORT.)

OPEN LOOP CLEARANCE− Provides a lateral vector solution that does not include a return to route point.

OPERATIONAL−
(See DUE REGARD.)

OPERATIONS SPECIFICATIONS [ICAO]− The authorizations, conditions and limitations associated with the air operator certificate and subject to the conditions in the operations manual.

OPPOSITE DIRECTION AIRCRAFT− Aircraft are operating in opposite directions when:

a. They are following the same track in reciprocal directions; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in reciprocal directions; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of more than 135°.

OPTION APPROACH− An approach requested and conducted by a pilot which will result in either a touch-and-go, missed approach, low approach, stop-and-go, or full stop landing. Pilots should advise ATC if they decide to remain on the runway, of any

delay in their stop and go, delay clearing the runway, or are unable to comply with the instruction(s).
(See CLEARED FOR THE OPTION.)
(Refer to AIM.)

ORGANIZED TRACK SYSTEM− A series of ATS routes which are fixed and charted; i.e., CEP, NOPAC, or flexible and described by NOTAM; i.e., NAT TRACK MESSAGE.

OTR−
(See OCEANIC TRANSITION ROUTE.)

OTS−
(See ORGANIZED TRACK SYSTEM.)

OUT− The conversation is ended and no response is expected.

OUT OF SERVICE/UNSERVICEABLE (U/S)− When a piece of equipment, a NAVAID, a facility or a service is not operational, certified (if required) and immediately "available" for Air Traffic or public use.

OUTER AREA (associated with Class C airspace)− Non−regulatory airspace surrounding designated Class C airspace airports wherein ATC provides radar vectoring and sequencing on a full-time basis for all IFR and participating VFR aircraft. The service provided in the outer area is called Class C service which includes: IFR/IFR−IFR separation; IFR/VFR−traffic advisories and conflict resolution; and VFR/VFR−traffic advisories and, as appropriate, safety alerts. The normal radius will be 20 nautical miles with some variations based on site-specific requirements. The outer area extends outward from the primary Class C airspace airport and extends from the lower limits of radar/radio coverage up to the ceiling of the approach control's delegated airspace excluding the Class C charted area and other airspace as appropriate.
(See CONFLICT RESOLUTION.)
(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)

OUTER COMPASS LOCATOR−
(See COMPASS LOCATOR.)

OUTER FIX− A general term used within ATC to describe fixes in the terminal area, other than the final approach fix. Aircraft are normally cleared to these fixes by an Air Route Traffic Control Center or an Approach Control Facility. Aircraft are normally cleared from these fixes to the final approach fix or final approach course.

OR

OUTER FIX− An adapted fix along the converted route of flight, prior to the meter fix, for which crossing times are calculated and displayed in the metering position list.

OUTER FIX ARC− A semicircle, usually about a 50−70 mile radius from a meter fix, usually in high altitude, which is used by CTAS/ERAM to calculate outer fix times and determine appropriate sector meter list assignments for aircraft on an established arrival route that will traverse the arc.

OUTER FIX TIME− A calculated time to depart the outer fix in order to cross the vertex at the ACLT. The time reflects descent speed adjustments and any applicable delay time that must be absorbed prior to crossing the meter fix.

OUTER MARKER− A marker beacon at or near the glideslope intercept altitude of an ILS approach. It is keyed to transmit two dashes per second on a 400 Hz tone, which is received aurally and visually by compatible airborne equipment. The OM is normally located four to seven miles from the runway threshold on the extended centerline of the runway.
(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See MARKER BEACON.)
(Refer to AIM.)

OVER− My transmission is ended; I expect a response.

OVERHEAD MANEUVER− A series of predetermined maneuvers prescribed for aircraft (often in formation) for entry into the visual flight rules (VFR) traffic pattern and to proceed to a landing. An overhead maneuver is not an instrument flight rules (IFR) approach procedure. An aircraft executing an overhead maneuver is considered VFR and the IFR flight plan is canceled when the aircraft reaches the "initial point" on the initial approach portion of the maneuver. The pattern usually specifies the following:

a. The radio contact required of the pilot.

b. The speed to be maintained.

c. An initial approach 3 to 5 miles in length.

d. An elliptical pattern consisting of two 180 degree turns.

e. A break point at which the first 180 degree turn is started.

f. The direction of turns.

g. Altitude (at least 500 feet above the conventional pattern).

h. A "Roll-out" on final approach not less than 1/4 mile from the landing threshold and not less than 300 feet above the ground.

OVERLYING CENTER− The ARTCC facility that is responsible for arrival/departure operations at a specific terminal.

P

P TIME−
(See PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME.)

P-ACP−
(See PREARRANGED COORDINATION PROCEDURES.)

PAN-PAN− The international radio-telephony urgency signal. When repeated three times, indicates uncertainty or alert followed by the nature of the urgency.
(See MAYDAY.)
(Refer to AIM.)

PAR−
(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PAR [ICAO]−
(See ICAO Term PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PARALLEL ILS APPROACHES− Approaches to parallel runways by IFR aircraft which, when established inbound toward the airport on the adjacent final approach courses, are radar-separated by at least 2 miles.
(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES.)

PARALLEL OFFSET ROUTE− A parallel track to the left or right of the designated or established airway/route. Normally associated with Area Navigation (RNAV) operations.
(See AREA NAVIGATION.)

PARALLEL RUNWAYS− Two or more runways at the same airport whose centerlines are parallel. In addition to runway number, parallel runways are designated as L (left) and R (right) or, if three parallel runways exist, L (left), C (center), and R (right).

PBCT−
(See PROPOSED BOUNDARY CROSSING TIME.)

PBN−
(See ICAO Term PERFORMANCE−BASED NAVIGATION.)

PDC−
(See PRE−DEPARTURE CLEARANCE.)

PDRR−
(See PRE−DEPARTURE REROUTE.)

PERFORMANCE−BASED NAVIGATION (PBN) [ICAO]− Area navigation based on performance requirements for aircraft operating along an ATS route, on an instrument approach procedure or in a designated airspace.

Note: Performance requirements are expressed in navigation specifications (RNAV specification, RNP specification) in terms of accuracy, integrity, continuity, availability, and functionality needed for the proposed operation in the context of a particular airspace concept.

PERMANENT ECHO− Radar signals reflected from fixed objects on the earth's surface; e.g., buildings, towers, terrain. Permanent echoes are distinguished from "ground clutter" by being definable locations rather than large areas. Under certain conditions they may be used to check radar alignment.

PERTI−
(See PLAN, EXECUTE, REVIEW, TRAIN, IMPROVE.)

PGUI−
(See PLANVIEW GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE.)

PHOTO RECONNAISSANCE− Military activity that requires locating individual photo targets and navigating to the targets at a preplanned angle and altitude. The activity normally requires a lateral route width of 16 NM and altitude range of 1,500 feet to 10,000 feet AGL.

PILOT BRIEFING− A service provided by the FSS to assist pilots in flight planning. Briefing items may include weather information, NOTAMS, military activities, flow control information, and other items as requested.
(Refer to AIM.)

PILOT IN COMMAND− The pilot responsible for the operation and safety of an aircraft during flight time.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

PILOT WEATHER REPORT− A report of meteorological phenomena encountered by aircraft in flight.
(Refer to AIM.)

PILOT'S DISCRETION− When used in conjunction with altitude assignments, means that ATC has offered the pilot the option of starting climb or descent whenever he/she wishes and conducting the climb or descent at any rate he/she wishes. He/she may temporarily level off at any intermediate altitude. However, once he/she has vacated an altitude, he/she may not return to that altitude.

PIREP−
(See PILOT WEATHER REPORT.)

PITCH POINT− A fix/waypoint that serves as a transition point from a departure procedure or the low altitude ground−based navigation structure into the high altitude waypoint system.

PLAN, EXECUTE, REVIEW, TRAIN, IMPROVE (PERTI)− A process that delivers a one−day detailed plan for NAS operations, and a two−day outlook, which sets NAS performance goals for high impact constraints. PLAN: Increase lead time for identifying aviation system constraint planning and goals while utilizing historical NAS performance data and constraints to derive successful and/or improved advance planning strategies. EXECUTE: Set goals and a strategy. The Air Traffic Control System Command Center (ATCSCC), FAA field facilities, and aviation stakeholders execute the strategy and work to achieve the desired/planned outcomes. REVIEW: Utilize post event analysis and lessons learned to define and implement future strategies and operational triggers based on past performance and outcomes, both positive and negative. TRAIN: Develop training that includes rapid and continuous feedback to operational personnel and provides increased data and weather knowledge and tools for analytical usage and planning. IMPROVE: Implement better information sharing processes, technologies, and procedures that improve the skills and technology needed to implement operational insights and improvements.

PLANS DISPLAY− A display available in EDST that provides detailed flight plan and predicted conflict information in textual format for requested Current Plans and all Trial Plans.
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL)

PLANVIEW GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE (PGUI)− A TBFM display that provides a spatial display of individual aircraft track information.

POFZ−
(See PRECISION OBSTACLE FREE ZONE.)

POINT OUT−
(See RADAR POINT OUT.)

POINT−TO−POINT (PTP)− A level of NRR service for aircraft that is based on traditional waypoints in their FMSs or RNAV equipage.

POLAR TRACK STRUCTURE− A system of organized routes between Iceland and Alaska which overlie Canadian MNPS Airspace.

POSITION REPORT− A report over a known location as transmitted by an aircraft to ATC.
(Refer to AIM.)

POSITION SYMBOL− A computer-generated indication shown on a radar display to indicate the mode of tracking.

POSITIVE CONTROL− The separation of all air traffic within designated airspace by air traffic control.

PRACTICE INSTRUMENT APPROACH− An instrument approach procedure conducted by a VFR or an IFR aircraft for the purpose of pilot training or proficiency demonstrations.

PRE−DEPARTURE CLEARANCE− An application with the Terminal Data Link System (TDLS) that provides clearance information to subscribers, through a service provider, in text to the cockpit or gate printer.

PRE−DEPARTURE REROUTE (PDRR)− A capability within the Traffic Flow Management System that enables ATC to quickly amend and execute revised departure clearances that mitigate en route constraints or balance en route traffic flows.

PREARRANGED COORDINATION− A standardized procedure which permits an air traffic controller to enter the airspace assigned to another air traffic controller without verbal coordination. The procedures are defined in a facility directive which ensures approved separation between aircraft.

PREARRANGED COORDINATION PROCEDURES− A facility's standardized procedure that describes the process by which one controller shall allow an aircraft to penetrate or transit another controller's airspace in a manner that assures approved separation without individual coordination for each aircraft.

PRECIPITATION− Any or all forms of water particles (rain, sleet, hail, or snow) that fall from the atmosphere and reach the surface.

PRECIPITATION RADAR WEATHER DESCRIPTIONS− Existing radar systems cannot detect turbulence. However, there is a direct correlation between the degree of turbulence and other weather features associated with thunderstorms and the weather radar precipitation intensity. Controllers will issue (where capable) precipitation intensity as observed by radar when using weather and radar processor (WARP) or NAS ground−based digital radars with weather capabilities. When precipitation intensity information is not available, the intensity will be described as UNKNOWN. When intensity levels can be determined, they shall be described as:

a. LIGHT (< 26 dBZ)

b. MODERATE (26 to 40 dBZ)

c. HEAVY (> 40 to 50 dBZ)

d. EXTREME (> 50 dBZ)

(Refer to AC 00−45, Aviation Weather Services.)

PRECISION APPROACH−

(See PRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

PRECISION APPROACH PROCEDURE− A standard instrument approach procedure in which an electronic glideslope or other type of glidepath is provided; e.g., ILS, PAR, and GLS.

(See INSTRUMENT LANDING SYSTEM.)
(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR− Radar equipment in some ATC facilities operated by the FAA and/or the military services at joint-use civil/military locations and separate military installations to detect and display azimuth, elevation, and range of aircraft on the final approach course to a runway. This equipment may be used to monitor certain non−radar approaches, but is primarily used to conduct a precision instrument approach (PAR) wherein the controller issues guidance instructions to the pilot based on the aircraft's position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), the glidepath (elevation), and the distance (range) from the touchdown point on the runway as displayed on the radar scope.

Note: The abbreviation "PAR" is also used to denote preferential arrival routes in ARTCC computers.

(See GLIDEPATH.)
(See PAR.)
(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)
(See ICAO term PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

PRECISION APPROACH RADAR [ICAO]− Primary radar equipment used to determine the position of an aircraft during final approach, in terms of lateral and vertical deviations relative to a nominal approach path, and in range relative to touchdown.

Note: Precision approach radars are designed to enable pilots of aircraft to be given guidance by radio communication during the final stages of the approach to land.

PRECISION OBSTACLE FREE ZONE (POFZ)− An 800 foot wide by 200 foot long area centered on the runway centerline adjacent to the threshold designed to protect aircraft flying precision approaches from ground vehicles and other aircraft when ceiling is less than 250 feet or visibility is less than 3/4 statute mile (or runway visual range below 4,000 feet.)

PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR (PRM) SYSTEM− Provides air traffic controllers monitoring the NTZ during simultaneous close parallel PRM approaches with precision, high update rate secondary surveillance data. The high update rate surveillance sensor component of the PRM system is only required for specific runway or approach course separation. The high resolution color monitoring display, Final Monitor Aid (FMA) of the PRM system, or other FMA with the same capability, presents NTZ surveillance track data to controllers along with detailed maps depicting approaches and no transgression zone and is required for all simultaneous close parallel PRM NTZ monitoring operations.

(Refer to AIM)

PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM (PWS)− A self−contained system used on board some aircraft to alert the flight crew to the presence of a potential wind shear. PWS systems typically monitor 3 miles ahead and 25 degrees left and right of the aircraft's heading at or below 1200' AGL. Departing flights may receive a wind shear alert after they start the takeoff roll and may elect to abort the takeoff. Aircraft on approach receiving an alert may elect to go around or perform a wind shear escape maneuver.

PREFERENTIAL ROUTES− Preferential routes (PDRs, PARs, and PDARs) are adapted in ARTCC computers to accomplish inter/intrafacility controller coordination and to assure that flight data is posted at the proper control positions. Locations having a need for these specific inbound and outbound routes normally publish such routes in local facility bulletins, and their use by pilots minimizes flight plan route amendments. When the workload or traffic situation permits, controllers normally provide radar vectors or assign requested routes to minimize circuitous routing. Preferential routes are usually confined to one ARTCC's area and are referred to by the following names or acronyms:

a. Preferential Departure Route (PDR). A specific departure route from an airport or terminal area to an en route point where there is no further need for flow control. It may be included in an Instrument Departure Procedure (DP) or a Preferred IFR Route.

b. Preferential Arrival Route (PAR). A specific arrival route from an appropriate en route point to an airport or terminal area. It may be included in a Standard Terminal Arrival (STAR) or a Preferred IFR Route. The abbreviation "PAR" is used primarily within the ARTCC and should not be confused with the abbreviation for Precision Approach Radar.

c. Preferential Departure and Arrival Route (PDAR). A route between two terminals which are within or immediately adjacent to one ARTCC's area. PDARs are not synonymous with Preferred IFR Routes but may be listed as such as they do accomplish essentially the same purpose.

(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)

PREFERRED IFR ROUTES− Routes established between busier airports to increase system efficiency and capacity. They normally extend through one or more ARTCC areas and are designed to achieve balanced traffic flows among high density terminals. IFR clearances are issued on the basis of these routes except when severe weather avoidance procedures or other factors dictate otherwise. Preferred IFR Routes are listed in the Chart Supplement U.S. If a flight is planned to or from an area having such routes but the departure or arrival point is not listed in the Chart Supplement U.S., pilots may use that part of a Preferred IFR Route which is appropriate for the departure or arrival point that is listed. Preferred IFR Routes are correlated with DPs and STARs and may be defined by airways, jet routes, direct routes between NAVAIDs, Waypoints, NAVAID radials/ DME, or any combinations thereof.

(See CENTER'S AREA.)
(See INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)
(See PREFERENTIAL ROUTES.)
(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)
(Refer to CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

PRE-FLIGHT PILOT BRIEFING−
(See PILOT BRIEFING.)

PREVAILING VISIBILITY−
(See VISIBILITY.)

PRIMARY RADAR TARGET− An analog or digital target, exclusive of a secondary radar target, presented on a radar display.

PRM−
(See AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV) GLOBAL POSITIONING SYSTEM (GPS) PRECISION RUNWAY MONITORING (PRM) APPROACH.)
(See PRM APPROACH.)
(See PRECISION RUNWAY MONITOR SYSTEM.)

PRM APPROACH− An instrument approach procedure titled ILS PRM, RNAV PRM, LDA PRM, or GLS PRM conducted to parallel runways separated by less than 4,300 feet and at least 3,000 feet where independent closely spaced approaches are permitted. Use of an enhanced display with alerting, a No Transgression Zone (NTZ), secondary monitor frequency, pilot PRM training, and publication of an Attention All Users Page are required for all PRM approaches. Depending on the runway spacing, the approach courses may be parallel or one approach course must be offset. PRM procedures are also used to conduct Simultaneous Offset Instrument Approach (SOIA) operations. In SOIA, one straight−in ILS PRM, RNAV PRM, GLS PRM, and one offset LDA PRM, RNAV PRM or GLS PRM approach are utilized. PRM procedures are terminated and a visual segment begins at the offset approach missed approach point where the minimum distance between the approach courses is

3000 feet. Runway spacing can be as close as 750 feet.

(Refer to AIM.)

PROCEDURAL CONTROL [ICAO]– Term used to indicate that information derived from an ATS surveillance system is not required for the provision of air traffic control service.

PROCEDURAL SEPARATION [ICAO]– The separation used when providing procedural control.

PROCEDURE TURN– The maneuver prescribed when it is necessary to reverse direction to establish an aircraft on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. The outbound course, direction of turn, distance within which the turn must be completed, and minimum altitude are specified in the procedure. However, unless otherwise restricted, the point at which the turn may be commenced and the type and rate of turn are left to the discretion of the pilot.

(See ICAO term PROCEDURE TURN.)

PROCEDURE TURN [ICAO]– A maneuver in which a turn is made away from a designated track followed by a turn in the opposite direction to permit the aircraft to intercept and proceed along the reciprocal of the designated track.

Note 1: Procedure turns are designated "left" or "right" according to the direction of the initial turn.

Note 2: Procedure turns may be designated as being made either in level flight or while descending, according to the circumstances of each individual approach procedure.

PROCEDURE TURN INBOUND– That point of a procedure turn maneuver where course reversal has been completed and an aircraft is established inbound on the intermediate approach segment or final approach course. A report of "procedure turn inbound" is normally used by ATC as a position report for separation purposes.

(See FINAL APPROACH COURSE.)
(See PROCEDURE TURN.)
(See SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

PROFILE DESCENT– An uninterrupted descent (except where level flight is required for speed adjustment; e.g., 250 knots at 10,000 feet MSL) from cruising altitude/level to interception of a glideslope or to a minimum altitude specified for the initial or intermediate approach segment of a nonprecision instrument approach. The profile descent normally terminates at the approach gate or where the glideslope or other appropriate minimum altitude is intercepted.

PROGRESS REPORT–
(See POSITION REPORT.)

PROGRESSIVE TAXI– Precise taxi instructions given to a pilot unfamiliar with the airport or issued in stages as the aircraft proceeds along the taxi route.

PROHIBITED AREA–
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)
(See ICAO term PROHIBITED AREA.)

PROHIBITED AREA [ICAO]– An airspace of defined dimensions, above the land areas or territorial waters of a State, within which the flight of aircraft is prohibited.

PROMINENT OBSTACLE– An obstacle that meets one or more of the following conditions:

a. An obstacle which stands out beyond the adjacent surface of surrounding terrain and immediately projects a noticeable hazard to aircraft in flight.

b. An obstacle, not characterized as low and close in, whose height is no less than 300 feet above the departure end of takeoff runway (DER) elevation, is within 10 NM from the DER, and that penetrates that airport/heliport's diverse departure obstacle clearance surface (OCS).

c. An obstacle beyond 10 NM from an airport/heliport that requires an obstacle departure procedure (ODP) to ensure obstacle avoidance.

(See OBSTACLE.)
(See OBSTRUCTION.)

PROPELLER (PROP) WASH (PROP BLAST)– The disturbed mass of air generated by the motion of a propeller.

PROPOSED BOUNDARY CROSSING TIME– Each center has a PBCT parameter for each internal airport. Proposed internal flight plans are transmitted to the adjacent center if the flight time along the proposed route from the departure airport to the center boundary is less than or equal to the value of PBCT or if airport adaptation specifies transmission regardless of PBCT.

PROPOSED DEPARTURE TIME– The time that the aircraft expects to become airborne.

PROTECTED AIRSPACE− The airspace on either side of an oceanic route/track that is equal to one-half the lateral separation minimum except where reduction of protected airspace has been authorized.

PROTECTED SEGMENT- The protected segment is a segment on the amended TFM route that is to be inhibited from automatic adapted route alteration by ERAM.

PT−
(See PROCEDURE TURN.)

PTP−
(See POINT−TO−POINT.)

PTS−
(See POLAR TRACK STRUCTURE.)

PUBLISHED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE VISUAL SEGMENT− A segment on an IAP chart annotated as "Fly Visual to Airport" or "Fly Visual." A dashed arrow will indicate the visual flight path on the profile and plan view with an associated note on the approximate heading and distance. The visual segment should be flown as a dead reckoning course while maintaining visual conditions.

PUBLISHED ROUTE− A route for which an IFR altitude has been established and published; e.g., Federal Airways, Jet Routes, Area Navigation Routes, Specified Direct Routes.

PWS−
(See PREDICTIVE WIND SHEAR ALERT SYSTEM.)

R

RAD–
(See ROUTE AMENDMENT DIALOG.)

RADAR– A device that provides information on range, azimuth, and/or elevation of objects by measuring the time interval between transmission and reception of directional radio pulses and correlating the angular orientation of the radiated antenna beam or beams in azimuth and/or elevation.

a. Primary Radar– A radar system in which a minute portion of a radio pulse transmitted from a site is reflected by an object and then received back at that site for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.

b. Secondary Radar/Radar Beacon (ATCRBS)– A radar system in which the object to be detected is fitted with cooperative equipment in the form of a radio receiver/transmitter (transponder). Radar pulses transmitted from the searching transmitter/receiver (interrogator) site are received in the cooperative equipment and used to trigger a distinctive transmission from the transponder. This reply transmission, rather than a reflected signal, is then received back at the transmitter/receiver site for processing and display at an air traffic control facility.
(See COOPERATIVE SURVEILLANCE.)
(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See NON–COOPERATIVE SURVEILLANCE.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)
(See ICAO term RADAR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR [ICAO]– A radio detection device which provides information on range, azimuth and/or elevation of objects.

a. Primary Radar– Radar system which uses reflected radio signals.

b. Secondary Radar– Radar system wherein a radio signal transmitted from a radar station initiates the transmission of a radio signal from another station.

RADAR ADVISORY– The provision of advice and information based on radar observations.
(See ADVISORY SERVICE.)

RADAR ALTIMETER–
(See RADIO ALTIMETER.)

RADAR APPROACH– An instrument approach procedure which utilizes Precision Approach Radar (PAR) or Airport Surveillance Radar (ASR).
(See AIRPORT SURVEILLANCE RADAR.)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)
(See PRECISION APPROACH RADAR.)
(See SURVEILLANCE APPROACH.)
(See ICAO term RADAR APPROACH.)
(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR APPROACH [ICAO]– An approach, executed by an aircraft, under the direction of a radar controller.

RADAR APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY– A terminal ATC facility that uses radar and nonradar capabilities to provide approach control services to aircraft arriving, departing, or transiting airspace controlled by the facility.
(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)

a. Provides radar ATC services to aircraft operating in the vicinity of one or more civil and/or military airports in a terminal area. The facility may provide services of a ground controlled approach (GCA); i.e., ASR and PAR approaches. A radar approach control facility may be operated by FAA, USAF, US Army, USN, USMC, or jointly by FAA and a military service. Specific facility nomenclatures are used for administrative purposes only and are related to the physical location of the facility and the operating service generally as follows:

1. Army Radar Approach Control (ARAC) (US Army).

2. Radar Air Traffic Control Facility (RATCF) (USN/FAA and USMC/FAA).

3. Radar Approach Control (RAPCON) (USAF/FAA, USN/FAA, and USMC/FAA).

4. Terminal Radar Approach Control (TRACON) (FAA).

5. Airport Traffic Control Tower (ATCT) (FAA). (Only those towers delegated approach control authority.)

RADAR ARRIVAL− An aircraft arriving at an airport served by a radar facility and in radar contact with the facility.

(See NONRADAR.)

RADAR BEACON−

(See RADAR.)

RADAR CLUTTER [ICAO]− The visual indication on a radar display of unwanted signals.

RADAR CONTACT−

a. Used by ATC to inform an aircraft that it is identified using an approved ATC surveillance source on an air traffic controller's display and that radar flight following will be provided until radar service is terminated. Radar service may also be provided within the limits of necessity and capability. When a pilot is informed of "radar contact," he/she automatically discontinues reporting over compulsory reporting points.

(See ATC SURVEILLANCE SOURCE.)
(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)
(See RADAR FLIGHT FOLLOWING.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)
(See RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED.)
(Refer to AIM.)

b. The term used to inform the controller that the aircraft is identified and approval is granted for the aircraft to enter the receiving controllers airspace.

(See ICAO term RADAR CONTACT.)

RADAR CONTACT [ICAO]− The situation which exists when the radar blip or radar position symbol of a particular aircraft is seen and identified on a radar display.

RADAR CONTACT LOST− Used by ATC to inform a pilot that the surveillance data used to determine the aircraft's position is no longer being received, or is no longer reliable and radar service is no longer being provided. The loss may be attributed to several factors including the aircraft merging with weather or ground clutter, the aircraft operating below radar line of sight coverage, the aircraft entering an area of poor radar return, failure of the aircraft's equipment, or failure of the surveillance equipment.

(See CLUTTER.)
(See RADAR CONTACT.)

RADAR ENVIRONMENT− An area in which radar service may be provided.

(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)
(See RADAR CONTACT.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR FLIGHT FOLLOWING− The observation of the progress of radar−identified aircraft, whose primary navigation is being provided by the pilot, wherein the controller retains and correlates the aircraft identity with the appropriate target or target symbol displayed on the radar scope.

(See RADAR CONTACT.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

RADAR IDENTIFICATION− The process of ascertaining that an observed radar target is the radar return from a particular aircraft.

(See RADAR CONTACT.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR IDENTIFIED AIRCRAFT− An aircraft, the position of which has been correlated with an observed target or symbol on the radar display.

(See RADAR CONTACT.)
(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)

RADAR MONITORING−

(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR NAVIGATIONAL GUIDANCE−

(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR POINT OUT− An action taken by a controller to transfer the radar identification of an aircraft to another controller if the aircraft will or may enter the airspace or protected airspace of another controller and radio communications will not be transferred.

RADAR REQUIRED− A term displayed on charts and approach plates and included in FDC NOTAMs to alert pilots that segments of either an instrument approach procedure or a route are not navigable because of either the absence or unusability of a NAVAID. The pilot can expect to be provided radar navigational guidance while transiting segments labeled with this term.

(See RADAR ROUTE.)
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR ROUTE− A flight path or route over which an aircraft is vectored. Navigational guidance and altitude assignments are provided by ATC.
(See FLIGHT PATH.)
(See ROUTE.)

RADAR SEPARATION−
(See RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR SERVICE− A term which encompasses one or more of the following services based on the use of radar which can be provided by a controller to a pilot of a radar identified aircraft.

a. Radar Monitoring− The radar flight-following of aircraft, whose primary navigation is being performed by the pilot, to observe and note deviations from its authorized flight path, airway, or route. When being applied specifically to radar monitoring of instrument approaches; i.e., with precision approach radar (PAR) or radar monitoring of simultaneous ILS,RNAV and GLS approaches, it includes advice and instructions whenever an aircraft nears or exceeds the prescribed PAR safety limit or simultaneous ILS RNAV and GLS no transgression zone.
(See ADDITIONAL SERVICES.)
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

b. Radar Navigational Guidance− Vectoring aircraft to provide course guidance.

c. Radar Separation− Radar spacing of aircraft in accordance with established minima.
(See ICAO term RADAR SERVICE.)

RADAR SERVICE [ICAO]− Term used to indicate a service provided directly by means of radar.

a. Monitoring− The use of radar for the purpose of providing aircraft with information and advice relative to significant deviations from nominal flight path.

b. Separation− The separation used when aircraft position information is derived from radar sources.

RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED− Used by ATC to inform a pilot that he/she will no longer be provided any of the services that could be received while in radar contact. Radar service is automatically terminated, and the pilot is not advised in the following cases:

a. An aircraft cancels its IFR flight plan, except within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, a TRSA, or where Basic Radar service is provided.

b. An aircraft conducting an instrument, visual, or contact approach has landed or has been instructed to change to advisory frequency.

c. An arriving VFR aircraft, receiving radar service to a tower-controlled airport within Class B airspace, Class C airspace, a TRSA, or where sequencing service is provided, has landed; or to all other airports, is instructed to change to tower or advisory frequency.

d. An aircraft completes a radar approach.

RADAR SURVEILLANCE− The radar observation of a given geographical area for the purpose of performing some radar function.

RADAR TRAFFIC ADVISORIES− Advisories issued to alert pilots to known or observed radar traffic which may affect the intended route of flight of their aircraft.
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE−
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

RADAR VECTORING [ICAO]− Provision of navigational guidance to aircraft in the form of specific headings, based on the use of radar.

RADIAL− A magnetic bearing extending from a VOR/VORTAC/TACAN navigation facility.

RADIO−

a. A device used for communication.

b. Used to refer to a flight service station; e.g., "Seattle Radio" is used to call Seattle FSS.

RADIO ALTIMETER− Aircraft equipment which makes use of the reflection of radio waves from the ground to determine the height of the aircraft above the surface.

RADIO BEACON−
(See NONDIRECTIONAL BEACON.)

RADIO DETECTION AND RANGING−
(See RADAR.)

RADIO MAGNETIC INDICATOR− An aircraft navigational instrument coupled with a gyro compass or similar compass that indicates the direction of a selected NAVAID and indicates bearing with respect to the heading of the aircraft.

RAIS−
(See REMOTE AIRPORT INFORMATION SERVICE.)

RAMP−
(See APRON.)

RANDOM ALTITUDE− An altitude inappropriate for direction of flight and/or not in accordance with FAA Order JO 7110.65, paragraph 4−5−1, VERTICAL SEPARATION MINIMA.

RANDOM ROUTE− Any route not established or charted/published or not otherwise available to all users.

RC−
(See ROAD RECONNAISSANCE.)

RCAG−
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS AIR/GROUND FACILITY.)

RCC−
(See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)

RCO−
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET.)

RCR−
(See RUNWAY CONDITION READING.)

READ BACK− Repeat my message back to me.

RECEIVER AUTONOMOUS INTEGRITY MONITORING (RAIM)− A technique whereby a civil GNSS receiver/processor determines the integrity of the GNSS navigation signals without reference to sensors or non-DoD integrity systems other than the receiver itself. This determination is achieved by a consistency check among redundant pseudorange measurements.

RECEIVING CONTROLLER− A controller/facility receiving control of an aircraft from another controller/facility.

RECEIVING FACILITY−
(See RECEIVING CONTROLLER.)

RECONFORMANCE− The automated process of bringing an aircraft's Current Plan Trajectory into conformance with its track.

REDUCE SPEED TO (SPEED)−
(See SPEED ADJUSTMENT.)

REFINED HAZARD AREA (RHA)− Used by ATC. Airspace that is defined and distributed after a failure of a launch or reentry operation to provide a more concise depiction of the hazard location than a Contingency Hazard Area.
(See AIRCRAFT HAZARD AREA.)
(See CONTINGENCY HAZARD AREA.)
(See TRANSITIONAL HAZARD AREA.)

REIL−
(See RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS.)

RELEASE TIME− A departure time restriction issued to a pilot by ATC (either directly or through an authorized relay) when necessary to separate a departing aircraft from other traffic.
(See ICAO term RELEASE TIME.)

RELEASE TIME [ICAO]− Time prior to which an aircraft should be given further clearance or prior to which it should not proceed in case of radio failure.

REMOTE AIRPORT INFORMATION SERVICE (RAIS)− A temporary service provided by facilities, which are not located on the landing airport, but have communication capability and automated weather reporting available to the pilot at the landing airport.

REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS AIR/GROUND FACILITY− An unmanned VHF/UHF transmitter/receiver facility which is used to expand ARTCC air/ground communications coverage and to facilitate direct contact between pilots and controllers. RCAG facilities are sometimes not equipped with emergency frequencies 121.5 MHz and 243.0 MHz.
(Refer to AIM.)

REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET (RCO)− An unmanned communications facility remotely controlled by air traffic personnel. RCOs serve FSSs. Remote Transmitter/Receivers (RTR) serve terminal ATC facilities. An RCO or RTR may be UHF or VHF and will extend the communication range of the air traffic facility. There are several classes of RCOs and RTRs. The class is determined by the number of transmitters or receivers. Classes A through G are used primarily for air/ground purposes. RCO and RTR class O facilities are nonprotected outlets subject to undetected and prolonged outages. RCO (O's) and RTR (O's) were established for the express purpose of providing ground-to-ground communications between air traffic control specialists and pilots located at a satellite airport for delivering en route clearances, issuing departure authorizations, and acknowledging instrument flight rules cancellations or departure/landing times. As a secondary function, they may be used for advisory purposes whenever the aircraft is below the coverage of the primary air/ground frequency.

REMOTE PILOT IN COMMAND (RPIC)− The RPIC is directly responsible for and is the final authority as to the operation of the unmanned aircraft system.

REMOTE TRANSMITTER/RECEIVER (RTR)−
(See REMOTE COMMUNICATIONS OUTLET.)

REPORT− Used to instruct pilots to advise ATC of specified information; e.g., "Report passing Hamilton VOR."

REPORTING POINT− A geographical location in relation to which the position of an aircraft is reported.
(See COMPULSORY REPORTING POINTS.)
(See ICAO term REPORTING POINT.)
(Refer to AIM.)

REPORTING POINT [ICAO]− A specified geographical location in relation to which the position of an aircraft can be reported.

REQUEST FULL ROUTE CLEARANCE− Used by pilots to request that the entire route of flight be read verbatim in an ATC clearance. Such request should be made to preclude receiving an ATC clearance based on the original filed flight plan when a filed IFR flight plan has been revised by the pilot, company, or operations prior to departure.

REQUIRED NAVIGATION PERFORMANCE (RNP)– A statement of the navigational performance necessary for operation within a defined airspace. The following terms are commonly associated with RNP:

a. Required Navigation Performance Level or Type (RNP-X). A value, in nautical miles (NM), from the intended horizontal position within which an aircraft would be at least 95-percent of the total flying time.

b. Advanced − Required Navigation Performance (A−RNP). A navigation specification based on RNP that requires advanced functions such as scalable RNP, radius−to−fix (RF) legs, and tactical parallel offsets. This sophisticated Navigation Specification (NavSpec) is designated by the abbreviation "A−RNP".

c. Required Navigation Performance (RNP) Airspace. A generic term designating airspace, route(s), leg(s), operation(s), or procedure(s) where minimum required navigational performance (RNP) have been established.

d. Actual Navigation Performance (ANP). A measure of the current estimated navigational performance. Also referred to as Estimated Position Error (EPE).

e. Estimated Position Error (EPE). A measure of the current estimated navigational performance. Also referred to as Actual Navigation Performance (ANP).

f. Lateral Navigation (LNAV). A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides lateral guidance to a profile or path.

g. Vertical Navigation (VNAV). A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides vertical guidance to a profile or path.

REROUTE IMPACT ASSESSMENT (RRIA)− A capability within the Traffic Flow Management System that is used to define and evaluate a potential reroute prior to implementation, with or without miles−in−trail (MIT) restrictions. RRIA functions estimate the impact on demand (e.g., sector loads) and performance (e.g., flight delay). Using RRIA, traffic management personnel can determine whether the reroute will sufficiently reduce demand in the Flow Constraint Area and not create excessive "spill over" demand in the adjacent airspace on a specific route segment or point of interest (POI).

RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER (RCC)− A search and rescue (SAR) facility equipped and manned to coordinate and control SAR operations in an area designated by the SAR plan. The U.S. Coast Guard and the U.S. Air Force have responsibility for the operation of RCCs.
(See ICAO term RESCUE CO-ORDINATION CENTRE.)

RESCUE CO-ORDINATION CENTRE [ICAO]− A unit responsible for promoting efficient organization of search and rescue service and for coordinating the conduct of search and rescue operations within a search and rescue region.

RESOLUTION ADVISORY− A display indication given to the pilot by the Traffic alert and Collision Avoidance System (TCAS II) recommending a maneuver to increase vertical separation relative to an intruding aircraft. Positive, negative, and vertical speed limit (VSL) advisories constitute the resolution advisories. A resolution advisory is also classified as corrective or preventive.

RESTRICTED AREA−
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)
(See ICAO term RESTRICTED AREA.)

RESTRICTED AREA [ICAO]− An airspace of defined dimensions, above the land areas or territorial waters of a State, within which the flight of aircraft is restricted in accordance with certain specified conditions.

RESUME NORMAL SPEED− Used by ATC to advise a pilot to resume an aircraft's normal operating speed. It is issued to terminate a speed adjustment where no published speed restrictions apply. It does not delete speed restrictions in published procedures of upcoming segments of flight. This does not relieve the pilot of those speed restrictions that are applicable to 14 CFR Section 91.117.

RESUME OWN NAVIGATION− Used by ATC to advise a pilot to resume his/her own navigational responsibility. It is issued after completion of a radar vector or when radar contact is lost while the aircraft is being radar vectored.
(See RADAR CONTACT LOST.)
(See RADAR SERVICE TERMINATED.)

RESUME PUBLISHED SPEED− Used by ATC to advise a pilot to resume published speed restrictions that are applicable to a SID, STAR, or other instrument procedure. It is issued to terminate a speed adjustment where speed restrictions are published on a charted procedure.

RHA−
(See REFINED HAZARD AREA.)

RMI−
(See RADIO MAGNETIC INDICATOR.)

RNAV−
(See AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV).)

RNAV APPROACH− An instrument approach procedure which relies on aircraft area navigation equipment for navigational guidance.
(See AREA NAVIGATION (RNAV).)
(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

ROAD RECONNAISSANCE (RC)− Military activity requiring navigation along roads, railroads, and rivers. Reconnaissance route/route segments are seldom along a straight line and normally require a lateral route width of 10 NM to 30 NM and an altitude range of 500 feet to 10,000 feet AGL.

ROGER− I have received all of your last transmission. It should not be used to answer a question requiring a yes or a no answer.
(See AFFIRMATIVE.)
(See NEGATIVE.)

ROLLOUT RVR−
(See VISIBILITY.)

ROTOR WASH− A phenomenon resulting from the vertical down wash of air generated by the main rotor(s) of a helicopter.

ROUND−ROBIN FLIGHT PLAN− A single flight plan filed from the departure airport to an intermediary destination(s) and then returning to the original departure airport.

ROUTE− A defined path, consisting of one or more courses in a horizontal plane, which aircraft traverse over the surface of the earth.
(See AIRWAY.)
(See JET ROUTE.)
(See PUBLISHED ROUTE.)
(See UNPUBLISHED ROUTE.)

ROUTE ACTION NOTIFICATION− EDST notification that a PAR/PDR/PDAR has been applied to the flight plan.
(See ATC PREFERRED ROUTE NOTIFICATION.)
(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

ROUTE AMENDMENT DIALOG (RAD)− A capability within the Traffic Flow Management System that allows traffic management personnel to submit or edit a route amendment for one or more flights.

ROUTE SEGMENT− As used in Air Traffic Control, a part of a route that can be defined by two navigational fixes, two NAVAIDs, or a fix and a NAVAID.
(See FIX.)
(See ROUTE.)
(See ICAO term ROUTE SEGMENT.)

ROUTE SEGMENT [ICAO]− A portion of a route to be flown, as defined by two consecutive significant points specified in a flight plan.

RPIC−
(See REMOTE PILOT IN COMMAND.)

RRIA−
(See REROUTE IMPACT ASSESSMENT.)

RSA−
(See RUNWAY SAFETY AREA.)

RTR−
(See REMOTE TRANSMITTER/RECEIVER.)

RUNWAY− A defined rectangular area on a land airport prepared for the landing and takeoff run of aircraft along its length. Runways are normally numbered in relation to their magnetic direction rounded off to the nearest 10 degrees; e.g., Runway 1, Runway 25.
(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(See ICAO term RUNWAY.)

RUNWAY [ICAO]− A defined rectangular area on a land aerodrome prepared for the landing and takeoff of aircraft.

RUNWAY CENTERLINE LIGHTING−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY CONDITION CODES (RwyCC)− Numerical readings, provided by airport operators, that indicate runway surface contamination (for example, slush, ice, rain, etc.). These values range from "1" (poor) to "6" (dry) and must be included on the ATIS when the reportable condition is less than 6 in any one or more of the three runway zones (touchdown, midpoint, rollout).

RUNWAY CONDITION READING− Numerical decelerometer readings relayed by air traffic controllers at USAF and certain civil bases for use by the pilot in determining runway braking action. These readings are routinely relayed only to USAF and Air National Guard Aircraft.
(See BRAKING ACTION.)

RUNWAY CONDITION REPORT (RwyCR)− A data collection worksheet used by airport operators that correlates the runway percentage of coverage along with the depth and type of contaminant for the purpose of creating a FICON NOTAM.
(See RUNWAY CONDITION CODES.)

RUNWAY END IDENTIFIER LIGHTS (REIL)−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY ENTRANCE LIGHTS (REL)−An array of red lights which include the first light at the hold line followed by a series of evenly spaced lights to the runway edge aligned with the taxiway centerline, and one additional light at the runway centerline in line with the last two lights before the runway edge.

RUNWAY GRADIENT− The average slope, measured in percent, between two ends or points on a runway. Runway gradient is depicted on Government aerodrome sketches when total runway gradient exceeds 0.3%.

RUNWAY HEADING− The magnetic direction that corresponds with the runway centerline extended, not the painted runway number. When cleared to "fly or maintain runway heading," pilots are expected to fly or maintain the heading that corresponds with the extended centerline of the departure runway. Drift correction shall not be applied; e.g., Runway 4, actual magnetic heading of the runway centerline 044, fly 044.

RUNWAY IN USE/ACTIVE RUNWAY/DUTY RUNWAY− Any runway or runways currently being used for takeoff or landing. When multiple runways are used, they are all considered active runways. In the metering sense, a selectable adapted item which specifies the landing runway configuration or direction of traffic flow. The adapted optimum flight plan from each transition fix to the vertex is determined by the runway configuration for arrival metering processing purposes.

RUNWAY LIGHTS−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

RUNWAY MARKINGS−
(See AIRPORT MARKING AIDS.)

RUNWAY OVERRUN− In military aviation exclusively, a stabilized or paved area beyond the end of a runway, of the same width as the runway plus shoulders, centered on the extended runway centerline.

RUNWAY PROFILE DESCENT− An instrument flight rules (IFR) air traffic control arrival procedure to a runway published for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form and may be associated with a STAR. Runway Profile Descents provide routing and may depict crossing altitudes, speed restrictions, and headings to be flown from the en route structure to the point where the pilot will receive clearance for and execute an instrument approach procedure. A Runway Profile Descent may apply to more than one runway if so stated on the chart.
(Refer to AIM.)

RUNWAY SAFETY AREA− A defined surface surrounding the runway prepared, or suitable, for reducing the risk of damage to airplanes in the event of an undershoot, overshoot, or excursion from the runway. The dimensions of the RSA vary and can be determined by using the criteria contained within AC 150/5300-13, Airport Design, Chapter 3. Figure 3−1 in AC 150/5300-13 depicts the RSA. The design standards dictate that the RSA shall be:

a. Cleared, graded, and have no potentially hazardous ruts, humps, depressions, or other surface variations;

b. Drained by grading or storm sewers to prevent water accumulation;

c. Capable, under dry conditions, of supporting snow removal equipment, aircraft rescue and firefighting equipment, and the occasional passage of aircraft without causing structural damage to the aircraft; and,

d. Free of objects, except for objects that need to be located in the runway safety area because of their function. These objects shall be constructed on low impact resistant supports (frangible mounted structures) to the lowest practical height with the frangible point no higher than 3 inches above grade.

(Refer to AC 150/5300-13, Airport Design, Chapter 3.)

RUNWAY STATUS LIGHTS (RWSL) SYSTEM− The RWSL is a system of runway and taxiway lighting to provide pilots increased situational awareness by illuminating runway entry lights (REL) when the runway is unsafe for entry or crossing, and take-off hold lights (THL) when the runway is unsafe for departure.

RUNWAY TRANSITION−
(See SEGMENTS OF A SID/STAR)

RUNWAY TRANSITION WAYPOINT−
(See SEGMENTS OF A SID/STAR.)

RUNWAY USE PROGRAM− A noise abatement runway selection plan designed to enhance noise abatement efforts with regard to airport communities for arriving and departing aircraft. These plans are developed into runway use programs and apply to all turbojet aircraft 12,500 pounds or heavier; turbojet aircraft less than 12,500 pounds are included only if the airport proprietor determines that the aircraft creates a noise problem. Runway use programs are coordinated with FAA offices, and safety criteria used in these programs are developed by the Office of Flight Operations. Runway use programs are administered by the Air Traffic Service as "Formal" or "Informal" programs.

a. Formal Runway Use Program− An approved noise abatement program which is defined and acknowledged in a Letter of Understanding between Flight Operations, Air Traffic Service, the airport proprietor, and the users. Once established, participation in the program is mandatory for aircraft operators and pilots as provided for in 14 CFR Section 91.129.

b. Informal Runway Use Program− An approved noise abatement program which does not require a Letter of Understanding, and participation in the program is voluntary for aircraft operators/pilots.

RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE (RVR)−
(See VISIBILITY.)

RwyCC−
(See RUNWAY CONDITION CODES.)

RwyCR−
(See RUNWAY CONDITION REPORT.)

S

SAA−
(See SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE.)

SAFETY ALERT− A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain, obstructions, or other aircraft. The controller may discontinue the issuance of further alerts if the pilot advises he/she is taking action to correct the situation or has the other aircraft in sight.

a. Terrain/Obstruction Alert− A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware the aircraft is at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places the aircraft in unsafe proximity to terrain/obstructions; e.g., "Low Altitude Alert, check your altitude immediately."

b. Aircraft Conflict Alert− A safety alert issued by ATC to aircraft under their control if ATC is aware of an aircraft that is not under their control at an altitude which, in the controller's judgment, places both aircraft in unsafe proximity to each other. With the alert, ATC will offer the pilot an alternate course of action when feasible; e.g., "Traffic Alert, advise you turn right heading zero niner zero or climb to eight thousand immediately."

Note: The issuance of a safety alert is contingent upon the capability of the controller to have an awareness of an unsafe condition. The course of action provided will be predicated on other traffic under ATC control. Once the alert is issued, it is solely the pilot's prerogative to determine what course of action, if any, he/she will take.

SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM− A software enhancement to ASDE−3, ASDE−X, and ASSC, that predicts the path of aircraft landing and/or departing, and/or vehicular movements on runways. Visual and aural alarms are activated when the safety logic projects a potential collision. The Airport Movement Area Safety System (AMASS) is a safety logic system enhancement to the ASDE−3. The Safety Logic System for ASDE−X and ASSC is an integral part of the software program.

SAFETY LOGIC SYSTEM ALERTS−

a. ALERT− An actual situation involving two real safety logic tracks (aircraft/aircraft, aircraft/vehicle, or aircraft/other tangible object) that safety logic has predicted will result in an imminent collision, based upon the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

b. FALSE ALERT−

1. Alerts generated by one or more false surface−radar targets that the system has interpreted as real tracks and placed into safety logic.

2. Alerts in which the safety logic software did not perform correctly, based upon the design specifications and the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

3. The alert is generated by surface radar targets caused by moderate or greater precipitation.

c. NUISANCE ALERT− An alert in which one or more of the following is true:

1. The alert is generated by a known situation that is not considered an unsafe operation, such as LAHSO or other approved operations.

2. The alert is generated by inaccurate secondary radar data received by the Safety Logic System.

3. One or more of the aircraft involved in the alert is not intending to use a runway (for example, helicopter, pipeline patrol, non−Mode C overflight, etc.).

d. VALID NON−ALERT− A situation in which the safety logic software correctly determines that an alert is not required, based upon the design specifications and the current set of Safety Logic parameters.

e. INVALID NON−ALERT− A situation in which the safety logic software did not issue an alert when an alert was required, based upon the design specifications.

SAIL BACK− A maneuver during high wind conditions (usually with power off) where float plane movement is controlled by water rudders/opening and closing cabin doors.

SAME DIRECTION AIRCRAFT− Aircraft are operating in the same direction when:

a. They are following the same track in the same direction; or

b. Their tracks are parallel and the aircraft are flying in the same direction; or

c. Their tracks intersect at an angle of less than 45 degrees.

SAR−
(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SATELLITE−BASED AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (SBAS) − A wide coverage augmentation system in which the user receives augmentation information from a satellite−based transmitter.
(See WIDE−AREA AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (WAAS.)

SAW−
(See AVIATION WATCH NOTIFICATION MESSAGE.)

SAY AGAIN− Used to request a repeat of the last transmission. Usually specifies transmission or portion thereof not understood or received; e.g., "Say again all after ABRAM VOR."

SAY ALTITUDE− Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's specific altitude/flight level. When the aircraft is climbing or descending, the pilot should state the indicated altitude rounded to the nearest 100 feet.

SAY HEADING− Used by ATC to request an aircraft heading. The pilot should state the actual heading of the aircraft.

SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL (STA)− A STA is the desired time that an aircraft should cross a certain point (landing or metering fix). It takes other traffic and airspace configuration into account. A STA time shows the results of the TBFM scheduler that has calculated an arrival time according to parameters such as optimized spacing, aircraft performance, and weather.

SDF−
(See SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY.)

SEA LANE− A designated portion of water outlined by visual surface markers for and intended to be used by aircraft designed to operate on water.

SEARCH AND RESCUE− A service which seeks missing aircraft and assists those found to be in need of assistance. It is a cooperative effort using the facilities and services of available Federal, state and local agencies. The U.S. Coast Guard is responsible for coordination of search and rescue for the Maritime Region, and the U.S. Air Force is responsible for search and rescue for the Inland Region. Information pertinent to search and rescue should be passed through any air traffic facility or be transmitted directly to the Rescue Coordination Center by telephone.
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)
(See RESCUE COORDINATION CENTER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SEARCH AND RESCUE FACILITY− A facility responsible for maintaining and operating a search and rescue (SAR) service to render aid to persons and property in distress. It is any SAR unit, station, NET, or other operational activity which can be usefully employed during an SAR Mission; e.g., a Civil Air Patrol Wing, or a Coast Guard Station.
(See SEARCH AND RESCUE.)

SECNOT−
(See SECURITY NOTICE.)

SECONDARY RADAR TARGET− A target derived from a transponder return presented on a radar display.

SECTIONAL AERONAUTICAL CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL− A parameter number of minutes after the meter fix time when arrival aircraft will be deleted from the arrival sector list.

SECURITY NOTICE (SECNOT) − A SECNOT is a request originated by the Air Traffic Security Coordinator (ATSC) for an extensive communications search for aircraft involved, or suspected of being involved, in a security violation, or are considered a security risk. A SECNOT will include the aircraft identification, search area, and expiration time. The search area, as defined by the ATSC, could be a single airport, multiple airports, a radius of an airport or fix, or a route of flight. Once the expiration time has been reached, the SECNOT is considered to be canceled.

SECURITY SERVICES AIRSPACE − Areas established through the regulatory process or by NOTAM, issued by the Administrator under title 14, CFR, sections 99.7, 91.141, and 91.139, which specify that ATC security services are required; i.e., ADIZ or temporary flight rules areas.

SEE AND AVOID− When weather conditions permit, pilots operating IFR or VFR are required to observe and maneuver to avoid other aircraft. Right-of-way rules are contained in 14 CFR Part 91.

SEGMENTED CIRCLE− A system of visual indicators designed to provide traffic pattern information at airports without operating control towers.

(Refer to AIM.)

SEGMENTS OF A SID/STAR−

a. En Route Transition− The segment(s) of a SID/STAR that connect to/from en route flight. Not all SIDs/STARs will contain an en route transition.

b. En Route Transition Waypoint− The NAVAID/fix/waypoint that defines the beginning of the SID/STAR en route transition.

c. Common Route− The segment(s) of a SID/STAR procedure that provides a single route serving an airport/runway or multiple airports/runways. The common route may consist of a single point. Not all conventional SIDs will contain a common route.

d. Runway Transition− The segment(s) of a SID/STAR between the common route/point and the runway(s). Not all SIDs/STARs will contain a runway transition.

e. Runway Transition Waypoint (RTW)− On a STAR, the NAVAID/fix/waypoint that defines the end of the common route or en route transition and the beginning of a runway transition (In the arrival route description found on the STAR chart, the last fix of the common route and the first fix of the runway transition(s)).

SEGMENTS OF AN INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE− An instrument approach procedure may have as many as four separate segments depending on how the approach procedure is structured.

a. Initial Approach− The segment between the initial approach fix and the intermediate fix or the point where the aircraft is established on the intermediate course or final approach course.

(See ICAO term INITIAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

b. Intermediate Approach− The segment between the intermediate fix or point and the final approach fix.

(See ICAO term INTERMEDIATE APPROACH SEGMENT.)

c. Final Approach− The segment between the final approach fix or point and the runway, airport, or missed approach point.

(See ICAO term FINAL APPROACH SEGMENT.)

d. Missed Approach− The segment between the missed approach point or the point of arrival at decision height and the missed approach fix at the prescribed altitude.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 97.)
(See ICAO term MISSED APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SELF−BRIEFING− A self−briefing is a review, using automated tools, of all meteorological and aeronautical information that may influence the pilot in planning, altering, or canceling a proposed route of flight.

SEPARATION− In air traffic control, the spacing of aircraft to achieve their safe and orderly movement in flight and while landing and taking off.

(See SEPARATION MINIMA.)
(See ICAO term SEPARATION.)

SEPARATION [ICAO]− Spacing between aircraft, levels or tracks.

SEPARATION MINIMA− The minimum longitudinal, lateral, or vertical distances by which aircraft are spaced through the application of air traffic control procedures.

(See SEPARATION.)

SERVICE− A generic term that designates functions or assistance available from or rendered by air traffic control. For example, Class C service would denote the ATC services provided within a Class C airspace area.

SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN (SWAP)− An approved plan to minimize the affect of severe weather on traffic flows in impacted terminal and/or ARTCC areas. A SWAP is normally implemented to provide the least disruption to the ATC system when flight through portions of airspace is difficult or impossible due to severe weather.

SEVERE WEATHER FORECAST ALERTS− Preliminary messages issued in order to alert users that a Severe Weather Watch Bulletin (WW) is being issued. These messages define areas of possible severe thunderstorms or tornado activity. The messages are unscheduled and issued as required by the Storm Prediction Center (SPC) at Norman, Oklahoma.

(See AIRMET.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See CWA.)
(See SIGMET.)

SFA−
(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SFO−
(See SIMULATED FLAMEOUT.)

SHF−
(See SUPER HIGH FREQUENCY.)

SHORT RANGE CLEARANCE− A clearance issued to a departing IFR flight which authorizes IFR flight to a specific fix short of the destination while air traffic control facilities are coordinating and obtaining the complete clearance.

SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT (STOL)− An aircraft which, at some weight within its approved operating weight, is capable of operating from a runway in compliance with the applicable STOL characteristics, airworthiness, operations, noise, and pollution standards.
(See VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

SIAP−
(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SID−
(See STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE.)

SIDESTEP MANEUVER− A visual maneuver accomplished by a pilot at the completion of an instrument approach to permit a straight-in landing on a parallel runway not more than 1,200 feet to either side of the runway to which the instrument approach was conducted.
(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET− A weather advisory issued concerning weather significant to the safety of all aircraft. SIGMET advisories cover severe and extreme turbulence, severe icing, and widespread dust or sandstorms that reduce visibility to less than 3 miles.
(See AIRMET.)
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See CWA.)
(See ICAO term SIGMET INFORMATION.)
(See SAW.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SIGMET INFORMATION [ICAO]− Information issued by a meteorological watch office concerning the occurrence or expected occurrence of specified en-route weather phenomena which may affect the safety of aircraft operations.

SIGNIFICANT METEOROLOGICAL INFORMATION−
(See SIGMET.)

SIGNIFICANT POINT− A point, whether a named intersection, a NAVAID, a fix derived from a NAVAID(s), or geographical coordinate expressed in degrees of latitude and longitude, which is established for the purpose of providing separation, as a reporting point, or to delineate a route of flight.

SIMPLIFIED DIRECTIONAL FACILITY (SDF)− A NAVAID used for nonprecision instrument approaches. The final approach course is similar to that of an ILS localizer except that the SDF course may be offset from the runway, generally not more than 3 degrees, and the course may be wider than the localizer, resulting in a lower degree of accuracy.
(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULATED FLAMEOUT− A practice approach by a jet aircraft (normally military) at idle thrust to a runway. The approach may start at a runway (high key) and may continue on a relatively high and wide downwind leg with a continuous turn to final. It terminates in landing or low approach. The purpose of this approach is to simulate a flameout.
(See FLAMEOUT.)

SIMULTANEOUS CLOSE PARALLEL APPROACHES− A simultaneous, independent approach operation permitting ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 3,000 feet and less than 4,300−feet between centerlines. Aircraft are permitted to pass each other during these simultaneous operations. Integral parts of a total system are radar, NTZ monitoring with enhanced FMA color displays that include aural and visual alerts and predictive aircraft position software, communications override, ATC procedures, an Attention All Users Page (AAUP), PRM in the approach name, and appropriate ground based and airborne equipment. High update rate surveillance sensor required for certain runway or approach course separations.

SIMULTANEOUS (CONVERGING) DEPENDENT APPROACHES- An approach operation permitting ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to runways or missed approach courses that intersect where required minimum spacing between the aircraft on each final approach course is required.

SIMULTANEOUS (CONVERGING) INDEPENDENT APPROACHES- An approach operation permitting ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to non-parallel runways where approach procedure design maintains the required aircraft spacing throughout the approach and missed approach and hence the operations may be conducted independently.

SIMULTANEOUS ILS APPROACHES− An approach system permitting simultaneous ILS approaches to airports having parallel runways separated by at least 4,300 feet between centerlines. Integral parts of a total system are ILS, radar, communications, ATC procedures, and appropriate airborne equipment.

(See PARALLEL RUNWAYS.)
(Refer to AIM.)

SIMULTANEOUS OFFSET INSTRUMENT APPROACH (SOIA)− An instrument landing system comprised of an ILS PRM, RNAV PRM or GLS PRM approach to one runway and an offset LDA PRM with glideslope or an RNAV PRM or GLS PRM approach utilizing vertical guidance to another where parallel runway spaced less than 3,000 feet and at least 750 feet apart. The approach courses converge by 2.5 to 3 degrees. Simultaneous close parallel PRM approach procedures apply up to the point where the approach course separation becomes 3,000 feet, at the offset MAP. From the offset MAP to the runway threshold, visual separation by the aircraft conducting the offset approach is utilized.

(Refer to AIM)

SIMULTANEOUS (PARALLEL) DEPENDENT APPROACHES- An approach operation permitting ILS/RNAV/GLS approaches to adjacent parallel runways where prescribed diagonal spacing must be maintained. Aircraft are not permitted to pass each other during simultaneous dependent operations. Integral parts of a total system ATC procedures, and appropriate airborne and ground based equipment.

SINGLE DIRECTION ROUTES− Preferred IFR Routes which are sometimes depicted on high altitude en route charts and which are normally flown in one direction only.

(See PREFERRED IFR ROUTES.)
(Refer to CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH− A service provided under a letter of agreement to military single-piloted turbojet aircraft which permits use of a single UHF frequency during approach for landing. Pilots will not normally be required to change frequency from the beginning of the approach to touchdown except that pilots conducting an en route descent are required to change frequency when control is transferred from the air route traffic control center to the terminal facility. The abbreviation "SFA" in the DOD FLIP IFR Supplement under "Communications" indicates this service is available at an aerodrome.

SINGLE-PILOTED AIRCRAFT− A military turbojet aircraft possessing one set of flight controls, tandem cockpits, or two sets of flight controls but operated by one pilot is considered single-piloted by ATC when determining the appropriate air traffic service to be applied.

(See SINGLE FREQUENCY APPROACH.)

SKYSPOTTER− A pilot who has received specialized training in observing and reporting inflight weather phenomena.

SLASH− A radar beacon reply displayed as an elongated target.

SLDI−

(See SECTOR LIST DROP INTERVAL.)

SLOW TAXI− To taxi a float plane at low power or low RPM.

SMALL UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (sUAS)− An unmanned aircraft weighing less than 55 pounds on takeoff, including everything that is on board or otherwise attached to the aircraft.

SN−

(See SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION.)

SPACE−BASED ADS−B (SBA)− A constellation of satellites that receives ADS−B Out broadcasts and relays that information to the appropriate surveillance facility. The currently deployed SBA system is only capable of receiving broadcasts from 1090ES−equipped aircraft, and not from those equipped with only a universal access transceiver (UAT). Also, aircraft with a top−of−fuselage−mounted transponder antenna (required for TCAS II installations) will be better received by SBA, especially at latitudes below 45 degrees.

(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST.)
(See AUTOMATIC DEPENDENT SURVEILLANCE−BROADCAST OUT.)

SPACE LAUNCH AND REENTRY AREA− Locations where commercial space launch and/or reentry operations occur. For pilot awareness, a rocket−shaped symbol is used to depict space launch and reentry areas on sectional aeronautical charts.

SPEAK SLOWER− Used in verbal communications as a request to reduce speech rate.

SPECIAL ACTIVITY AIRSPACE (SAA)− Any airspace with defined dimensions within the National Airspace System wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations. This airspace may be restricted areas, prohibited areas, military operations areas, air ATC assigned airspace, and any other designated airspace areas. The dimensions of this airspace are programmed into EDST and can be designated as either active or inactive by screen entry. Aircraft trajectories are constantly tested against the dimensions of active areas and alerts issued to the applicable sectors when violations are predicted.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

SPECIAL AIR TRAFFIC RULES (SATR)− Rules that govern procedures for conducting flights in certain areas listed in 14 CFR Part 93. The term "SATR" is used in the United States to describe the rules for operations in specific areas designated in the Code of Federal Regulations.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 93.)

SPECIAL EMERGENCY− A condition of air piracy or other hostile act by a person(s) aboard an aircraft which threatens the safety of the aircraft or its passengers.

SPECIAL FLIGHT RULES AREA (SFRA)− An area in the NAS, described in 14 CFR Part 93, wherein the flight of aircraft is subject to special traffic rules, unless otherwise authorized by air traffic control. Not all areas listed in 14 CFR Part 93 are designated SFRA, but special air traffic rules apply to all areas described in 14 CFR Part 93.

SPECIAL INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE−

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE− Airspace of defined dimensions identified by an area on the surface of the earth wherein activities must be confined because of their nature and/or wherein limitations may be imposed upon aircraft operations that are not a part of those activities. Types of special use airspace are:

a. Alert Area− Airspace which may contain a high volume of pilot training activities or an unusual type of aerial activity, neither of which is hazardous to aircraft. Alert Areas are depicted on aeronautical charts for the information of nonparticipating pilots. All activities within an Alert Area are conducted in accordance with Federal Aviation Regulations, and pilots of participating aircraft as well as pilots transiting the area are equally responsible for collision avoidance.

b. Controlled Firing Area− Airspace wherein activities are conducted under conditions so controlled as to eliminate hazards to nonparticipating aircraft and to ensure the safety of persons and property on the ground.

c. Military Operations Area (MOA)− Permanent and temporary MOAs are airspace established outside of Class A airspace area to separate or segregate certain nonhazardous military activities from IFR traffic and to identify for VFR traffic where these activities are conducted. Permanent MOAs are depicted on Sectional Aeronautical, VFR Terminal Area, and applicable En Route Low Altitude Charts.

Note: Temporary MOAs are not charted.

(Refer to AIM.)

d. Prohibited Area− Airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73 within which no person may operate an aircraft without the permission of the using agency.

(Refer to AIM.)

(Refer to En Route Charts.)

e. Restricted Area− Permanent and temporary restricted areas are airspace designated under 14 CFR Part 73, within which the flight of aircraft, while not wholly prohibited, is subject to restriction. Most restricted areas are designated joint use and IFR/VFR operations in the area may be authorized by the controlling ATC facility when it is not being utilized by the using agency. Permanent restricted areas are depicted on Sectional Aeronautical, VFR Terminal Area, and applicable En Route charts. Where joint use is authorized, the name of the ATC controlling facility is also shown.

Note: Temporary restricted areas are not charted.

(Refer to 14 CFR Part 73.)

(Refer to AIM.)

f. Warning Area− A warning area is airspace of defined dimensions extending from 3 nautical miles outward from the coast of the United States, that contains activity that may be hazardous to nonparticipating aircraft. The purpose of such warning area is to warn nonparticipating pilots of the potential danger. A warning area may be located over domestic or international waters or both.

SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS− Meteorological conditions that are less than those required for basic VFR flight in Class B, C, D, or E surface areas and in which some aircraft are permitted flight under visual flight rules.

(See SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT [ICAO]− A VFR flight cleared by air traffic control to operate within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in meteorological conditions below VMC.

SPECIAL VFR OPERATIONS− Aircraft operating in accordance with clearances within Class B, C, D, and E surface areas in weather conditions less than the basic VFR weather minima. Such operations must be requested by the pilot and approved by ATC.

(See SPECIAL VFR CONDITIONS.)
(See ICAO term SPECIAL VFR FLIGHT.)

SPEED−

(See AIRSPEED.)
(See GROUND SPEED.)

SPEED ADJUSTMENT− An ATC procedure used to request pilots to adjust aircraft speed to a specific value for the purpose of providing desired spacing. Pilots are expected to maintain a speed of plus or minus 10 knots or 0.02 Mach number of the specified speed. Examples of speed adjustments are:

a. "Increase/reduce speed to Mach point (number)."

b. "Increase/reduce speed to (speed in knots)" or "Increase/reduce speed (number of knots) knots."

SPEED BRAKES− Moveable aerodynamic devices on aircraft that reduce airspeed during descent and landing.

SPEED SEGMENTS− Portions of the arrival route between the transition point and the vertex along the optimum flight path for which speeds and altitudes are specified. There is one set of arrival speed segments adapted from each transition point to each vertex. Each set may contain up to six segments.

SPOOFING− Denotes emissions of GNSS−like signals that may be acquired and tracked in combination with or instead of the intended signals by civil receivers. The onset of spoofing effects can be instantaneous or delayed, and effects can persist after the spoofing has ended. Spoofing can result in false and potentially confusing, or hazardously misleading, position, navigation, and/or date/time information in addition to loss of GNSS use.

SPEED ADVISORY− Speed advisories that are generated within Time−Based Flow Management to assist controllers to meet the Scheduled Time of Arrival (STA) at the meter fix/meter arc. See also Ground−Based Interval Management−Spacing (GIM−S) Speed Advisory.

SQUAWK (Mode, Code, Function)− Used by ATC to instruct a pilot to activate the aircraft transponder and ADS−B Out with altitude reporting enabled, or (military) to activate only specific modes, codes, or functions. Examples: "Squawk five seven zero seven;" "Squawk three/alpha, two one zero five."

(See TRANSPONDER.)

STA−

(See SCHEDULED TIME OF ARRIVAL.)

STAGING/QUEUING− The placement, integration, and segregation of departure aircraft in designated movement areas of an airport by departure fix, EDCT, and/or restriction.

STAND BY− Means the controller or pilot must pause for a few seconds, usually to attend to other duties of a higher priority. Also means to wait as in "stand by for clearance." The caller should reestablish contact if a delay is lengthy. "Stand by" is not an approval or denial.

STANDARD INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE (SIAP)−

(See INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE.)

STANDARD INSTRUMENT DEPARTURE (SID)− A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control (ATC) departure procedure printed for pilot/controller use in graphic form to provide obstacle clearance and a transition from the terminal area to the appropriate en route structure. SIDs are primarily designed for system enhancement to expedite traffic flow and to reduce pilot/controller workload. ATC clearance must always be received prior to flying a SID.

(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)
(See OBSTACLE DEPARTURE PROCEDURE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

STANDARD RATE TURN− A turn of three degrees per second.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL (STAR)− A preplanned instrument flight rule (IFR) air traffic control arrival procedure published for pilot use in graphic and/or textual form. STARs provide transition from the en route structure to an outer fix or an instrument approach fix/arrival waypoint in the terminal area.

STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

STANDARD TERMINAL AUTOMATION REPLACEMENT SYSTEM (STARS)−
(See DTAS.)

STAR−
(See STANDARD TERMINAL ARRIVAL.)

STATE AIRCRAFT− Aircraft used in military, customs and police service, in the exclusive service of any government or of any political subdivision thereof, including the government of any state, territory, or possession of the United States or the District of Columbia, but not including any government-owned aircraft engaged in carrying persons or property for commercial purposes.

STATIC RESTRICTIONS− Those restrictions that are usually not subject to change, fixed, in place, and/or published.

STATIONARY ALTITUDE RESERVATION (STATIONARY ALTRV)− An altitude reservation which encompasses activities in a fixed area. Stationary ALTRVs may include activities such as special tests of weapons systems or equipment; certain U.S. Navy carrier, fleet, and anti−submarine operations; rocket, missile, and drone operations; and certain aerial refueling or similar operations.

STEP TAXI− To taxi a float plane at full power or high RPM.

STEP TURN− A maneuver used to put a float plane in a planing configuration prior to entering an active sea lane for takeoff. The STEP TURN maneuver should only be used upon pilot request.

STEPDOWN FIX− A fix permitting additional descent within a segment of an instrument approach procedure by identifying a point at which a controlling obstacle has been safely overflown.

STEREO ROUTE− A routinely used route of flight established by users and ARTCCs identified by a coded name; e.g., ALPHA 2. These routes minimize flight plan handling and communications.

STNR ALT RESERVATION− An abbreviation for Stationary Altitude Reservation commonly used in NOTAMs.
(See STATIONARY ALTITUDE RESERVATION.)

STOL AIRCRAFT−
(See SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK− Used by ATC to instruct a pilot to turn off the automatic altitude reporting feature of the aircraft transponder and ADS−B Out. It is issued when a verbally reported altitude varies by 300 feet or more from the automatic altitude report.
(See ALTITUDE READOUT.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP AND GO− A procedure wherein an aircraft will land, make a complete stop on the runway, and then commence a takeoff from that point.
(See LOW APPROACH.)
(See OPTION APPROACH.)

STOP BURST−
(See STOP STREAM.)

STOP BUZZER−
(See STOP STREAM.)

STOP SQUAWK (Mode or Code)− Used by ATC to instruct a pilot to stop transponder and ADS−B transmissions, or to turn off only specified functions of the aircraft transponder (military).
(See STOP ALTITUDE SQUAWK.)
(See TRANSPONDER.)

STOP STREAM− Used by ATC to request a pilot to suspend electronic attack activity.
(See JAMMING.)

STOPOVER FLIGHT PLAN− A flight plan format which permits in a single submission the filing of a sequence of flight plans through interim full-stop destinations to a final destination.

STOPWAY− An area beyond the takeoff runway no less wide than the runway and centered upon the extended centerline of the runway, able to support the airplane during an aborted takeoff, without causing structural damage to the airplane, and designated by the airport authorities for use in decelerating the airplane during an aborted takeoff.

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR− An instrument approach wherein final approach is begun without first having executed a procedure turn, not necessarily completed with a straight-in landing or made to straight-in landing minimums.
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR.)
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING.)

STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR− Entry into the traffic pattern by interception of the extended runway centerline (final approach course) without executing any other portion of the traffic pattern.
(See TRAFFIC PATTERN.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING− A landing made on a runway aligned within 30° of the final approach course following completion of an instrument approach.
(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH IFR.)

STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS−
(See LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRAIGHT-IN MINIMUMS−
(See STRAIGHT-IN LANDING MINIMUMS.)

STRATEGIC PLANNING− Planning whereby solutions are sought to resolve potential conflicts.

sUAS−
(See SMALL UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM.)

SUBSTITUTE ROUTE− A route assigned to pilots when any part of an airway or route is unusable because of NAVAID status. These routes consist of:

a. Substitute routes which are shown on U.S. Government charts.

b. Routes defined by ATC as specific NAVAID radials or courses.

c. Routes defined by ATC as direct to or between NAVAIDs.

SUNSET AND SUNRISE− The mean solar times of sunset and sunrise as published in the Nautical Almanac, converted to local standard time for the locality concerned. Within Alaska, the end of evening civil twilight and the beginning of morning civil twilight, as defined for each locality.

SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION− Airport facilities staffed with contract personnel who take weather observations and provide current local weather to pilots via telephone or radio. (All other services are provided by the parent FSS.)

SUPPS− Refers to ICAO Document 7030 Regional Supplementary Procedures. SUPPS contain procedures for each ICAO Region which are unique to that Region and are not covered in the worldwide provisions identified in the ICAO Air Navigation Plan. Procedures contained in Chapter 8 are based in part on those published in SUPPS.

SURFACE AREA− The airspace contained by the lateral boundary of the Class B, C, D, or E airspace designated for an airport that begins at the surface and extends upward.

SURFACE METERING PROGRAM− A capability within Terminal Flight Data Manager that provides the user with the ability to tactically manage surface traffic flows through adjusting desired minimum and maximum departure queue lengths to balance surface demand with capacity. When a demand/capacity imbalance for a surface resource is predicted, a metering procedure is recommended.

SURFACE VIEWER− A capability within the Traffic Flow Management System that provides situational awareness for a user−selected airport. The Surface Viewer displays a top−down view of an airport depicting runways, taxiways, gate areas, ramps, and buildings. The display also includes icons representing aircraft and vehicles currently on the surface, with identifying information. In addition, the display includes current airport configuration information such as departure/arrival runways and airport departure/arrival rates.

SURPIC− A description of surface vessels in the area of a Search and Rescue incident including their predicted positions and their characteristics.
(Refer to FAA Order JO 7110.65, Para 10−6−4, INFLIGHT CONTINGENCIES.)

SURVEILLANCE APPROACH− An instrument approach wherein the air traffic controller issues instructions, for pilot compliance, based on aircraft position in relation to the final approach course (azimuth), and the distance (range) from the end of the runway as displayed on the controller's radar scope. The controller will provide recommended altitudes on final approach if requested by the pilot.
(Refer to AIM.)

SUSPICIOUS UAS– Suspicious UAS operations may include operating without authorization, loitering in the vicinity of sensitive locations, (e.g., national security, law enforcement facilities, and critical infrastructure), or disrupting normal air traffic operations resulting in runway changes, ground stops, pilot evasive action, etc. The report of a UAS operation alone does not constitute suspicious activity. Development of a comprehensive list of suspicious activities is not possible due to the vast number of situations that could be considered suspicious. ATC must exercise sound judgment when identifying situations that could constitute or indicate a suspicious activity.

SWAP−

(See SEVERE WEATHER AVOIDANCE PLAN.)

SWSL−

(See SUPPLEMENTAL WEATHER SERVICE LOCATION.)

SYSTEM STRATEGIC NAVIGATION− Military activity accomplished by navigating along a preplanned route using internal aircraft systems to maintain a desired track. This activity normally requires a lateral route width of 10 NM and altitude range of 1,000 feet to 6,000 feet AGL with some route segments that permit terrain following.

T

TACAN−
(See TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION.)

TACAN-ONLY AIRCRAFT− An aircraft, normally military, possessing TACAN with DME but no VOR navigational system capability. Clearances must specify TACAN or VORTAC fixes and approaches.

TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION (TCAN)− An ultra-high frequency electronic rho-theta air navigation aid which provides suitably equipped aircraft a continuous indication of bearing and distance to the TACAN station.
(See VORTAC.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TAILWIND− Any wind more than 90 degrees to the longitudinal axis of the runway. The magnetic direction of the runway shall be used as the basis for determining the longitudinal axis.

TAKEOFF AREA−
(See LANDING AREA.)

TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE (TODA)− The takeoff run available plus the length of any remaining runway or clearway beyond the far end of the takeoff run available.
(See ICAO term TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE [ICAO]− The length of the takeoff run available plus the length of the clearway, if provided.

TAKEOFF HOLD LIGHTS (THL)− The THL system is composed of in-pavement lighting in a double, longitudinal row of lights aligned either side of the runway centerline. The lights are focused toward the arrival end of the runway at the "line up and wait" point, and they extend for 1,500 feet in front of the holding aircraft. Illuminated red lights indicate to an aircraft in position for takeoff or rolling that it is unsafe to takeoff because the runway is occupied or about to be occupied by an aircraft or vehicle.

TAKEOFF ROLL − The process whereby an aircraft is aligned with the runway centerline and the aircraft is moving with the intent to take off. For helicopters, this pertains to the act of becoming airborne after departing a takeoff area.

TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE (TORA) − The runway length declared available and suitable for the ground run of an airplane taking off.
(See ICAO term TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE.)

TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE [ICAO]− The length of runway declared available and suitable for the ground run of an aeroplane take-off.

TARGET− The indication shown on a display resulting from a primary radar return, a radar beacon reply, or an ADS−B report. The specific target symbol presented to ATC may vary based on the surveillance source and automation platform.
(See ASSOCIATED.)
(See DIGITAL TARGET.)
(See DIGITIZED RADAR TARGET.)
(See FUSED TARGET.)
(See PRIMARY RADAR TARGET.)
(See RADAR.)
(See SECONDARY RADAR TARGET.)
(See ICAO term TARGET.)
(See UNASSOCIATED.)

TARGET [ICAO]− In radar:

a. Generally, any discrete object which reflects or retransmits energy back to the radar equipment.

b. Specifically, an object of radar search or surveillance.

TARGET RESOLUTION− A process to ensure that correlated radar targets do not touch. Target resolution must be applied as follows:

a. Between the edges of two primary targets or the edges of the ASR-9/11 primary target symbol.

b. Between the end of the beacon control slash and the edge of a primary target.

c. Between the ends of two beacon control slashes.

Note 1: Mandatory traffic advisories and safety alerts must be issued when this procedure is used.

Note 2: This procedure must not be used when utilizing mosaic radar systems or multi−sensor mode.

TARGET SYMBOL−
(See TARGET.)
(See ICAO term TARGET.)

TARMAC DELAY− The holding of an aircraft on the ground either before departure or after landing with no opportunity for its passengers to deplane.

TARMAC DELAY AIRCRAFT− An aircraft whose pilot−in−command has requested to taxi to the ramp, gate, or alternate deplaning area to comply with the Three−hour Tarmac Rule.

TARMAC DELAY REQUEST− A request by the pilot−in−command to taxi to the ramp, gate, or alternate deplaning location to comply with the Three−hour Tarmac Rule.

TAS−
(See TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEMS.)

TAWS−
(See TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM.)

TAXI− The movement of an airplane under its own power on the surface of an airport (14 CFR Section 135.100 [Note]). Also, it describes the surface movement of helicopters equipped with wheels.
(See AIR TAXI.)
(See HOVER TAXI.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Section 135.100.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TAXI PATTERNS− Patterns established to illustrate the desired flow of ground traffic for the different runways or airport areas available for use.

TBM−
(See TIME−BASED MANAGEMENT.)

TBO−
(See TRAJECTORY−BASED OPERATIONS.)

TCAS−
(See TRAFFIC ALERT AND COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEM.)

TCH−
(See THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT.)

TDLS−
(See TERMINAL DATA LINK SYSTEM.)

TDZE−
(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION.)

TEMPORARY FLIGHT RESTRICTION (TFR)− A TFR is a regulatory action issued by the FAA via the U.S. NOTAM System, under the authority of United States Code, Title 49. TFRs are issued within the sovereign airspace of the United States and its territories to restrict certain aircraft from operating within a defined area on a temporary basis to protect persons or property in the air or on the ground. While not all inclusive, TFRs may be issued for disaster or hazard situations such as: toxic gas leaks or spills, fumes from flammable agents, aircraft accident/incident sites, aviation or ground resources engaged in wildfire suppression, or aircraft relief activities following a disaster. TFRs may also be issued in support of VIP movements, for reasons of national security; or when determined necessary for the management of air traffic in the vicinity of aerial demonstrations or major sporting events. NAS users or other interested parties should contact a FSS for TFR information. Additionally, TFR information can be found in automated briefings, NOTAM publications, and on the internet at http://www.faa.gov. The FAA also distributes TFR information to aviation user groups for further dissemination.

TERMINAL AREA− A general term used to describe airspace in which approach control service or airport traffic control service is provided.

TERMINAL AREA FACILITY− A facility providing air traffic control service for arriving and departing IFR, VFR, Special VFR, and on occasion en route aircraft.
(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)
(See TOWER.)

TERMINAL AUTOMATION SYSTEMS (TAS)− TAS is used to identify the numerous automated tracking systems including STARS and MEARTS.

TERMINAL DATA LINK SYSTEM (TDLS)− A system that provides Digital Automatic Terminal Information Service (D−ATIS) both on a specified radio frequency and also, for subscribers, in a text message via data link to the cockpit or to a gate printer. TDLS also provides Pre−departure Clearances (PDC), at selected airports, to subscribers, through a service provider, in text to the cockpit or to a gate printer. In addition, TDLS will emulate the Flight Data Input/Output (FDIO) information within the control tower.

TERMINAL FLIGHT DATA MANAGER (TFDM)− An integrated tower flight data automation system to provide improved airport surface and terminal airspace management. TFDM enhances traffic flow management data integration with Time−Based Flow Management (TBFM) and Traffic

Flow Management System (TFMS) to enable airlines, controllers, and airports to share and exchange real−time data. This improves surface traffic management and enhances capabilities of TFMS and TBFM. TFDM assists the Tower personnel with surface Traffic Flow Management (TFM) and Collaborative Decision Making (CDM) and enables a fundamental change in the Towers from a local airport−specific operation to a NAS−connected metering operation. The single platform consolidates multiple Tower automation systems, including: Departure Spacing Program (DSP), Airport Resource Management Tool (ARMT), Electronic Flight Strip Transfer System (EFSTS), and Surface Movement Advisor (SMA). TFDM data, integrated with other FAA systems such as TBFM and TFMS, allows airlines, controllers, and airports to manage the flow of aircraft more efficiently through all phases of flight from departure to arrival gate.

TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA− Airspace surrounding designated airports wherein ATC provides radar vectoring, sequencing, and separation on a full-time basis for all IFR and participating VFR aircraft. The AIM contains an explanation of TRSA. TRSAs are depicted on VFR aeronautical charts. Pilot participation is urged but is not mandatory.

TERMINAL SEQUENCING AND SPACING (TSAS)− Extends scheduling and metering capabilities into the terminal area and provides metering automation tools to terminal controllers and terminal traffic management personnel. Those controllers and traffic management personnel become active participants in time−based metering operations as they work to deliver aircraft accurately to Constraint Satisfaction Points within terminal airspace to include the runway in accordance with scheduled times at those points. Terminal controllers are better able to utilize efficient flight paths, such as Standard Instrument Approach Procedures (SIAPs) that require a Navigational Specification (NavSpec) of RNP APCH with Radius−to−Fix (RF) legs, or Advanced RNP (A−RNP), through tools that support the merging of mixed−equipage traffic flows. For example, merging aircraft flying RNP APCH AR with RF, A−RNP, and non−RNP approach procedures. Additional fields in the flight plan will identify those flights capable of flying the RNP APCH with RF or A−RNP procedures, and those flights will be scheduled for those types of procedures when available. TSAS will schedule these and the non−RNP aircraft to a common merge point. Terminal traffic management personnel have improved situation awareness using displays that allow for the monitoring of terminal metering operations, similar to the displays used today by center traffic management personnel to monitor en route metering operations.

TERMINAL VFR RADAR SERVICE− A national program instituted to extend the terminal radar services provided instrument flight rules (IFR) aircraft to visual flight rules (VFR) aircraft. The program is divided into four types service referred to as basic radar service, terminal radar service area (TRSA) service, Class B service and Class C service. The type of service provided at a particular location is contained in the Chart Supplement U.S.

a. Basic Radar Service− These services are provided for VFR aircraft by all commissioned terminal radar facilities. Basic radar service includes safety alerts, traffic advisories, limited radar vectoring when requested by the pilot, and sequencing at locations where procedures have been established for this purpose and/or when covered by a letter of agreement. The purpose of this service is to adjust the flow of arriving IFR and VFR aircraft into the traffic pattern in a safe and orderly manner and to provide traffic advisories to departing VFR aircraft.

b. TRSA Service− This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, sequencing of all IFR and participating VFR aircraft to the primary airport and separation between all participating VFR aircraft. The purpose of this service is to provide separation between all participating VFR aircraft and all IFR aircraft operating within the area defined as a TRSA.

c. Class C Service− This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, approved separation between IFR and VFR aircraft, and sequencing of VFR aircraft, and sequencing of VFR arrivals to the primary airport.

d. Class B Service− This service provides, in addition to basic radar service, approved separation of aircraft based on IFR, VFR, and/or weight, and sequencing of VFR arrivals to the primary airport(s).

(See CONTROLLED AIRSPACE.)
(See TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA.)
(Refer to AIM.)
(Refer to CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)

TERMINAL-VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNI-DIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION (TVOR)− A very high frequency terminal omnirange station located on or near an airport and used as an approach aid.

(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)
(See VOR.)

TERRAIN AWARENESS WARNING SYSTEM (TAWS)− An on−board, terrain proximity alerting system providing the aircrew 'Low Altitude warnings' to allow immediate pilot action.

TERRAIN FOLLOWING− The flight of a military aircraft maintaining a constant AGL altitude above the terrain or the highest obstruction. The altitude of the aircraft will constantly change with the varying terrain and/or obstruction.

TETRAHEDRON− A device normally located on uncontrolled airports and used as a landing direction indicator. The small end of a tetrahedron points in the direction of landing. At controlled airports, the tetrahedron, if installed, should be disregarded because tower instructions supersede the indicator.

(See SEGMENTED CIRCLE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TF−
(See TERRAIN FOLLOWING.)

TFDM−
(See TERMINAL FLIGHT DATA MANAGER.)

TGUI−
(See TIMELINE GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE.)

THAT IS CORRECT− The understanding you have is right.

THA−
(See TRANSITIONAL HAZARD AREA.)

THREE−HOUR TARMAC RULE− Rule that relates to Department of Transportation (DOT) requirements placed on airlines when tarmac delays are anticipated to reach 3 hours.

360 OVERHEAD−
(See OVERHEAD MANEUVER.)

THRESHOLD− The beginning of that portion of the runway usable for landing.

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)
(See DISPLACED THRESHOLD.)

THRESHOLD CROSSING HEIGHT− The theoretical height above the runway threshold at which the aircraft's glideslope antenna would be if the aircraft maintains the trajectory established by the mean ILS glideslope or the altitude at which the calculated glidepath of an RNAV or GPS approaches.

(See GLIDESLOPE.)
(See THRESHOLD.)

THRESHOLD LIGHTS−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

TIE-IN FACILITY− The FSS primarily responsible for providing FSS services, including telecommunications services for landing facilities or navigational aids located within the boundaries of a flight plan area (FPA). Three-letter identifiers are assigned to each FSS/FPA and are annotated as tie-in facilities in the Chart Supplement U.S., the Alaska Supplement, the Pacific Supplement, and FAA Order JO 7350.9, Location Identifiers. Large consolidated FSS facilities may have many tie-in facilities or FSS sectors within one facility.

(See FLIGHT PLAN AREA.)
(See FLIGHT SERVICE STATION.)

TIME−BASED FLOW MANAGEMENT (TBFM)− A foundational Decision Support Tool for time−based management in the en route and terminal environments. TBFM's core function is the ability to schedule aircraft within a stream of traffic to reach a defined constraint point (e.g., meter fix/meter arc) at specified times, creating a time−ordered sequence of traffic. The scheduled times allow for merging of traffic flows, efficiently utilizing airport and airspace capacity while minimizing coordination and reducing the need for vectoring/holding. The TBFM schedule is calculated using current aircraft estimated time of arrival at key defined constraint points based on wind forecasts, aircraft flight plan, the desired separation at the constraint point and other parameters. The schedule applies spacing only when needed to maintain the desired separation at one or more constraint points. This includes, but is not limited to, Single Center Metering (SCM), Adjacent Center Metering (ACM), En Route Departure Capability (EDC), Integrated Departure/Arrival Capability (IDAC), Ground−based Interval Management−Spacing (GIM−S), Departure Scheduling, and Extended/Coupled Metering.

TIME−BASED MANAGEMENT (TBM)− A methodology for managing the flow of air traffic through the assignment of time at specific points for an aircraft. TBM applies time to manage and condition air traffic flows to mitigate demand/capacity imbalances and enhance efficiency and predictability of the NAS. Where implemented, TBM tools will be used to manage traffic even during periods when demand does not exceed capacity. This will sustain operational predictability and assure the regional/national strategic plan is maintained. TBM uses capabilities within TFMS, TBFM, and TFDM. These programs are designed to achieve a specified interval between aircraft. Different types of programs accommodate different phases of flight.

TIME GROUP− Four digits representing the hour and minutes from the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) clock. FAA uses UTC for all operations. The term "ZULU" may be used to denote UTC. The word "local" or the time zone equivalent shall be used to denote local when local time is given during radio and telephone communications. When written, a time zone designator is used to indicate local time; e.g., "0205M" (Mountain). The local time may be based on the 24-hour clock system. The day begins at 0000 and ends at 2359.

TIMELINE GRAPHICAL USER INTERFACE (TGUI)− A TBFM display that uses timelines to display the Estimated Time of Arrival and Scheduled Time of Arrival of each aircraft to specified constraint points. The TGUI can also display pre−departure and scheduled aircraft.

TIS−B−
(See TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST.)

TMI−
(See TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT INITIATIVE.)

TMPA−
(See TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM ALERT.)

TMU−
(See TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT UNIT.)

TOD−
(See TOP OF DESCENT.)

TODA−
(See TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)
(See ICAO term TAKEOFF DISTANCE AVAILABLE.)

TOI−
(See TRACK OF INTEREST.)

TOP ALTITUDE− In reference to SID published altitude restrictions, the charted "maintain" altitude contained in the procedure description or assigned by ATC.

TOP OF DESCENT (TOD)− The point at which an aircraft begins the initial descent.

TORA−
(See TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE.)
(See ICAO term TAKEOFF RUN AVAILABLE.)

TORCHING− The burning of fuel at the end of an exhaust pipe or stack of a reciprocating aircraft engine, the result of an excessive richness in the fuel air mixture.

TOS−
(See TRAJECTORY OPTIONS SET)

TOTAL ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME [ICAO]− For IFR flights, the estimated time required from takeoff to arrive over that designated point, defined by reference to navigation aids, from which it is intended that an instrument approach procedure will be commenced, or, if no navigation aid is associated with the destination aerodrome, to arrive over the destination aerodrome. For VFR flights, the estimated time required from takeoff to arrive over the destination aerodrome.
(See ICAO term ESTIMATED ELAPSED TIME.)

TOUCH-AND-GO− An operation by an aircraft that lands and departs on a runway without stopping or exiting the runway.

TOUCH-AND-GO LANDING−
(See TOUCH-AND-GO.)

TOUCHDOWN−

a. The point at which an aircraft first makes contact with the landing surface.

b. Concerning a precision radar approach (PAR), it is the point where the glide path intercepts the landing surface.
(See ICAO term TOUCHDOWN.)

TOUCHDOWN [ICAO]− The point where the nominal glide path intercepts the runway.

Note: Touchdown as defined above is only a datum and is not necessarily the actual point at which the aircraft will touch the runway.

TOUCHDOWN RVR−
(See VISIBILITY.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE− The first 3,000 feet of the runway beginning at the threshold. The area is used for determination of Touchdown Zone Elevation in the development of straight-in landing minimums for instrument approaches.
(See ICAO term TOUCHDOWN ZONE.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE [ICAO]− The portion of a runway, beyond the threshold, where it is intended landing aircraft first contact the runway.

TOUCHDOWN ZONE ELEVATION− The highest elevation in the first 3,000 feet of the landing surface. TDZE is indicated on the instrument approach procedure chart when straight-in landing minimums are authorized.
(See TOUCHDOWN ZONE.)

TOUCHDOWN ZONE LIGHTING−
(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

TOWER− A terminal facility that uses air/ground communications, visual signaling, and other devices to provide ATC services to aircraft operating in the vicinity of an airport or on the movement area. Authorizes aircraft to land or takeoff at the airport controlled by the tower or to transit the Class D airspace area regardless of flight plan or weather conditions (IFR or VFR). A tower may also provide approach control services (radar or nonradar).
(See AIRPORT TRAFFIC CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See APPROACH CONTROL FACILITY.)
(See APPROACH CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See MOVEMENT AREA.)
(See TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME CONTROL TOWER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE− The control of IFR en route traffic within delegated airspace between two or more adjacent approach control facilities. This service is designed to expedite traffic and reduce control and pilot communication requirements.

TOWER TO TOWER−
(See TOWER EN ROUTE CONTROL SERVICE.)

TRACEABLE PRESSURE STANDARD− The facility station pressure instrument, with certification/calibration traceable to the National Institute of Standards and Technology. Traceable pressure standards may be mercurial barometers, commissioned ASOS or dual transducer AWOS, or portable pressure standards or DASI.

TRACK− The actual flight path of an aircraft over the surface of the earth.
(See COURSE.)
(See FLIGHT PATH.)
(See ROUTE.)
(See ICAO term TRACK.)

TRACK [ICAO]− The projection on the earth's surface of the path of an aircraft, the direction of which path at any point is usually expressed in degrees from North (True, Magnetic, or Grid).

TRACK OF INTEREST (TOI)− Displayed data representing an airborne object that threatens or has the potential to threaten North America or National Security. Indicators may include, but are not limited to: noncompliance with air traffic control instructions or aviation regulations; extended loss of communications; unusual transmissions or unusual flight behavior; unauthorized intrusion into controlled airspace or an ADIZ; noncompliance with issued flight restrictions/security procedures; or unlawful interference with airborne flight crews, up to and including hijack. In certain circumstances, an object may become a TOI based on specific and credible intelligence pertaining to that particular aircraft/object, its passengers, or its cargo.

TRACK OF INTEREST RESOLUTION− A TOI will normally be considered resolved when: the aircraft/object is no longer airborne; the aircraft complies with air traffic control instructions, aviation regulations, and/or issued flight restrictions/security procedures; radio contact is re−established and authorized control of the aircraft is verified; the aircraft is intercepted and intent is verified to be nonthreatening/nonhostile; TOI was identified based on specific and credible intelligence that was later determined to be invalid or unreliable; or displayed data is identified and characterized as invalid.

TRAFFIC−

a. A term used by a controller to transfer radar identification of an aircraft to another controller for the purpose of coordinating separation action. Traffic is normally issued:

1. In response to a handoff or point out,

2. In anticipation of a handoff or point out, or

3. In conjunction with a request for control of an aircraft.

b. A term used by ATC to refer to one or more aircraft.

TRAFFIC ADVISORIES− Advisories issued to alert pilots to other known or observed air traffic which may be in such proximity to the position or intended route of flight of their aircraft to warrant their attention. Such advisories may be based on:

a. Visual observation.

b. Observation of radar identified and nonidentified aircraft targets on an ATC radar display, or

c. Verbal reports from pilots or other facilities.

Note 1: The word "traffic" followed by additional information, if known, is used to provide such advisories; e.g., "Traffic, 2 o'clock, one zero miles, southbound, eight thousand."

Note 2: Traffic advisory service will be provided to the extent possible depending on higher priority duties of the controller or other limitations; e.g., radar limitations, volume of traffic, frequency congestion, or controller workload. Radar/nonradar traffic advisories do not relieve the pilot of his/her responsibility to see and avoid other aircraft. Pilots are cautioned that there are many times when the controller is not able to give traffic advisories concerning all traffic in the aircraft's proximity; in other words, when a pilot requests or is receiving traffic advisories, he/she should not assume that all traffic will be issued.

(Refer to AIM.)

TRAFFIC ALERT (aircraft call sign), TURN (left/right) IMMEDIATELY, (climb/descend) AND MAINTAIN (altitude).
(See SAFETY ALERT.)

TRAFFIC ALERT AND COLLISION AVOIDANCE SYSTEM (TCAS)− An airborne collision avoidance system based on radar beacon signals which operates independent of ground-based equipment. TCAS-I generates traffic advisories only. TCAS-II generates traffic advisories, and resolution (collision avoidance) advisories in the vertical plane.

TRAFFIC INFORMATION−
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

TRAFFIC INFORMATION SERVICE−BROADCAST (TIS−B)− The broadcast of ATC derived traffic information to ADS−B equipped (1090ES or UAT) aircraft. The source of this traffic information is derived from ground−based air traffic surveillance sensors, typically from radar targets. TIS−B service will be available throughout the NAS where there are both adequate surveillance coverage (radar) and adequate broadcast coverage from ADS−B ground stations. Loss of TIS−B will occur when an aircraft enters an area not covered by the GBT network. If this occurs in an area with adequate surveillance coverage (radar), nearby aircraft that remain within the adequate broadcast coverage (ADS−B) area will view the first aircraft. TIS−B may continue when an aircraft enters an area with inadequate surveillance coverage (radar); nearby aircraft that remain within the adequate broadcast coverage (ADS−B) area will not view the first aircraft.

TRAFFIC IN SIGHT− Used by pilots to inform a controller that previously issued traffic is in sight.
(See NEGATIVE CONTACT.)
(See TRAFFIC ADVISORIES.)

TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT INITIATIVE (TMI)− Tools used to manage demand with capacity in the National Airspace System (NAS.) TMIs can be used to manage NAS resources (e.g., airports, sectors, airspace) or to increase the efficiency of the operation. TMIs can be either tactical (i.e., short term) or strategic (i.e., long term), depending on the type of TMI and the operational need.

TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT PROGRAM ALERT− A term used in a Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) issued in conjunction with a special traffic management program to alert pilots to the existence of the program and to refer them to a special traffic management program advisory message for program details. The contraction TMPA is used in NOTAM text.

TRAFFIC MANAGEMENT UNIT− The entity in ARTCCs and designated terminals directly involved in the active management of facility traffic. Usually under the direct supervision of an assistant manager for traffic management.

TRAFFIC NO FACTOR− Indicates that the traffic described in a previously issued traffic advisory is no factor.

TRAFFIC NO LONGER OBSERVED− Indicates that the traffic described in a previously issued traffic advisory is no longer depicted on radar, but may still be a factor.

TRAFFIC PATTERN− The traffic flow that is prescribed for aircraft landing at, taxiing on, or taking off from an airport. The components of a typical traffic pattern are upwind leg, crosswind leg, downwind leg, base leg, and final approach.

a. Upwind Leg− A flight path parallel to the landing runway in the direction of landing.

b. Crosswind Leg− A flight path at right angles to the landing runway off its upwind end.

c. Downwind Leg− A flight path parallel to the landing runway in the direction opposite to landing. The downwind leg normally extends between the crosswind leg and the base leg.

d. Base Leg− A flight path at right angles to the landing runway off its approach end. The base leg normally extends from the downwind leg to the intersection of the extended runway centerline.

e. Final Approach− A flight path in the direction of landing along the extended runway centerline. The final approach normally extends from the base leg to the runway. An aircraft making a straight-in approach VFR is also considered to be on final approach.

(See STRAIGHT-IN APPROACH VFR.)
(See TAXI PATTERNS.)
(See ICAO term AERODROME TRAFFIC CIRCUIT.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TRAFFIC SITUATION DISPLAY (TSD)− TSD is a computer system that receives radar track data from all 20 CONUS ARTCCs, organizes this data into a mosaic display, and presents it on a computer screen. The display allows the traffic management coordinator multiple methods of selection and highlighting of individual aircraft or groups of aircraft. The user has the option of superimposing these aircraft positions over any number of background displays. These background options include ARTCC boundaries, any stratum of en route sector boundaries, fixes, airways, military and other special use airspace, airports, and geopolitical boundaries. By using the TSD, a coordinator can monitor any number of traffic situations or the entire systemwide traffic flows.

TRAJECTORY− A EDST representation of the path an aircraft is predicted to fly based upon a Current Plan or Trial Plan.

(See EN ROUTE DECISION SUPPORT TOOL.)

TRAJECTORY−BASED OPERATIONS (TBO)− An Air Traffic Management method for strategically planning and managing flights throughout the operation by using Time−Based Management (TBM), information exchange between air and ground systems, and the aircraft's ability to fly trajectories in time and space. Aircraft trajectory is defined in four dimensions – latitude, longitude, altitude, and time.

TRAJECTORY MODELING− The automated process of calculating a trajectory.

TRAJECTORY OPTIONS SET (TOS)− A TOS is an electronic message, submitted by the operator, that is used by the Collaborative Trajectory Options Program (CTOP) to manage the airspace captured in the traffic management program. The TOS will allow the operator to express the route and delay trade-off options that they are willing to accept.

TRANSFER OF CONTROL− That action whereby the responsibility for the separation of an aircraft is transferred from one controller to another.

(See ICAO term TRANSFER OF CONTROL.)

TRANSFER OF CONTROL [ICAO]− Transfer of responsibility for providing air traffic control service.

TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER− A controller/facility transferring control of an aircraft to another controller/facility.

(See ICAO term TRANSFERRING UNIT/CONTROLLER.)

TRANSFERRING FACILITY−

(See TRANSFERRING CONTROLLER.)

TRANSFERRING UNIT/CONTROLLER [ICAO]− Air traffic control unit/air traffic controller in the process of transferring the responsibility for providing air traffic control service to an aircraft to the next air traffic control unit/air traffic controller along the route of flight.

Note: See definition of accepting unit/controller.

TRANSITION− The general term that describes the change from one phase of flight or flight condition to another; e.g., transition from en route flight to the approach or transition from instrument flight to visual flight.

TRANSITION POINT− A point at an adapted number of miles from the vertex at which an arrival aircraft would normally commence descent from its en route altitude. This is the first fix adapted on the arrival speed segments.

TRANSITIONAL AIRSPACE− That portion of controlled airspace wherein aircraft change from one phase of flight or flight condition to another.

TRANSITIONAL HAZARD AREA (THA)− Used by ATC. Airspace normally associated with an Aircraft Hazard Area within which the flight of aircraft is subject to restrictions.

(See AIRCRAFT HAZARD AREA.)
(See CONTINGENCY HAZARD AREA.)
(See REFINED HAZARD AREA.)

TRANSMISSOMETER− An apparatus used to determine visibility by measuring the transmission of light through the atmosphere. It is the measurement source for determining runway visual range (RVR).

(See VISIBILITY.)

TRANSMITTING IN THE BLIND− A transmission from one station to other stations in circumstances where two-way communication cannot be established, but where it is believed that the called stations may be able to receive the transmission.

TRANSPONDER− The airborne radar beacon receiver/transmitter portion of the Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) which automatically receives radio signals from interrogators on the ground, and selectively replies with a specific reply pulse or pulse group only to those interrogations being received on the mode to which it is set to respond.

(See INTERROGATOR.)
(See ICAO term TRANSPONDER.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TRANSPONDER [ICAO]− A receiver/transmitter which will generate a reply signal upon proper interrogation; the interrogation and reply being on different frequencies.

TRANSPONDER CODES−

(See CODES.)

TRANSPONDER OBSERVED − Phraseology used to inform a VFR pilot the aircraft's assigned beacon code and position have been observed. Specifically, this term conveys to a VFR pilot the transponder reply has been observed and its position correlated for transit through the designated area.

TRIAL PLAN− A proposed amendment which utilizes automation to analyze and display potential conflicts along the predicted trajectory of the selected aircraft.

TRSA−

(See TERMINAL RADAR SERVICE AREA.)

TSAS−

(See TERMINAL SEQUENCING AND SPACING.)

TSD−

(See TRAFFIC SITUATION DISPLAY.)

TURBOJET AIRCRAFT− An aircraft having a jet engine in which the energy of the jet operates a turbine which in turn operates the air compressor.

TURBOPROP AIRCRAFT− An aircraft having a jet engine in which the energy of the jet operates a turbine which drives the propeller.

TURBULENCE− An atmospheric phenomenon that causes changes in aircraft altitude, attitude, and or airspeed with aircraft reaction depending on intensity. Pilots report turbulence intensity according to aircraft's reaction as follows:

a. Light − Causes slight, erratic changes in altitude and or attitude (pitch, roll, or yaw).

b. Moderate− Similar to Light but of greater intensity. Changes in altitude and or attitude occur but the aircraft remains in positive control at all times. It usually causes variations in indicated airspeed.

c. Severe− Causes large, abrupt changes in altitude and or attitude. It usually causes large variations in indicated airspeed. Aircraft may be momentarily out of control.

d. Extreme− The aircraft is violently tossed about and is practically impossible to control. It may cause structural damage.

(See CHOP.)
(Refer to AIM.)

TURN ANTICIPATION− (maneuver anticipation).

TVOR−

(See TERMINAL-VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION.)

TWO-WAY RADIO COMMUNICATIONS FAILURE−

(See LOST COMMUNICATIONS.)

V

VASI–
(See VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR.)

VCOA–
(See VISUAL CLIMB OVER AIRPORT.)

VDP–
(See VISUAL DESCENT POINT.)

VECTOR– A heading issued to an aircraft to provide navigational guidance by radar.
(See ICAO term RADAR VECTORING.)

VERIFY– Request confirmation of information; e.g., "verify assigned altitude."

VERIFY SPECIFIC DIRECTION OF TAKEOFF (OR TURNS AFTER TAKEOFF)– Used by ATC to ascertain an aircraft's direction of takeoff and/or direction of turn after takeoff. It is normally used for IFR departures from an airport not having a control tower. When direct communication with the pilot is not possible, the request and information may be relayed through an FSS, dispatcher, or by other means.
(See IFR TAKEOFF MINIMUMS AND DEPARTURE PROCEDURES.)

VERTICAL NAVIGATION (VNAV)– A function of area navigation (RNAV) equipment which calculates, displays, and provides vertical guidance to a profile or path.

VERTICAL SEPARATION– Separation between aircraft expressed in units of vertical distance.
(See SEPARATION.)

VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT (VTOL)– Aircraft capable of vertical climbs and/or descents and of using very short runways or small areas for takeoff and landings. These aircraft include, but are not limited to, helicopters.
(See SHORT TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY (VHF)– The frequency band between 30 and 300 MHz. Portions of this band, 108 to 118 MHz, are used for certain NAVAIDs; 118 to 136 MHz are used for civil air/ground voice communications. Other frequencies in this band are used for purposes not related to air traffic control.

VERY HIGH FREQUENCY OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE STATION–
(See VOR.)

VERY LOW FREQUENCY (VLF)– The frequency band between 3 and 30 kHz.

VFR–
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VFR AIRCRAFT– An aircraft conducting flight in accordance with visual flight rules.
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VFR CONDITIONS– Weather conditions equal to or better than the minimum for flight under visual flight rules. The term may be used as an ATC clearance/instruction only when:

a. An IFR aircraft requests a climb/descent in VFR conditions.

b. The clearance will result in noise abatement benefits where part of the IFR departure route does not conform to an FAA approved noise abatement route or altitude.

c. A pilot has requested a practice instrument approach and is not on an IFR flight plan.

Note: All pilots receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility and distance from cloud criteria in 14 CFR Part 91. Use of the term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSAs as required by FAA Order JO 7110.65. When used as an ATC clearance/instruction, the term may be abbreviated "VFR;" e.g., "MAINTAIN VFR," "CLIMB/DESCEND VFR," etc.

VFR FLIGHT–
(See VFR AIRCRAFT.)

VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES (VR)– Routes used by the Department of Defense and associated Reserve and Air Guard units for the purpose of conducting low-altitude navigation and tactical training under VFR below 10,000 feet MSL at airspeeds in excess of 250 knots IAS.

VFR NOT RECOMMENDED– An advisory provided by a flight service station to a pilot during a preflight or inflight weather briefing that flight under visual flight rules is not recommended. To be given when the current and/or forecast weather conditions are at or below VFR minimums. It does not abrogate the pilot's authority to make his/her own decision.

VFR-ON-TOP− ATC authorization for an IFR aircraft to operate in VFR conditions at any appropriate VFR altitude (as specified in 14 CFR and as restricted by ATC). A pilot receiving this authorization must comply with the VFR visibility, distance from cloud criteria, and the minimum IFR altitudes specified in 14 CFR Part 91. The use of this term does not relieve controllers of their responsibility to separate aircraft in Class B and Class C airspace or TRSAs as required by FAA Order JO 7110.65.

VFR TERMINAL AREA CHARTS−
(See AERONAUTICAL CHART.)

VFR WAYPOINT−
(See WAYPOINT.)

VHF−
(See VERY HIGH FREQUENCY.)

VHF OMNIDIRECTIONAL RANGE/TACTICAL AIR NAVIGATION−
(See VORTAC.)

VIDEO MAP− An electronically displayed map on the radar display that may depict data such as airports, heliports, runway centerline extensions, hospital emergency landing areas, NAVAIDs and fixes, reporting points, airway/route centerlines, boundaries, handoff points, special use tracks, obstructions, prominent geographic features, map alignment indicators, range accuracy marks, and/or minimum vectoring altitudes.

VISIBILITY− The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night. Visibility is reported as statute miles, hundreds of feet or meters.
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

a. Flight Visibility− The average forward horizontal distance, from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight, at which prominent unlighted objects may be seen and identified by day and prominent lighted objects may be seen and identified by night.

b. Ground Visibility− Prevailing horizontal visibility near the earth's surface as reported by the United States National Weather Service or an accredited observer.

c. Prevailing Visibility− The greatest horizontal visibility equaled or exceeded throughout at least half the horizon circle which need not necessarily be continuous.

d. Runway Visual Range (RVR)− An instrumentally derived value, based on standard calibrations, that represents the horizontal distance a pilot will see down the runway from the approach end. It is based on the sighting of either high intensity runway lights or on the visual contrast of other targets whichever yields the greater visual range. RVR, in contrast to prevailing or runway visibility, is based on what a pilot in a moving aircraft should see looking down the runway. RVR is horizontal visual range, not slant visual range. It is based on the measurement of a transmissometer made near the touchdown point of the instrument runway and is reported in hundreds of feet. RVR, where available, is used in lieu of prevailing visibility in determining minimums for a particular runway.

1. Touchdown RVR− The RVR visibility readout values obtained from RVR equipment serving the runway touchdown zone.

2. Mid-RVR− The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located midfield of the runway.

3. Rollout RVR− The RVR readout values obtained from RVR equipment located nearest the rollout end of the runway.
(See ICAO term FLIGHT VISIBILITY.)
(See ICAO term GROUND VISIBILITY.)
(See ICAO term RUNWAY VISUAL RANGE.)
(See ICAO term VISIBILITY.)

VISIBILITY [ICAO]− The ability, as determined by atmospheric conditions and expressed in units of distance, to see and identify prominent unlighted objects by day and prominent lighted objects by night.

a. Flight Visibility− The visibility forward from the cockpit of an aircraft in flight.

b. Ground Visibility− The visibility at an aerodrome as reported by an accredited observer.

c. Runway Visual Range [RVR]− The range over which the pilot of an aircraft on the centerline of a runway can see the runway surface markings or the lights delineating the runway or identifying its centerline.

VISUAL APPROACH− An approach conducted on an instrument flight rules (IFR) flight plan which authorizes the pilot to proceed visually and clear of clouds to the airport. The pilot must, at all times, have either the airport or the preceding aircraft in sight. This approach must be authorized and under the control of the appropriate air traffic control facility. Reported weather at the airport must be: ceiling at or above 1,000 feet, and visibility of 3 miles or greater.

(See ICAO term VISUAL APPROACH.)

VISUAL APPROACH [ICAO]− An approach by an IFR flight when either part or all of an instrument approach procedure is not completed and the approach is executed in visual reference to terrain.

VISUAL APPROACH SLOPE INDICATOR (VASI)−

(See AIRPORT LIGHTING.)

VISUAL CLIMB OVER AIRPORT (VCOA)− A departure option for an IFR aircraft, operating in visual meteorological conditions equal to or greater than the specified visibility and ceiling, to visually conduct climbing turns over the airport to the published "climb−to" altitude from which to proceed with the instrument portion of the departure. VCOA procedures are developed to avoid obstacles greater than 3 statute miles from the departure end of the runway as an alternative to complying with climb gradients greater than 200 feet per nautical mile. Pilots are responsible to advise ATC as early as possible of the intent to fly the VCOA option prior to departure. These textual procedures are published in the 'Take−Off Minimums and (Obstacle) Departure Procedures' section of the Terminal Procedures Publications and/or appear as an option on a Graphic ODP.

(See AIM.)

VISUAL DESCENT POINT− A defined point on the final approach course of a nonprecision straight-in approach procedure from which normal descent from the MDA to the runway touchdown point may be commenced, provided the approach threshold of that runway, or approach lights, or other markings identifiable with the approach end of that runway are clearly visible to the pilot.

VISUAL FLIGHT RULES− Rules that govern the procedures for conducting flight under visual conditions. The term "VFR" is also used in the United States to indicate weather conditions that are equal to or greater than minimum VFR requirements. In addition, it is used by pilots and controllers to indicate type of flight plan.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VISUAL HOLDING− The holding of aircraft at selected, prominent geographical fixes which can be easily recognized from the air.

(See HOLDING FIX.)

VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS− Meteorological conditions expressed in terms of visibility, distance from cloud, and ceiling equal to or better than specified minima.

(See INSTRUMENT FLIGHT RULES.)
(See INSTRUMENT METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)
(See VISUAL FLIGHT RULES.)

VISUAL OBSERVER (VO)− A person who is designated by the remote pilot in command to assist the remote pilot in command and the person operating the flight controls of the small UAS (sUAS) to see and avoid other air traffic or objects aloft or on the ground.

VISUAL SEGMENT−

(See PUBLISHED INSTRUMENT APPROACH PROCEDURE VISUAL SEGMENT.)

VISUAL SEPARATION− A means employed by ATC to separate aircraft in terminal areas and en route airspace in the NAS. There are two ways to effect this separation:

a. The tower controller sees the aircraft involved and issues instructions, as necessary, to ensure that the aircraft avoid each other.

b. A pilot sees the other aircraft involved and upon instructions from the controller provides his/her own separation by maneuvering his/her aircraft as necessary to avoid it. This may involve following another aircraft or keeping it in sight until it is no longer a factor.

(See SEE AND AVOID.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)

VLF−

(See VERY LOW FREQUENCY.)

VMC−
(See VISUAL METEOROLOGICAL CONDITIONS.)

VOICE SWITCHING AND CONTROL SYSTEM (VSCS)− A computer controlled switching system that provides air traffic controllers with all voice circuits (air to ground and ground to ground) necessary for air traffic control.
(Refer to AIM.)

VOR− A ground-based electronic navigation aid transmitting very high frequency navigation signals, 360 degrees in azimuth, oriented from magnetic north. Used as the basis for navigation in the National Airspace System. The VOR periodically identifies itself by Morse Code and may have an additional voice identification feature. Voice features may be used by ATC or FSS for transmitting instructions/information to pilots.
(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VOR TEST SIGNAL−
(See VOT.)

VORTAC− A navigation aid providing VOR azimuth, TACAN azimuth, and TACAN distance measuring equipment (DME) at one site.
(See DISTANCE MEASURING EQUIPMENT.)
(See NAVIGATIONAL AID.)
(See TACAN.)
(See VOR.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VORTICES− Circular patterns of air created by the movement of an airfoil through the air when generating lift. As an airfoil moves through the atmosphere in sustained flight, an area of area of low pressure is created above it. The air flowing from the high pressure area to the low pressure area around and about the tips of the airfoil tends to roll up into two rapidly rotating vortices, cylindrical in shape. These vortices are the most predominant parts of aircraft wake turbulence and their rotational force is dependent upon the wing loading, gross weight, and speed of the generating aircraft. The vortices from medium to super aircraft can be of extremely high velocity and hazardous to smaller aircraft.
(See AIRCRAFT CLASSES.)
(See WAKE TURBULENCE.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VOT− A ground facility which emits a test signal to check VOR receiver accuracy. Some VOTs are available to the user while airborne, and others are limited to ground use only.
(See CHART SUPPLEMENT U.S.)
(Refer to 14 CFR Part 91.)
(Refer to AIM.)

VR−
(See VFR MILITARY TRAINING ROUTES.)

VSCS−
(See VOICE SWITCHING AND CONTROL SYSTEM.)

VTOL AIRCRAFT−
(See VERTICAL TAKEOFF AND LANDING AIRCRAFT.)

W

WA–
(See AIRMET.)
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

WAAS–
(See WIDE-AREA AUGMENTATION SYSTEM.)

WAKE RE–CATEGORIZATION (RECAT)– A set of optimized wake separation standards, featuring an increased number of aircraft wake categories, in use at select airports, which allows reduced wake intervals.
(See WAKE TURBULENCE.)

WAKE TURBULENCE– A phenomenon that occurs when an aircraft develops lift and forms a pair of counter–rotating vortices.
(See AIRCRAFT CLASSES.)
(See VORTICES.)
(Refer to AIM.)

WARNING AREA–
(See SPECIAL USE AIRSPACE.)

WAYPOINT– A predetermined geographical position used for route/instrument approach definition, progress reports, published VFR routes, visual reporting points or points for transitioning and/or circumnavigating controlled and/or special use airspace, that is defined relative to a VORTAC station or in terms of latitude/longitude coordinates.

WEATHER ADVISORY– In aviation weather forecast practice, an expression of hazardous weather conditions not predicted in the Aviation Surface Forecast, Aviation Cloud Forecast, or area forecast, as they affect the operation of air traffic and as prepared by the NWS.
(See AIRMET.)
(See SIGMET.)

WEATHER RECONNAISSANCE AREA (WRA)– A WRA is airspace with defined dimensions and published by Notice to Air Missions, which is established to support weather reconnaissance/research flights. Air traffic control services are not provided within WRAs. Only participating weather reconnaissance/research aircraft from the 53rd Weather Reconnaissance Squadron and National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Aircraft Operations Center are permitted to operate within a WRA. A WRA may only be established in airspace within U.S. Flight Information Regions outside of U.S. territorial airspace.

WHEN ABLE–

a. In conjunction with ATC instructions, gives the pilot the latitude to delay compliance until a condition or event has been reconciled. Unlike "pilot discretion," when instructions are prefaced "when able," the pilot is expected to seek the first opportunity to comply.

b. In conjunction with a weather deviation clearance, requires the pilot to determine when he/she is clear of weather, then execute ATC instructions.

c. Once a maneuver has been initiated, the pilot is expected to continue until the specifications of the instructions have been met. "When able," should not be used when expeditious compliance is required.

WIDE-AREA AUGMENTATION SYSTEM (WAAS)– The WAAS is a satellite navigation system consisting of the equipment and software which augments the GPS Standard Positioning Service (SPS). The WAAS provides enhanced integrity, accuracy, availability, and continuity over and above GPS SPS. The differential correction function provides improved accuracy required for precision approach.

WIDE AREA MULTILATERATION (WAM)– A distributed surveillance technology which may utilize any combination of signals from Air Traffic Control Radar Beacon System (ATCRBS) (Modes A and C) and Mode S transponders, and ADS-B transmissions. Multiple geographically dispersed ground sensors measure the time-of-arrival of the transponder messages. Aircraft position is determined by joint processing of the time-difference-of-arrival (TDOA) measurements computed between a reference and the ground stations' measured time-of-arrival.

WILCO– I have received your message, understand it, and will comply with it.

WIND GRID DISPLAY– A display that presents the latest forecasted wind data overlaid on a map of the ARTCC area. Wind data is automatically entered and updated periodically by transmissions from the

National Weather Service. Winds at specific altitudes, along with temperatures and air pressure can be viewed.

WIND SHEAR− A change in wind speed and/or wind direction in a short distance resulting in a tearing or shearing effect. It can exist in a horizontal or vertical direction and occasionally in both.

WIND SHEAR ESCAPE− An unplanned abortive maneuver initiated by the pilot in command (PIC) as a result of onboard cockpit systems. Wind shear escapes are characterized by maximum thrust climbs in the low altitude terminal environment until wind shear conditions are no longer detected.

WING TIP VORTICES−
(See VORTICES.)

WORDS TWICE−

a. As a request: "Communication is difficult. Please say every phrase twice."

b. As information: "Since communications are difficult, every phrase in this message will be spoken twice."

WS−
(See SIGMET.)
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

WST−
(See CONVECTIVE SIGMET.)
(See WEATHER ADVISORY.)

INDEX

[References are to page numbers]

A

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

B

C

[References are to page numbers]

D

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

J

K

L

M

[References are to page numbers]

[References are to page numbers]

O

P

R

[References are to page numbers]

S

[References are to page numbers]

T

[References are to page numbers]